RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

35254. a

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

THE HISTORICAL WORKS

OF

MASTER RALPH DE DICETO,

DEAN OF LONDON.

RADULFI DE DICETO DECANI LUNDONIENSIS OPERA HISTORICA.

THE

HISTORICAL WORKS

OF

MASTER RALPH DE DICETO,

DEAN OF LONDON.

EDITED FROM THE ORIGINAL MANUSCRIPTS

BY

WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., M.R.I.A.,

REGIUS PROFESSOR OF MODERN HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,
FELLOW OF ORIEL COLLEGE AND RECTOR OF CHOLDERTON;
SOMETIME LIBRARIAN TO THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY AND KEEPER OF THE MSS.
AT LAMBETH.

VOL. I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & Co., LUDGATE HILL:
ALSO BY PARKER & Co., OXFORD;
MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, EDINBURGH; AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1876.

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

Prominence of Ralph de Diceto, as a public man.

In the roll of English Historians of the twelfth century no name stands higher than that of Ralph de Diceto. He has been more fortunate than either Roger of Hoveden or the author of the "Gesta Regis Henrici"; for the great ecclesiastical position which he occupied for more than fifty years made him, modest and retiring as he seems to have been, a definitely public man. As a public man, he left traces of his presence in the record of public affairs, and these traces furnish us with some important points of his personal biography. I propose, in the following pages, to attempt a sketch of the career of the author, and to give an account of the external history of the book now before us, reserving for the introduction to the second volume what has to be said about the intrinsic value of his labours, the sources of his information, and the relations of the *Imagines Historiarum* to the other contemporary annals of the same age.

Obscurity of his name.

The most obscure point, perhaps, in our author's personal history is his name. It is peculiar to himself. History and record alike give him the name of "Radulfus "de Diceto," and the surname he shares with no other. He almost invariably uses it in full, whenever he writes about himself; he prefixes it at length to his literary works; he inserts it in the salutation of his letters; he heads the acts in which he and his chapter join with his full name "Ralph de Diceto the dean of the church of "S. Paul at London, and the chapter of the said church, "to all to whom these presents shall come, greeting"; and he dates his survey of the estates of his church by

Significance of the author's name.

this among other notes "per Radulfum de Diceto decanum Lundoniensem, anno primo sui decanatus." It may be thought that in the latter documents he used this form merely for the purpose of distinguishing his own acts as dean from those of his predecessor Ralph of Langford; but the same peculiarity is found whilst he is acting as archdeacon before he became dean; and it is carefully observed by his contemporaries; Gilbert Foliot, John of Salisbury, William FitzStephen, Arnulf of Lisieux, distinguish him as "Radulfus Dicetensis" or "Radulfus de Diceto." It would almost seem that he prided himself for some reason on the surname which he had assumed, or else that he held so humble an opinion of his own importance that he thought it requisite on every occasion to distinguish himself from the more conspicuous persons who bore the same Christian name. Illustrations of this practice will abound as we proceed. Any conclusion however, to which we may come upon the point, must be regarded as showing that, at a period at which surnames whether patronymic, local or official, were becoming much more common than they had been, Ralph de Diceto was one of the very first to use such a name distinctively and invariably. It is this peculiarity which enables us to detect his presence on occasions and in documents, in which, if he had been content to follow the common practice, it would have been unnoticed.

Not a family name.

The fact that no other person has been discovered who bore the name of "Diceto" is a very strong argument against the hypothesis that it is a patronymic or family name like Biset or Belet, Basset, Foliot, or Lycett.[1] If it be interpreted as denoting the birth-place of the bearer, or some benefice which he held in early life, there seems to be an insuperable difficulty in the identification. The word might be a Latinized form of an English local name such or Dicet or Disset; but no place of such name

[1] Bishop Bancroft calls Ralph de Diceto Ralph Dycett; Statutes of S. Paul's (ed. Simpson), p. 279.

is known to exist. Possibly it may lurk still in some remote Shropshire or Essex manor, but it has yet to be discovered. Ditcheat in Somersetshire might tempt us, in its present form, to identify it with Dicetum, but in the days of Ralph it was still Dichesyeat. It might also be a Latinized form of a French Dicy, Dizy, or Dissai, and of such places there is no lack, but there is nothing in Ralph's personal history to connect him with them. Under such circumstances any lengthened speculation would be simply a waste of ingenuity. As however the name is a part of the history of the man, it demands some brief consideration. Is it a local name?

The first and indeed the only positive claimant of the honour of giving name to our author is the town of Diss, in Norfolk. In this case neither the antiquity of the claim nor the grounds upon which it is based entitle it to more than the character of a guess. Diss appears in Domesday book in several places and invariably in the form of "Dice."[1] Now supposing the final "e" of Dice to have been sounded, the Latin form Dicetum might be a probable translation of Dicé; but no such form is known to occur. Diss is never, so far as records have thrown light upon the point, Latinized as Dicetum. It appears as "Dize" in the Pipe Rolls of Henry II.[2]; as "Disze" in the Pipe Rolls of Richard I.[3]; as "Disce" in the Patent Rolls of John.[4] It is "Dysse" in the Taxation of Pope Nicolas in 1291.[5] The records of the abbey of Bury S. Edmund's show that among the inmates or officers of that house there were, contemporary with our author, three at least who took their names from Diss. Jocelin of Brakelond mentions Master William of Dice, who was master of the schools: his son Walter who was a candidate for the living of Chevington; and a monk named John: they are John, Walter, and William "de Dice" Claim of Diss in Norfolk.

---

[1] Domesday, vol. ii. ff. 114, 129, 149, 154, 176, 210, 215, 228, 263, 269, 272, 276, 278.

[2] Rot. Pip., Hen. II., ed. Hunter.

[3] Rot. Pip., 1 Rich., ed. Hunter, p. 39.

[4] Rot. Pat., ed. Hardy, i. 190.

[5] Taxatio P. Nicol., p. 84 b.

Claim of Diss as giving name to our author.

and "de Dicia."[1] The list of the sacrists of S. Edmunds, printed in the Monasticon, contains the name of "Willel-"mus de Disce" who filled the office for four days in Abbot Sampson's time.[2] The Royal Library, now in the British Museum, contains a volume with the inscription "Hunc librum scribi fecit Willelmus de Dice, servus et "monachus S. Edmundi, ad honorem, S. Edmundi."[3] In a document appended to Jocelin's Chronicle, William of Diss is called "Willelmus de Dicia." Dyssa is the form used by Alexander III. These facts seem to show that without further evidence the claim of Diss should not be allowed, and there are circumstances which tend to show that Dicetum should be sought elsewhere.

Ralph was not the parson of Diss.

In the first place, the common practice of calling a beneficed clergyman by the name of his parish may suggest that Ralph was the rector of Dicetum. But he was not rector of Diss. Uncertain as are the number and situation of his several preferments, we know that the church of Diss was held during his life by two persons with whom he seems to have had no connexion. This is proved by a document which so greatly struck the fancy of Bishop Bale that he twice mentions it in different works, once in the "Scriptores"[4] and once in the "Votaryes," as showing that two persons, father and

---

[1] "Walterus filius magistri Wil-"lelmi de Dice;" "Johannes de "Dice;" "Willelmus dictus de "Dicia." Joc. Brakelond (Camd. Soc.), pp. 32, 83, 84, 102.

[2] "Waltero de Banham successit "Willelmus de Disce, qui cum modo "electus fuisset ad illud officium, "et in illo a die Sancti Thomæ "martyris usque ad Circumcisionem "Domini, per quatuor videlicet dies "stetisset, interim sompnum oculi "sui capere non potuerunt; qui "videns se ibidem proficere non "posse, suam ab abbate Sampsone "(A.D. 1182–1211) petiit cessio-"nem." Mon. Angl., iii. 163.

[3] Casley's Catalogue, p. 127.

[4] Bale, Scriptores (second edition), p. 217: "in Nordovolgia "Wulkerellus presbyter Guilhelmo "filio, ut legitimo heredi, sacerdo-"tium de Dyssa reliquit." We have no further knowledge of the dispute. The patronage of the church must, however, have been claimed by the lords of Diss; for in 1216 Robert de Goldingham has letters of presentation from the king to the church of "Disce," owing to the fact that the lands of Robert FitzWalter were then in the king's hands. Rot. Pat. (ed. Hardy), i. 190.

son were at this period successively parsons of Diss. He had seen a decretal epistle of Pope Alexander III., addressed to John of Oxford when Bishop of Norwich, and written, therefore, between 1175, when John of Oxford was consecrated, and 1181, when Alexander III. died. In this letter the Pope "commaundeth that Wyllyam the "new person of Dysse, for clayminge the benefyce by "inheritaunce, after the decease of his father person "Wulkerell which begate him in his presthode, should "be dispossessed, no appellacyon admitted."[1] The letter itself has not been found, and is not among the collected epistles of Alexander III., but Bale's authority on such a point is not to be questioned. By the name Wulkerell we may take it for granted that the common East Anglian Wulfketel is meant, and in the story we have one of many instances of the tenure of ecclesiastical benefices in hereditary succession, a practice which the popes found it extremely difficult to suppress, and which is the subject of many extant letters of Alexander himself, preserved among Foliot's epistles and in the appendix to the Acts of the Lateran Council of 1179. Wulfketell and William would leave no room for Ralph, unless we suppose him very early in life to have held the benefice and afterwards to have resigned it. Such a supposition, however, is scarcely reconcileable with the fact that he clung so tenaciously to the name.

Hereditary parsons of Diss.

In the second place, if Ralph had been, either by birth or by preferment, connected with Diss, we might fairly expect that we should be able to trace the connexion in his books; we might expect to find some minute particulars or some special words of respect or disrespect, touching the Lords of Diss, to whose patronage he might be indebted, or whose acquaintance he must have made. The Lord of Diss during great part of Ralph's life was

Was Ralph a native of Diss?

[1] Bale, Votaryes (ed. 1551), fo. 98 b. See Blomfield, Hist. Norfolk, i. 11, which first called my attention to this fact.

Ralph shows no special connexion with Diss or its lords.

Richard de Lucy, the chief minister of Stephen and the great justiciar of Henry II. Richard died the year before Ralph was promoted to the deanery of S. Paul's, and was succeeded in his lordship by his son-in-law, Walter FitzRobert.[1] Although the great position and high character of Richard de Lucy would give the historian an ample opportunity of dilating on the virtues of a fellow townsman, he nowhere mentions him with such special remark. The Bigods and the Mandevilles, on the contrary, the patrons of the priories of Thetford and Walden, under whom Ralph held the livings of Finchingfield and Aynho, receive especial mention; the former with additional particulars of personal history, and the latter in terms of exceptional compliment.[2]

The claim of Diss is not ancient.

In the third place, it is to be considered that, with one possible exception, no historical writer before the seventeenth century seems to have thought of identifying Dicetum with Diss. The one apparent exception is that of the author of the "Livere des Reis de Britanie," who wrote in the time of Edward I.[3] This writer, translating directly or mediately from the Imagines, describes the pious founder of the cemetery of S. Thomas of Canterbury at Acre, as William the chaplain of "Rauf de Disze, le haut den de Londres." In this case it is probable that Disze (or Diszé) is simply a retranslation of Diceto, but at first sight it looks like an in-

---

[1] Blomfield, Hist. Norf., i. 2.

[2] William of Mandeville is specially spoken of in connexion with his expedition to the east, when he presented several churches with cloths brought from Constantinople (vol. i. p. 428); his marriage, which took place at Pleshey, within Ralph's archidiaconal jurisdiction (vol. ii. p. 3); his victories in Flanders (ii. 32); and his death (vol. ii. p. 73). For particulars about Hugh Bigod see vol. i. pp. 248, 377, 378, 385. Richard de Lucy is mentioned as excommunicated by Becket in 1166 (vol. i. p. 318), and in connexion with the foundation of Lesnes Abbey in 1178 (*ib.* p. 425); but in the account of the rebellion of 1173 not even his name occurs.

[3] "Le livere de reis de Angleterre," p. 256. See also Mr. Glover's note in the Introduction, p. xii., where Decize is suggested as the true Dicetum. Diss does not seem to have occurred to Mr. Glover.

tentional identification with Diss. Setting aside, however, this instance, we find such a number of curious misreadings of the name as proves that the early writers had no idea of connecting it with a well-known English town. Gilbert Foliot when he first made acquaintance with Ralph called him Diotecensis,[1] a sufficient proof that he did not recognise the place from which the name was derived. Some still stranger forms are mentioned by Selden in the Prolegomena to Twysden's "Decem Scriptores."[2] Thomas of Walsingham, the learned and industrious compiler at S. Alban's, calls our author Radulfus de Luzeto;[3] the manuscripts of Higden's Polychronicon have Radulfus de Byzeto, which Trevisa translated "Raulf le Bruys," and which appears in Caxton as "Raph de Bruys;"[4] Bale in the first edition of the *Scriptores* called him "Radulphus de Rizeto;"[5] John Ross of Warwick had read it "Ralph de Duceto;" and John Pyke, who largely used the books before us, referred to the writer more than once as "Ralph de "Doiceto."[6] In the collections made by Edward I. on the question of the over-lordship of Scotland, the name appears in the printed copies as "Dizeto."[7] The early bibliographers were content to call him by the name by which he called himself, but were in some doubt as to his nationality. Leland confessed himself unable to determine whether he was an Englishman,[8] and did not include him in the list of the writers of Britain. Bale

Early writers do not identify Diceto with Diss.

Various misreadings of the name.

---

[1] See below, p. xxx, note 2.

[2] Page xxix.

[3] Walsingham, ed. Camden, p, 55; ed. Riley, vol. i. p. 34.

[4] Higden, lib. vii. cap. 39, ed. 1538.

[5] Scriptores (ed. 1549), fo. 97. It is corrected in the second edition.

[6] Selden, as quoted above, note [2].

[7] Fœd., i. 769.

[8] "Fuit doctor Theologiæ, at non "satis mihi constat num etiam "Anglus fuerit;" Dugdale, S. Paul's (ed. 1658), p. 283. Bale and Wharton call him English, and their judgment would be valuable if we were certain that the contrary view had ever been presented to them. See Wharton's Appendix to Cave's Historia Litteraria, and Bale as quoted above.

The origin of the claim of Diss.

called him an Englishman, but he contented himself with the usual generalities that show how little he knew about him beyond the existence of his works. Pits followed Bale and Leland. The identification with Diss appeared first, I believe, in the second edition of Dugdale's History of S. Paul's, published in 1716, with the author's own corrections, by Dr. Maynard.[1] We are not told whether in this particular case the addition had Dugdale's authority, and the loose, inaccurate way in which it is given would seem to suggest that it had not. In the list of the deans Ralph de Diceto is said, in a parenthesis, to be of "Disca in com. Suffolk." Dugdale himself must have known that Diss was in Norfolk. However this may be, Henry Wharton either was ignorant of the conjecture, which was published several years after his death, or refused to accept it;[2] and Gale, who mentions that he had seen the form "Dissetum" in the Chronicles of Walden Abbey, does not proceed to argue from the fact.[3] Tanner does not notice it in his Bibliotheca. Yet it commended itself to the authors of the Histoire Litteraire de France, who, finding somewhere the name of "Thomas de Disce, a priest of the "province of York," withdrew somewhat hastily a claim which they had prepared to make on behalf of France as the native country of Ralph de Diceto.[4] There were several places in France which might be understood by Dicetum, but there was a Diss in England, which furnished to them a satisfactory solution of the question. It is on their authority, we may presume,

Accepted in recent times.

---

[1] It does not appear in the edition of 1658, pp. 9, 48; it is in Maynard's edition, pp. 10, 51; and repeated in Ellis's, p. 7.

[2] Wharton, "de decanis Londo-"niensibus," p. 203. Cf. Ang. Sac., ii. p. xxvii.

[3] In the preface to the "Quinde-"cim Scriptores," A.D. 1691. The MS. which Gale saw, and which is now MS. Arundel 29, is a seventeenth century transcript. The name is spelled Disceto in the text of this MS., but the form Disseto may occur in the margin. See below, p. xlix.

[4] Hist. Litt., vol. xvi. p. 499.

that recent writers have called our author "Ralph of "Diss."

Spelling of the name.

The proper form of the name is "Diceto," as it is given in all the manuscripts and records which proceeded directly from the author's hand; but very soon after his death, in the records of his cathedral it is found written "Disceto;"[1] the modern copy of the Chronicle of Walden has the same form, and it is found also in a document which will be adduced farther on, issued by Bishop Hugh of Lincoln before the death of Ralph. There seems to be no ancient authority for the form Disseto; and Dizeto rests on a document issued a hundred years after his time.

Apparent etymology of the name.

The form "Dicetum" itself, according to the analogies of mediæval Latin and French, would naturally represent the French Dissai, as Alnetum represents Aulnay, Fraxinetum Fresnay, Salicetum Saussai, or as Virenetum represents the English Verney. But the parallel halts in one important point, for there is no tree "dicus," "dica," or "dix," which is required to make it complete; nor does the word occur in French geography any more than in English. It seems lawful to infer from this that it is an artificial name, adopted by its bearer as the Latin name of a place with which he was associated, but which had no proper Latin name of its own. So explained it may belong to some English place, Diss, Dicton, Ditton, or other, or to a French Dissai, Dizy, or Dissé; but with this difference, that whilst it has no proper relation with the English names, it stands in a true etymological relation to the French. There are in the province of Maine three places of the name required:[3] Dissai-sous-de-Lude, known in Latin

[1] See Statutes of S. Paul's (ed. Simpson), pp. 33, 109, 125, 174, where it is written Disceto; at p. 63 Dean Baldock (A.D. 1294–1303) writes it Dyceto; and at p. 153 Bishop Braybrooke (A.D. 1382–1405) writes Disseto.

[2] Cauvin, Geographie ancienne du diocese du Mans; Institut des Provinces de France, vol. i. s. vv.

Places in France which might be called Dicetum.

documents as Diceium; Dissé-sous-Ballon, and Dissai-sous-Courcillon, near Château du Loir, Latinized as Disiacus. In other parts of France are found Dizy, in the department of the Marne in Champagne, and Dizy in that of the Aisne in Picardy; while there is Dicy in that of the Yonne in Burgundy. The neighbourhood of Le Mans has perhaps the first claim, if we consult the internal evidence of our author's writings. The great care bestowed on the history of the counts of Anjou is sufficient to call attention to it. Either Dissai-sous-Courcillon, which was bestowed by Bishop Siegfrid[1] on Fulk the good count of Anjou, might allege in its favour the prominence given to that count in the *Abbreviationes;* or Dissé-sous-de-Lude, one half of which was given by Bishop Ulger of Angers to his cathedral, might adduce the verses about Ulger which Ralph has written in the margin of his book, under the years 1139–1142.[2] At the utmost, however, we can only say that etymologically the balance inclines in favour of one of these towns, and would give Ralph a French nationality which there is little in his books to refute and some slight circumstances to countenance.

Obscurity of nationality.

Internal evidence on a point like this may be read almost any way. Our author's writings nowhere contain any statement that he was an Englishman; if they did, such a statement at the period at which he wrote might mean no more than that he was born of French descent in England. Neither do they contain any assertion that he was a Frenchman; if they did, it might mean no more than that he was sprung from the Normans of the Conquest. As to the indirect evidence which may be sought in the tone and spirit of his narrative, little can be said. The early portions of the *Abbreviationes,* in which, if he were English, some signs of English sympathy might be expected, are merely extracts from previous writers. No definite inferences

[1] Gallia Christiana, ii. 135.

[2] Below, vol. i. pp. 252–255.

can be drawn from the plan of selection, from the modifications, the omissions, or additions of the compiler. The descriptions of Angers and Aquitaine which are the purple patches of the first pages of the *Imagines*,[1] and which may be thought to prove that Ralph, when he began that work, contemplated something more ambitious in tone, and more comprehensive in character, than a mere book of annals, are in this respect worthy of special attention. The picture of Angers is drawn by one who was fairly well acquainted with the site; no such picture of an English city occurs in the book. We are not indeed assured that the description is not extracted from the work of some other author; in common with the other Angevin memoranda it is claimed for another hand; and, although I hope to be able to show that the grounds upon which that particular claim is based are untenable, the disproof of the claim of one competitor does not prove the claim of the other. Another indication, stronger perhaps than this, may be found in the fact that towards the close of the *Abbreviationes*, at that point, that is, of the work at which the author is passing from his extracts from earlier writers to the record of his own personal reminiscences, the greater part of the matter which cannot be referred to older authority concerns either the church of S. Paul in London, which was his final home, or contemporary events in France.[2] As the memoranda touching S. Paul's may be easily accounted for by his connexion, lifelong as it would seem to have been, with that cathedral, the references to French history, to the visit of Eugenius III. to Paris,[3] the election of the Archbishop of Bourges and consequent interdict,[4] the crusade and the taxation which was caused by it,[5] may be due to the

Some points suggest a French nationality.

---

[1] Vol. i. pp. 292–294.
[2] Vol. i. pp. 247–258.
[3] Vol. i. p. 256.
[4] Vol. i. p. 256.
[5] Vol. i. pp. 256, 257.

Nothing determined by these.

fact that in his youth, in a native home in France, he had been struck with these events. But it is quite as probable that he remembered them because at the time they occurred he was a student in the University of Paris. The question of nationality is really involved in the same obscurity as the meaning of the name; but that Ralph was an Englishman of the period of amalgamation, an Englishman in his sympathy with the sound legislation of Henry II., and with the national aspirations of the reconstituted England, there can be no doubt.

Probable date of our author's birth.

Equally uncertain are the point of our author's parentage and the date of his birth. Although we can follow him through fifty years of a somewhat distinguished career, we find no traces of great age at the close, no signs of youthful action or premature promotion at the beginning. If he had been more than eighty when he died, some one of the many annalists of the time would almost certainly have recorded the date and circumstances of his death. Yet unless we suppose him to have been exceptionally young when, in the year 1152, he was made archdeacon, he could not have been much under eighty when he died. As, however, it is necessary to have some hypothetical string on which to arrange the known events of his life, we may suppose him to have been born between 1120 and 1130. His notices of events touching the history of S. Paul's begin in 1136, and certainly have the appearance of personal recollections.[1]

Was he connected with the family of Belmeis?

There are some points, which now meet us, that suggest a not impossible theory of the parentage of Ralph de Diceto. He was appointed to his archdeaconry by Bishop Richard II. of Belmeis; the office of archdeacon was very frequently reserved by the bishops for their nearest kinsmen; the family of Belmeis for more than

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 248.

half a century was all powerful in the chapter of S. Paul's; and Ralph more than once betrays a tenderness as to clerical marriage and the propriety of a son succeeding to his father's benefice. Some illustration of the scenes in which his early years were passed may result from a short examination of these points.

Family of Belmeis.

In 1108 Richard I. of Belmeis was made Bishop of London. His family derived their name from the Norman village of Beaumais on the Dive, Bellus Mansus. He had himself risen to importance in the service of the house of Montgomery, had been sheriff of Shropshire under the earls of that house, Roger, Hugh, and Robert of Belesme,[1] and had probably recommended himself to the king by his fidelity and loyalty at the time of the rebellion of the last-mentioned earl. In his own person and by his kinsmen he founded an important Shropshire family, before he became a bishop. As bishop he showed himself a great prelate of the true Norman type, a magnificent builder, a great state official, and a most liberal benefactor to his church. He is said to have devoted the whole of his episcopal revenue to the restoration of his cathedral; he founded the cathedral schools; he obtained great privileges for the chapter from the king; and, by purchasing and enclosing land and houses round S. Paul's, he formed the churchyard and neighbouring streets into a sort of cathedral close.[2] As was the common practice, he provided out of the patronage of the see for several of his kinsmen. One nephew, William, son of his sister Adelina, was dean of S. Paul's from 1111 to 1138;[3] Ralph of Langford and Richard of Belmeis, sons of Walter the

Bishop Richard I.

---

[1] Orderic. Vital., lib. xi. cap. 31; Ann. Winton. Ang. Sac., i. 297; Eadmer, Hist. Nov., pp. 96, 97. The best account of the family will be found in Eyton's History of Shropshire, vol. ii. pp. 193, sq.; a pedigree, partly conjectural, is there given, which cannot be entirely accepted.

[2] Wharton, Episc. Lond., pp. 46–50.

[3] Below, vol. i. p. 251.

How Richard of Belmeis promoted his kinsfolk.

bishop's brother, were made canons;[1] a still nearer kinsman, Walter the bishop's son, was prebendary of Newington, and appears in the Great Roll of the Pipe for the 31st year of Henry I. as "filius episcopi Lon-"doniensis," paying ten marks for a right judgment touching the church of Illing.[2] Another of the family, William, was archdeacon of either London or Colchester.[3] The position thus created for the family was defended by them as a part of their inheritance, and not without the quarrels incidental to family parties of the kind.

Richard II. of Belmeis.

Shortly before his death in 1127, the bishop appointed his nephew Richard, who was still a child,[4] archdeacon of Middlesex. Gilbert the Universal, who succeeded to the see in 1128, held it for only six years, and his death in 1134 was followed by a disputed election and a vacancy which lasted until 1141. It is possible that

---

[1] Eyton regards Ralph of Langford as sister's son to the bishop, and supposes that his mother had married a man of the name; but the words of our author (vol. i. p. 250) seem clearly to prove that he was brother of the second bishop Richard, and in that case his name of Langford would be derived from one of the many Langfords or Longfords where he may have had preferment.

[2] Rot. Pip., 31 Hen. I.; Newcourt, Repertorium, i. 186.

[3] See below, p. xxiii. This enumeration probably does not exhaust the list of the bishop's kinsmen in the chapter. Richard of Belmeis was buried in the priory of S. Osyth, which he founded, with the epitaph, "Hic jacet Ricardus Beaumeis "*cognomento Rufus* Londoniensis "episcopus, vir probus et grandævus "per totam vitam laboriosus, fun-"dator noster religiosus, qui multa "bona nobis et ministris ecclesiæ "suæ S. Pauli contulit; obiit xvi. "kal. Jan. 1127; cujus animæ "propitietur Deus." Weever, Sep. Mon., p. 607; Mon. Angl., vi. 308; Newcourt, ii. 455; Eyton, ii. 200. I do not know the date of the inscription, but it is curious that a Richard Ruffus was archdeacon of Essex for several years during the century, and that another Richard Ruffus was prebendary of Twyford in 1181 and holding certain lands of the church which had been let to his predecessor of the same name. Moreover, Ailwardus Ruffus was archdeacon of Colchester from 1150–1162 or thereabouts; and Guido Ruffus was the last dean of Waltham. Archdeacon Hale, however, doubts whether the archdeacon Richard is rightly called Ruffus; Domesday of S. Paul's p. lxxxvii.

[4] "Nondum plene pubes;" it was a common practice to nominate very young men as archdeacons and send them to Paris or Bologna to be educated.

the dean William wished to be elected, or to force his nominee upon the chapter, but he was opposed by his kinsmen; a large party of the canons joined, however, in electing Abbot Anselm of S. Edmund's. The dean appealed, but his relations took part against him, carried their treasures to Rome, where they found the church in a state of schism, and obtained for a time at least possession of the estates of the see for Anselm.[1] The dean was supported by Ralph of Langford and Richard of Belmeis, who in 1138 obtained from the Pope a definitive sentence which sent Anselm back to his abbey. The custody of the bishopric was, however, intrusted to Bishop Henry of Winchester, and the death of the dean, which occurred the same year, left the see unclaimed until, in 1141, the empress gave it to Robert de Sigillo. Quarrel in the chapter of S. Paul's.

The hold of the family on the church was not shaken by this. Ralph of Langford was elected as successor of his cousin in the deanery, and Richard of Belmeis, whose archdeaconry had been held in trust for him by a chaplain of the bishop named Hugh, obtained from Rome a commission of judges, who compelled Hugh against his will to resign in his favour.[2] The reign of Stephen was altogether a stormy time for S. Paul's. When the empress lost her hold upon London, her bishop Robert went into exile. William the archdeacon, "cum gente "eorum qui a Bello Manso traxere cognomen,"[3] so far Continued hold of the family on S. Paul's.

[1] Below, vol. i. pp. 248-251.

[2] Vol. i. p. 251.

[3] Historia Pontificalis, Pertz, Mon. Hist. Germ., vol. xx. p. 532: "Verum primi omnium crimen in-"obedientiæ incurrerunt Lundoni-"enses, confugientes ad appellatio-"nem (sc. in 1148), cum tamen in "litteris apostolicis esset inhibita "appellatio. Fecerant hoc jam "alia vice, quando episcopus eo-"rum, bonæ memoriæ Robertus "expulsus est; cui hanc exhibuere "devotionem, ut omni diligentia "procurarent ne patri exulanti in "aliquo prodessent. Horum sig-"nifer et in hac et in illa causa fuit "Guillelmus archidiaconus cum "gente eorum qui a Bello Manso "traxere cognomen." Who this archdeacon was is not quite clear. There was a William archdeacon of Colchester in 1162, S. T. C. iv. 37; and in 1150 the four archdeacons were Richard Belmeis of Middlesex, Richard [Ruffus] of Essex, and William and Ailward of London and Colchester. This William is

Independence of the family in chapter.

from showing proper filial obedience, did their utmost to reduce their bishop to destitution; and again in 1148, when the English bishops were suspended by the Pope for not attending the council of Rheims, the archdeacon and his party set an example of contumacy by appealing against the sentence. In the obscure intrigues of this period of Stephen's reign it is impossible to speak with confidence on such a point; but if we may depend on the *Historia Pontificalis*, which records the fact, and which is now believed to be the work of John of Salisbury, the archdeacon and his party were now playing into the hands of the king. We cannot, however, trace more consistency in the ecclesiastical than in the baronial intrigues of this complicated time.

Question of episcopal election.

In 1151 the see of London was again vacant: Robert de Sigillo was dead, and there was an evil report of poison. Eugenius III., acting doubtless at the instigation of the empress's party, directed the canons to elect within three months a fit candidate, "virum honestum et litteratum "et religionis habitu decoratum." The demand that the Bishop of London should be a monk, or regular canon, struck the chapter with dismay; the majority of the canons applied to Rome and obtained an explanation of the last words as including the order of secular canons.[1] But the king also interposed difficulties:[2] unable to force a nominee of his own upon the chapter, he determined to make at least a pecuniary profit out

---

called archdeacon of London in 1152 (S. T. C., v. 184), but the expression may be used loosely; and I cannot be quite sure whether there were one or two archdeacons of the name, or which archdeaconry Ailward really held. But see pp. xl., xli., below.

[1] Historia Pontificalis, Pertz, xx. 545.

[2] "Rex vero eis eligendi libertatem concedere noluit antequam "quingentas libras exemplo mona- "chorum Sancti Augustini ei ap- "penderint. Quo facto electus est "Ricardus, ejusdem ecclesiæ archi- "diaconus, qui præfatam pecuniam "non sine nota symoniæ dinoscitur "exsolvisse. Ea namque tempes- "tate sub optentu libertatis redi- "mendæ pravitatem symoniacam "plurimi palliabant." Hist. Pont., Pertz, xx. 545.

Election of Richard II. of Belmeis.

of the election; and although he had by charter at the beginning of his reign confirmed the right of free election to the cathedral churches, he exacted a sum of five hundred pounds from S. Paul's for leave to act upon the canonical right. At last enabled to proceed to election, the chapter fixed on Richard of Belmeis, the archdeacon of Middlesex, on whom of course devolved the duty of making good the fine which Stephen had demanded. The debt thus incurred hampered him all his life. The election was not acceptable to the magnates, and the family interest had to be employed at Rome before it was recognized. Eugenius III. had to use his direct influence in securing the appointment,[1] and Gilbert Foliot, the energetic counsellor of the Angevin party, had an important share in the negotiation.[2] The bishop elect was already in possession of considerable preferment, and he had held the deanery of S. Alkmund's at Shrewsbury, one of the ancient collegiate foundations that had survived the reforming zeal of the Norman lords. Like his uncle and predecessor, he favoured the religious orders; the earlier Richard had founded the priory of S. Osyth in Essex for Austin canons; his nephew transferred his collegiate endowment to found an Arroasian priory at Lilleshull.[3] But he was neither monk nor priest. He had been ordained deacon in 1138.[4] On the 20th of September 1152

[1] Gilbert Foliot writes to the Pope: "Londoniensis nimirum epi- "scopus adeo manuum vestrarum "opus est et creatio, ut ei recte in "faciem possit objici, tu quid habes "nisi quod a domino papa acce- "pisti?" S. T. C. v. 120.

[2] Foliot speaks of the bishop as a kinsman, S. T. C. v. 40; he assisted in obtaining his election to the see, ibid. 122.

[3] There is a charter of Henry I., in which he gives to Richard of Belmeis, nephew of the Bishop of London, all that the bishop had held of the king, which formerly was Godebald's and Robert's; the same Richard is called archdeacon in a charter of Stephen, so there seems to be no doubt of his identity. The Arroasian house at Lilleshull was founded on the land of Richard's prebend. Mon. Angl. vi. 262, 263. See too Eyton's Shropshire, vol. viii. p. 218.

[4] Vol. i. p. 252.

Consecration of Richard II. of Belmeis.

at Otford he was ordained priest by Archbishop Theobald, and on the 28th of the same month he received episcopal consecration at Canterbury, the archbishop and his brother Walter Bishop of Rochester, Hilary of Chichester, and Gilbert Foliot himself, officiating.[1] Nearly all the bishops of England were present on the occasion. The Bishop of Winchester, who was absent, signified his consent to the consecration in a letter to the archbishop, which our author has preserved,[2] perhaps as being the first document that came into his hands as the bishop's official servant; for Richard's first act as bishop was to appoint Master Ralph de Diceto as his successor in the archdeaconry of Middlesex.

He makes Ralph archdeacon.

Considering the great pains with which the ruling family had tried to concentrate and strengthen their interest in the chapter, it is improbable that the new bishop should bestow his first piece of preferment on a stranger. That interest was not exhausted, and afterwards, when Ralph was dean, we find William of Belmeis, a nephew of the second Richard, bestowing on the canons his church of S. Pancras for the health of the soul of his uncle, and of his father Robert of Belmeis.[3] The hereditary instinct which worked in the chapter was extremely likely to affect the appointment to the archdeaconry. It was very common for the bishops to appoint their nearest kinsmen to this confidential office. Numberless examples

[1] Gervase, c. 1370; below, vol. i. pp. 295, 296.

[2] Below, vol. i. p. 296.

[3] Newcourt, Repertorium, i. 190. MS. Harleian 6956, fo. 84. This MS., which I shall have again to refer to, contains Dr. Matthew Hutton's excerpts from the records of the dean and chapter of S. Paul's. Most of the books that Hutton saw, if not all, are still in the muniment room of the cathedral, and I have to thank the present dean, Dr. Church, and the librarian, Dr. Sparrow Simpson, for a liberal permission to use them. I refer, however, to the Hutton MS. as easier for verification. The early registers of S. Paul's are of immense value for the illustration of the ecclesiastical and civic history of London, and it is to be hoped that some of them may soon be printed.

Cases of bishops who appointed their near kinsmen arch-deacons.

may be given at this very period. Archbishop Ralph had given the archdeaconry of Canterbury to his brother John; Archbishop Theobald, who succeeded him, gave it to his brother Walter; Bishop Nigel, of Ely, had made his son Richard his archdeacon; at Hereford, Gilbert Foliot had given or procured the appointment for his kinsman Ralph; Robert Peche, Bishop of Lichfield, had given the archdeaconry of Coventry to his son Richard, who, after two intervening appointments, succeeded him in his see; Walkelin, archdeacon of Suffolk, was nephew of Bishop Everard of Montgomery;[1] at Salisbury, Bishop Roger appointed his nephew Alexander, and Jocelin, who succeeded him, appointed his son Reginald; at York, Geoffrey the archdeacon was nephew of Roger the archbishop. If then we should incline to the conjecture that Ralph de Diceto was a near relation of Richard of Belmeis, we should not wrong the bishop by imputing to him exceptional nepotism. Nor, as I have remarked, are there wanting in our author's own works some indications that the question of clerical marriage and legitimacy had a special interest for him. Dean Milman, in his short sketch of Ralph's career, in the Annals of S. Paul's, has noticed particularly the words which occur in the *Abbreviationes* under the year 1074 [2] on the measures taken by Gregory VII. against the married clergy. The dean adduces the passage as showing that Ralph was not thoroughly imbued with Hildebrandine principles, at all events upon this point. It is true that the words are not really our author's, but part of an

---

[1] Walkelin was one of the class of archdeacons whose lives led to the conclusion that "no archdeacon "could be saved." He gave great trouble to Archbishop Theobald and John of Salisbury, and defied the Pope as his uncle Robert of Belesme had defied the king. He had a "focaria" who on one occasion of his return from Rome, presented him with a child, whom for the sake of the jest he christened Adrian, or Adriana, after the Pope. See John of Salisbury, Epist. 27.

[2] Vol. i. p. 208.

Tenderness of Ralph on the question of clerical marriage.

extract from Sigebert of Gemblours, who nearly a century before had written against the allegations made by laymen against married priests; but the fact that Ralph had incorporated them without reservation in his own compilation may reasonably be regarded as showing that he did not disapprove of the sentiment they contained. His special references, again, to the Panormia of Ivo of Chartres for precedents in which sons had succeeded their fathers in high clerical preferment, look the same way: "The apostolic see has permitted the sons of " priests, whose conversation has been approved in " monasteries or religious churches, to be promoted to " the priesthood and even to the highest grade of the " ministry; in some instances we have heard of the sons " of bishops being promoted, after some intermediate " appointment, in the very churches in which their " fathers had ministered."[1] This was in fact one of the three canonical points on which Ralph was specially interested, the other two being the restoration of a deposed prelate and the lawfulness of translation,[2] the latter of which was brought prominently to his notice when he had to transact the business of Foliot's removal from Hereford to London. One famous passage, which has often been quoted from the *Abbreviationes* seems to militate against this view. In 1137 he tells us, the " focariæ of certain canons who are called secular were " carried off and dragged to the Tower, not without " dire disgrace, and kept there bound for many days; " they returned to their own, but not without personal " mockery, loss of reputation, and cost of money."[3] It is not probable that Ralph, if he wrote these words at all, meant them to apply to his own church. They appear in only one of the manuscripts drawn up under his own eye, and in that not without suspicious marks

[1] Vol. i. pp. 33, 305.
[2] Vol. i. p. 33.
[3] Vol. i. p. 249.

of erasure. If they are genuine, however, they seem, from the very reticence with which they are introduced, to indicate some feeling in the writer that he was not upon safe ground. It is not then, I think, improbable that Ralph de Diceto was son or nephew to Ralph of Langford, whom, with one person intervening, he succeeded in the deanery of S. Paul's. The supposition would not indeed explain the meaning of his name, but a clerical pedigree might account for the fact of his bearing a name not elsewhere recognized.

Opposition to Ralph's appointment as archdeacon.

Bishop Richard was not able to secure the promotion of his nominee without a considerable effort, such as again he would have scarcely made in behalf of any but a near friend. It is in a letter upon this point that we get our first documentary illustration of our author's career. Gilbert Foliot, now Bishop of Hereford, writes to Pope Eugenius III. on behalf of Bishop Richard. Both Foliot and the Pope were strong partisans of the empress and her son, and from the way in which the former speaks of the bishop as having been indebted for his promotion to the pope's direct action, in opposition to the wishes and in spite of the conspiracies of the magnates, we may conclude that Richard was likewise, as Ralph de Diceto certainly was, a supporter of the house of Anjou. The Pope seems, not perhaps without cause, to have thought himself entitled to some share in the fruits of victory, and he had bestowed the archdeaconry vacated by the bishop's consecration on John of Canterbury, a young clerk who, with Thomas Becket and Roger of Pont l'Evêque, was running the race for preferment in Church and State, and who afterwards, as John "aux blanches mains," was Bishop of Poictiers and Archbishop of Lyons. Richard had, however, before the papal appointment was made, or certainly before it was announced, conferred the post on Ralph de Diceto. Foliot, in the letter referred to, brings this fact in a very determined way to the Pope's notice. The newly made bishop was

Foliot's letter to the pope on Ralph's promotion.

so completely the creation of the Pope that he could scarcely be supposed to claim anything as his own; but as a matter of fact he had bestowed the archdeaconry before he knew the Pope's pleasure concerning it; he was persuaded that it was in ignorance of Ralph's appointment that the Pope had ordered it to be given to John of Canterbury,[1] and if evidence was necessary the Bishop of Lincoln, Robert de Chesnei, a faithful friend of both bishop and archdeacon, and a man whose word could not be disputed, was ready to swear to the fact.[2] The Pope must not put the newly made bishop to shame by overruling the appointment. Nor was the new archdeacon a man to be set aside; he was a man of established character for both probity and learning. The request seems to have been granted, and Ralph retained the archdeaconry. The disappointed competitor found a rich compensation in the treasurership of York, to which he succeeded in 1153 or 1154; and it is interesting to note the way in which our author sets down the several steps of his later preferment,[3] and the friendly way in which he consults him on points of history.

---

[1] "Archidiaconatum enim quem "liberalitate laudabili domino Jo-"hanni Cantuariensi donandum "mandastis, ante concessum alteri "fuisse vestram credimus latere "prudentiam." S. T. C., v. 121.

[2] "Ipse quidem Lincolniensis tes-"tatur et jurare paratus est, domi-"num Londoniensem, antequam "voluntatem vestram aut scripto "aut aliquo referente cognoverit, "prædictum archidiaconatum ma-"gistro Radulfo Diotecensi (so the "MS.), cui et ad doctrinam scientia "et ad honestatem mores exube-"rant, concessisse." S. T. C. v. 121. In another letter to the bishop of London (S. T. C., v. 169, 170), Foliot refers to this or a similar case occurring in 1152 or 1153: "quod "ante susceptas domini papæ lit-"teras in personam omnium testi-"monio idoneam procuratoris bene-"ficium contulisti, ratum manere "desideras."

[3] His consecration is recorded in 1163, vol. i. p. 311; his promotion to Lyons and resignation of that see, vol. ii. p. 120; and his pilgrimage to Canterbury in 1194. The letter on the subject of the precedence of the see of Lyons and John's answer are entered on the first page of the Abbreviationes; see vol. i. pp. 5, 6. Ralph introduces him as putting down a rebellion in Poictou in 1176 (vol. i. p. 407).

This letter throws some light on Ralph's age. He is already "magister," probably not much under the age for ordination as priest. The same word indicates that he had already studied in a university, which could be no other than that of Paris, where we know him to have passed two periods of work.[1] If this were so, we may fairly infer that he himself witnessed the reception of Eugenius III. at S. Genevieve's, in 1146, on the occasion when the Pope's servants were wounded; he may have been in France during the interdict imposed on account of the quarrel at Bourges, and have seen the starting of the second crusade. If we suppose him to be now thirty, he may have been at Paris as early as the year 1140 and have heard with his own ears the teaching of Hugh of S. Victor, which directly or indirectly impressed him so deeply that he not only incorporated one long passage of his writing in the *Abbreviationes*, but introduced an extract from it into the statute book of his cathedral.[2] Whatever may have been the precise limits of his first residence at Paris, it was during that residence that he made the acquaintance of Arnulf of Lisieux, the ambitious, clever prelate whose letters preserve so many interesting notices of the time. In one of these letters Arnulf writes to Ralph as a friend and contemporary, not as we should expect a patron to write to a protegé.[3] The two had

Ralph's residence in the university of Paris.

His friendship with Arnulf of Lisieux.

---

[1] Below, note [3]. Bulæus, Hist. Univ. Paris, ii. 769.

[2] Abbreviationes, vol. i. p. 31. Registrum Statutorum, ed. Simpson, p. 9.

[3] Arnulf. Lexov. ep. 16. The interest of the extract, for the whole letter cannot be here given, may excuse its great length :—" Audivi " te causa studiorum Parisios ad- " venisse, audivi et lætatus sum ; " lætatus equidem ut ejus quem " diligebam præsens me lætificaret " aspectus et jucunda collocutionis " alternæ collatio delectaret. Op- " tabam quoque ut aliqua exhibendi " tibi officii refulgeret occasio, cujus " me dudum merita prævenerunt. " Licet enim solum veritas amicitiæ " requirat affectum, liberale tamen " obsequium non excludit, sed eo " potius illustratur, quoniam ut ait " sanctus ille, 'probatio dilectionis " 'exhibitio est operis.' Movet au- " tem quod cum secundo jam vene- " ris, noluisti ad amicum nec ad " momentum etiam declinare, neque " saltem per cursorem debitæ salu-

Arnulf of Lisieux.

been intimate friends, and had had a common friend, Ralph de Flur, whose early death was a grief to both of them. Arnulf became bishop in 1141; if the friendship were formed whilst Arnulf was a student, we might bring Ralph to Paris long before the death of Hugh of S. Victor, which is said to have occurred in 1141. When Arnulf in 1182 retired from his see, after an episcopate of forty years, he took refuge in a house which he had built within the precincts of the abbey of S. Victor. Likely

---

"tationis alloquium paucis consig-"natum apicibus destinare. Hæsi "diutius, quotiesque ab illis partibus "aliquis apparebat, divinabam quod "ille mihi jucundum Radulfi mei "nuntiaret adventum. Frustratus "toties ex hoc nunc nihil audeo "divinare, sed caritatem tuam duxi "litteris præsentibus, si forte obdor-"mierit, excitandam, aut si quem "forte concepit falsa suspicione "languorem de perseverantiæ meæ "nuntio convalescat; noveris enim "nihil tibi apud me de pristina ca-"ritate perisse, sed quasi duplicatus "amor est, cum eum tibi mea mens "cogatur exsolvere, quem aliquando "duobus impendebat affectum. Sub-"latus siquidem est e medio com-"munis amicus noster Radulfus de "Flur, qui dimidium animæ meæ "videtur moriens abstulisse. Ipsius "mihi semper est colenda memoria, "ipsius amor semper quibuscunque "modis id fieri potuerit instauran-"dus. Duobus autem modis de-"functo vicem amicitiæ judico re-"pendendam, ut primo scilicet piis "apud Deum intercessionibus ad-"juvetur, secundo hi quos ipse di-"lexerat dilectione vicaria diligan-"tur. Inde est quod amor noster "ab illo in te quasi quodam hære-"ditariæ successionis jure transfu-"sus est, ut jam te non simplici sed "duplicato complectar affectu. Tibi "enim præ ceteris hæc est deferenda "successio, quem ille præ ceteris "diligebat, tibique eam quasi quo-"dam testamento specialis amicitiæ "prærogativa consignat. Gere igi-"tur suum amicitiæ morem, certis-"que clarescat indiciis ipsam novas "vires de nova duplicatione trax-"isse. Scribe autem interim ali-"quid ut in alterius utriusque videar "suscepisse sermonem. Injunge "quod vis ut in altero utrique videar "obsequium præstitisse; visita nos "ut possim utriusque personam in "altero contemplari. Scribe, in-"quam, quia si scripseris, hoc ipsum "tibi studii poterit augere materiam, "nec propositi operis provectum "impediet aut proventum. Injunge "aliquid, ut aliqua amicitiæ perse-"verantis argumenta procedant, "quia eam efficacius comprobat "petendi fiducia quam liberalitas "offerendi. Visita nos quia te cum "desiderium nostrum, tum loci pro-"pinquitas, tum etiam solemnitas "invitat. Dominus quoque Wil-"lelmus de Ver ex promissione "tenetur ut veniat, vobisque invi-"cem solatiari poteritis et nobis "sanctæ solemnitatis gaudia dupli-"care. Valete. Ad Radulfum de "Diceto archidiaconum Londonien-"sem."

enough it was there that he and Ralph with him had studied in his youth, after he had learned all that he could learn in his brother's schools at Seez. That Ralph's first residence at Paris cannot have been much earlier than this may be inferred from his silence as to the history of Abelard and the other great men who were teaching at Paris during the few preceding years. He must have been a few years junior to John of Salisbury,[1] who in the Metalogicus furnishes us with an exact list of the masters under whom he himself studied, and who were then in the zenith of their fame. It is true that Ralph wrote so long after that he may not have thought it worth while recording mere scattered reminiscences; but it is perhaps more likely that he was too young at the time of Abelard's death to take much heed of the closing scenes of an eventful history.

Ralph was junior to John of Salisbury.

For the ten years that followed Ralph's promotion to the archdeaconry, we know nothing distinctly of his movements. His notices of the acts of his bishop are, perhaps, a ground for supposing him to have occasionally attended him as a chaplain. In that capacity he may have been present at the consecration of archbishop Roger of York,[2] at the coronation of Henry II.,[3] and at the baptism of the younger Henry, which was performed by the Bishop of London, in 1155.[4] All these events are noted in the Imagines, and are not derived, as the early entries in that work largely are, from the Chronicle of Robert de Monte. After the year 1155, the mention of several events that happened at Paris and in the neighbourhood possibly indicate that this was the period of Ralph's second residence in the great university. The letter of Arnulf of Lisieux, which has been already quoted, is addressed to him as archdeacon, and it was

Possible traces of Ralph in attendance on his bishop.

---

[1] John of Salisbury is said to have been seventy at the time of his death in 1180.

[2] Vol. i. p. 298; Gervase, c. 1376.

[3] Vol. i. p. 299; cf. note 1.

[4] Vol. i. p. 301.

Ralph's second residence in Paris.

very common for newly appointed archdeacons to return to the schools to complete their legal education. Thus Gilbert Foliot had two of his archdeacons at the same time studying law at Bologna.[1] It is not, however, probable that this second visit of Ralph to Paris would be deferred beyond the tenth year of his appointment.

Ralph rector of Aynho.

One other event of our author's life may be placed here. Ralph had acquired the rectory of Aynho, in Northamptonshire, either by the direct gift of one of the Mandevilles, probably Earl Geoffrey II., of Essex, or from the monastery of Walden, which the Mandevilles had founded, and on which they bestowed the patronage of Aynho.[2] Sometime before the year 1164, during the priorate of Prior William, who died in that year,[3] Ralph de Diceto, as parson of Aynho, appointed as his perpetual vicar or curate, Turbert the son of Turbert. No doubt Robert de Chesnei, the Bishop of Lincoln, the intimate friend of Richard of Belmeis, helped in making the arrangement, and certainly instituted Turbert to the vicarage.[4] Evidence of this institution was adduced long after in a trial held to determine who the rightful patron of Aynho was. Besides Aynho,

Rector of Finchingfield.

Ralph held also the living of Finchingfield, in Essex, which he had received either from the Bigods or from the priory of Thetford, of which they were the benefactors. From this also he drew a pension, and served the church by a vicar. But at what date he received Finchingfield there is nothing to show.[5]

---

[1] Richard Foliot, archdeacon of Colchester, and Robert Banastre, archdeacon of Essex; S. T. C., v. 335, 336; probably about 1170. Cf. Spicilegium Liberianum, pp. 610, 618.

[2] Aynho was given to Walden by the founder, Mon. Angl., iv. 141, 149. Earl Geoffrey II. held the earldom from 1144 to 1167.

[3] Hist. Walden., Mon. Angl., iv. 134.

[4] See the document given below, in the Appendix to the Preface of vol. ii., No. II.

[5] Hubert Walter when Archbishop of Canterbury confirmed a pension of forty shillings per annum, granted by the prior of Thetford out of the church of Finchingfield to the abbot

Ralph de Diceto as archdeacon of Middlesex.

The office of archdeacon was no sinecure. Although a spiritual office, conferred by investiture of ring and book,[1] it was concerned chiefly with matters of legal and secular interest, the judicial and pecuniary disputes which in the English Church never abounded more than at the period before us. It was this constant entanglement in temporal business which made the archdeacon, of all clerical officers, the most unpopular with the laity, and which among the more religious of the clergy suggested an important doubt, which John of Salisbury amusingly states in a letter to a newly made archdeacon. Nicolas de Sigillo, a canon of S. Paul's, had been promoted, no doubt by the influence of the Bishop Robert de Sigillo, and had perhaps been disappointed at not being made archdeacon earlier. He had denied that it was possible for an archdeacon to be saved. Yet in 1155 when the archdeaconry of Huntingdon was offered him, he accepted it, and John of Salisbury wrote to congratulate him in a bantering letter, expressing his pleasure that the Bishop of Lincoln had convinced him that salvation was possible for him.[2] Ralph's archdeaconry comprised within its jurisdiction about fifty parishes in Middlesex, three deaneries in Essex, and one deanery in Hertfordshire. That it was the archdeaconry of Middlesex is certain; it was the same archdeaconry that Richard of Belmeis had held, and is specially named by our author himself. Dr. Matthew Hutton, an eminent antiquary of the seventeenth century, who himself held Ralph's living of Aynho,[3] worked

---

and monks of Reading, after the death of the then incumbent Ralph de Diceto. (*E reg. Vet. Eliens. inter archiv. ep. Eliens.*) Blomfield, Hist. Norfolk, i. 448. On these pensions see Hale, Domesday of S. Paul's, pp. xlv., xlvi.

[1] So the archdeacon of Derby was invested, S. T. C., vi. 68.

[2] Joh. Salisb., ep. 166. It is to be feared that Nicolas made his archdeaconry a stepping-stone to still more secular promotion; he acted as a clerk of the Exchequer and a tallager in 1174, Madox, Hist. Exch., p. 485. He farmed the manor of Ardley under the chapter of S. Paul's in 1181. Domesday of S. Paul's, pp. 112, 113.

[3] His argument is given by Newcourt in the Repertorium, vol. i. 34.

Ralph archdeacon of Middlesex.

out the proof of this at considerable length and with much learning. But it is beyond doubt, and wherever Ralph is called archdeacon of London, it is only loosely in reference to the fact that he was one of the four archdeacons of the diocese. The archdeaconry of Middlesex was the third in dignity of the four, coming after those of London and Essex.[1] In the choir of S. Paul's the stall of the archdeacon of Middlesex was the last on the left side.[2] It was not by itself richly endowed; like the archdeaconry of London, which Peter of Blois described as a "draco," that had to live on air, a sort of chameleon, it had very little in the way of revenue to maintain the dignity of the post.[3] A century after Ralph de Diceto held it, it appears as endowed with procurations and synodals,[4] but it is by no means certain that it possessed these resources in his time. The revenue from his livings, or from his prebend, if he held one, must have been his chief provision. Richard of Belmeis was not able to do much for him.

Troubles of Richard of Belmeis.

The poor bishop never overcame the difficulties which he had to encounter immediately on his promotion. Although he ruled the diocese of London for ten years, he never got out of debt.[5] His judicial sentences were constantly appealed against, his rights of patronage infringed, and his supremacy in the chapter disputed. One great quarrel was with Master Henry of London, the librarian and master of the schools of S. Paul's, who claimed the archdeaconry of Colchester.[6] Archdeacon Nicolas of London was somehow ousted from his archdeaconry, and although his conduct in office had been just and moderate, and his competitor had no real claim

---

[1] Statutes of S. Paul's, p. 20.

[2] Ibid, p. 25.

[3] Cf. Statutes, &c., p. 21.

[4] "Ultimo est archidiaconus Mid- "delsexiæ, cujus victus in procura- "tione consistit." Statutes, p. 25.

[5] Joh. Salisb., ep. 7; S. T. C., v. 158.

[6] On this obscure matter, the date of which is difficult to determine, see Joh. Salisb., ep. 35.

to it, the bishop failed to set matters straight, and he had recourse, through Foliot, to the Pope for redress.[1] Some dozen letters of John of Salisbury preserve the memory of appeals from the bishop's tribunal to Archbishop Theobald, or to the Pope.[2] The same writer, who acted as secretary to Archbishop Theobald, tells the Pope on one occasion that he has had to invest a certain clerk, named Hugh, contrary to the will of the bishop, with a prebendal stall at S. Paul's;[3] possibly that Hugh de Marinis, or Hugh de Marney, who succeeded Ralph of Langford as dean. To complete his misfortunes, the bishop became a paralytic,[4] and when, about the year 1160, his brother Ralph of Langford died, he was no longer considered fit to manage his own affairs, and the state of his affairs was so bad that he had great difficulty in finding agents to manage them.[5] Robert de Chesnei, Bishop of Lincoln, and Gilbert Foliot, of Hereford, his relation, who, perhaps, had an eye to the succession, did their best for him; they compelled the new dean, Hugh, and Nicolas, the archdeacon, to undertake the administration of his property, and they, after his death, had to maintain tedious proceedings at law against his creditors. In all this we hear nothing of Ralph de Diceto. No judgments of our archdeacon are impugned in the archiepiscopal court; he is not mentioned as one of the stewards of the poor bishop's property. He seems, as we shall see, even to have lost or missed his chance of obtaining a prebendal stall

His legal decisions disputed.

The bishop is paralyzed.

---

[1] It is not clear whether the letter in question (S. T. C., v. 151) is addressed to Adrian IV. or to Alexander III. Foliot, however, writes in favour of the archdeacon Nicolas, who "absens et innoxius "archidiaconatu quem et juste possidebat et ministrabat sobrie, "nulla juris aut ordinis observatione "spoliatus est." Nicolas had applied to his bishop for redress, but failed to obtain it; but he was in full possession before the bishop's death.

[2] See especially letters 10, 11, 13, 18, 22, 39, 58, 87, 117, 118, 132.

[3] Joh. Salisb., ep. 36.

[4] *Imagines*, vol. i. p. 304.

[5] S. T. C., v. 158, 180.

Ralph at Paris.

in the cathedral, and when we find him next it is in Paris. We may, I think, infer that he had spent a considerable part of these years in study there.

Richard of Belmeis died on the 4th of May 1162,[1] three weeks before the election of Thomas Becket to the primacy. It was not then he, but Gilbert Foliot, his successor, whom the biographers of S. Thomas represent by anticipation as Bishop of London, that singly opposed the election of Becket, if any such opposition were offered.[2] Ralph had perhaps returned to England to attend the deathbed of his patron, or was summoned to the chapter that elected his successor. Anyhow, he was employed as the agent of the canons in procuring the confirmation of their choice. It was not a simple matter. Since the conquest no bishop in England proper had been translated from the see of his consecration except to one of the two metropolitan sees. Before the conquest there were one or two questionable instances, and since the conquest Bishop Hervey of Bangor had been transferred from a Welsh see to an English one; but the "postulation" of Foliot, involving his translation from Hereford to London, was regarded as exceptional, and as requiring special confirmation by the Pope. Fortunately, Alexander III. was at Paris. Ralph de Diceto knew Parisian ways. Furnished with letters from the king, from Becket, and from his fellow canons, he laid the matter before the Pope,[3] and was listened to. London, it was pleaded, was an exceptionally important place; Gilbert Foliot, and this was equally true, was an exceptionally able man. The king required his services; even

Employed in negotiating the translation of Foliot.

[1] Vol. i. p. 306.

[2] Grim, S. T. C., i. 15; Rog. Pontigny, S. T. C., i. 107. "Mentiuntur plane qui dicunt Londoniensem electioni Thomæ archiepiscopi restitisse, quia sedes illa Londoniæ scilicet illis diebus vacavit et postea usque ad Nativitatem Domini." Gervase, c. 1383.

[3] "Ex relatione dilecti filii nostri Radulfi ecclesiæ vestræ archidiaconi accepimus quod idem rex desiderat plurimum, &c." Imagines, vol. i. p. 309; S. T. C., v. 193, 194.

Becket pleaded for him, an act which caused him bitter remorse afterwards, when he saw that he had helped to raise the man who was to overthrow him. Ralph very briefly notes the dates of the transaction; it is from the papal letter of confirmation that we learn that he had himself negotiated. The postulation was made, it would seem, on the 6th of March;[1] on the 19th the Pope wrote to Foliot that he had approved of the translation,[2] and on the 28th of April, all the preliminaries being completed, the new bishop, "in accordance with the desire of the "whole chapter, was solemnly introduced into his see."[3]

Translation of Foliot.

The fortunes of Ralph de Diceto had suffered from the embarrassments and incapacity of his patron. He seems to have run a risk of losing his prebend. But he had an old friend in the new bishop, who no doubt felt under some obligation towards him for the way in which he had helped on the translation. An early letter of Gilbert Foliot, written to the king soon after he became bishop of London, shows that our archdeacon required powerful aid.[4] He is introduced, curiously enough, to Henry II.,

Ralph favoured by Foliot.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 309.

[2] S. T. C., v. 194.

[3] Vol. i. p. 309.

[4] "Domino regi dominus Londo- "niensis salutem et devotum debitæ "fidelitatis obsequium. Vestra, "domine, dignos speramus gratia "quos in ecclesia Dei et litteratura "commendat et vita. Inde est quod "apud excellentiam vestram cleri- "cum nostrum beati Pauli archi- "diaconum, Radulfum de Diceto, eo "securius commendamus, quod ei "et scientiam ad doctrinam et ad "honestatem mores exuberare jam- "diu experientia rerum certa cog- "novimus. Accedit ad hoc amor "integer et affectionis erga vos "plena devotio, ut vos ulnis carita- "tis corde complectens honori ves- "tro gloriæque congratulans felices "vobis in Domino successus semper "exoptet, et sibi commissos, ut a "summo rege vobis id impetrent "cum se præstat opportunitas, in- "desinenter admoneat. Quem in "oborta sibi necessitate recurren- "tem ad vos, nilque nisi quod juri "debetur et æquitati postulantem, "cordis intimo supplicamus affectu "quatenus ob Dei reverentiam nos- "træque petitionis et honestatis "ejus, et exhibitæ vobis et semper "exhibendæ fidelitatis, intuitu, cle- "menter exaudiatis, et ut præbendæ "suæ portio, quam sibi et aposto- "lica et regia vestra concedit et "confirmat auctoritas, ipsi in in- "tegrum restituatur, juxta datam "vobis a Domino sapientiam, tam "juste quam misericorditer efficia- "tis." S. T. C., vi. p. 1.

His introduction to the king.

in nearly the same formula as that in which ten years before Foliot had recommended him to the Pope; "eo "securius commendamus quod ei et scientiam ad doc-"trinam, et ad honestatem mores exuberare jamdiu "experientia rerum certa cognovimus." But to this general recommendation the writer adds one which was perhaps more potent, his entire love and full devotion of affection towards the royal person. The special prayer of the letter is that the king would help Ralph in his great necessity; that the portion of his prebend, granted to him and confirmed by apostolic and royal authority, may be restored to him in its integrity. What this prebend was we are not told, and the records of S. Paul's do not, so far as I can discover, tell what stall Ralph de Diceto held before he became dean, when he likewise became prebendary of Tottenhale. It is possible that the person instituted by Archbishop Theobald, as John of Salisbury has recorded, ousted Ralph from his prebendal stall; or he may by non-residence during his stay at Paris have disqualified himself for retaining it. We are not told that he recovered it. Another letter of Foliot, the address of which is lost, probably refers to a similar disappointment; in it the bishop prays the person to whom he writes to give up "to our archdeacon R. who "has been so long our clerk and friend, the church of "S. John which we have heard was granted to him by "Lambert."[1] The letter of introduction to the king had,

He is in danger of losing his prebend.

[1] "Inde est quod dilectionem ves-"tram . . . . rogamus quatenus R. "archidiacono jamdudum clerico et "amico nostro, ecclesiam Sancti "Johannis quam sibi a Lamberto "cessam esse accepimus, conceda-"tis." S. T. C., vi. 36, 37. The following table of the archdeacons of the church of London will show that for a great part of Ralph's tenure of office he was the only person who could be described as "R. "archidiaconus;" but it may be added that the title of Essex or Colchester is generally given to the holders of those two archdeaconries, so that really the only two between which confusion was likely to arise were London and Middlesex:—

Archdeacons of London.—William, 1148 (Hist. Pont. Pertz, xx. 532); subscr. 1150; archdeacon at the

however it may have answered its immediate purpose, the effect of making Ralph personally known to Henry. From this point of time he is found occasionally about the court or taking part in public affairs, although he never, so far as we know, became a chaplain or official clerk of the king. We get two or three glimpses of him during the Becket struggle.

Ralph during the Becket struggle.

His position during that stormy period must have been very trying. His bishop, from whom he had received distinct marks of confidence and regard, was the chief enemy of Becket in the episcopal body,—the "archisynagogus" whose skill and learning were made to conduct the king's defence in the memorable dispute. Ralph's devotion to the king, which is attested not only by Foliot's assertion but by the general tone of his writings, drew him the same way. But Becket had been a canon of his own cathedral,[1] and no doubt had attached to himself the partisans of the now reigning house by his faithful service before he was made archbishop; and

---

time of the election in 1152, S. T. C., v. 184. Nicolas, in office before the death of Richard of Belmeis, S. T. C., v. 158; as early as 1160; when he attests a grant to Walter Durdent, Bishop of Coventry; in 1181 (Domesd. of S. Paul's). Peter of Blois, appointed before 1192.

Archdeacons of Middlesex.—Roger, ob. cir. 1127. Hugh, as administrator for Richard of Belmeis, 1127-1138. Richard of Belmeis, 1138-1152. Ralph de Diceto, 1152-1180. Gilbert archdeacon in 1192.

Archdeacons of Essex.—Richard [Ruffus], 1142, 1150, 1162. Robert Banastre, 1168, 1192, 1194; educated at Bologna, S. T. C., v. 336.

Archdeacons of Colchester.—Ailward, 1150. Henry of London claimant between 1152 and 1162. William archdeacon in 1162, S. T. C., iv. 37. Richard Foliot archdeacon about 1168 and 1170; at Bologna, S. T. C., v. 308, 309; nephew of Gilbert Foliot, ib. 319, 353. Ralph de Alta Ripa, archdeacon, 1186, 1189; a Crusader at Acre.

I have remarked above that I cannot be certain whether Ailward or William in 1150 was archdeacon of London. Archdeacon Hale, however, agreed with this arrangement, Statutes of S. Paul's, p. 173.

[1] According to Newcourt's list he held the prebend of Reculverland: that he was a canon of S. Paul's is probably implied in our author's words, vol. i. p. 300.

Ralph's caution in the Becket dispute.

Ralph had too much learning and too much ecclesiastical feeling not to apprehend great mischief from the threatened downfall of the primate. That he was very cautious we may be sure; for there is an almost total silence in his writings as to the politico-ecclesiastical side of the contest. Yet his memorials were not drawn up until long after the martyrdom and canonization had tuned all voices to the praises of S. Thomas of Canterbury. If, like the rest of the religious people of England at the time, he sympathized more or less with the archbishop, he loved the king and respected Foliot. We are not, however, to suppose that such devotion as he showed to the martyr was of a posthumous sort only. William FitzStephen, the biographer of Becket, telling the story of the council of Northampton in October 1164, the great council in which Becket was tried and from which he fled, sets Ralph de Diceto for once before us as a distinct personality. It was on the sixth day of the council, when Becket had resolved to carry his cross into the king's presence, at once proclaiming his distrust of his own safety and declaring himself a candidate for martyrdom. Resisting the arguments of the bishops, he persisted in his resolution and called forth from Foliot the bitter sneer "a fool he was ever, and a fool he will "ever be."[1] Herbert of Bosham suggested that Becket should be ready to pronounce the sentence of excommunication in case anyone laid hands on him. The biographer himself interposed; "Be it far from him; "not so did the holy apostles and martyrs of God when "they were taken and carried away to death; rather, if "this befall him, let him pray and pardon, and in "patience possess his soul." He proceeded further to urge patience, and moved two of the company to tears. John Planeta hearing these words laboured to restrain his rising tears; likewise Ralph de Diceto, the

His appearance at the council of Northampton.

[1] W. FitzStephen, S. T. C., i. 225.

archdeacon, afterwards dean of London, wept there very much on that day.[1] William FitzStephen was no doubt a friend of Ralph's; they seem to have been in full sympathy on the occasion, and afterwards we find them telling the story of the martyrdom in words so similar that it is clear that they must have compared notes upon it. Patience was the safest and soundest course; the tears were both sincere and politic. If Ralph as a patriotic churchman had much cause for weeping, as archdeacon of Middlesex, he had much occasion for anxious silence. It could have required no great penetration to see that the breach between Becket and Foliot, if not that between Becket and the king, was now become irreparable, and that henceforth, both in public and in private, a wise man must be cautious and reticent. Such, however he was actuated, was the course that he maintained, and by it he seems to have gained reputation as a discreet and temperate man.

Ralph at Northampton.

So high at this time stood his character for learning and prudence, that in 1166, after Becket, in the might of his newly acquired legation, fulminated his sentence of excommunication against the king's friends, Ralph was consulted by the astute and experienced minister Richard of Ilchester, as to the way in which the sentence was to be respected. He has preserved his own answer, shrouding himself in the Imagines, under the term "Amicus," but in the "Series Causæ" acknowledging it as his work.[2] It is a very cautious production; the

Ralph is consulted by Richard of Ilchester on the validity of Becket's sentence.

[1] "Johannes Planeta hæc audiens "lacrymas erumpentes laborabat "retinere. Similiter et Radulfus "de Diceto archidiaconus Londo-"niensis postea decanus, plurimum "ea die ibi lacrymatus est." S. T. C., i. 227. This was written then after the year 1180.

[2] Vol. i. p. 319; vol. ii. p. 282. In the note at p. 319 I have said that the letter was possibly written by our author, but the statement in the "Series Causæ" makes it certain, "Radulfo scilicet de Diceto." In one or two other places further consideration has enabled me to turn conjecture into affirmation see especially vol. i. p. 309, note 3, and p. 321, note 4.

His letter to Richard of Ilchester.

minister is warned that Becket's voluntary exile has not deprived him of his spiritual authority, and that Richard's position as archdeacon of Poictiers did not exempt him from the obedience which, as a native of the diocese of Bath,[1] he owed to the primate of the English church. Nothing could be gained by contemning the sentence, nothing could be lost by respecting it. Such a curse could be valid only against the guilty; Christian humility and public policy alike dictated obedience. It is probable that Richard submitted to the sentence in accordance with this advice, as Gilbert Foliot himself did under like circumstances in 1169. The calm and conciliatory tone of the letter perhaps suggested the employment of Ralph de Diceto as a mediator, or at least as a messenger, between the bishops who adhered to the king and the angry archbishop.

Ralph goes as messenger to Becket.

Becket became legate on the 24th of April 1166; his excommunication of the ministers was proclaimed at Vezelai, according to Ralph de Diceto,[2] writing long afterwards, on Ascension Day; according to the better authority of John of Salisbury, who wrote at the time, on Whitsunday, the 12th of June.[3] The English bishops who had, from the moment they heard of the issue of the legatine commission, been in dread of having the same sentence issued against themselves, met at London on Midsummer Day, and appealed to the Pope against the threatened excommunication. They also drew up a long letter in which they announced to Becket the fact

[1] The right of the church of Canterbury to sanction or forbid the promotion of Englishmen in foreign churches appears in the negotiation for the promotion of John of Salisbury to the bishopric of Chartres; see vol. i. p. 411.

[2] Vol. i. p. 318.

[3] Joh. Salisb., ep. 145. I follow Canon Robertson's arrangement of these details. There is a graphic letter in S. T. C., iv. 225–227, describing the presentation of the letters of legation by Berengar to the priest officiating at high mass at S. Paul's on Ascension Day. The archdeacon Nicolas was present; but as nothing is said about Ralph we may presume that he was not.

of their appeal and the date assigned for it, Ascension Day in the following year.[1] The letter was entrusted to Ralph, who was, besides his personal qualifications, archdeacon to Foliot, who drew up the letter. The king had been abroad since the preceding March, and Ralph was no doubt instructed to maintain a direct communication with the court. The letter was one of spirited and urgent but still temperate remonstrance: the suffragans prayed their chief to exhibit the prudence, humility, and pastoral carefulness, which are the greatest virtues of a prelate. The king, he was told, was ready to do justice, and in all points of dispute between himself and the archbishop, to abide by the judgment of the Church of England. The archdeacon delivered the letter, but whether at Pontigny, where Becket seems to have resided for some weeks after the excommunications, or at S. Colombe at Sens, whither he removed after the king in September had urged the Cistertian chapter to force him away from Pontigny, we cannot determine. The archbishop returned an answer which is at once scornful, argumentative, and sanctimonious.[2] The reference which it contains to the bearer of the letter of the suffragans is slight enough; but Ralph seems to be treated to a full share of the contempt that Becket so liberally bestowed on his opponents: "from your letters "which I have received through your archdeacon I have "gathered thus much, for I could not expect to gather "grapes of thorns or figs of thistles."[3] The archdeacon does not seem to have prided himself on the reception he met with, for in his abridgment of the primate's

He carries a letter from the bishops.

Becket's mention of Ralph.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 323. The letter is given more fully in Hoveden, i. 262; S. T. C., vi. 185. It is identified as the letter described by John of Salisbury in his epistle 184, by the extracts which he gives.

[2] Vol. i. p. 323; Hoveden, i. 256; S. T. C., iii. 283.

[3] "Sed de litteris tuis quas per "archidiaconum tuum destinatas "accepi, talia collegi; neque enim "de spinis uvas aut ficus de tribulis "colligere potui." S. T. C., iii. 283.

He carries a message from the king to Foliot.

answer, he omits all reference to himself as conducting the negotiation. John of Salisbury, in a letter to Bishop Bartholomew of Exeter, mentions him as bearing an epistle from the king to Foliot, in which Henry committed himself, his whole kingdom and his cause, to the Bishop of London as his most faithful friend, and ordered his officials to obey him in all things.[1] This letter seems to prove, if it were necessary, that Ralph de Diceto was the archdeacon who carried the letter to Becket, and that he had returned by the way of the royal court. He does not appear again in these negotiations, but his relations with Foliot gave him the opportunity of learning all that took place; he watched them with care, and although his Imagines were probably not put in their present form until several years after the events, and thus his descriptions have none of the exactness and vividness that might have been expected if they had been written whilst the recollection was fresh, they are, coming from the hand of a careful and by no means partial eye-witness, an invaluable addition to the letters and lives of Saint Thomas of Canterbury.

Business of Foliot's absolution.

One or two notes of Bishop Foliot's movements during the remaining years of the controversy occur in the Imagines, and show that Ralph, if not in his company, received exact information from him. In the spring of 1169 Foliot was in anticipation of an immediate sentence of anathema to be directed against himself by name. The king had received a letter from Alexander III., dated in the preceding June,[2] and telling him that the archbishop was no longer forbidden to excommunicate; there was no doubt that the Bishop of London would be

[1] "Scripsit ei nuper dominus rex "per Radulfum Dicetensem archi- "diaconum suum, quod se, totum "regnum suum, et causam quæ inter "eum et ecclesiam vertitur, ipsius "tanquam patris et fidelissimi amici, "committit arbitrio, et præcepit ut "sui officiales ei in omnibus usque- "quaque obediant." Joh. Salisb., ep. 184.

[2] Vol. i. p. 332; S. T. C., iv. 130.

the first object of attack, and accordingly on the 18th of March he called together the clergy and people of London at S. Paul's and solemnly appealed to the Pope.[1] The appeal did not stay the sentence which Becket pronounced on Palm Sunday at Clairvaux.[2] At Michaelmas Foliot started for Rome to prosecute his appeal. In dread of treachery he chose the longer route, and instead of proceeding through Burgundy, the ordinary road followed as of old by English travellers, he went through Guienne and Provence and across the Alps to Milan.[3] He reached Milan in the spring of 1170, and there he received letters dated February 14th, in which the Pope told him that he had directed the Archbishop of Rouen and the Bishop of Exeter to absolve him. [4]Cheered by the news he returned at full speed to the north and reached Rouen in time to be absolved on Palm Sunday, March 29.[5] Most of these dates are recorded in the Imagines, and this might lead us to suppose that the author went with the bishop; but we find from the letters of Master David, a canon of S. Paul's, whose literary remains were a few years ago published in the Spicilegium Liberianum,[6] that Foliot had employed other officers in his negotiation with the Pope. David had himself been one of the messengers. In a letter addressed to him, bidding him wait at Rouen, the bishop announces his arrival at Milan in nearly the same words as those used in the Imagines, and states that the king had communicated with him through Nicolas, the archdeacon of London.[7] This being the case, it seems more probable that Ralph was left at home to manage the diocese and that his

His solemn appeal.

His journey to Italy.

His return and absolution.

Master David

---

[1] S. T. C., vi. 218; R. Diceto, i. 333.

[2] Vol. i. p. 333.

[3] Vol. i. p. 337; Joh. Salisb., ep. 293; Spicilegium Liberianum, p. 642.

[4] Vol. i. p. 337; S. T. C., iv. 93.

[5] Vol. i. p. 338.

[6] "Quiete et prospere ad Sanctum "Ambrosium devenientes," Spicileg. Liberian., p. 644. Compare the words of Ralph, vol. i. p. 337: "veniens ad Sanctum Ambrosium."

[7] Spicileg. Liberian., p. 644.

precise details of the bishop's movements were derived from similar letters addressed to himself.

Coronation of the younger king, and murder of Becket.

The security obtained for Foliot by the absolution was destined to be short lived. In the following June the coronation of the younger Henry involved him in new difficulties. One of Becket's first acts on his return was to declare the Bishop of London excommunicate under papal letters;[1] and his refusal to withdraw the sentence except on terms of abject submission was one of the points of his altercation with his murderers. The murder of Becket left the hostile bishops in greater danger than they had ever been before, but the Pope was not implacable. The sentence of anathema issued on account of his participation in the coronation was withdrawn, and the bishop, on undertaking to abide by the Pope's judgment, was absolved from that part of his guilt by the Bishops of Nevers and Beauvais, at Chaumont, near Gisors, in August 1171.[2] But he was not yet restored to the exercise of his episcopal functions; before that could be done he had to purge himself of all complicity in the death of Becket. He was not disposed to take another journey to Rome, and alleging ill-health as a cause, sent one of his archdeacons and two clerks, named Richard and Hugh, to perform the ceremony as his representatives.[3] That done, the Pope wrote on the 27th of February 1172 to the Archbishop

Foliot absolved from his guilt in the coronation.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 341.

[2] Vol. i. p. 347. The papal letters were directed to the Archbishop of Bourges and the Bishop of Nevers, April 24, S. T. C., vi. 59; Bened. i. 23. Bishops of Nevers and Beauvais and the abbot of Pontigny performed the absolution.

[3] The Pope writes from Tusculum, Feb. 27, 1172: "Sane cum nulli "apparuissent qui vellent eos impetere, et prædictus Londoniensis, "obstante sibi debilitate corporis, "ad tantum laborem suscipiendum "non esset sufficiens, et in via plurima discrimina et pericula immi"nerent, dilectos filios nostros R. "archidiaconum suum et magistrum "Ricardum et magistrum Hugo"nem clericos ejus ad præsentiam "nostram transmisit, ut pro se co"ram nobis purgationem præsta"rent." S. T. C., iv. 68.

of Rouen, giving him leave to receive the bishop's personal purgation and to rehabilitate him; and this was done on the 1st of May at Aumâle.[1] In this negotiation we are again tempted to trace the hand of Ralph. The archdeacon who was employed is denoted by the initial "R."; but as it is probable that both Richard Foliot, archdeacon of Colchester, and Robert Banastre, archdeacon of Essex, were studying at the time at Bologna, one of these was more probably the bishop's agent on the occasion. Master David also was again employed. With the restitution at Aumâle Foliot's troubles ceased, and the remaining years of his episcopate were peaceful.

Restored to his episcopal functions.

For several years we have no data that would enable us to trace our author's occupation, except one or two matters of archidiaconal business in which a glimpse of him may be caught. In the Chronicle of Walden Abbey we find him authorizing the exemption of the chapel which the Earl of Essex had built at Pleshey from the jurisdiction of the archdeacon and his officials.[2] On another occasion he appears more jealous of his official rights; a letter of Foliot's exhibits him struggling for his rightful jurisdiction over the church of S. Margaret,

Archidiaconal acts of Ralph de Diceto.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 351. The Archbishop of Rouen and the Bishop of Amiens officiated.

[2] MS. Arundel 29, fo. 6; Fundatio Walden., lib. ii. c. 3: "Præter "hæc concessimus ut capella cum "cimiterio apud Plessetum, quam "ipse ædificaverat, dedicaretur, quia "longe erat ecclesia matrix de "Estra, difficilis vero et longa, "maxime tempore hyemali corpora "mortuorum ad sepeliendum feren- "tibus, via. Remansit autem ad "servitium ejusdem capellæ tota "decimatio cum obventionibus ha- "bitantium in Plesseto, cum decima "insuper duarum virgatarum de "Berewik Granciæ videlicet Ples- "seto propinquioris, quæ ad eccle- "siam de Estra usque ad illum "tempus pertinebat. In dedica- "tione autem illa, multis coram "astantibus, episcopo insuper Gile- "berto ordinante, Radulfo etiam de "Disceto archidiacono Middlesexiæ "assensum præbente, statutum est "ut capella jam dicta omnino sit "libera, neque archidiacono, neque "ejus officialibus teneatur respon- "dere; crisma autem ad baptismum "et oleum infirmorum de matrice "ecclesia, Estra scilicet, accipere "ei concessum est." See also Newcourt, Rep. Lond., i. 34.

Archi-diaconal acts of Ralph.

Westminster, in opposition to Abbot Laurence.[1] The church of Bulmer, in Essex, was the subject of another dispute between Walter of Bulmer, a clerk, and Ralph de Hauterive, a canon of S. Paul's, master of the schools and afterwards archdeacon. In this Ralph had an interest, and joined in an agreement referring it to the bishop for arbitration on the 4th of December 1178.[2] If we attempt to trace him in public affairs during the same period, it is only by following the proceedings of Foliot or observing the occasions on which, like any other archdeacon, he would be summoned to ecclesiastical assemblies. Possibly he witnessed the election and consecration of the bishops when he records the dates and circumstances of the ceremony. He was no doubt present when Archbishop Richard visited S. Paul's on the 24th of October 1174;[3] probably he attended the court in 1177, when

---

[1] "Ecclesiam quippe Sanctæ "Margaretæ, super qua recens "hæc est orta dissensio, a primis "suis fundamentis usque ad dies "hos episcopis Londoniensibus et "eorum archidiaconis sine contra- "dictione et reclamatione fuisse "subjectam, consonum totius undi- "que viciniæ testimonium clamet; "et hanc meo quoque tempore R. "archidiacono debitum et consue- "tum cathedraticum exsolvisse in "illis fere partibus nullus ignorat." S. T. C., v. 363. Laurence was abbot 1160–1176.

[2] "Composition or award made "by Gilbert Bishop of London in "the presence of Robert Bishop of "Hereford, in 1178, for settlement "of the controversy between the "churches of Bulemere and Brun- "don, moved against Ralph de "Hauterive by Walter de Bulemere, "clerk, an' his accomplices, and "referred to the said bishop by "common consent of all claiming "rights in the said church of Bule- "mere, viz., Ralph de Disceto, arch- "deacon of London; Gilbert Geld- "ham, dean; and the aforesaid "Walter; and also John Le Manant, "knight, patron of the church of "Brundone, and the said Ralph de "Hauterive, the parson of the said "church. At S. Paul's, London, "4 non. Dec. Witnesses, Robert, "Bishop of Hereford; Hugh, dean "of S. Paul's; Richard, archdeacon "of Colchester; Henry of North- "ampton, Richard Stortford, Gil- "bert Foliot, canons of S. Paul's; "Ralph Foliot, canon of Hereford; "Roger FitzMaurice, and others." Charters of the duchy of Lancaster, 35, Report of the Deputy Keeper, App. p. 29. Bulmere is in Essex, but in the old archdeaconry of Middlesex. Newcourt, ii. 99, 103.

[3] Vol. i. p. 395.

many deans and archdeacons were summoned to hear the award between the kings of Castille and Navarre, of which he preserves an imperfect record.[1] But he tells us nothing about himself; his omission to notice the great disturbances which took place in London in 1177[2] indicates either that he was absent or that he wrote after the importance of the matter was forgotten. In this obscurity the career of Master David affords a ray of light, and shows us that nearly thirty years after his first appointment at S. Paul's his position was not so secure as might have been expected.

His silence about himself.

Master David, whom we have seen employed as Foliot's envoy[3] on two occasions in Italy, was an ambitious and a needy man. He called himself David of London, and was perhaps prebendary of Brownswood.[4] He had studied with profit at Clermont, at Paris, and at Bologna. On one occasion we find him applying to Dean Hugh and the Chapter for leave of non-residence.[5] Foliot, who seems to have been his first patron, had a high opinion of his character and attainments,[6] and he was on very friendly terms with Robert Foliot, the Bishop of Hereford, a kinsman of Gilbert, and with Roger, the Bishop of Worcester, the king's cousin. He was resident at Bologna when the two archdeacons were reading there,[7] and acted in the business of his patron's

Account of Master David.

[1] R. de Dic., i. 418; Benedict, i. 145: "Venerunt etiam illuc tot ab-"bates, tot decani, tot archidiaconi "quot sub numero non cadebant."

[2] Benedict, i. 155. Another reason for omitting to mention these transactions may have been that the Bucquints, who were implicated in them, were tenants of the chapter of S. Paul's. Humfrey Buccuinte was farmer of Kensworth. (MS. Hutton, 6956, p. 158.)

[3] Above, pp. xlvii., xlix. Compare S.T.C., iv. 62, 94.

[4] If he was either, Newcourt has confounded him with another person called Brand, or his name was David Brand. See Newcourt's list of the prebendaries of Brownswood. Archdeacon Hale (Domesday, &c., p. cxviii.) seems to doubt whether he was a canon: anyhow he had a demesne at Willesdon; *ib.* p. 152.

[5] Spicileg. Liberian., pp. 603–606.

[6] S. T. C., vi. 34.

[7] Spicil. Lib., p. 610, "Adventan-"tibus Boloniam dominis meis archi-"diacono et nepotibus domini mei "latus factus sum." Cf. S. T. C., iv. 68.

David at Bologna.

absolution both in 1169 and in 1171. At Bologna apparently he got into debt, and in trying to extricate himself, showed himself ungrateful and greedy. After a long series of self commendatory begging letters, he went to seek his fortune at Rome. Foliot had done for him what he could, and had perhaps held out the hopes of succession to an archdeaconry when one should be vacant. He had certainly assigned him a pension of ten pounds on the archdeaconry of Middlesex, and for more than two years Ralph de Diceto, as archdeacon, had continued to pay it. Then he quarrelled with his friends. The dean Hugh was an old man, and a vacancy might be expected any day in the chief dignity of the church.[1] For that dignity there can be little question that Ralph de Diceto had long been marked out; it was an elective office, and he had been for nearly thirty years a member of the Chapter; he was the depository of all the traditions of the church, and no doubt had much personal influence, if not also, as might be suspected, a family influence in the cathedral body. The news that Master David, fortified with letters from the Bishops of Hereford and Worcester,[2] was

He aims at the deanery.

[1] Foliot writes to the Bishop of Worcester: "Arma sumit adver- "sum nos familiaris vir et quon- "dam domesticus noster, magister "ille David, et quem laudum titu- "lis extulimus, quem beneficiis ho- "noravimus, quem sperabamus ami- "cissimum, non solum experimur "ingratum sed etiam infestissimum. "Hic cupidæ mentis injecit oculos "in præcipuam ecclesiæ nostræ "dignitatem, et ut eam nobis in- "vitis obtineat ad dominum papam "iter parat, ut ejus auctoritate nos "lædat et ipsum circumveniendo, "quod nostri juris est non violen- "ter solum sed impudenter extor- "queat." He had applied for letters to the Bishops of Worcester and Hereford. Spicil. Liber., p. 641.

[2] The Bishop of Worcester writes thus to the Pope: Master David of London is a devout, faithful, and learned man; the Bishop of London, "considerata mediocritate immo "parvitate redditus sui, et viri ho- "nestate et litteratura, ei decem "libras argenti in archidiaconatu "Middelsexiæ annuatim percipien- "das assignavit, donec eidem in "pari vel ampliori beneficio eccle- "siastico provideatur; quod et "carta sua quam inspeximus con- "firmavit, et litteris a sigillo depen- "dentibus, ut memorato magistro "David solveret præfatas libras

on his way to Rome to secure the papal nomination to the deanery, may well have disgusted both bishop and archdeacon. Ralph stopped Master David's pension, and the bishop wrote letters to oppose him. This proceeding seems to have nipped Master David's ambition in the bud. The last we hear of him is in a letter from the Bishop of Worcester to the Pope praying that, now that Bishop Foliot has admitted him again to favour, the archdeacon may be ordered to resume payment of the pension until David could be provided with a benefice of the same value. This correspondence must have taken place before 1179, in which year Bishop Roger died. In 1180 the deanery was vacated and Ralph de Diceto was elected to fill it.

Opposition of Ralph and the bishop.

Ralph becomes dean of S. Paul's.

Although as a rule promotion was slow except for servants of the court, Ralph de Diceto must have seen himself outstripped in the race for preferment by many who had started with him. Thomas Becket, his junior probably in the capitular body, had long ago reached

"decem, R. archidiacono Middel-"sexiensi præcepit. Qui de man-"dato ei per biennium continuum "et infra terminis statutis persol-"vit. Ortis autem quibusdam con-"troversiis inter jam dictos, epis-"copum et archidiaconum et "magistrum David, episcopus et "archidiaconus arbitrium commu-"taverunt, ut quod archidiaconus "in magistro David solvere con-"suevit deinde episcopo persolve-"ret." The archdeacon had accordingly stopped payment. Now, however, the bishop had restored David to his favour, but as his pecuniary position was precarious, the bishop of Worcester prays the Pope to order Foliot to assign him ten pounds a year from the first vacant benefice: "interim "vero, donec vacaverit beneficium "in quo sufficienter decem libræ "ei recompensentur, districte præ-"cipiatis prædicto archidiacono, "ut illas de archidiaconatu in quo "ei constat fuisse assignatas, abs-"que vexationis molestia persolvat. "In hujus ergo interventus pro viro "digno exhibiti exauditione, expe-"riatur nostræ parvitatis devotio, "pater reverende, consuetæ benig-"nitatis affectum; et ne tanti viri "labores alicujus tergiversatione "deludantur, in severitate et dis-"trictione mandati præcipiatis præ-"nominato archidiacono, ut decem "libras quas magistro David sol-"vere consuevit, occasione et ap-"pellatione cessante integre per-"solvat." Spicil. Liber., pp. 757, 758.

Ralph's early friends promoted before him.

the honours not only of the primacy but of martyrdom and canonization. John of Canterbury, his competitor for the archdeaconry, had been for nearly twenty years a bishop, and was shortly to be chosen to fill the half-independent see of Lyons. Richard of Ilchester, his friend, had become in 1174 Bishop of Winchester, and Robert Foliot, archdeacon of Oxford, with whom he had been long associated under Bishop Gilbert, had become the same year Bishop of Hereford. Of his Parisian acquaintance, Robert of Melun had been made a bishop in 1163; and Adam, the canon of Notre Dame, who had been associated also with John of Salisbury, had been, in 1175, promoted to the see of S. Asaph. A new generation and school was springing up round him in his own cathedral, but there were

Remaining friends in the chapter.

still with him William de Vere, the early friend and fellow student, William of Northall, the archdeacon of Gloucester and residentiary of S. Paul's; Paris, the archdeacon of Rochester, nephew of the great Robert Pullus, and himself closely associated with the Sicilian clergy; some remnants of the Belmeis family party, and more than one Foliot. It is not impossible that Ralph during some portion of his career acted as Master of the Schools of S. Paul's, in that office which later bore the name of chancellor. Between Master Henry, who in the time of Richard of Belmeis had contended for the archdeaconry of Colchester, and Ralph de Hauterive, the military archdeacon who led the English reserve at the siege of Acre, there is abundant room for another "magister." But whether or no Ralph filled the office, he must have exercised over the resident body of younger canons an enlightened and beneficial influence. The election to the deanery was a free election.[1] No congé d'élire from the bishop was requisite, and although the episcopal confirmation after the election was

[1] Statutes of S. Paul's (ed. Simpson), p. 14.

necessary, there could be no question about the ratification of the election in the case of so old and tried a servant. Ralph does not note either the death of his predecessor or his own appointment. The exact date then is not ascertained, but as we find him at work on the survey of the Chapter property as early as January 8th, 1181, it is clear that he must have been settled in his office before the end of 1180. Date of his promotion.

It is not easy under the altered circumstances of the modern cathedral system to realize the importance of such a position as that to which Ralph was now called. The High Dean of S. Paul's [1] was not only the head of a great body of rich and active clergy, but the chief administrator of a very large estate in land, one of the chief citizens of the capital city of England, and the foremost secular priest in the southern province. He was the dean of London, "decanus Lundoniensis," for he did not, except in official documents, call himself dean of S. Paul's, or admit the dean of S. Martin's, his near neighbour, to any superficial parity of dignity. Ralph brought long experience and a strong love of his church to his new office, and he left on the administrative history of his cathedral a deep and lasting mark. His historical labours were by no means the whole of his work; his reputation as a theologian was considerable, and the scriptorium of S. Paul's produced postills, as well as chronicles and compilations, of which he was the author; but his hand is as distinctly traceable in the register, the survey, and in the statute book; the same strikingly beautiful penmanship, the Pauline hand, as I shall venture to call it, which under his superintendence recorded the great events of history, may be recognized among the extant muniments of his cathedral. Importance of his new position.

---

[1] "Rauf de Disze le haut den de "Lundres," "Livere des reis," p. 256. The dean of Rouen cathedral also bore the title of "haut doyen," 1st Report of Cathedral Comm., App. p. 2.

Ecclesiastical greatness of London.

We are prone, in examining into the municipal and mercantile history of London, to forget that it was a very great ecclesiastical centre. The fact that the cathedral of Canterbury was in the hands of a monastic chapter, left S. Paul's at the head of the secular clergy of southern England; it was an educational centre too, where young statesmen spent their leisure in something like self-culture. London with its 40,000 inhabitants had a hundred and twenty churches, all looking to the cathedral as their mother.[1] The resident canons had to exercise a magnificent hospitality carefully prescribed in ancient statutes; twice a year each of them had to entertain the whole staff of the cathedral, and to invite the bishop, the mayor, the sheriffs, aldermen, justices and great men of the court.[2] Rich as the church was, no canon was allowed to become residentiary who could not afford to spend seven or eight hundred marks the first year: at York the qualification was not less than a thousand marks.[3] If this were the case with the canons, the obligation lay more heavily and continuously on the dean. Ralph's first thought seems to have been how to become a good husband to his church.

The survey of the estates of the chapter.

The first act which he undertook as dean was the great survey of the lands and churches belonging to the chapter of his cathedral.[4] It was an exact account, drawn up in a most orderly manner, like the Domesday survey of the Conqueror, or the great Durham survey of "Boldon Buke." A precious fragment of the original is preserved in the Bodleian Library (MS. Rawlinson, B. 372), and has been edited with notes and large illustrative apparatus by the late Archdeacon Hale among the

[1] Pet. Bles. epistt. (ed. Giles), ii. 85.

[2] Statutes, pp. 125, 126.

[3] First Report of the Cathedral Commissioners, Appendix i. p. 17. Bishop Braybrook in 1399 fixed the more reasonable sum of 300 marks, Statutes of S. Paul's, p. 152.

[4] It does not contain a survey of of the prebendal estates, only of the chapter lands, the "communa," and churches.

publications of the Camden Society. The penmanship of the fragment exactly resembles that of the original manuscripts of the dean's historical works, and would afford a proof, if such proof were wanted, that might suffice for their identification. Although his survey is comparatively well known to antiquaries through Dugdale and Newcourt, as well as through Archdeacon Hale's "Domesday of S. Paul's," it forms too important a part of our author's history to be left with a scanty notice here.

Extant fragment of the survey.

The title and date of the document, which are important as fixing the time of Ralph's appointment to the deanery, run as follows:

Title of the survey.

"Annus ab Incarnatione Domini millesimus centesi-"mus octogesimus primus. Annus pontificatus Alex-"andri papæ tertii vicesimus primus. Annus regni "regis Anglorum Henrici secundi vicesimus septimus. "Annus regni regis Anglorum Henrici filii regis un-"decimus. Annus translationis episcopi Herefordensis "Gilberti Folioth in Lundoniensem episcopum octavus "decimus, tunc temporis effluebat, quando facta fuit "inquisitio maneriorum[2] beati Pauli per Radulfum de "Diceto decanum Lundoniensem; anno primo sui de-"canatus, assistentibus ei tam magistro Henrico de "Norhamtona quam domino Roberto de Cliforde."[1] The regnal years are not exact, for the 21st year of Alexander III. ended in September 1180, whilst the 27th year of Henry II. began on the 19th of the following December. As, however, Alexander died on the 30th of August 1181, the survey must have been thrown into its present form in the January of that year.

---

[1] Hale, Domesday of S. Paul's, pp. 112, 112; Dugdale, S. Paul's, p. 306.

[2] "The manors forming the com-"muna of the chapter were Cad-"dington, Kensworth, Sandon, "Luffenhale, Ardleigh, in Hert-"fordshire; Beauchamp, Wickham, "Thorpe and Kirkby, and Walton, "Tidwolditun, Tillingham, Barling, "Runwell, Norton, Navestock, and "Chingford, in Essex; Sutton and "Drayton in Middlesex; and Barnes "in Surrey." Simpson, Statutes, pref. p. xxvii.

Journal of the Inquest on which the survey was based.

The Inquest on which the survey is based lasted twenty-two days, beginning at Cadington, in Hertfordshire, on the 8th of January, and ending at Sutton, in Middlesex, on the 30th. The articles of inquiry are stated in the distinct and cautious order that marks the rest of Ralph's work: "ut "facilius veritas erueretur, pro maneriorum capacitate, "pro numero colonorum modo plures modo pauciores "eligendos decrevimus artatos præstita juris-jurandi "religione, quod ad interrogata nec verum suppri-"merent nec assererent falsum scienter, sed juxta con-"scientiam suam in commune proferrent pro quot "hydis unaquæque villa se defenderet tempore regis "Henrici, tempore Willelmi decani, versus regem, quid "tunc fiscalibus commodis appenderetur per annum vice-"comiti scilicet vel hundredi præposito, quidve modo; "quid modo solvatur collegio canonicorum, quot hydæ in "dominio, quot assisæ, quot liberæ, quot geldabiles, quot "in dominio sint arabiles acræ, quot in prato, quot in "nemore sive vestito sive non vestito; quid instaura-"menti possit apponi vel in marisco vel in alia pastura; "qui colonorum libertate gauderent quive gravarentur "operibus, qui censuales, quive cottarii; quid meliora-"tionis accreverit in unoquoque manerio, quidve ma-"nerium senserit detrimentum vel in deterioratione "domorum vel in vastatione nemorum; quis terminos "moverit vel præterierit. Quia vero pravorum intentio "semper est prior ad detrahendum, si lector de repre-"hensione sollicitus circa maneriorum inquisitionem "aliquid omissum notaverit non id inquirentium negli-"gentiæ deputet sed juratorum vel errori vel fraudi."

Apart from the social and economical value of the survey, matters which cannot be touched on now, it has considerable interest in pointing out to us the sort of men with whom Ralph de Diceto was associated in the management of the estates and business of his church. Of the farmers of the seventeen manors visited by the dean and his assessors, five were canons of the cathedral or high dignitaries elsewhere. The first, who farmed

Cadington and Kensworth was Herbert, archdeacon of Canterbury, the son of Richard of Ilchester, Bishop of Winchester, and himself afterwards Bishop of Salisbury.[1] Ardley was farmed by Nicolas de Sigillo, archdeacon of Huntingdon and clerk of the Exchequer, probably a son or brother of Bishop Robert de Sigillo, who had one son as least in the chapter.[2] Richard Ruffus, the prebendary of Twyford, farmed Sandon, Eadulfsnase, Barling, and Runwell and Belchamp; the lease of some of which had been granted to a predecessor of the same name who was archdeacon of Essex; Richard was a great man in his way, and possessed a house of his own within the cathedral precincts. William of Northall, who farmed Drayton, was archdeacon of Gloucester and afterwards Bishop of Worcester; and Nicolas, the archdeacon of London, held Sutton. John de Marigni or Marney farmed Navestock, probably by favour of Dean Hugh de Marigni; Robert of Fulham held Wickham, Gilbertus Manens held Titwolditon, William and Theodoric, two brothers, held Tillingham, and Odo of Dammartin held Norton; Walter and John held Barnes. Of these seven we have only the names.[3]

Farmers of the capitular estates.

The survey of the manors[4] was followed by a visitation of the churches, a complete abstract or transcript of which, as well as of the survey, is preserved among the cathedral registers.[5] The report of the visitation is introduced by an instructive and characteristic preface; addressed by the dean, perhaps, to his successors :—

Survey of the churches belonging to the chapter.

" Patrimonium beati Pauli doctoris gentium in ec-
" clesia Londoniensi liberalitate regum, oblatione fide-
" lium, canonicis ibidem Deo servientibus collatum
" antiquitus, ordine quo supra descriptum est cum de
" maneriis ageretur. Si volueris diligentius perscrutari

[1] Domesd. of S. Paul's, p. 110.

[2] Domesd. of S. Paul's, p. 111: Madox, Hist. Exch., p. 485. Henry, son of Bishop Robert, was prebendary of Mora. (Newcourt.)

[3] Domesday of S. Paul's, p. 111.

[4] Ibid., p. 140.

[5] Ibid., pp. 146–152.

Survey of the churches belonging to S. Paul's.

"per ordinem vires locorum occultatas hucusque, non "poteris amodo causari tibi prorsus incognitas. Ad "communem igitur utilitatem respiciens, si primam "vocem habueris in capitulo, si vel fueris ascriptus "in matricula canonicorum, nulla ratione sustineas ut "si firmariorum potestas, qui modo possident, exspira- "verit, quoquo casu, quod aliquis vel canonicus vel "extraneus simul ad firmam possideat et manerium "et ecclesiam; sed ne promiscuis actibus rerum tur- "bentur officia, sit semper in eadem villa distinctio "personarum; sit alter qui temporalibus præsit, sit "alter qui spiritualia subministret; sit alius qui decimas "solvat, sit alius qui recipiat. Ordinetur autem vi- "carius in ecclesiis juxta dispositionem capituli, qui, "si facultates ecclesiæ patiantur, dum servit altari sit "contentus altario; si non patiantur, victus capellano "suppleatur ex decimis ad arbitrium tale quod semper "honestati sit conscium. Reliqui vero fructus, quos in "ecclesia propriis sumptibus excoluerit, majores quo- "que decimæ reserventur canonicis vel ad annuum "censum capellanis vel aliis clericis tradantur ad "firmam. De regulari jure faciendum est quod supra- "diximus, nisi necessitas urgens interdum aliud aliquid "fieri pro ratione temporis et utilitate magna capituli "flagitaverit. Ordinetur autem vicarius in ecclesiis "juxta dispositionem tam decani quam capituli. Quæ "sit ergo dos ecclesiarum, quid solvatur capitulo, quid "per clericos, quidve per firmarium ecclesiæ nomine; "quid in aliquibus locis ecclesiæ matrici jure paro- "chiali solvatur, a qua noster firmarius, a qua nostri "coloni recipiant spiritualia; quid solvatur pro sinoda- "libus, quis colligat beati Petri denarium; quid sol- "vatur archidiaconis Huntedoniæ vel Bedefordiæ, quis "ecclesiarum ornatus, diligenter annexum invenies in "sequentibus. Explicit prologus."[1]

---

[1] Domesday of S. Paul's, pp. 146, 147.

Of the character of the visitation, the report on Navestock may serve as a specimen:—"Ecclesia de Nastocha "est in dominio canonicorum et reddit eis lx. solidos "per manum firmarii; et solvit nomine sinodalium "xii. *d.*; de denario beati Petri iii. solidos quos colligit "sacerdos et solvit. Et habet in dominio de terra "arabili xlvii. acras, in bosco xl. acras, et defendit eas "versus regem pro quater viginti acris. Habet etiam "decimas plenas totius villæ et de dominio tertiam "garbam." The case of Navestock might be a good illustration of the wisdom of the dean's suggestion that the farm of the manor and the rectory should not be in the same hands. S. Paul's held the two together until the Reformation, when the two were finally divided; but long before that, probably, the eighty acres of glebe and wood which belonged to the church had been lost among the lands of the manor; the vicar holds now about twenty acres, and the rectors possess no land in the parish. The whole record of survey and visitation throws light on the temporal and spiritual administration of church property which is very valuable; the use of the inquest by sworn recognitors for the valuation of the land; the confusion of lay and clerical duties in the hands of the great men of the Chapter; the institution of vicarages often very scantily endowed on the rich manors, intended to exonerate the great clerks from the duty of serving their churches, are all significant points. The period was one at which the appropriation of tithes was very largely extended, and at which the claims of the ministering priest of the parish were universally set aside in favour of those of the beneficed parson, who might on those terms hold any number of livings and be scarcely, even in name, a clerk. Ralph, who held Aynho and Finchingfield in this loose way, did not scruple to throw the cure of the parishes on the newly instituted vicarages; it is to his credit that he tried to obtain for them a sufficient endowment.

Report on Navestock.

Ralph's first act as dean of S. Paul's was the beginning

Documents issued by Ralph de Diceto as dean.

of a long and careful administration of the property ot his church. In 1447[1] the chapter still possessed three registers bearing the name of Ralph de Diceto; time, however, has not spared us one that answers to the character of a decanal register. But the general registers of the cathedral and the muniment room of the chapter still contain, either in original charters or in early copies, a large number of documents drawn up and sealed by him. Many of these have been used by Newcourt, who employed them with pious zeal in the composition of his Repertorium Ecclesiasticum Parochiale Londinense; and the antiquarian industry of Dr. Matthew Hutton prompted him to extract from the mass some of the most important of the Pauline records, the abstract of which is preserved among the Harleian Manuscripts. But many more still lie unnoted on the registers and in the charter drawers, full of interest for the history of London and the church, but far too numerous and various to be even cited in this place. Many of these are in the form of leases granted to the farmers of the chapter lands, and form a valuable continuation to the series of earlier leases printed by Archdeacon Hale from a still earlier register, in the Domesday of S. Paul's. Thus there is a lease of Norton to John of Dammartin, granted no doubt on the death or termination of the tenure of Odo of Dammartin,[2] a lease of Sandon to Thomas and Alan of Bassingburn,[3] and a lease of Belchamp, dated in 1185, to Richard Ruffus.[4] Others record the presentation to

[1] Domesday of S. Paul's, p. xvi.

[2] MS. Hutton, p. 27. "Sciant "præsentes et futuri quod ego Radulfus de Diceto decanus ecclesiæ "Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ et ejusdem capitulum concessimus Johanni de Dammartin Nortonam "cum omnibus pertinentiis suis "tenendam de nobis ad firmam "... reddentes inde nobis annuatim centum solidos. Testibus "Radulfo de Diceto decano, Nicholao archidiacono, Henrico the"saurario, Ricardo de Storteforde "magistro scholarum, magistro "Henrico, Roberto de Clifforde, "Hugone de Raculfe, Henrico filio "episcopi, magistro Hugone, Ri"cardo Juveni, Rad. de Chiltona, "Gileberto Banastre." See Newcourt, ii. 439.

[3] Hutton MS., p. 122.

[4] Hutton MS., part 2, p. 117.

churches; Ralph de Diceto and the chapter grant the church of Ardley to John of Winchester, and again to Hamo of Winchester;[1] they receive Master Gilbert of Cranford as clerk to the chapel of East Twyford on the presentation of Payn FitzHenry;[2] the church of Barnes is granted to Richard, a kinsman of Henry of Northampton, at a rent of half a mark; but this is probably a lease of tithes to be supplemented by the institution of a vicar.[3] Some of the grants are of the nature of monastic endowments, bestowed perhaps with a view of increasing the influence of the chapter. It was probably under the influence of the Justiciar Ranulf Glanvill that the church of S. Olave, Jewry, and two-thirds of S. Stephen's, Coleman Street, were granted or secured to the monastery of Butley, of which he was the founder. In this case the prior and convent were to act as vicars of S. Olave's and supply the pastoral care, a clumsy arrangement which was afterwards superseded by a formal appropriation and the ordination of a vicarage.[4] There is also a grant of land at Ludeburn to the prior and convent of Merton in Surrey.[5] A more interesting series of documents are the grants of land, houses, and other property, with which the resources of the church were enlarged during the same period.

Chapter acts executed by Ralph de Diceto as dean.

[1] Hutton MS., pp. 68, 87.

[2] Newcourt, i. 759; MS. Hutton, p. 53.

[3] Hutton MS., p. 48. "Sciant "omnes quod ego R. de Diceto, "decanus ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli "Londoniæ et ejusdem ecclesiæ "capitulum concessimus Ricardo "cognato magistri Henrici de Nor-"hamtune ecclesiam de Berne cum "terris et decimis et obventionibus "et omnibus rectitudinibus ad ean-"dem pertinentibus; reddet autem "inde nobis annuatim dimidiam "marcam. Hanc vero concessio-"nem ipsi facimus salvo jure uni-"verso quod dominus archiepisco-"pus Cantuariensis habet in ecclesia "illa. Testibus Rad. decano, Nic. "archid. Lundon., magistro Ri-"cardo, magistro Radulfo, Hugone "de Raculf, Roberto de Clifforde, "magistro Henrico, magistro Hu-"gone, Ricardo juniore, magistro "Ricardo fratre Nicholai et Ri-"cardi."

[4] Newcourt, i. 512; MS. Hutton, p. 111.

[5] MS. Hutton, pt. 2, p. 134.

Ralph's benefactions to his church.

And amongst these Ralph himself deserves the first place, both as a benefactor and as a promoter of good works in others. He built himself a deanery-house and chapel within the precincts of S. Paul's, which when completed he bestowed with the land on which they stood, and the ornaments and books with which he had furnished them, on the deans his successors for ever. For the securing of this benefaction he obtained letters of confirmation from Gilbert Foliot and Richard FitzNeal, successively Bishops of London, from Richard Archbishop of Canterbury, and Pope Lucius III. This must have been done soon after he became dean, as Archbishop Richard died in 1184 and Lucius III. in 1185. The papal confirmation, dated at the Lateran in March, limits it to the years 1182 or 1183. In consideration of this gift every succeeding dean had to pay ten shillings for a pittance on the anniversary of the death of the donor, and to give security for the payment at his institution to the deanery. Ralph settled, moreover, on the chapter the tithe of the demesne of his prebendal estate of Tottenhall, with a view towards the endowment of a new hospital founded by Master Henry of Northampton, prebendary of Kentish Town, within the cathedral liberties. Henry of Northampton, who was one of the canons of Archbishop Baldwin's projected college at Lambeth, and whom he nominated to the church of Monkton in Thanet, was likewise a benefactor; he left certain houses

[1] Newcourt, i. 34; MS. Hutton, part 2, p. 146. The original charters may be still in S. Paul's; the confirmation by Bishop Richard III. will be found, extracted from the Register, in the Appendix to the Preface to vol. ii.

[2] Newcourt, i. 212. "Radulfus "de Diceto decanus ecclesiæ Sancti "Pauli Londoniæ universis, &c. "Noverit caritas vestra me . . . . "concessisse capitulo canonicorum "Sancti Pauli integram totam deci- "mam de dominio præbendæ meæ "de Tothale in blado et in omnibus "fructibus de terra provenientibus, "&c. Testibus Nicholao archidia- "cono Lond., &c." MS. Hutton, p. 112.

to the chapter for the sustentation of the almonry;[1] probably it was by way of compensating his relations that we find Richard his kinsman made lessee of the church of Barnes. Another valuable gift was that of William of Belmeis, the nephew of the second Bishop Richard, and the last of the name whom we find connected with S. Paul's. He, for the health of the souls of his father Robert of Belmeis and his uncle Richard, gave to the canons his church of S. Pancras, which was consequently appropriated to the chapter and a vicarage ordained; the tithe of S. Pancras, however, went towards the maintenance of Henry of Northampton's hospital.[2] Richard of Stortford, the "magister scholarum," imitated the example of the dean, and settled the stone house, which he had built within the close, on his successor in his own prebend, subject to an annual rent of a mark of silver to maintain an obit.[3] Among minor charters is one in which Bishop Richard the third grants to Ralph de Diceto and the chapter Ralph Blund "our man and native," of Hadham, free and quit of all bond of servitude.[4]

Other benefactors of the period.

---

[1] Newcourt, i. 169; MS. Hutton, p. 52. "R. de Diceto ecclesiæ S. "Pauli Lundoniensis decanus et "ejusdem ecclesiæ capitulum omni- "bus, &c. salutem. Noverit uni- "versitas vestra quod nos concessi- "mus magistro Ricardo de Lulinge "domos quæ fuerunt magistri Hen- "rici de Norhamptun concanonici "nostri, quas idem Henricus nobis "ad sustentationem elemosinæ beati "Pauli dedit . . . tenendas de no- "bis . . . pro iii. solidis annuatim "in anniversario die obitus magistri "Henrici. Testibus, &c." Henry can scarcely be the same Henry of Northampton who is noticed by Mr. Foss among the judges. Cf. Epp. Cant., p. 342.

[2] Newcourt, i. 190; MS. Hutton, p. 84.

[3] Newcourt, i. 151.

[4] "Omnibus Christi fidelibus, etc. "Ricardus divina miseratione Lun- "doniensis ecclesiæ minister salutem "in Domino. Ad communem om "nium notitiam pervenire volumus "nos concessisse et dedisse Radulfo "de Diceto decano et capitulo beati "Pauli Radulfum Blundum homi- "nem et nativum nostrum de Had- "dam, liberum et quietum ab omni "nexu servitutis; et ut hæc nostra, "&c. Testibus, &c." Regist. S. Pauli. One R. Blondus was a scholar at Oxford; mentioned by Peter of Blois, Epp. (ed. Giles), i. 184; but the name was very common.

Ralph's work in the statute book of his church.

Not less distinctly than in the domestic economy of the cathedral[1] is the work of Ralph to be traced in the statute book. The customs and statutes of the cathedral were reduced to their existing form and probably first codified by Dean Ralph Baldock, afterwards Bishop of London and chancellor to Edward I., a man who seems to have succeeded to some portion of Ralph de Diceto's love of order. In the process of arrangement he has not preserved the exact wording of such statutes as had been previously enacted, and there is perhaps far more than at first meets the eye, in which a critical examination could determine the authorship of the several parts.[2] In more than one place the customs approved in the time of Ralph de Diceto are referred to as a sort of primary authority, or as defining a period of limitation beyond which it was needless to seek for the origin of the particular rule. In some few instances a constitution of Ralph may be given entire; such a statute is that "de servientibus,"[3] which orders that all the servants of the church shall be in the church in winter at the first stroke of the compline bell, and in summer at the first stroke of the curfew; that they are to guard against the admission of suspicious strangers, and to be answerable for all furniture carried outside the vestibule; several other directions are added, especially one which establishes a graduated table of

[1] Dr. Simpson, Statutes, p. 132, mentions a seal used by Ralph de Diceto, described in MS. Ashmole, 833, fo. 401; bearing the inscription, "Sigillum capituli Sancti Pauli "Londonie. S. Paule standing upon "a little building like a church, "holding up his right hand, and in "his left a booke, open as if he "were preaching, on each hand "several people, some of which hold "up their hands."

[2] Such a critical examination has been given to the Statutes in the edition of Dr. Sparrow Simpson, not only in reference to the original forms of the several enactments, but with illustrations from the usages of other cathedrals, and indeed with every appliance that is required for the elucidation of the subject.

[3] Statutes, pp. 109, 124: "Ordi"natum fuit tempore Radulfi de "Diceto decani, quod," &c. See also Dugdale, S. Paul's (ed. 1658) p. 270.

fees for gravedigging.[1] If a statute like this shows the dean's attention to the minute regulation of the lowest of the church's inmates, another set of constitutions touch the most important of the cathedral institutions, the law of residence. The great statute of residence which was accepted by the chapter in 1192 is not given by Baldock in its proper form, but only by means of extracts; and, curiously enough, another set of regulations prescribing the duties of the residentiaries appears in a later part of the book under the title of "constitu-"tions, statutes, and declarations of ancient and approved "customs published in the time of Master Ralph de "Disceto, dean of S. Paul's." The text of the statute of residence which seems to be our author's own work will be found in an appendix to the preface of our second volume. It prescribes with great exactness the amount of absence which disqualifies a canon from receiving a share in the distribution of the common fund; it defines the sense in which a canon can be said to have well served the church, and orders that equitable consideration shall be given to necessary causes of absence. In particular two cases are provided for, which Ralph knew from his own experience were likely to recur; a canon who was absent at a university was allowed forty shillings annually from the common fund; and one who was obliged to carry on a trial in defence of his right was allowed to count the days of necessary absence as days of residence. The approved customs are a much more striking series of articles;[2] they lay down the duties of hospitality to be performed by the canons, the number of feasts which they are to make, the duty of entertaining

The statute of residence drawn up in 1192.

The approved customs of residence.

---

[1] "Item quod pro fovea mortui "facienda non accipiat ultra iii^d., "et hoc a divite; a mediocri ii^d. "vel i^d.; a puero nisi tantum i^d." Statutes, pp. 110, 124.

[2] Statutes, pp. 125, sq.: "Con-"stitutiones et statuta et declara-"tiones consuetudinum antiquarum "et approbatarum editæ tempore "magistri Radulfi de Disceto, de-"cani Sancti Pauli."

Duties of a residentiary canon.

the mayor, sheriffs, aldermen, justices, and the great men of the court who may stand in good stead to the church in difficult times. The new residentiary is forbidden to dwell in the house of the Earl of Hereford, or in the house of Diana or Rosamond; he is not to be bled at all in the first quarter of his residence, and in the other quarters once a month; he is bound to take part in the expenses and festivities of Childermas and the boy bishop.[1] These customs are many of them extravagant and burdensome, and the whole were cancelled by Bishop Braybrook in 1399 as a pretended statute of Ralph de Diceto. It is quite possible, however, that they were a genuine record of customs which prevailed when the canons were all great and rich men, and when the duty of hospitality was recognized as second only to that of divine service.

Ralph's institution of a fraternity.

A more interesting act, which bears the name of Ralph de Diceto and the date 1197, is the institution of a fratery or fraternity for the celebration of the office for the dead members, and the mass of the Holy Ghost for living ones, and for the relief of the sick and poor, at four annual meetings. The society, which does not in its main features differ from the ordinary type of the religious guild, is memorable only as a proof of the

---

[1] Statutes, p. 129: "Debet etiam "novus residentiarius post cenam "die Sanctorum Innocentium du- "cere puerum suum cum daunsa et "chorea et torchiis ad elemosina- "riam, et ibi cum torticiis potum et "species singulis ministrare, et libe- "ratam vini, cervisiæ et specierum "et candellarum facere," &c.

[2] Statutes, p. 153: "Statuta vero "prætensa ac consuetudines ejus- "dem ecclesiæ canonicos in primo "anno residentiæ ad majores ex- "pensas . . . sive ad sumptuosa et "excessiva convivia et pastus volup- "tuosos, et alias excessivas expen- "sas, quam ut præfertur, necnon "choreas et complenas per vicos et "plateas . . . necnon statutum præ- "tensum editum tempore Radulfi "de Disseto quondam decani dictæ "ecclesiæ . . . cassamus, irritamus "et annullamus."

[3] Statutes, pp. 63, 64: "de Fra- "teria beneficiorum ecclesiæ Sancti "Pauli London., anno ab Incarna- "tione Domini MCXCVII. in crastino "Annunciationis Beatæ Mariæ, auc- "toritate Radulfi de Dyceto ecclesiæ "Sancti Pauli London., decani, &c."

dean's anxiety that his church should not be lacking in the more popular forms of charity and devotion.

Besides the enactments which bear his name, the extract from Hugh of S. Victor which has been more than once mentioned, as inserted by way of preamble to the statutes; and possibly the extracts from the rule of Chrodegang which are rather of antiquarian value than of practical validity, may have been drawn out of the scholarlike memory of Ralph de Diceto. The impression produced by a careful examination of those parts of the volume which reflect the conditions of the twelfth century is that the cathedral establishment was organized on a plan not altogether unlike a college of the present day; residence was very much determined by the will of the individual canon; certain funds were divisible among the residents only, each canon drew his bread and beer, and bread and beer for his dependents; of the non-residents, some were farmers of the manors of the corporation, some held the livings either bestowed by the chapter, or belonging to their several prebends; some of the canons were very young and waiting for prebends, some accumulated duties in church and state, some were resident as exhibitioners in foreign universities. Devotion, hospitality, education, were the chief occupation of the residents. Great men, English and foreign, were entertained at great cost; kings and foreign prelates were received with solemn processions, in which from time to time the city joined the church, and great holy days were kept "coronata civitate," the streets being hung with garlands. The great establishments of the friars were not yet instituted. S. Paul's stood at the head of the religious life of London, and by its side, at some considerable interval however, S. Martin's le Grand, S. Bartholomew's, Smithfield, and the great and ancient foundation of Trinity, Aldgate, which had sprung out of the more ancient foundation of the English cnihten-gild. Ralph de Diceto was, for zeal, learning, and local faithful-

Character of the cathedral establishment.

ness, a very fair representative man under a system which was soon to be greatly modified.

Ralph's collection of relics.

The value set upon the relics of the saints at this time was very great, and the reputation of the system had not been so seriously damaged as it was later on by detected imposture. Ralph de Diceto was a collector of relics, and he bestowed no small store of them on his church. A list of these gifts is preserved in the register, and has been several times printed.[1] They included a portion of the knife of our Lord, of S. Mary Magdalene's hair, fragments of the bones or dress of S. Stephen the Pope, S. Laurence, S. Martin, S. Oswald, and many others. The vestry too in 1295 contained at least one chasuble of Ralph de Diceto, made of red samite with vineated dorsal of pure orfreys, a small contribution, perhaps, compared with the more numerous and more costly vestments bestowed or bequeathed by his contemporaries.[2] The choir, however, and

---

[1] Dugdale, S. Paul's, ed. 1658, p. 234; ed. Ellis, p. 337: "Hæ sunt "reliquiæ quas Radulfus de Diceto "decanus contulit S. Paulo. [MS. "Cod. B. penes D. and C. fol. 1 b.] "De cultello Domini; de capillis "S. Mariæ Magdalenæ; de S. Ste-"phano papa et martyre; de osse "beati Laurentii martyris; de pallio "aliisque reliquiis S. Martini Turo-"nensis episcopi; de S. Marco et "Marcellina martyribus; de S. "Victore martyre; de testa S. Ypo-"liti martyris; de baculo S. Mar-"tini Turonensis episcopi; de S. "Oswaldo rege et martyre; de stola "et pallio S. Maximini; de baculo "S. Maximini Treverensis episcopi; "de capite S. Eugenii martyris; "ossa cujusdam martyris de sociis "S. Mauritii; de sandaliis et suda-"rio et casula S. Remacli confes-"soris; de osse et vestimento S. "Walburgæ Virginis et de marga-"ritis armillæ ipsius; de osse Alex-"andri papæ et martyris, de pulvere "reliquiarum."

[2] These articles are mentioned in the surveys of the treasures of the church taken in 1295 by Ralph Baldock the dean; Dugdale, ed. 1658, p. 212; ed. Ellis, p. 320:—

"Item, casula Radulfi de Diceto "de rubeo sameto, cum dorsali puri "aurifrigii vineata," pp. 215, 322.

"Item, psalterium in quo præmit-"tuntur ornamenta quæ Radulfus "de Diceto contulit ecclesiæ Lon-"doniensi," pp. 217, 324.

"Item, Omelium magnum de per-"optima litera, quod fuit Radulfi de "Diceto decani, incipiens in prima "rubrica 'quid in festo primæ dig-"'nitatis;' initio primæ legendæ "'primo tempore,' alleviata cum "litera auri in qua depingitur puer-"perium beatæ Virginis, et finit in "rubrica in Octabis Sancti Erken-

the library preserved more precious memorials of him; there was his psalter, with a list at the beginning of the ornaments which he gave to the church; a homily book "de peroptima litera," in the finest Pauline hand, we may be sure; another book of homilies and martyrology bearing his own name; another martyrology containing copies of the cathedral charters; a great and fair and well noted gradual, a capitularium and collectarium, good and new and of good penmanship, which belonged to him; last but not least, the volume of chronicles printed in these volumes, the very MS. from which our text is taken. Besides these there were in the library postills on the books of Ecclesiasticus and Wisdom,—[1] the dean's own sermons or lectures delivered in church or school.

Books left by Ralph to his church.

"waldi, lectio S. Evangelii," &c., pp. 218, 324.

"Item, aliud omelium ejusdem de "grossiori litera male ligatum, inci- "piens præter ea quæ scribuntur in "custodiis dominica prima Adven- "tus in illo Evangelio, 'cum appro- "'pinquasset Jesus Jerusalem;' et "finit in Evangelio Dominica prima "ante Adventum 'cum sublevasset "'oculos Jesus,' præter ea quæ "scribuntur in custodia."

"Item, Omelium Sanctorum, male "ligatum, magnum de grossa, in- "titulatum in grossiori litera, 'res- "'pice libro Radulfi de Diceto de- "'cani;" incipiens in Nativitate "Domini in Evangelio 'exiit edic- "'tum," et finit in legenda Jeremiæ "de Virginibus."

"Item, liber Radulfi de Diceto "decani nomine suo intitulato in "tertio folio a principio scilicet "'Omelia et martylogium,' et finit "in epistola 'Nolite peregrinari,'" pp. 218, 325.

"Item, aliud martylogium ejus- "dem quod incipit 'ego Theodricus,' "et postea intitulatur nomine ejus- "dem in sexto folio a dextra noviori "litera; et post incipit 'in nomine "'Domini nostri' in cartis conces- "sis terrarum et in capella decani," pp. 219, 325.

"Gradale magnum et pulchrum "et bene notatum quod fuit Radulfi "de Dicéto, nullo præmisso. Incipit "'ad te levavi animam meam,'" pp. 219, 326.

"Item capitularium et collecta- "rium bonum et novum et de bona "litera, cum canone missæ, quod "fuit Radulfi de Diceto decani, in- "cipiens in magna rubrica 'sicut in "'festo primæ dignitatis,' et finit "'in secreto unius virginis,'" pp. 221, 327.

"Cronica composita a Radulfo de "Diceto; et incipit liber a rubrica "'In opusculo sequenti trium tem- "'porum,' et finit in penultimo folio "in rubrica 'comites Flandren- "'ses,'" pp. 222, 328.

[1] "Item, postilla R. de Diceto "super Ecclesiasticum et super "librum Sapientiæ, 2^{ndo} folio, 'vel "'unumquodque translatum.'" Dugdale, pp. 277, 393.

House, land, furniture, chapel, tithes, relics, vestments and books, all testified to a long and deep attachment of the venerable dean to his grand world-famed cathedral.

In this scanty sketch of Ralph's work as dean, and of the relics which long remained to preserve his memory, we have far outstripped the strict lines of our chronology, and must return to the date of his appointment to trace the thin thread of his more public appearances.

Notes of occurrences which he may have witnessed.

For several years after his appointment to the deanery we know nothing, from other sources, of our author's history, and his own works illustrate it only by the occasional record of the promotion of a friend or fellow canon. Thus, in 1182, he mentions the resignation of the see of Lincoln by Geoffrey the king's son, and the election of Walter of Coutances, who was afterwards his most faithful correspondent. The consecration and inthronization of the latter prelate are noted, as well as his speedy translation to Rouen.[1] Walter is described by Peter of Blois as a member of a family, doubtless of Norman extraction, settled in Devonshire or Cornwall,[2] and his friendship with Ralph may have begun either at the university or at court, where he had been for some years vice-chancellor or keeper of the seal to Henry II. We know him best as justiciar in the reign of Richard. In 1186 William de Vere, canon of S. Paul's, the friend of Ralph at Paris, was consecrated to the see of Hereford, and William of Northall, another canon and archdeacon of Gloucester, to that of Worcester.[3] Early in 1187 Ralph lost his old friend and patron, Bishop Foliot,[4] and the see of London was not filled up for nearly three years. Within a few weeks after Foliot's death he had to receive the Archbishop of Canterbury, Baldwin, who visited the church on Midlent Sunday, and he took advantage of the opportunity to obtain from him an injunction forbidding the

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 10, 14, 15, 21, 33.

[2] P. Blesens. Epistt. (ed. Giles), i. p. 252.

[3] Vol. ii. pp. 41, 42.

[4] Vol. ii. p. 47.

persons who were in charge of the temporalities of the see to interfere with the spiritual officers in the discharge of their duties. They had infringed the rights of the archdeacon of Middlesex in the church of Hormead, in Hertfordshire.[1] The guardians of the temporalities were Ralph de Hauterive, archdeacon of Colchester, and Richard Brito, archdeacon of Coventry, the latter acting as a clerk of the Exchequer.[2] Probably the dean, by himself or in conjunction with some of the other members of the chapter, was acting as guardian of the spiritualities, for the dispute on this point between the chapter and the archbishop does not seem to have begun as yet.[3] Baldwin, in the letter referred to, makes no mention of any such officials, but it must have been in this capacity that the dean officiated at the coronation of Richard I., when, because "the church of London was "vacant at the time, Ralph de Diceto, the dean of the "church of London, ministered to the archbishop in the "holy oil and chrism."[4]

The see of London during a vacancy.

Ralph officiates at the coronation.

Henry II. had, shortly before his death, determined to fill up the vacant see, and he and Archbishop Baldwin had summoned the dean with eight of the canons to attend the royal court wherever it might be, on the Sunday "Isti sunt dies" March 26, 1189.[5] Ralph and his companions obeyed the citation and were abroad for fourteen weeks, during which time it would seem that Henry, harassed to death as he was by misfortune and illness, found no leisure to attend them. Forty pounds, as the Pipe Roll records, and as Ralph has himself noted, were paid to them for their expenses, out of the revenues of the see which were now in the king's hands.

A new election,

and journey to France.

---

[1] Vol. ii. p. 47.

[2] Pipe Roll of Richard I., pp. 11, 12.

[3] See the final agreement on this point in the Statutes of S. Paul's, p. 382; and the Appendix to Wharton's Historia de Episcopis.

[4] Vol. ii. p. 69.

[5] Vol. ii. pp. 62, 69, 70. The statement of the Pipe Roll, p. 12, is: "Et canonicis Sancti Pauli de "Londoniis qui transfretaverunt ad "eligendum episcopum, pro expen- "sis suis xl. libras per breve regis."

The new bishop Richard Fitz Neal.

Henry died on the 6th of July. On the 15th September at Pipewell, the see of London was filled up by the election of one of the canons, who was likewise dean of Lincoln, Richard, the son of the late Bishop of Ely, Nigel, treasurer to the king, and well known to us as the author of the Dialogus de Scaccario.[1] No doubt the canonical ceremony of election was gone through, but it was well understood that Richard, like the other prelates appointed at the time, was the king's nominee. He had been freely chosen Bishop of Lincoln under Henry II., but that king had refused to allow his promotion, alleging that he was rich enough already, and that thenceforth he would make bishops only such men as the Lord should choose.[2] His son had no such scruples, and the chapter were probably glad to elect a member of their own body, instead of such a man as the Chancellor Longchamp.

Friendship of Ralph and bishop Longchamp.

Richard of London and William of Ely were consecrated together on the 31st of December at Lambeth. It would be the duty of Ralph to present the elect of London to the archbishop and to assist at his inthronization which took place the same day. We may presume that he improved the opportunity of cultivating the acquaintance of Longchamp, for whose great abilities he seems to have entertained a profound admiration. To a man of Ralph's age and understanding it would be wrong to impute the character of a flatterer or even of a courtier; but the letter which he addressed to Longchamp on his elevation to the offices of legate and justiciar, and which he prefixed, as a sort of dedication, to the royal tables and other *opuscula* contained in the volume now preserved at Ripley Castle,[3] shows that he was dazzled by the rapid and brilliant promotion of the chancellor. Great as was the fall of Longchamp and grievous as were the faults of his administration, Ralph writes of him

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 69, 70, 75.
[2] Ben. Pet., i. 345, 346.
[3] Vol. ii. pp. 177 sq.

throughout with moderation, and, when he wishes to point the moral, borrows from Sidonius Apollinaris the description of the character and career of Arvandus.[1]

Ralph now known to be writing a history.

The important positions held by these two bishops during Richard's absence on the Crusade enabled them to furnish our author, who was now known to be writing the annals of the time, with direct and most valuable information. He was indeed singularly well placed for knowing all that was passing both in the council of government and among those who were discontented with the administration of Longchamp. At the same moment he was the trusted friend of William Longchamp, Walter of Coutances, and Richard FitzNeal. Probably his sympathies were chiefly with the latter, who was throughout the period faithful to the course which he saw to be most beneficial to the king, and who was free from the influence of those motives, whether of arbitrary self-will or of ambitious self-seeking, which derogate from the equally proved fidelity of the other two. But the dean does not employ, in any part of his description of the contest, language that implies any strong feeling on his part. Even in speaking of the great session of the barons in the chapterhouse of S. Paul's, he makes little further remark than that the Bishop of London was the only person present who in his oath to the king made any reservation of the rights of his order;[2] a point which looks as if his mind was more employed with the controversies of 1163 than with those of 1191.

Richard at S. Pauls.

In 1194, on Richard's return from captivity, he was received with a solemn procession at S. Paul's on the 23rd of March,[3] and on the 19th of May the Archbishop of Rouen visited the cathedral with similar pomp, and preached to the people, being entertained after mass, with a feast in the bishop's palace.[4] On both occasions

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 101, 102.
[2] Vol. ii. p. 99.
[3] Vol. ii. p. 114.
[4] Vol. ii. p. 115.

Riot of William Fitz Osbert.

no doubt the dean was present. In 1196 he seems to have been an eye-witness of the riot caused by William FitzOsbert.[1] Even here he does not go out of his way to make strong remarks. It seems that he looked on the popular grievance as a real grievance, but that he knew the demagogue to be a bad man, and regarded the severities of the Government as justified, and the precautionary measures of the justiciar as wise and politic. In 1197 he records the death of William Longchamp and the promotion of his brother Robert to be abbot of S. Mary's at York.[2] One of Longchamp's last communications had been the letter in which he transmitted the epistle of the Old Man of the Mountain, exonerating the king from the charge of procuring the murder of Conrad of Montferrat.[3] In 1198 he has to record for the third time the death of his bishop. Richard FitzNeal died on the 10th September:[4] how much Ralph owed to him in the preparation of his history it is easier to conjecture than to prove. Richard had himself in his Tricolumnis written the early annals of the reign of Henry II., and living as he did, first as canon and afterwards as bishop in close neighbourhood with Ralph de Diceto, may very probably have imparted to him his own views on the great crisis of that reign. But if it were so, it is impossible, without better knowledge than we possess of the contents of the Tricolumnis, to show that our author had the privilege of using it. The vacancy of the see again involved a journey to France for the chapter. On the 9th of November the king summoned a committee of seven canons to meet him on the 7th of December. The dean was not required to attend, probably in consideration of his age, and it was ordered that the precentor Walter, who was with the archbishop in Normandy at the time, should be one of the committee

Other memoranda of personal interest.

Another episcopal election.

---

[1] Vol. ii. p. 143.
[2] Vol ii. pp. 150, 151.
[3] Vol. ii. p. 127.
[4] Vol. ii. p. 163.

as a substitute, perhaps, for his superior. Ralph, however, did not let himself be overlooked.[1] Whether he took the journey or not we are not informed, but he specially records that it was at his postulation, or on his presentation, that the bishop elect was consecrated.[2] The ceremony was performed on the 23rd of May 1199 in S. Katharine's Chapel at Westminster, four days before the coronation of John. William of S. Mere l'Eglise, the new bishop, was, like his predecessor, a canon of S. Paul's, whose advancement Ralph had watched for several years. As early as 1178 a contemporary hand recorded in the margin of the Imagines, that it was in that year[3] William of S. Mere l'Eglise had come to the king's court, and in 1189 he had become dean of S. Martin's.

Ralph at the consecration of William of S. Mere l'Eglise.

The Imagines contain after this only one or two incidental notices of personal observation. The demolition of Archbishop Baldwin's church at Lambeth provokes from the dean the severest remark that occurs in the whole book:—"to Peter was given the power of building up, "of multiplying and transferring sees, but by what law "or canon was bestowed on him licence to lay waste a "holy place, may be left to the judgment of Him who "gave the power to build up."[4] Under the year 1200 we find a complaint of the burdensome exaction from the religious houses of London, which resulted from the entertaining of Philip, the Pope's notary; and another severe remark on the natural and innate greediness of the Romans.[5] In December 1200, the dean seems to have witnessed the benediction of Ralph Arundel a Londoner, as Abbot of Westminster, the ceremony being performed in S. Paul's;[6] and in September 1201, to have attended the reception of the legate John of Salerno in his cathedral church. The last entry but one in the Imagines notes the summoning of the Bishop of London

Ralph on the demolition of the college church at Lambeth.

Other personal reminiscences.

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 164, 165.
[2] Vol. ii. p. 166.
[3] Vol. i. p. 424.
[4] Vol. ii. p. 165.
[5] Vol. ii. pp. 168, 169.
[6] Vol. ii. p. 172.

and others to Normandy, whither the archbishop sailed on the 14th of December.[1]

Correspondence with Walter of Coutances.

The letters of Walter of Coutances which, from 1196 onwards, occupy the largest part of the pages of the Imagines, contain little that is of historical interest, and less still that illustrates the personal history of our author. One letter of Ralph's,[2] anonymous, and containing, besides the usual generalities of comfort and sympathy, a couple of verses apparently of his own composition, is in this aspect the most valuable part of the correspondence.

Visits of princes and prelates to S. Paul's.

Two or three of the later notices of local events and matters of personal interest, must close our survey of the life of Ralph de Diceto. The record of the visits of prelates and princes to the church of the "doctor of the "nations" is a marked feature throughout the Imagines. Thus, in 1183, we find Archbishop Richard celebrating mass in S. Paul's a few days before his death;[3] in 1184 Philip of Heinsberg, Archbishop of Cologne, was solemnly received, and for the first time in our dean's experience, the city was "crowned," and there was joy, honour, and dancing in the streets in honour of the prelate and his companion, the Count of Flanders;[4] in 1187 Archbishop Baldwin was solemnly received, and, the see being vacant, consecrated the chrism on the Thursday in holy week, and celebrated mass on Easter Day.[5] In 1194 Richard, as we have seen, found time to visit S. Paul's "coro-"nata civitate," and the Archbishop of Rouen followed in a few weeks. The reception of John of Salerno is nearly the last event recorded. We may imagine how attentively the old annalist would listen to the discourse of his great guests for something to embody in his book.

The statute of residence drawn up in 1192[6] contains

---

[1] Vol. ii. p. 173.
[2] Vol. ii. pp. 137, 138.
[3] Vol. ii. p. 21.
[4] Vol. ii. p. 31.
[5] Vol. ii. p. 47.
[6] See above, p. lxvii.

the names of several of the canons who stood round the dean in these last days; and enable us to trace the changes which must have affected the tone of society in the chapter. The Archdeacon Nicolas, whose experiences must have run parallel with Ralph's for forty years, is gone, and in his place is Peter of Blois, the learned rhetorician and theologian, who is so well known to us by his collected epistles. It is somewhat significant that Ralph de Diceto never mentions him; doubtless the dean saw through the pretentious, ambitious, self-seeking adventurer. Another name, also calculated to increase the literary tone of the chapter, is that of Walter Map, the archdeacon of Oxford, whose appointment to the precentorship of Lincoln is specially recorded in the Imagines. Walter's poems and his book "De Nugis "Curialium," the latter of which contains some marvellous tales not at all unlikely to have come out of Ralph's store, would no doubt recommend him to the dean. The schools of the cathedral were now under Master Richard of Stortford. Master Alard, who succeeded Ralph in the deanery, appears as a deacon; Robert Clifford and Henry of Northampton are still alive; the families of the late bishops are well represented; there is still Henry, the son of Bishop Robert de Sigillo; and Richard Ruffus, a relic perhaps of the house of Belmeis; there is Gilbert archdeacon of Middlesex, Ralph archdeacon of Hereford; and Robert Foliot, all kinsmen and nominees of the great Gilbert. Other names recall the court and council of Henry II.; Osbert de Camera, Richard of Windsor, Brand the king's clerk, and William of Ely, who was, after the death of Bishop Richard, the king's treasurer. He, perhaps, was a kinsman of Richard FitzNeal, and a descendant of the organizer of the Exchequer. One name occurs very suggestive of a new principle of papal policy afterwards to be dangerously developed, Laurence, the nephew of Pope Celestine III. Ralph de Hauterive, the brave archdeacon of Colchester, must have been dead;

Names of the canons who were Ralph's latest companions.

Peter of Blois.

Walter Map.

Richard of Stortford.

Other canons.

Society at S. Paul's.

his successor Richard appears among the confirming canons; Archdeacon Paris, too, and many others whose names may be found in the ancient lists of the canons, and whose contributions towards our author's narrative may here and there be detected. We are not, however, obliged to regard the old age of the dean as desolate or dull; there are old friends still about him, and he keeps up his interest in the public history and the promotion of his fellow canons to the very last. He cannot have lived long after the last event noted in the Imagines.

Difficulty in ascertaining the date of Ralph's death.

The date of the death of Ralph de Diceto has never been exactly ascertained. Bale, who in his first edition had fixed the period of his "flourishing" (claruisse fertur) in the year 1200, in his second edition substituted for it the year 1210.[1] This statement, which may have been a mere error of the press, was accepted as probable, or at least as proving that the dean was alive as late as 1210. The date was accepted, however, as a conjecture, only for lack of a better. Wharton and Le Neve both expressly stated Bale to be their authority, and the latter was unable to reconcile the statement with the fact pointed out by Newcourt,[2] that Alard of Burnham, the successor of Ralph, was dean in 1204. So high, however, was Bale's authority, that, rather than suppose him to have been mistaken, it was suggested that Ralph probably resigned the deanery before his death. As there can be no doubt that Bale's date was a mere conjecture, the question must be further argued.

Bale's date.

Evidence of the Imagines.

The last place in which Ralph in his own book mentions himself is in 1199, when he tells that he presented William of S. Mere l'Eglise to the archbishop to be consecrated to see of London on the 23rd of May. The Imagines are continued for nearly three years longer, and if the latter

[1] "Claruit anno Servatoris nostri "1210, quo Chronica finiebat sub "Johanne Anglorum rege." Possibly 1210 is a misprint for 1201.

[2] Repertorium, i. 34.

pages were drawn up under his eye, he must have been alive as late as March 25, 1202. The authority for the latter pages of this work is not beyond dispute, and as the original MS. closes at the coronation of John, we cannot certainly prolong the author's actual superintendence of the work longer than June 1199. It is, however, probable that the statement made under the year 1201, that the Cardinal John of Salerno was solemnly received at S. Paul's on the 31st of August, was made by the Pauline scribe, and proves the continuation to have been written at S. Paul's. If this is the case, we can scarcely suppose the dean to have died in the interval, for that event would almost of necessity have been noted in its place. It may then, I think, be allowed that on the evidence of the MSS. of the Imagines, Ralph de Diceto was certainly alive in June 1199, and most probably as late as March 1202.

He was probably alive as late as March 25, 1202.

We have next to look for the further limit, the date at which his successor appears in office. This is supplied by Newcourt; the first recorded act of Dean Alard was "the confirmation of the church of Shoreditch to the office "of precentor of S. Paul's,"[1] and if that confirmation was made soon after the grant of that church by King John, which was dated on the 25th of March in the fifth year of his reign, 1204, as in all likelihood it was, Alard must have been dean early in 1204. The obit of Ralph de Diceto was kept on the 22nd of November.[2] If these two limits be accepted he must have died on the 22nd of November either in 1202 or in 1203. The following consideration may lead to the conclusion that the former is the true date.

His successor was in office in March 1204.

Giraldus Cambrensis was at this moment carrying on one of his long struggles with adverse destiny in the

[1] Newcourt, Repertorium, i. 35. 97; Rot. Chart. (ed. Hardy), p. 124. It is to this foundation of the precentorship that the letter of Peter of Blois to Innocent III. refers; ep. 217; Opp., ed. Giles, ii. 170.

[2] Dugdale, S. Paul's; Milman, Annals of S. Paul's, p. 513.

Ralph employed as a judge on the appeal of Giraldus Cambrensis.

shape of an appeal to Rome and a trial before apostolic judges delegate in England. It is not worth our while to discuss the exact nature of the contest, or the reasons which may have led Innocent III. to appoint Ralph de Diceto one of the judges, still less to speculate on the course which the dean may be supposed to have taken. It is enough to remark that early in the year 1201 [1] Innocent III. had nominated as judges, Eustace Bishop of Ely, the dean of London, and the archdeacon of Buckingham. Letters from the Pope to these judges are preserved by Giraldus, dated July 27, 1201,[2] and July 29, 1201;[3] and a letter of Giraldus himself, addressed to the same, and dated before Oct. 19, 1202 is likewise extant.[4]

Various sessions of the judges.

The judges had in fact held, or proposed to hold, five sessions upon his cause. On the 26th of January 1202 he had appeared at Worcester. The judges had appointed deputies, the archdeacon of Gloucester was to represent Bishop Eustace; the prior of S. Mary's was to act as substitute for the dean and archdeacon; and he only appeared to represent the three.[5] Again, Giraldus appeared at Newport on the 4th of May; the bishop did not attend, and the dean again sent a substitute.[6] On the 18th of June at Brackley the bishop was present; the dean and archdeacon sent substitutes.[7] At Bedford, on the 1st of August, another session was held;[8] and at last, on the 9th or 16th of September, all the three judges met at S. Alban's in person.[9] On the 16th of October the judges intended to make their report before the archbishop and his suffragans, but, the week before that, Giraldus, finding his safety endangered, fled from England and

---

[1] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 68, 69. The chronological relation of the following references will be found explained in the Councils and Ecclesiastical documents (Haddan and Stubbs), vol. i. pp. 419–429.

[2] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 68, 69.

[3] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 70.

[4] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 237.

[5] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 203.

[6] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 215.

[7] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 218.

[8] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 221.

[9] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 223, 228.

betook himself to Rome.[1] The next papal document issued in the case is an order for a new election to the see of S. David's, dated May 25 or 26, 1203.[2] This is addressed to Bishop Eustace, the archdeacon of Buckingham, and the Bishop of Worcester. It seems most probable that, if the dean of London were yet alive, the delegation would have been continued to him, for in the many long records of suits carried on at Rome at this period, it is difficult to find instances in which a change in the body of judges delegate is made without strong cause. It is true we are not quite certain that in this case the dean of London was Ralph de Diceto,[3] but it is extremely probable that he was the person so designated, and that he was not superseded by the nomination of a new judge,[4] but vacated his place by death. If this be true he died on the 22nd of November 1202. If on further investigation it should appear that he was superseded, then, if the dean were indeed Ralph de Diceto, his death must be fixed on the 22nd of November 1203; if he were not Ralph, but his successor Alard, the date must be thrown back to the year 1201. But there can be little doubt that the venerable scholar was himself employed as papal judge, and that we may thus approximate to, if we cannot actually determine, the date of his death.[5]

Ralph's name not included in the commission of 1203.

Probable date of his death, Nov. 22, 1202.

---

[1] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 237.

[2] Gir. Camb. Opp., iii. 281; cf. pp. 71 sq.

[3] It is just possible, but most improbable, that the dean of London might be the dean of S. Martin's le Grand. See Rot. Chart., ed. Hardy, p. 64.

[4] It is also possible that the Pope might regard the commission issued in 1203 as the beginning of a new business; certainly the Bishop of Worcester had been taking part with Giraldus before the older commission had concluded its work; and his name may have been now inserted at Giraldus's application; but it is less probable than that the dean was dead.

[5] Ten shillings were paid to the major canons annually on this day: "Istam solutionem decanus in- "stitutione sua cavebit facere, et "hæc et alia pro domibus suis in "atrio S. Pauli ordinata fideliter "observare." List of Obits in S. Paul's, by Archdeacon Hale, at the end of Milman's Annals of S. Paul's, p. 513.

Legend of the death of a dean of S. Paul's.

Archbishop Parker has preserved, in an extract from an ancient fragment, a story of the death of a dean of S. Paul's which must be noticed here, not for its importance or probability, but to guard against the possibility of its being referred to Ralph de Diceto. In the time of Archbishop Hubert Walter, he says, a dean of the church of S. Paul at London was keeper of the king's treasury, or, as it is called, the treasurer. In that office he collected a great treasure. On his deathbed he was advised by the bishops and magnates to receive the Holy Eucharist, but, from fear and dread, he constantly deferred doing so. Wondering at this, the friendly lords requested the king to visit him and compel him to receive the sacrament. The dean promised to do so the next day, and then proceeded to dictate his will to a single scribe. Having turned the rest of his attendants out of the room, he kept the notary waiting for some time. "In the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost," the formula began. When the dean found that this was being written, he angrily ordered the writer to erase it and to write these words only: "I leave all my goods to my lord the king, my "body to the grave, and my soul to the devil." Then he died, and the king gratefully ordered his body to be carried in a cart and thrown into a river.[1] That

[1] Antiquitates, (ed. Drake), p. 228. "Nam et eodem tempore ec-"clesiæ Paulinæ Londonensis de-"canus ærarii regii custos fuit, sive "ut vocant thesaurarius; is, eo fun-"gens officio, ingentem clam the-"saurum coacervavit; tandem in "lethalem morbum incidit; cumque "jam valetudinis nulla spes esset, "ab episcopis et magnatibus admo-"netur de sumendo corpore Christi. "Quo audito cohorruit remque con-"sulto distulit. Quod illi mirati "regem rogant ut ad sacramenti "perceptionem eum compelleret. "Accedens rex eum rogavit, mo-"nuit atque jussit. Is se id factu-"rum crastino promisit. Interea ad "testamentum condendum monitus "est; ad quod paratus exire præ-"ter unum scriptorem ceteros vo-"luit. Is testamentum scripturus "exspectans quid decanus dictaret, "ex more testamentorum sic orsus "est: 'In nomine Patris et Filii,' "etc. Quod cum decanus compe-"risset, iratus jussit id deleri et "hæc verba tantum scribi: 'Lego

the archbishop somewhere found the story we need not doubt, but it is not likely ever to have been anything but a fable, and there is no dean of S. Paul's to whom it could be made to apply. The only dean who died during Hubert's pontificate was Ralph de Diceto, and he was not the king's treasurer. The only treasurer who died during the same period was Bishop Richard, who died in England when the king was absent in France. William of Ely, his successor, was a canon of S. Paul's, but not dean, and he long outlived both Hubert and his master, retaining his office until the year 1223. I have not tried to explore the origin of the story; it is sufficient to prove that it cannot be true here. Ralph de Diceto left behind him no such tradition of wickedness and despair; the canons of his church observed his anniversary as the day of the death of "Ralph de Diceto, "the good dean."[2]

Not applicable to Ralph de Diceto.

As I propose to reserve for another volume any examination that may be requisite of Ralph's value as a historian, it will be enough to say here that the two volumes of this edition contain the whole of the historical matter which claims him as author or collector. A glance at the list of his works given by Bale in his Scriptores, compared with the contents of these volumes, will show that nothing has been lost.

His entire historical works contained in this edition.

Bale ascribes to Ralph de Diceto sixteen distinct works, one of which, the "Sermones," is perhaps apocryphal or conjectural, and two others, the Postills on Wisdom and Ecclesiasticus, do not fall within the historical class. Fortunately, by giving the initial words of each of the thirteen others, he enables us to identify

Bale's list of his works.

"'omnia bona mea domino regi, "'corpus sepulturæ, et animam dia-"'bolo.' Quo dicto expiravit; rex "cadaver illius jussit curru expor-"tari atque in amnem projici et "demergi." [Ex fragmento quodam veteri.]

[2] MS. Hutton, 6957, fo. 25: Among the obits in the kalendar, "x. kal. "Dec., Radulfus de Disceto decanus "bonus."

List of the works of Ralph de Diceto.

them either with particular sections of the Abbreviationes and Imagines, or with some of the Opuscula. They are these:

(1.) "De temporibus mundi;" beginning "In opus-" culo sequenti." These are the first words of the Preface to the Abbreviationes, vol. i., p. 3.

(2.) "Chronicorum opus;" beginning, "Annos ab " initio." This is the *Prologus* to the Abbreviationes, vol. i., p. 18.

(3.) "Imagines;" beginning "Insula Brytanniæ." These are the first words of the extract from Bede, which appears in the introductory matter prefixed to the Abbreviationes, vol. i., p. 30.

(4.) "Continuatio Roberti de Monte;" beginning " Henricus Galfridi;" the opening words of the "Ima-" gines" proper, vol. i., p. 291.

(5.) "Abbreviationes;" beginning "Chronica sunt " imagines," the extract from Cassiodorus introducing the Abbreviationes, vol. i., p. 34.

(6.) "De præclaris scriptoribus;" beginning "Trogus " Pompeius." This is the "De viris illustribus," vol. i., p. 20.

(7.) "De adventu Saxonum;" beginning "Tempore " Vortigerni," This appears among the Opuscula, vol. ii., p. 231.

(8.) "Gesta Normannorum;" beginning "Rollo Da-" nus." This also is among the Opuscula, vol. ii., p. 241.

(9.) "Origines Hyberniæ et Scottiæ;" beginning " Hybernia post Britanniam." This, which is an extract from Henry of Huntingdon, appears in the excerpts prefixed to the Abbreviationes, vol. i., p. 10.

(10.) "De synodis Ecclesiæ;" beginning "Synodo-" rum alia." Among the Opuscula, vol. ii., p. 270.

(11.) "Epistolas ad diversos;" beginning "Gualtero " Dei gratia Rothomagensi." These are the letters which occupy the last pages of the Imagines.

(12.) "De Regibus Anglorum;" no doubt the short

history which occurs among the Opuscula, beginning with the reign of Alfred, vol. ii., p. 234.

List of our author's works.

(13.) "De mirabilibus Angliæ;" the tract which appears as part of the Abbreviationes, vol. i., p. 10.

The two authentic theological works are also described by the initial words, "Super Ecclesiasticum," beginning "Docebo vos per manum Dei nostri;" "In Sapientiam," beginning "Ecce descripsi eam tripliciter." These two books are mentioned in the old catalogue of the Pauline Library, printed by Dugdale in his history of S. Paul's.

His habit of making extracts and compendiums from his larger works.

A more exact idea of the number of our author's historical treatises will be gathered from the account of the manuscripts which follows. It is perhaps necessary to premise that several of the smaller works, which are differently arranged in the various MSS., are simply collections of extracts on the particular subject in hand, chosen and transcribed verbatim from the Abbreviationes or Imagines. Thus the "Series Causæ," the last of the *Opuscula,* containing the history of the controversy between Henry II. and Becket, is only a transcript of the passages on the subject, which occur in regular course in the larger work.[1] The "Annales de Archi-"episcopis Dorobernensibus," addressed to Archbishop Hubert, do not contain a word of new matter, but are simply a selection of dates, names, and particulars from the Abbreviationes. This tract, which it would be unreasonable to print at length, is given in the form of a collation in the Appendix to the Preface to our second volume. In the same way it is possible that the history of the origin of the counts of Anjou, which is preserved in MS. in the Victorine Library, and printed in the "Chroniques "d'Anjou," by Messieurs Marchegay and Salmon, as the work of Thomas Pactius, prior of Loches, is a similar collection of passages from the Abbreviationes and Ima-

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 279 sq.

Works wrongly ascribed to Ralph de Diceto.

gines, so arranged as to form a continuous account of the growth of the Angevin house. One or two books, ascribed to Ralph on insufficient evidence, are found on examination to contain matter which he could not have written. The Sketch of the History of the Britons, published by Gale in his Scriptores[1] (1691), is an enlarged and garbled copy of Ralph's abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth; and the lives of the archbishops of Canterbury, printed by Wharton at the end of the second volume of the Anglia Sacra, are in the same way a later work, written no doubt by John Pike, consisting largely of extracts made verbatim from our author's works, but trimmed up and continued by another hand long after his time.

I now proceed to give an account of the several MSS. which have been used in the present edition.

The Lambeth MS. 8.

(A.) The Lambeth MS. 8 furnishes the text of the Abbreviationes and Imagines and various readings in the Opuscula. It is a fine large folio MS., written on very stout vellum, in double columns, forty-four lines to the page, rubricated in red. The Abbreviationes and Imagines fill 139 leaves. On folio 140 follows the "Abbreviatio de Gestis Normannorum"; on folio 146 the list of popes and bishops which form part of the *Opuscula*; on folio 149 begins the "Gesta Britonum"; on folio 151 the English regnal lists, followed by the table of schisms; folios 153 and 154 contain the list of synods and tables of foreign kings; on folio 155 are a set of poetical excerpts from Hildebert of Le Mans, Claudian, Sidonius Apollinaris, and Bernardus Sylvestris; and folios 156 and 157 contain the prophecies of Merlin extracted

[1] R. de Diceto, "Historia com-"pendiosa de Regibus," p. 553: "Ejusdem de partitione provinciæ "in schiras et episcopatus et regna," p. 560. The latter is drawn from an Arundel MS., and although in the body of the work ascribed to Ralph de Diceto, is acknowledged in the preface to be the work of an anonymous writer.

from Geoffrey of Monmouth, breaking off abruptly with the words "ora sua in hunc" (Hist. Brit. lib. viii. c. i.), after which a folio or two must have been torn away. The poetical extracts as containing no original matter do not perhaps demand a place in this edition, but they serve to show the principle on which the author selected his quotations. The last page of the volume which has been pasted down by the binder, contains some interesting notes. Both are printed in the Appendix to the Preface to our second volume. The most important of the original fragments are the regulations issued by Richard I. for the holding of tournaments, and a precious letter from that king to Hubert Walter touching the inquiry which was to have been made into the accounts of the money raised for the ransom. The copy of Merlin's prophecies is not of course worth reprinting.

The Lambeth MS.

Fragments in the cover.

This MS. is no doubt an original possession of the author, and must by him have been left among the archives of his cathedral. It was there when Edward I. examined the treasures of the cathedrals. It is identified with the volume denoted in the catalogue of the library of S. Paul's drawn up in 1458, thus—"F. Item Cronica "Radulphi de Diceto, 2° folio 'Nomina regionum.'"[1] The Nomina regionum are found on the second folio of the existing MS. A brief note written on the reverse of the first folio, in penmanship of the fifteenth century, proves that no material part of the MS. has perished: "Chronica composita a Radulpho de Diceto decano "(Sancti Pauli Londoniensi, added in a later hand) et "Incipit liber a rubrica 'in opusculo sequenti trium "temporum,' et finit in penultimo folio in rubrica "'Comites Flandrenses.'" This seems to be copied from Dean Baldock's Inventory.[2]

This MS. belonged to the Library of S. Paul's.

The MS. was no doubt transferred from S. Paul's to Lambeth soon after the reformation.

---

[1] Dugdale, S. Paul's (ed. 1658), p. 283; ed. Ellis, p. 393.

[2] See above, p. lxxi.

The Lambeth MS.

It formed a part of the archiepiscopal library when it was removed to Cambridge during the troubles of the Commonwealth, and was restored at the restoration. It may have been seen, but cannot, I think, be shown to have been used, by Twysden in the preparation of his edition, for although he notes a great number of various readings which occur in this MS., he invariably cites for them the S. Alban's MS., the MS. C. of this edition, which is for the most part a minute and exact copy of the Lambeth text.

The Cotton MS. Claudius E. 3.

(B.) The second MS. used for the Abbreviationes and Imagines is scarcely second in importance and value to the Lambeth MS. It is the Cottonian MS. Claudius E. 3; a noble folio, written throughout in the same beautiful hand, in double columns, forty lines to the column, and rubricated in the same way as MS. A. It is obvious at first sight that the two MSS. are, if not the work of the same hand, and throughout a large portion of MS. A. the penmanship is identically the same, the work of the same scriptorium. The Cottonian MS. contains in 151 folios the Abbreviationes and Imagines, but not the Opuscula. The text of the Imagines stops short at the year 1198 (vol. ii. p. 159), the date no doubt at which it left the scriptorium of S. Paul's. It contains the table of the "Capitula Imaginum" appended at the end, instead of being inserted, as in A., at the beginning of the Imagines; and this table is continued in the shape of brief historical annals down to the year 1272. These annals are either an abridgment of the Monastic Annals of Winchester, which have been published in this series under the editorship of Mr. Luard, or else founded on the same original memoranda. They contain nothing that entitles them to appear in this edition, and indeed are mentioned only because they show the MS. itself to have belonged to the church of Winchester. Many marginal notes, calling attention to the mention of Winchester in the text, would tend to the same conclusion. In other respects the MS. tells nothing of its own history. It

Also a Pauline MS.

Continued at Winchester.

was used by Twysden for his edition, and is entitled by him "Codex Major"; the first and best of the three Cottonian MSS. from which he framed his text.

The Royal MS.

(C.) The third MS. collated for his edition is the royal MS. 13 E. 6, denoted by C. This is, like the former two, a large folio on thick vellum, double columns, forty lines to the column, and rubricated in the same way. It is, however, a few years later in penmanship than either A. or B., and the hand is intended as an imitation of that of those volumes. It is no doubt the work of a scribe of the abbey of S. Alban's, who has been employed exactly to transcribe MS. A. It does not, however, contain the Opuscula, although on the reverse of the first leaf, a copy of the "Series Causæ" has been inserted a short time after the rest of the volume was written. In this MS. 136 folios are devoted to the Abbreviationes and Imagines; at the end of the Imagines a short continuation to the year 1216 has been added in the monastery of S. Alban's. Occasional notices of the history of S. Alban's, the changes of abbots, and dedications of the church, have been inserted in the text or margin of this MS. by the transcriber or a contemporary. Otherwise the MS. is, with some slight exceptions presently to be noticed, an exact transcript of the original. It was in the king's library at S. James's when Twysden used it.

Written at S. Alban's.

Continued at S. Alban's.

Marginal annotations.

The Dublin MS.

(D.) The fourth MS. used for the purpose of collation is numbered E. 4, 24, among the MSS. of Trinity College, Dublin. It is a small quarto, and has suffered a good deal from the binder, the margin being very much reduced, and the dates and other rubrics being thus cut away. The volume, besides portions of Ralph de Diceto's work, contains also the chronicles of Ralph Niger and Ralph of Coggeshall. It is written throughout in double columns, thirty-one lines to the page; it is rubricated in red and blue, the initial letters being highly finished. It does not furnish by any means the complete text of our author's chief work, but beginning with the "de viris illustribus," the latter sections of which have

Description of the Dublin MS.

disappeared, it proceeds with the Abbreviationes from the year of the Incarnation, and continues these in a very much abridged form as far as the tenth century, from which point it represents the original text somewhat more adequately. But the arrangement is disorderly, and large omissions occur in many places throughout the whole length of the book. Especially may be noted the great confusion which follows the notices of the year 1065, where the scribe has leaped at once to the year 1148 of the Capitula Imaginum; he has followed the Capitula to the year 1197, and then as suddenly returned to the history of the Norman Conquest. This, which is clearly the error of a careless transcriber, is the worst instance; the omissions are chiefly of letters and of long details of foreign history. These are marked in the notes of the present edition, and have no other special significance. One great boon is however conferred by MS. D.

Furnishes the continuation of the text.

It continues the text for several columns after the MSS. A. B. and C. end; from the coronation of John to the beginning of the year 1201. I am unable to say positively whether this MS. was used by Twysden, but he must have had before him either this or a very similar one. If MS. D. were, as seems not improbable, the property of Archbishop Ussher, he may have had access to it; or possibly it may be the second of the two smaller copies of our author's work which he had used in the Cotton Library, where it is not now to be traced. For the use of this MS. I have to tender my very sincere thanks to the Provost and Fellows of Trinity College, who were so kind as to lend it to me for six months.

The Cotton MS. Otho D. 7.

(O.) A fifth MS. has been occasionally referred to, the Cotton MS. Otho D. 7, of which a few charred fragments now remain available only for very occasional collation. This MS. is described in Smith's Catalogue of the Cotton MSS.[1] as containing nearly the same matter as MS. B., beginning with the "de viris illustribus" and

---

[1] Smith's Catalogue, p. 75.

extracts from ancient historians, and proceeding with the Abbreviationes, the Capitula, and the Imagines in their proper order. Besides the work of Ralph, the MS. contained a copy of Ailred of Rievaulx, a list of the East Anglian bishops, the names of the counties, some works or portions of the works of Henry of Huntingdon, a book of the miracles of S. Thomas, and an account of the agreement between the Earl Warenne and the abbot of Cluny relative to the priory of Lewes, an abstract of which is to be found on the last page of the Imagines. That this MS. was used by Twysden is certain; and it seems most probable that he owed to it either the entire continuation from the coronation of John to the end,[1] or the small portion of that continuation which is not found in MS. D. The fact that the MS. contained the agreement respecting Lewes may suggest that it had at some time belonged to that priory, and so also, perhaps, that the concluding pages were the work of some Lewes scribe and not of Ralph de Diceto himself. As the later portions of the Imagines which once existed in this MS. have been entirely destroyed, it is impossible to form any conclusion on the subject; but if Twysden obtained from it the Colophon as given in his edition, and repeated in the present edition on the authority of his text, we must allow the whole continuation to have proceeded from Ralph's hand. If that were not the case, Twysden must have had some other MS. all traces of which are now lost. This is, I think, improbable.

Description of the Cotton MS. Otho D. 7.

Before proceeding to describe the MSS. used for the text of the Opuscula, it may be as well to state briefly and definitely the relations which I suppose to have existed between the two MSS. A. and B. They are so very much alike both in form and matter, and both have such appearance of originality, of being productions

Relations of the Lambeth and Claudius MSS.

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 166–174.

Comparison of MSS. A. and B.

at first hand of the author, that it is by no means easy, even after a careful and often repeated collation of their variations, to determine which is entitled to the first place and the highest credit. The Lambeth MS. is, it is true, in somewhat rougher form than the Cotton, but this would not by itself be sufficient evidence of priority. It is, however, clear that the former was the property of the author and remained in the library of his cathedral as a relic of the "good dean;" whilst the latter is found at Winchester without anything but internal evidence to prove that the author had ever seen it. They are proved by the penmanship to be sister manuscripts; MS. A. seems to have been begun in 1188, MS. B. in 1190.[1] MS. B. does not contain the Opuscula which are written on the spare leaves of MS. A., and is therefore to be regarded as probably a fair copy made immediately after the determination of the text of A. This being the case, MS. A. might be expected to remain in the author's hands, and to receive from time to time corrections and emendations which would not be followed in B., either because that MS. had already left his hands or because it was thought sufficient to make the alterations in one copy. And thus, although A. is the original and earlier manuscript, it is possible that in some places B. contains the earlier and original text. One passage remains which proves this to have been done. MS. C. is, as has been said, a most exact and punctilious copy of A. In every passage but one in which the text of A. is written over an erasure and differs from B., the S. Alban's MS. agrees with the existing text of A. It therefore was transcribed after the erasure had been made and the corrected matter inserted; but with one remarkable exception, which will be found noted at vol. ii. p. 107. As the passage was originally written, our author had described Richard as imprisoned in a place called "Trivallis,"

They are sister MSS.

Character of the variations in the two MSS.

[1] Vol. i. p. 18.

which he identified with the Triballi of Aristotle, the tribe among whom it was lawful for the son to put his father to death in his old age. As thus originally stated, the note was copied immediately into MS. B. and shortly after into MS. C. from the text of A. But some time later the author discovered his mistake and altered the text as it now appears. The marks of erasure are visible, but the hand is the same that has written the rest of the text. Here I think we have a direct proof that A. and B. were originally sister MSS. and that C. was transcribed from A. before the final correction of that particular passage.

MS. C. follows MS. A. except in one passage.

Two instances will be sufficient to show that B. in some places preserved an earlier text, A. having been altered and C. transcribed after the final correction of A. In vol. i. pp. 390 and 429 will be found in the text two fragments of letters, supposed to be written by Alexander III. to the King of Valentia, written over erasures; these are not found in MS. B., which in both cases contains other matter of a somewhat argumentative character, slightly reflecting on the monastic order. It may be suggested that the dean towards the close of his life thought it best to weed out of his book such passages as seemed likely to offend the monks. It is even possible that the alterations were made to render the volume useful for the S. Alban's transcript. Such, however, is the fact, and in whatever way it is explained it enables us so far to determine the relations between the MSS. Many of the passages illustrating the history of the family of Belmeis and of the internal life of the cathedral are omitted in B. Two short passages, that are found in A., are omitted in C.[1]

MS. B. has sometimes preserved an earlier reading.

Omissions in MS. B.

That the text of B. is to be regarded as a somewhat carefully revised recension of the original text of A. is proved by the existence of several passages, chiefly but not solely found in the Abbreviationes, in which the text of books quoted, or of documents, is given somewhat

Passages given at greater length in MS. B.

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 121, 138.

B. sometimes expands, sometimes abridges A.

more fully in B. than in A. This is not a general rule. Sometimes the transcriber of B. has abridged rather than amplified his original; such cases will be found in vol. i. pp. 107, sq., where it is clear that the copyist was reducing his text as he proceeded. That the reverse is sometimes the case can only prove that the transcriber of B. had before him the original books from which the writer of A. had made his extracts; that in fact he collated not only MS. A. but the books from which MS. A. was taken, especially Sigebert of Gemblours and Robert de Monte. In one important instance, during the progress of the Becket history, B. contains a short paragraph at the close of one of the letters which is not in A.[1] Here, unless we suppose it to have been erased in A., which is not probable, the scribe must have had before him the original letter. Another case will be found in the correspondence touching Longchamp in 1191, where MS. B. has preserved in full a letter given only in abstract in A.[2] All these variations will be found in the notes of this edition. They are, as it seems to me, adequately explained in this way, and it is hard to see how they can be explained otherwise.

The text of A. preferred in this edition.

It may be asked why, if I had reason to suppose that B. in any place preserved either an earlier or a more perfect reading, I did not determine to use it as the text and give the readings of A. in the notes. My answer will be that, although the readings in certain passages were superior, the claim to actual originality belonged unmistakably to the Lambeth MS. It is on the whole fuller, it is on the whole earlier, and at the same time it has the latest alterations which the compiler thought it worth his while to make. It was in his hands earlier and left them later; it probably saw the very last notes made under his immediate direction.

MSS. D. and O. both seem to have been derived from MS. B. or some transcript of it; but the confused arrangement of the former and the unfortunate condition of

[1] Vol. i. p. 332; cf. p. 339.

[2] Vol. ii. p. 91.

the latter prevent any very distinct judgment on the matter. **MSS. of the Opuscula.**

The collection of Opuscula is found in a more or less complete state in the MSS. R. T. and F. Several of the tracts and tables are also, as has been already mentioned, found on the spare leaves of MS. A. It is by no means improbable that other MSS. of these may be forthcoming, but as we have in MS. R. an unquestionable original, and as the Opuscula altogether are of very little importance, it has not been thought necessary to search farther.

The MS. R. is the property of Sir Henry Day Ingilby, and is numbered 4 in the precious collection preserved at Ripley Castle in Yorkshire. It is a very noble folio MS., on fine vellum, containing in all 37 folios, partly written in three columns, partly in four, but chiefly in two, and very handsomely rubricated in red and blue. It contains, besides the Opuscula which, as printed in our second volume, are exactly reproduced from the Ripley MS., a bundle of folios inserted after folio 9, and in the middle of the regnal tables of the kings, which were probably intended for another volume. **The Ripley MS.**

These inserted folios, as they contain only matter which is found in other parts of the works of Ralph de Diceto, have not been reprinted here. A short notice of them is however now given; they are (1.) the *Summa* of the controversy between Henry II. and Becket, printed in abstract, in vol. ii. pp. 279–288; this fills folios 10 to 13; (2.) the tract *De viris illustribus* (vol. i. p. 20); the *Nomina regionum* (vol. i. p. 6); the letters to and from the Archbishop of Lyons, (vol. i. p. 5); and the extracts from the early historians and geographers (vol. i. p. 24); these fill folios 14–16; (3.) on folio 17 is the tract *De Mirabilibus Britanniæ*, (vol. i. p. 10); (4.) and on follio 18 the two pedigrees, that of Henry II., and that of William the Lion, traced up to Noah. At the end of the volume, folios 36 and 37, are, as in MS. A., the prophecies of Merlin, from the seventh book of Geoffrey of Monmouth; and on the **Folios inserted in the middle of the MS.**

The Ripley MS.

inside cover at the end is the prophecy of Merlinus Silvestris revealed to Edward the Confessor. The cover at the beginning of the volume contains the pedigree of the family of Edward I. traced back to Ethelred II.

Letter to bishop Longchamp.

The peculiar feature of this MS. is the fact that it contains the long letter addressed by our author to William Longchamp, which serves as an introduction to the regnal tables.[1] The MS. was, however, written after the more brilliant part of Longchamp's career was over, and probably in 1194 or 1195. The list of the bishops of Salisbury contains the name of Herbert, who was consecrated in 1194, while the list of the bishops of Worcester does not contain the name of John of Coutances, who was consecrated in 1196. Longchamp himself died in January 1197. The history of the MS. confirms the belief that it was a presentation copy given to Longchamp himself. A note at the end of the volume tells from what source it was acquired for the Ripley library:—"Liber Sanctæ Mariæ Ebor." Robert Longchamp, the brother of the bishop, was made made abbot of S. Mary's at York in 1197. We cannot doubt that the book had been written for the chancellor; it is an unmistakable production of the Pauline scriptorium. After Longchamp's death it fell into the hands of his brother, and it was preserved in his abbey until the dissolution, when, in common with many of the treasures of Fountains and other Yorkshire abbeys, it came into the worthy keeping of the house of Ingilby.

The MS. belonged to the abbey of S. Mary, at York.

The Cotton MS. Tiberius A. 9.

The Cotton MS. Tiberius A. 9, contains the whole of the Opuscula, save the letter to Longchamp, but in different order from that in which they occur in MS. R. It is considerably later than the date of our author, and in fact contains, in continuation of the several *opuscula*, details reaching onwards to the year 1216. The same volume comprises the annals of Osney which have been edited by Mr. Luard in the fourth volume of the Annales

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 177, sq.

Monastici, where he has given an account of that portion of the MS. It is possible that the Opuscula also were transcribed in or for the use of the canons of Osney. The more important variations of arrangement in this and the following MS. are given in the notes of this edition, but as both are inferior to the Ripley MS. and to the portions of the same matter contained in MS. A., an exact collation of their readings has not been attempted.

The MS. Faustina A. 8.

F. The MS. Faustina A. 8 is a MS. of similar character and about the same date. It was once the property of the monastery of S. Mary, Overey. A full description of its contents will be found in the Cottonian Catalogue.

Vespasian A. 22.

The Cottonian MS. Vespasian A. 22 contains the "Series Causæ," and its arrangement has been followed in the present edition.

The C.C.C.C. MS. 76.

Among the compilations made by Ralph de Diceto from his own larger works the "Annales de Archiepiscopis Dorobernensibus" is perhaps the most important. It is a presentation volume, written in the usual beautiful hand, to be given to Archbishop Hubert Walter. As it contains nothing that is not found in the Abbreviationes, I have contented myself with giving an account of its contents in the Appendix to the Preface of our second volume. The MS. containing it is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge;[1] it is written in double columns, 40 lines to the page, rubricated in red and blue, and numbering 23 folios. It has no marks that determine where it was deposited between the date of writing and the time when it came into Arch-

[1] MS. C. C. C. lxxvi. "Codex "Membranaceus in folio, cujus "prima pars seculo xiii°. scripta "continet (1) Radulphi de Diceto "annales de Dorobernensibus archi-"episcopis ab Augustino ad Hu-"bertum: nihil hic invenies quod "non extat in abbreviationibus "chronicorum ejusdem autoris, ex "quibus ipse docet in prologo ad "Hubertum se hoc opus compilasse; "hi vero annales ubique discrepant "ab historia archiepiscoporum Can-"tuariensium quæ sub nomine Ra-"dulphi prodiit in secundo tomo "Angliæ Sacræ." Nasmith's Catalogue, p. 49.

The Annals of the Archbishops.

bishop Parker's keeping. Henry Wharton had not, when he published the Anglia Sacra, seen this MS.; and when he afterwards made acquaintance with it, did not think it of much importance. He had, however, been to some extent, misled by finding in the Arundel MS. 220, a book of similar character. That MS. contains the lives of the archbishops, certainly extracted with some fidelity from Ralph de Diceto, but brought down some time later than his death, and likewise bearing traces of later manipulation. Its claim, which is of modern assertion only, to be an original work, is untenable. It is undoubtedly one of the compilations of John Pike, a writer who is known to have used the Imagines, and whose hand may be traced possibly in the "Historia Regum" and other memoranda which Gale, in his Scriptores Quindecim, referred to Ralph de Diceto.

Some points which I have been obliged, in order to avoid repetition, to pass over somewhat cursorily, will recur in the preface to the second volume. It remains for me to thank those owners of MSS. to whom I am most especially obliged for the liberal access to their treasures which has been granted me. First I have to express my gratitude to the Archbishop of Canterbury for allowing me the free use of one of the κειμήλια of the Lambeth Library, the Pauline MS.; next I thank Sir Henry D. Ingilby for allowing me the use of the volume of Opuscula so long the property of S. Mary's at York; the Provost and Fellows of Trinity College, Dublin, for the loan of MS. D.; Mr. S. S. Lewis, the librarian of Corpus Christi College Cambridge, for leave to make a collation of the Annales de Archiepiscopis; and last the Dean and Chapter of S. Paul's, and Dr. Sparrow Simpson, their librarian, and one of my own successors in charge of the archiepiscopal library, for a sight of the manuscript treasures of their Muniment Room.

Cholderton Rectory,
July 17, 1876.

ADDITIONAL NOTES AND CORRECTIONS.

Vol. I.

Page 34, line 21, *for* "si quid" we should perhaps *read* "siquidem," as in the Annales de Archiepiscopis.
" 54, note 6, *read* "Nirgil, Ecl. iv., v. 7."
" 69, line 35, *Gordianus papa* is a mistake, no doubt, for *Gordianus imperator*.
" 88, margin, line 2, for "*eleetion*" read "*election*."
" 104, note 1, *for* "xlii" *read* "xiii."
" 110, margin, line 18, *for* "retruns" *read* "returns."
" 134, line 20, insert a comma after "Leo."
" 147, margin, line 11, *for* "Louis" *read* "Lewis."
" 172, line 30, "Milinandum" should perhaps be "Milmandum," cf., vol. ii., p. 256.
" 174, line 1, *for* "Stephan" *read* "Stephano."
" 231, line 10, *read* "submerso."
" 240, margin, line 31, *read* "profession to."
" 285, note 3, line 2, *for* "expauds" *read* "expands."
" 300, margin, line 8, *for* "Adrian VI." *read* "Adrian IV."
" 344, margin, line 1, *read* "1170."
" 363, margin, line 4, *for* "Henry VI." *read* "Henry V."
" 385, margin, line 24, *for* "Baldwin III." *read* "Baldwin IV."
" 415, margin, line 20, instead of "Marriage of Johanna at Palermo" *read* "Arrival of Johanna at S. Giles."
" 431, margin, line 16, *for* "ploce" *read* "place."

RADULFI DE DICETO, LUNDONIENSIS DECANI, OPERA HISTORICA.

35254.

RADULFI DE DICETO, LUNDONIENSIS DECANI, OPERA HISTORICA.

I. Abbreviationes Chronicorum.

Præfatio.

The use and meaning of the signs placed in the margin of this work.

In opusculo sequenti trium temporum, scilicet ante legem, sub lege, sub gratia, poteris aliquantulam habere notitiam. Et licet tempus novissimum gratiæ cœlestis censeatur rore perfundi, vicissitudini subjacet, eventibus temporaneis immutabile nihil attribuens, sensibus humanis notam imprimens oblivionis. Itaque si, tempus gratiæ diligenter percurrens, quædam signa repereris in margine posita, non hoc statim quasi superfluum reprehendas. Ea namque sunt ad memoriam facilius excitandam non parum accommoda. Quod autem signorum varietas sub duodenario comprehenditur, nec hoc reputes otiosum; quoniam cum cronographiæ conditio semper in infinitum decurrat, et novis emergentibus tam causis quam casibus novæ fieri soleant annotationes, si continentia totius libelli nichil tibi perfectum obtulerit, in capitulis saltem sub numero prædicto contentis, et in excursu rerum ad eundem numerum specialiter pertinentium, aliquantulum perfectionis poteris invenire.

I. De persecutionibus Ecclesiæ — ꝐS̄

II. De scismatibus — SC̄

III. De conciliis — CŌ

IIII. De regum unctionibus

V. De privilegiis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ

VI. De quorundam archiepiscoporum Cantuariensium electionibus

VII. De ducibus Normannorum

VIII. De comitibus Andegavorum

IX. De controversiis inter regnum et sacerdotium

X. De regibus Anglorum et ducibus Normannorum

XI. De regibus Anglorum et ducibus Normannorum et comitibus Andegavorum

XII. De dissensione quæ fuit inter regem Henricum secundum et tres filios suos.

I.[1] Johanni[2] primæ sedis Lugdunensis archiepiscopo Radulfus de Diceto decanus Lundoniæ.

Habetur apud nos descriptio quædam xi^cim^. regionum. Habetur et alia quædam annexa, c. et xiii^cim^. provinciarum. Sed quoniam a multis retro temporibus sol justitiæ Christus partibus Occidentis illuxit, vehementer miramur Britanniam[3] a descriptione provinciarum prorsus exclusam, cum Julius Solinus nobilis ille cosmographus, Galliæ faciens mentionem, inter cætera scribat, "Finis erat orbis ora Gallici littoris, nisi Britannia insula pene nomen orbis alterius mereretur."[4] Rursus a tempore cujus summi pontificis inserta fuerit annalibus Latinorum illa memorialis distinctio, scilicet Lugdunensis prima, Lugdunensis ii^a^., Lugdunensis iii., Lugdunensis iiii^ta^., cum hoc credimus vestram non latere prudentiam, per vos instrui plurimum desideramus. Volumus etiam a vobis si placet audire quanto tempore Rothomagenses, Turonenses, Senonenses canonicis jussionibus Lugdunensium optemperaverint, vel qualiter hiis diebus extiterint indevoti. Postremo cum inter provincias Galliarum Lugdunensis sola spargitur quadriphariam, quid Julius Cæsar, quid Julius Solinus, quid Eutropius, de Gallia vel de Gallis senserint, licet hoc plene noveritis, volumus saltem ad memoriam revocare.

Letter of inquiry from the writer to John archbishop of Lyons, as to the precedence of his see, and the omission of Britain in the Provinciale annexed.

II. Johannes primæ sedis ecclesiæ Lugdunensis archiepiscopus Radulfo de Diceto decano Lundoniæ.

Anacletus[5] papa, tertio suo decretali, Lugdunensem ecclesiam primam inter occidentales ecclesias nominavit; secundam vero metropolim Rothomagensium; tertiam Turonensium; quartam Senonensium. Et has metropoles cum suffraganeis suis ad ecclesiam Lugdunensem pertinere debere firmissimo jure statuit. Et hæc quasi primitivæ ecclesiæ ordinatio usque

Statement of the archbishop as to the dignity of the see of Lyons.

---

[1] The two letters that follow are found in MSS. A. and B.: they are omitted in C. They occur separately in the Cotton MS. Tiberius A. 9, and in the Ripley MS. fo. 15, which omit the first and last sentences.

[2] John of Poictiers, archbishop of Lyons, 1181–1193.

[3] *Britanniam*] Oceano magno contiguam, ins. R.

[4] C. Jul. Solinus, Polyhistoria, cap. 22. Mon. Hist. Brit. i. p. ix.

[5] Anacletus in the third epistle (Pseudo-Isidor. ed. Hinsch, p. 83) mentions the "Tomus" or Notitia Provinciarum here referred to. The whole is of course an anachronism, but this pope is quoted by Gregory VII. as authority for the position of the archbishops of Lyons. See on the whole subject the essay by Peter de Marca, in Labbe and Cossart, Conc. x. 519, sq.

Decision of Urban II. on the point.

ad tempus Urbani papæ secundi inconcussa permansit. Cujus tempore Senonensis archiepiscopus, indignatus quod Rothomagensis et Turonensis archiepiscopi in conciliis et in conventibus Lugdunensis ecclesiæ primatis sibi præferrerentur, ab ipsius obedientia se subtrahere conatus est. Sed in concilio Claromontensi, cui jam dictus Urbanus præsedit, ad querelam Hugonis tunc Lugdunensis archiepiscopi firmissime statutum est, ut omni jure ecclesiam Lugdunensem, tanquam matrem suam, Senonensis agnosceret, et ei omnimodam obedientiam et reverentiam exhiberet. Cujus tempore Hugo tunc Rothomagensis archiepiscopus ad instantiam regis Henrici primi personalem optinuit exemptionem sicut dicitur.

III.[1] BRUCARDUS.[2]

Nomina regionum xi. continentium intra se provincias centum et tredecim.

List of the 113 provinces.

Italia. Gallia. Africa. Hispania. Illiricus. Thracia. Asia. Oriens. Pontus. Egyptus. Bractiania.[3]

Italy.

In Ytalia sunt provinciæ numero xvii.; Campania in qua est Capua; Tuscia cum Ymbria; Emilia; Flaminia in qua est Ravenna; Picenum; Liguria in qua est Mediolanum; Venecia cum Histris in qua est Aquileia; Alpes Gothiæ;[4] Samnium; Apulia cum Calabria in qua est Tarentus; Brutia cum Lucania; Rethia prima; Rethia secunda; Cicilia; Sardinia; Corsica; Alpes Graiæ.

Gaul.

Galliarum provinciæ numero xvii: Viennensis; Narbonensis prima; Narbonensis secunda; Aquitania prima; Aquitania secunda; Novem-populana; Alpes maritimæ; Belgica prima in qua est Treveris; Belgica secunda in qua est transitus ad Britanniam; Germania prima super Rhenum; Germania secunda super eundem; Lugdunensis prima super Rodanum; Lugdunensis secunda super Oceanum; Lugdunensis tertia super

---

[1] The following tract is omitted in MSS. B. and C. It is in MS. R. fo. 14, and MS. T. fo. 22.

[2] Burchard or Brucard, of Worms, the canonist, died in 1025: the Notitia, however, that follows was drawn up under the elder Theodosius. It was first printed by Schonhovius, and afterwards with notes and emendations by Cellarius: it may be found appended to Havercamp's Eutropius, Leyden, 1729. See also the Recueil des Hist. de France, i. 122.

[3] *Bractiania*] Britannia, ed. Havercamp. If our author had had this reading, it is clear that his letter to John of Poictiers, above, p. 5, would not have been written.

[4] *Gothiæ*] Cottiæ, ed.

Ligerim; Lugdunensis quarta super Sequanam; Maxima Sequanorum; Alpes Penninæ. List of the provinces.

In Affrica sunt provinciæ numero sex; Proconsularis in qua est Carthago; Numidia; Bisantium;[1] Tripolis; Mauritania Sitivensis[2]; Mauritania Cæsariensis. Africa.

In Hyspania sunt provinciæ numero vii.: Tarraconensis; Carthaginensis; Betica; Lusitania in qua est Emerita; Gallicia; Insulæ Baleares; Tingitana, trans fretum quod ab Oceano infusum terras intrat inter Chalpen et Gehennam. Spain.

In Illirico sunt provinciæ numero xviii.: Dalmatia supra mare; Pannonia prima in qua est Syrmium; Pannonia secunda; Valeria provincialis[3]; Mesia superior; Epirus vetus; Epirus nova; Pampica; Noricus Ripensis supra Danubium; Noricus Mediterranea; Suevia[4]; Dardania; Hemeriontus;[5] Datia; Scythia; Creta insula; Achaia; Macedonia; Thessalia. Illyricum.

In Thracia sunt provinciæ numero vi.: Thracia prima; Thracia secunda; Mesia inferior; Scythia inferior; Europa in qua est Constantinopolis, quæ prius Lychus dicta sive Bisantium; Rhodopa. Thrace.

In Asia sunt provinciæ numero xii.: Asia ipsa in qua Ilium, id est, Troja; Licia; Galathia; Lidia; Caria; Helespontus; Pamphilia; Psidia;[6] Frigia prima; Frigia salutaris; Lychaonia; Ciclades. Asia.

In Oriente sunt provinciæ numero x.: Siria Cœles[7] in qua est Antiochia; Syria Palestina; Syria Phœnice; Isauria; Cylicia juxta montem Taurum; Cyprus; Mesopotamia inter Tygrin et Eufraten; Eufratesia; Hosdroene; Sophoene.[8] The East.

In Ponto sunt provinciæ numero viii.: Pontus Polemoniacus; Pontus Misia;[9] Honorida;[10] Bythinia; Paflagonia; Armenia minor; Armenia major; Cappadocia. Pontus.

In Egypto sunt provinciæ numero vi.: Egyptus ipsa in qua est Alexandria; Augustamnis; Thebaida; Libia Sicca; Libia Pentapolis; Archadia. Egypt.

In Bractiania[11] sunt provinciæ numero v.: Bractiania prima, Bractiania[11] secunda; Flavia; Maxima; Valentina. Britain.

[12]Provincia Lugdunensium prima habet civitates numero v.; List of cities.

---

[1] Byzacium, ed.

[2] Sitifensis, from the city of Sitifis, or Seteef.

[3] *provincialis*] Prævalitana, ed.

[4] *Suevia*] Savia, ed.

[5] *Hemeriontus*] Hæmimons, or Hæmimontus, ed.

[6] *Psidia*] Pisidia, ed.

[7] *Cœles*] Ciliciæ, ed.

[8] *Sophoene*] Sophane, ed.

[9] *Misia*] Amasia, ed.

[10] *Honorida*] Honorias, ed.

[11] *Bractiania*] Britannia, ed.

[12] Omitted in Havercamp.

Cities of Lugdunensis prima. metropolis civitas Lugdunensium; civitas Heduorum quæ et Augustudunum; civitas Lingonum; castrum Cabillonense; castrum Matisconense.

Lugdunensis secunda. [1]Provincia Lugdunensium secunda habet civitates numero vii.: metropolis civitas Rothomagensium; civitas Bajocasium; civitas Abricantium; civitas Euaticorum, id est Ebroicorum; civitas Salarium, id est Saiorum; civitas Luxoviorum; civitas Constantia.

Lugdunensis tertia. [1]Provincia Lugdunensium tertia habet civitates numero ix: metropolis civitas Turonorum; civitas Cenomannorum; civitas Andegavorum; civitas Rhedonum; civitas Namnetum; civitas Coriosolitum; civitas Eiantium, id est Venetum; civitas Osismorum; civitas Diablintum,[2] quæ alio nomine Adalia vocatur.

Lugdunensis quarta. [1]Provincia Lugdunensium quarta habet civitates numero viii.; metropolis civitas Senonum; civitas Carnotum; civitas Autisiodorum; civitas Tricasium; civitas Aurelianorum; civitas Parisiorum; civitas Meldorum; civitas Nivernensium.

Belgica prima. Provincia Belgica prima habet civitates numero iiii.: metropolis civitas Treverorum; civitas Mediomatricorum, id est Mettis; civitas Leucorum, id est Tullum; civitas Veredunensium.

Belgica secunda. [1]Provincia Belgica secunda habet civitates numero xiii.: metropolis civitas Rhemorum; civitas Suessionum; civitas Cathalaunorum; civitas Viromandorum; civitas Atrebatum; civitas Cameracensium; civitas Turnacensium; Silvanectensium; civitas Bellovagorum; civitas Ambianensium; civitas Morinorum, id est, Ponticum;[3] civitas Bononiensium; civitas Laudunensium.[4]

Germania prima. [5]Provincia Germania prima habet civitates numero iiii.: metropolis civitas Maguntiacensium, id est Maguntia; civitas Argentoracensium, id est Strateburgo; civitas Nemetensium, id est Spira; civitas Wangionum, id est Wormatia.

Germania secunda. [5]Provincia Germania secunda habet civitates numero ii.: metropolis civitas Agrippinensium, id est Colonia; civitas Tungrorum.

Maxima Sequanorum. [5]Provincia Maxima Sequanorum habet civitates numero x.: metropolis civitas Vesontionensium; civitas Equestrium, id est Nevidunus; civitas Helvitiorum, id est Aventicum; civitas Nividunum; civitas Basilientium; castrum Windonense; castrum Ebredonense; castrum Argentariense; castrum Rauracense; portus Bucini.

---

[1] Omitted in Havercamp.
[2] Jublins, Carises or Adula.
[3] *id est, Ponticum*] om. R.
[4] *civitas Laudunensium*] om. ed.
[5] Omitted in Havercamp.

[1]Provinciæ Alpium et Graiarum et Penninarum habent civitates numero ii.: metropolis civitas Centronium, id est Tarentasia; civitas Valensium, id est Octodorus. Alpes Graiæ et Penninæ.

Provincia Viennensis habet civitates numero xiiii.: metropolis civitas Viennensium; civitas Genevensium; civitas Gratianopolitana; civitas Albiensium, nunc Vivarium; civitas Diensium; civitas Valentinorum; civitas Tricastinorum; civitas Vasionensium; civitas Arausicorum; civitas Cabellicorum; civitas Arelatensium; civitas Carpentoracensium, nunc Vindausa;[2] civitas Massiliensium. Viennensis.

Provincia Aquitanica prima habet civitates numero vii.: metropolis civitas Byturigum; civitas Arvernorum; civitas Ruthenorum; civitas Albigensium; civitas Cadurcorum; civitas Lemovicum; civitas Gabalum; civitas Vellavorum. Aquitanica prima.

Provincia Aquitanica secunda habet civitates numero vi.: metropolis civitas Burdegalensium; civitas Agennensium; civitas Engolismensium; civitas Sanctonum; civitas Pictavorum; civitas Petragoricorum. Aquitanica secunda.

Provincia Novempopulana habet civitates numero xii.: metropolis civitas Ausciorum; civitas Aquensium; civitas Lactoratium, id est Litora; civitas Convennarum, id est Comminica; civitas Consuranorum, id est Consurana; civitas Boaticum, quod est Bovis; civitas Beranensium, id est Benamus; civitas Aurenensium;[3] civitas Vasatica; civitas Tussa,[4] ubi est castrum Bigorra; civitas Ellenorensium, id est Elnia; civitas Elosaticum. Novempopulana.

Provincia Narbonensis prima habet civitates numero viii.: metropolis civitas Narbonensium; civitas Tolosaticum, id est Tolosa; civitas Biterrensium; civitas Agarensium;[5] civitas Nemausentium; civitas Magalonensium; civitas Luctevensium; id est Lucteva; castrum Ucentiense, id est Astituecensi. Narbonensis prima.

Provincia Narbonensium secunda habet civitates numero vii.: metropolis civitas Aquensium; civitas Aptensium; civitas Regensium, id est Regius; civitas Forojuliensis; civitas Vappincentium; civitas Segestorum; civitas Antipolitana. Narbonensis secunda.

Provincia Alpium Maritimarum habet civitates numero viii.: metropolis civitas Ebredunensium; civitas Diniensium, id est Dina; civitas Rigomagensium; civitas Sollinensium; civitas Aniciensium;[6] civitas Glannateva; civitas Celemensium;[7] civitas Vinsiciensium. Alpes Maritimæ.

---

[1] Omitted in Havercamp.

[2] *Vindausa*] Vindesca, ed.—civitas Avennicorum, which is wanted to make up the number of fourteen, is omitted in the text.

[3] *Aurenensium*] Aturensium, ed.

[4] *Tussa*] Turba, ed.

[5] *Agarensium*] Agathensium, ed.

[6] *Aniciensium*] Saniciensium, ed.

[7] *Celemensium*] Cemelenensium, ed.

De origine Scotorum et Hybernensium.[1]

Account of Ireland and its early inhabitants.

Hibernia post Britanniam omnium insularum est optima; quæ quamvis Britanniæ divitiis cedat, latitudine, salubritate, serenitate præstat. Quæ sicut versus aquilonem brevior est, ita versus meridiem trans illius fines protenditur. Hæc autem proprie patria Scotorum est, nam, sicut legitur, Egyptiis in mari rubro submersis, illi qui superfuerunt expulerunt a se quendam nobilem Sciticum qui degebat apud eos, ne dominium super eos invaderet. Expulsus ille cum familia sua pervenerunt ad Aras Philistinorum, et per lacum Salinarum et montana Syriæ; transierunt per Mauritaniam et ad columpnas Herculis, navigaverunt Tyrenum mare et pervenerunt ad Hyspaniam, et ibi per annos habitaverunt multos; et progenies eorum est multiplicata nimis. Inde venerunt Hiberniam post annos mille duobus additis a transitu filiorum Israel per mare rubrum, et inde pars eorum egressa terciam in Britannia Britonibus et Pictis gentem addiderunt. Pars eorum quæ remansit in Hibernia Navarri vocantur et adhuc eadem utuntur lingua.

Hyberus. Hibernia. Hiberniensis.

Getia. Geta. Geticus. Goticus. Gotus. Ostrogotus. Witsigotus.

Scitia. Scita. Sciticus. Scoticus. Scotus. Scotia.

COMMENDATIO BRITANNIÆ.[2]

Praises of Britain.

Britannia, sicut legitur, inter insulas omnes est vel prima vel maxima; quam natura benignior adeo reddidit ad inhabitandum acceptam ut quicquid usus desiderat vel appetit luxus, ex ea proveniat, aut aliunde transvehatur ad eam. Advenas etiam desiderio quovis accedentes ad eam allicit eo usque,

[1] Omitted in MSS. B. and C. R. has the title *De situ Hiberniæ;* and reads at the end; "in Hyspania "fluvius est Hiberus a quo dicitur "Hibernia, dicuntur et Hybernien-"ses," fo. 18. It is an extract from Henry of Huntingdon, Lib. i. Mon. Hist. Brit., pp. 696, 697.

[2] Omitted in C. R. fo. 16. This tract, which exists in slightly different form in many MSS., is not the work of Ralph de Diceto, but somewhat earlier, although no certainty can be made out as to the authorship. It was printed by Hearne in the Appendix to Robert of Gloucester, p. 572, from the MS. Rawlinson, Misc. 358, of the fourteenth century. It contains much matter that is found in Nennius, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Alfred of Beverley, and Henry of Huntingdon, but in the obscurity of the authorship it is impossible to say whether it is taken directly from those writers or they have borrowed from it.

quod si justam occasionem moram in ea faciendi nacti fuerint qualibet ratione, vix ulterius animum repatriandi concipiant. Itaque curiose viator per patriam, aut lector diligens subsequentium, ne mireris si mirabilia distinctis subter annexa capitulis facie prima credideris incredibilia. Nec enim ab homine sani capitis totum statim judicabitur fabulosum quod ab inquisitoribus studiosis pro maxima parte jam deprehensum est verum. Singulis igitur fidem habe, nec require rationem in singulis. Nam si rationi per omnia subjaceret Britannia, non esset in mirabilibus admiranda. Plus dubito de nomine scriptoris quam de mirandis. Continet Britannia regionem illam quæ modo vocatur Anglia. Continet etiam partem illam regionis quæ vocatur Galia. Continet etiam Scotiam totam.

The wonders that follow are not to be lightly disbelieved.

The author is unknown.

De mirabilibus Britanniæ.[1]

Wonders of Britain.

Primum est mirandum in Anglia quod ventus egreditur de cavernis terræ, in monte qui vocatur Pec, tanto vigore ut vestes injectas rejiciat, et in altum elevet.[2]

The Peak.

Secundum; apud Stanhenges, ubi lapides miræ magnitudinis in modum portarum elevati sunt ut portæ portis subpositæ videantur. Nec potest excogitari qua arte elevati sint, vel quare constructi.[3]

Stonehenge.

Tertium; apud Cherdrehole,[4] id est, Carcer Eoli, ubi concavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sæpe ingressi sint, et spatia magna terræ et flumina pertransierint, ad finem tamen venire non potuerunt.

Cheddar.

Quartum, Rollendrith.[5]

Rollright.

Quintum; Albus equus cum pullo suo. Mirum est quod in figura equi sic factus fuit quod cum totus locus, ubi est illa equi ymago nimis herbosus sit, super equi formam nunquam herba crescat, sed semper ibi terra ad modum equi denudata.

The White Horse.

Sextum; lapis est non magnus in vertice montis, quem si quis acceperit et portaverit spatio duorum miliariorum vel quan-

---

[1] Omitted in C. MS. R., fo. 17, and MS. T. omit the numbering of the articles.

[2] Hen. Hunt. Mon. Hist. Brit. p. 694. Alf. Beverl. p. 6.

[3] Hen. Hunt., 694. Alf. Beverl., p. 6.

[4] Hen. Hunt., 694. Alf. Beverl., p. 6.

[5] "Sunt in Oxenfordensi pago "magni lapides, hominum manu "sub quadam quasi connexione "dispositi, sed a quo tempore sive "a qua gente sive ad quid memo-"randum vel significandum fuerit "factum, hoc nescitur. Ab incolis "autem vocatur locus ille Rollen-"drych." MS. R. fo. 18. Hearne, Rob. Glouc. p. 578.

Wonders of Britain.

tumcunque voluerit, in subsequenti die sine dubio in eodem loco in vertice montis unde assumptus fuit inveniri poterit.

Septimum est, duæ fraxini quarum una ab alia duobus milibus distat; una vero earum uno anno viret, in alio quasi arescens videtur; et similiter quando illa viret, alia arescit; quando vero arescit, altera viret.

Octavum est, mons de Seuraigl,[1] in furca duarum viarum; si duo volunt ut separentur, eat unus ex una parte montis et alter ex alia, diu quod neuter alterum videre possit, et nunquam amplius in hoc sæculo se intervidebunt.

Nonum est lapis juxta viam; si aliquis illuc transiens super lapidem ascenderit, quocunque inde abierit, in eodem die reverti eum oportebit.

Decimum est lapis ingens intus concavus, ut turris ampla intus et tenues parietes quasi manu facti, stans super iiii. columpnas, grossitudine unius equi, unaquæque altitudine xx. pedum, et super eas stat turris; et in summitate turris est fons aquæ vivæ dulcissimæ, defluens per iiii. rivos largiter a summo usque deorsum.

Undecimum est lapis tam magnus quod omnes homines insulæ eum a loco non possint movere, super alium magnum saxum stans, quasi pendens, sic quod semper illum casurum credas, et est via omnium sub pendentem lapidem.

Duodecimum sunt[2] duo montes, parvus et major; si duo homines currant unus circa majorem alter de majore ad minorem et iterum retro ad majorem, ibi sibi obviabunt ubi currere cœperunt.

Tertium decimum est fons dulcissimus in arenis maris ubi mare cotidie bis crescit et decrescit ad spatium fere mille pedum, et semper crescente et decrescente mari distat fons a salo vii. pedes.

Quartum decimum est lapis juxta fontem ad modum altaris factus in nemore; in quacunque die tingitur lapis ille de aqua fontis ipsius, in eadem die sine dubio fœcundissime pluit.

Quintum decimum est Caribdis, id est ingens vorago maris per giros sub immanem rupem; jactes in illam voraginem quot volueris virgas cum cortice vel magnas perticas in simul firmiter ligatas, post paululum videbis eas dealbatas et cortice carentes resortire, quasi vi projectas longe a voragine in littore unam post aliam.

Sextum decimum est lapis perforatus in vertice montis, in cujus foramine si virgam mittas, perge inde ad tria milia sub monte in arena maris et virgam eandem invenies.

---

[1] *Seuraigl*] Seurail, R. | [2] *sunt*] est, B.

Septimum decimum est lacus; si volueris præparare[1] quodlibet ferreum supellex domus exceptis armis, porta ad lacum quod volueris reparari, et prandium quantum volueris, et mitte super ripam laci cibum et ferrum, et recede. Postea perge ad lacum et invenies supellectilem bene apparatum. Wonders of Britain.

Octavum decimum est quasi hostium juxta pedem cujusdam montis maximi; accipe tecum cibum vii. dierum et candelam similiter, et intra in illam fossam, et manducabis cibum vii. dierum, et candelam ardebis totam, et credes te fuisse ibi per vii. dies; et tamen eodem die quo intrasti exibis, nec eris ibi per spatium unius diei.

Nonum decimum est fons in villa quæ dicitur Wich,[2] longe ab omni salsugine maris, unde fit optimum sal, et candidissimum ut nix, et subtile ut farina, sed est asperius. Sed in die Sabbati, ab hora nona usque in diem Lunæ mane, sed nec etiam in die apostoli, nec alicujus quæ fuerit feriari jussa a presbytero villæ illius, nec in vigiliis potest inde ullo modo sal fieri. Salt springs.

Vicesimum est castellum quoddam, in quo si intrent xxx. homines plenum esse videbitur; veniant et iterum centum vel mille vel x. millia, et intrare poterunt omnes largissime.

Vicesimum primum est nemus, et aqua in nemore currens; accipe de lignis illius nemoris, et appara quocunque modo volueris, et mitte in eadem aqua et sit ibi per totum annum; transacto vero anno lapides erunt. A petrifying spring.

Vicesimum secundum sunt Badonis balnia semper mediocriter calida quasi temperata ad balneandum sine aliqua administratione, sed sic calida de terra aqua exit. Hot springs at Bath.

Vicesimum iii. est furnus Arturi, qui factus ad modum thalami rotundi, sine tegmine, et tamen nunquam intus pluvia cadit, nec nix, nec grando, plusquam bene tectus esset.[3] Arthur's oven.

Vicesimum iiii. est sarcofagus in via sub quadam spina; et est totus apertus sub aere, et nunquam pluit intus. Si vero aliquis homo intus recubuerit, sive magnus sive parvus, tam aptum eum sibi inveniet, quasi ad mensuram suam factus esset.[4]

Vicesimum v. est alius sarcofagus similiter secus viam sub spina, non magnum nimis; et est similiter apertus sub aere; et pluit intus ut alibi, sed nemini unquam aptus invenitur, quia parvis hominibus nimis magnus, mediocribus vero aut

---

[1] *præparare*] reparare, B.

[2] *Wich*] Wihc, B. See Alf. Beverl., p. 7.

[3] *plusquam . . . esset*] om. R.

[4] Nennius, p. 80. Alf. Beverl., p. 8.

Wonders of Britain.

nimis magnus aut nimis parvus, magnis vero hominibus nimis parvus; sicque nemini unquam aptus invenitur.[1]

Vicesimum vi. est campus in quo annale forum quoquo anno congregari solet. Qui si hodie tam spisse mercatorum logiis impleatur, quod nec homo inter logias stare possit, cras tantum spatium invenies ex utraque parte uniuscujusque logiæ, quod ibi poterit fieri logia ad magnitudinem proximæ factæ.

Vicesimum vii. est[2] lapis parvus quem omnes qui volucrint tam imbecilles quam fortes levare possunt ad genua sua, ultra vero genua[3] nemo.

Wonderful tree in Cannock Chase.

Vicesimum viii. est arbor quædam in Chenot nemore, ingens, salici similis cortice et foliis, quæ ad stadium unius hominis super terram in duobus brachiis dividitur, quorum unum in unoquoque æstatis tempore viret foliis et cæteris quæ arbori pertinent, glandes vero fert ut quercus. Cum autem appropinquat hiemps cadunt simul glandes et folia, simul etiam et cortex, sic quod totum remanet nudum et excoriatum quasi omnino arefactum. Redeunte vero æstate redeunt simul cortex et folia et glandes. Sicut vero istud viret æstate, sic viret aliud in hyemali tempore; et sicut istud arescit in hyeme, sic arescit aliud in æstate semper[4] et eodem modo.

Vicesimum ix. est mons ingens v. miliariorum spatium continens, et venit amnis xl. perticarum latitudinis usque ad pedem montis, et juxta ipsum pedem montis intrat sub terram nusquam apparens, sed quasi eum terra absorberet; ex altera vero parte exit de terra tam magnus quantus intravit.

Tricesimum est[5] quædam ecclesia in Anglia, in qua et in cujus cimiterio si aliquis aliquid quod suum non sit capiat vel furto vel rapina vel aliqua arte mala, adhæret continuo manus ipsi rei tam firmiter quod manum nec ipsam rem ad se trahere possit donec veniat sacerdos et dicat orationem Dominicam super eum et injungat ei pœnitentiam.

Tricesimum primum sunt aves in littore maris nidificantes in rupibus magnis; veniat aliquis[6] ante fossam ubi nidus illius avis sit aut prope aut de longe, ita ut vox sua usque ad fossam audiri possit, et clamet Anglice vel Britannice et dicat, Es illuc intus? Si vero avis fuerit in fossa respondebit eadem lingua et dicet, Etiam, quis es et quid vis? Et dices, Veni huc foras et occidam te. Et exclamabit avis quasi tristis et lacry-

---

[1] *hominibus . . . invenitur*] nimis parvus, R.

[2] *est*] apud Wolfrichestone, B. in marg., in a late hand.

[3] *genua*] om. R.

[4] *semper*] om. R.

[5] *est*] apud Scalingesforde, B. in marg.

[6] *aliquis*] si vult, ins. B.

mans, "Væ mihi misero, ad quid factus sum, quando nunc "moriar?" Et veniet ad te cito. Wonders of Britain.

Tricesimum ii. est fossa quædam profundissima aqua plena quasi stagnum; perge illuc et dic, "Accommoda mihi hoc," nominans quod volueris, et statim accommodabitur si terminum reddendi posueris. Si autem terminum sinas præterire et non reddas, nunquam inde amplius quid accommodabitur.

Tricesimum iii. est lapis mediocriter magnus spatio viii. miliariorum a mari, et est foramen in lapide, jacet etiam lapis ille in sublimi colle, et quando crescit mare, impletur illud foramen aqua usque ad summum; mare vero decrescente nunquam apparet aqua in lapide.

Tricesimum quartum ex putridis abietibus inter maritimas fluitantibus undas prope litus nascuntur aves maritimæ quæ vocantur bernekes. Quæ si per industriam hominum captæ fuerint, satis aptæ sunt ad edendum.[1] Barnacles.

Tricesimum quintum est stagnum Lummonui,[2] quia in eo sunt insulæ lx., et ibi habitant homines, et lx. rupibus ambitur, et nidus aquilæ in unaquaque rupe est, et flumina fluunt lx. in eo, et non vadit ex eo ad mare nisi unum flumen quod vocatur Levin. Loch Lomond.

HAMONIUS FLORIACENSIS LIBRO SECUNDO:[3]—Res gestæ quæ nulla regum ac temporum certitudine commendantur non pro hystoria recipiuntur; sed inter aniles fabulas deputantur. Undated stories are not history.

AGELLIUS LIBRO V^to^. CAPITULO XVIII.:[4]—Hystoria differt ab annalibus quod cum utrumque sit rerum gestarum narratio, earum tamen proprie rerum sit hystoria, quibus gerendis interfuit is qui narrat; annales dicuntur cum res gestæ plurium annorum, observato cujusque anni ordine, deinceps componuntur. Difference between histories and annals.

---

[1] "Quatuor calles sunt in Britannia, primus tendit ab oriente usque in occidentem, et vocatur Ichenild; secundus ab Austro in Aquilonem, et vocatur Ermingestrat; tertius a Dorobernia in Cestriam et vocatur Watlingestrat; quartus incipit in Cathenes et desinit in Totheneis, et vocatur Fossa, tenditque per Lincolniam," ins. B., R. fo. 16. See Hearne, Rob. Glouc. p. 572.

[2] Nennius, Mon. Hist. Brit. p. 77. Geoff. Mon. lib. ix. c. 6.

[3] The author described as Hamonius Floriacensis is Aimoin of Fleury, whose work on the History of the Kings of the Franks, the Gesta Francorum, is extant in several editions. The passages, however, quoted by our author under this name, are not from Aimoin, but from the work of Hugh of Fleury, frequently ascribed to Ivo of Chartres, ed. Rottendorff, 1638, p. 35.

[4] These two passages are inserted in C., in the margin. Under the name of Agellius, the Noctes Atticæ of Aulus Gellius are always quoted. The references in the notes are to the edition by Hertz, Leipzig, 1853.

QUANTUM ARCHIEPISCOPI CANTUARIENSES IN ARCHIEPISCOPATU VIXERUNT, ET A QUIBUS APOSTOLICIS PALLIA SUA SUSCEPERUNT.[1]

List of the archbishops of Canterbury; with the names of the popes from whom they received the pall, and the length of their pontificates.

	Sedit.	Annos.	Menses.	Dies.	Summa Annorum.	Summa Mensium.	Summa Dierum.
Gregorius	Augustino	xvi.			xvi.		
Idem	Laurentio	v.			xxi.		
Idemque	Mellito	v.			xxvi.		
Bonifacius	Justo	iii.			xxix.		
Honorius	Honorio	xxvi.			lv.		
	Vacavit	i.	vi.		lvi.	vi.	
Idem Honorius	Deusdedit	x.			lxvi.		
	Vacavit	iii.			lxix.		
Vitalianus	Theodoro	xxii.			xci.		
	Vacavit	i.			xcii.		
Idem[2]	Brichtwaldo	xxxvii.	vi.		cxxix.	xii.	xiiii.
Gregorius	Tatwino	iii.			cxxxii.		
Idem	Nothelmo	v.			cxxxvii.		
Idemque	Cuthberto	xvii.					
	Hic Cuthbertus primus in ecclesia sua sepultus fuit et omnes successores ejus præter Jambertum.						
Paulus	Bregwino	iii.			clvii.		
Idem	Jamberto	xxvii.			clxxxiiii.		
Adrianus	Æthelardo	xiii.			cxcvii.		
Leo	Wlfredo	xxxviii.			ccxxxv.		
Johannes[3]	Feologildo		iii.			xv.	
	Vacavit	i.			ccxxxvi.		
Gregorius	Chelnoth	xli.			cclxxvii.		
Adrianus	Ethelredo	xviii.			ccxcv.		
	Vacavit	ii.			ccxcvii.		
Formosus	Pleimundo	xxxiiii.			cccxxxi.		
Johannes	Athelmo }						
Idem	Wlfelmo }	xxxv.			ccclxvi.		
Agapitus	Odoni }						
Johannes	Dunstano	xxvii.			cccxciii.		
Idem	Æthelgaro	i.	iii.		cccxciiii.	xviii.	
Johannes	Sirico	v.			cccxcix.		

[1] The following computation is omitted in B. and C. It occurs in R. at fo. 7 vo. It is printed by Wharton, in the first volume of the Anglia Sacra, p. 87. Unfortunately it is a work of little or no authority. Wherever any assertion is made independently of the statements of Bede or the Chronicles, it contains anachronisms. The number of years ascribed to the several archbishops is in many cases wrong, and the popes who bestowed the palls are determined by erroneous and inconsistent calculations, not resting on historical evidence.

[2] Vitalian died in 672: Brihtwald became archbishop in 693.

[3] *Johannes*] No pope of this name ruled at the time.

List of the archbishops of Canterbury.

	Sedit.	Annos.	Menses.	Dies.	Summa. Annorum.	Mensium.	Dierum.
Idem	Elurico	XI.			CCCCX.		
Idem	Ælfego	VI.	VII.		CCCCXVI.	XXV.	
Benedictus	Livingo	VII.			CCCCXXIIII.		
Idem	Agelnodo	XVIII.			CCCCLI.		
Alexander	Adsino	XI.			CCCCLII.		
Idem	Roberto	II.	Iste Robertus expulsus fuit ab Anglia.		CCCCLIIII.		
Victor	Stigando	XVII.			CCCCLXXI.		
			Iste Stigandus a Willelmo rege in carcere positus est ibique defunctus. Hic primus in habitu clericali archiepiscopatu functus est.				
	Vacavit	II.			CCCCLXXIII.		
Alexander	Lanfranco	XIX.			CCCCXCII.		
	Vacavit	IIII.			CCCCXCVI.		
Urbanus	Anselmo	XVI.			DXII.		
	Vacavit	V.			DXVII.		
Paschalis	Radulfo	VIII.	VI.		DXXV.	XXXI.	
	Vacavit		IIII.			XXXV.	
Calixtus	Willelmo	XIII.	IX.		DXXXVIII.	XLIIII.	
	Vacavit	II.	I.	XIII.	DXL.	XLV.	XXVIII.
Innocentius	Theobaldo	XXII.	IIII.		DLXII.	XLIX.	
	Vacavit	I.	I.	XVI.	DLXIII.	LX.	XXXV.
Alexander	Thomæ	VIII.	VI.	XXVIII.			
	Vacavit	I.	V.	IIII.			
Idem	Ricardo	IX.	IX.	XIII.			
	Vacavit		X.	IX.			
Lucius	Baldewino	VI.	VI.	XVII.			
	Vacavit	III.	XVI.	diebus minus.			
Celestinus	Huberto						

Prologus.

The first two ages of the world, a matter of simple Chronology.

Annos ab initio mundi seriatim expassos per temporum annotationes provida ratione percurrens, annum a tempore gratiæ MCLXXXVIII.[1] tibi metam constitue, sæculi primam et secundam ætatem notulis numerorum exarans paucissimis. A diebus autem Abrahæ, postquam homines ad vocabulum arrogantius aspirarunt, pro latitudine terræ, pro magnanimitate virorum, pro virium amplitudine limites regnorum extendere procurarunt ardentius. Ut itaque citius ad memoriam revoces anno tali tale quid accidisse, per unius incrementum in x., per decennariorum multiplicationem in milia, rerum facilius poteris habere notitiam. Quicquid igitur inter computandum occurrerit ordine terno distingue, vetustissima, vetera, moderna, quasi mansiunculis tribus non irreverenter recollige.

Division of events into three.

The most ancient depend on the Hebrew and the Septuagint.

VETUSTISSIMA. Sumens ergo principium a principio, quid Hebraica veritas, quid interpretes LXX., vel ante legem senserint in annorum supputationibus, vel sub lege, pari devotione, pari fide dijudica. Sicque si modernos aliquis invidiæ stimulis agitatus notare præsumpserit, tu tamen antiquitati reverentiam habe, cujus sunt adoranda vestigia; cui reverentiam non impendere temeritati proximum est, arrogantiæ plenum.

The next ancient, from the era of grace, marked into six classes.

VETERA. Rursus ut per gratiam Mediatoris Dei simul et hominum in ecclesia gratiosus existas, a tempore gratiæ studiosius sacræ paginæ recolas expositores, catholicis applaudas ystoriographis, Romanorum instituta pontificum, insignes regum victorias, elementorum portentuosa prodigia, singularium inauditos eventus et casus insolitos, egregie facta, civiliter dicta redigentes in cronicam, distinctius animadvertas. Si placuerint, poteris imitari, si duxeris reprobandos, vitandi sunt cum modestia. Si contraria scripserint, præcipi-

Sex.

[1] *MCLXXXVIII.*] So also MS. C.; MCXC., B.

tantis est, si vel Orosium Eusebio, vel Dionisium [1] Mariano, vel Bedam Tertulliano [2] leviter anteponas. Debes etiam meminisse traditum a majoribus, et cautum in cathalogo virorum illustrium, Clementem papam modo secundum, modo tertium, modo quartum nominatum a Petro. Sed nos si Lino, Cleto, conservemus honorem annorum in serie, sicut eis concorditer exhibent nostri patres in canone Missæ, profecto possumus vitare ruinam; sed ultra posse nostrum est vel in his vel in sequentibus ad annum usque millesimum centesimum quadragesimum septimum, quantum ad annos Dominicales solvere dissonantiam.

These afford matter for criticism.

Difficulties will arise up to the year 1147.

MODERNA. Rursus, licet inter modernos reputem me novissimum, forsan alterius litteratioris, jamjam emergentis in lucem, locum indignus usurpo, qui voto satisfaciens meo, quotiens ei plenius innotuerit in opusculo sequenti manifestum errorem deprehensum annorum in calculo, manum apponat. Excessum poterit abolere festinata correctio, si pura fuerit in reprehensione fraternæ caritatis intentio. Pro varietate negotiorum et conditione stili narratiuncula sæpius intercidenda; si brevis, aperta, probabilis auribus insonuerit,[3] saltem in hoc redimat cultus coloratioris defectum, si vel in aliquo promereatur accessum. Si quid autem hebetis sensus oratio turgidum importaverit vel inflatum, si vel arida vel exangui verborum junctura dejectior emarcuerit, si translatio dictionum inpudens offenderit auditorem, si vocalium hiulca collisio subsannationem extorserit, manum rursus apponat. Sed antequam veniat ad titulum sequentis voluminis, nomina virorum illustrium, et diversa tempora quibus maxime floruerunt, prologos etiam aliquorum adactos inveniet, ut ei si facile non occurrerint spaciosa volumina, saltem ibi summatim reperiat quidve senserint, quidve reliquerint posteris

The compiler is quite willing to be corrected in the modern part of the work.

Questions of style.

Prefatory matter prefixed.

[1] *Dionisium*] Scilicet in annis lunaribus et solaribus, A. in marg.

[2] *Tertulliano*] In lxx. ebdomadibus, A. in marg.

[3] Voluptati aurium morigerari debet oratio, A. in marg.

Some insertions made in the margin. memoriale per sæcula. Quicquid igitur in margine positum instar volatilis glosæ repererit infra, totum illud non dubitet sumptum ab hystoriographis, quorum copiam non habuimus cum primo cœperimus ad chronicam scribendam manum extendere.

List of famous writers.

DE VIRIS ILLUSTRIBUS QUO TEMPORE SCRIPSERINT.[1]

Trogus Pompeius. Trogus Pompeius a tempore Nini regis Assiriorum usque ad annum vicesimum nonum Hircani principis Judæorum hystoriam[2] digessit.

Valerius Maximus. Valerius Maximus urbis Romæ cæterarumque gentium facta simul et dicta memoratu digna scripsit anno Incarnati Verbi XVIII.

Philo. Filo scriptorum insignissimus quanta Judæis acciderint mala quinque voluminibus exponit anno Incarnati Verbi XXXVIII.

Josephus; Antiquities. Josephus ab exordio mundi usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi septuagesimum nonum[3] scripsit Antiquitatum libros viginti.

Justin. Justinus philosophus Trogi Pompeii adbreviator scripsit eodem anno.

Josephus, on the Captivity. Josephus Romam veniens ob ingenii gloriam statuam Romæ meruit, scribens libros vii. Judaicæ captivitatis anno ab Incarnatione[4] LXXIIII.

Julius Africanus. Julius Africanus breves temporum annotationes per generationes et regna scribit anno Incarnati Verbi[5] CLXII.

Aulus Gellius. Agellius scribit anno centesimo nonodecimo.[6]

Hegesippus. Egisippus libros hystoriarum scripsit usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi CLXXXII.

Tertullian. Tertullianus, presbiter Cartagiensis, vir acris ingenii et vehementis, scripsit anno CXCV.

---

[1] In MS. R. fo. 14, and T. fo. 21; with some unimportant variations.

[2] *hystoriam*] suam, ins. B.

[3] *septuagesimum nonum*] LXIX., B.

[4] *ab Incarnatione*] Incarnationis, B.

[5] *Incarnati Verbi*] om. B.

[6] Anno CLXIX., R.

Eusebius[1] scripsit a quadragesimo iii°. anno Nini regis cronica; hystoriam autem ecclesiasticam ab Incarnatione Domini scribit usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi CCCXXVIII. Eusebius.

Eutropius Romanam hystoriam scribit a tempore Jani et Saturni[2] usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi CCCLXVI. Eutropius.

Paulus diaconus addit vi. libros Romanæ hystoriæ.[3] Paulus.

Jeronimus, ecclesiæ Romanæ presbiter, os Damasi papæ, dum omnium judicio dignus esse summo sacerdotio decernitur, quidam ex clericorum monachorumque ordinibus discursantes, ad effugandum urbe Jeronimum insidias paraverunt.[4] Jerome.

Jeronimus[5] cronica sua ab anno Incarnati Verbi CCCXXVIII. inchoata, anno CCCLXXX. terminat.

Ethicus cosmographus[6] a Jeronimo translatus est.[7] Ethicus.

Hylarius, Pictavensis episcopus, scripsit anno Incarnationis CCCLXIX.[8] Hilary of Poictiers.

Sigisbertus cronographiam incipit anno Incarnationis CCCLXXXI. Sigebert.

Jeronimus librum illustrium virorum anno Incarnati Verbi CCCXCIIII. scripsit. Jerome.

Ruffinus, Aquileiensis presbiter, hystoriam ecclesiasticam terminat anno Incarnationis CCCXCIX. Ruffinus.

---

[1] *Eusebius*] Cæsariensis, ins. B. R; a xliii°. anno Nini regis, scribit usque ad annum Incarnationis cccxxviii., B.

[2] *a tempore . . . Saturni*] om. B.

[3] *hystoriæ*] ad annum Incarnati Verbi ccclxx. R.

[4] *Jeronimus . . . paraverunt*] in marg. A. C.; om. B. R.

[5] Jeronimus librum illustrium virorum scripsit anno Incarnati Verbi ccclxvii.; cronica vero sua ab anno Incarnati Verbi cccxxviii. inchoata anno ccclxxx. terminat, B.

[6] *cosmographus*] philosophus, B.

[7] *est*] cosmographium scripsit, B

[8] CCCLXXXI., R. The order of the following names is somewhat different in B. They stand thus:—
Augustinus.
Jennadius, Massiliensis episcopus, librum virorum illustrium anno Incarnati Verbi cccxciiii. scripsit.
Ruffinus.
Johannes Crisostomus.
Orosius.
Hystoria tripartita.
Prosper.
Idacius.
Jennadius.
Idacius.

Augustine. Augustinus, ab initio mundi librum inchoans de Civitate Dei, scribit usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi CCCCXIIII.

Chrysostom. Johannes Crisostomus scripsit anno Incarnati Verbi CCCCXIIII.

Orosius. Orosius scripsit septem libros cronographiæ Augustino anno Incarnationis CCCCXV.[1]

The tripartite history. Hystoria tripartita a Socrate, Theodorito, Zozomeno, edita terminatur anno Incarnationis CCCCXLVI.

Prosper. Prosper Aquitanicus, Leonis papæ primi notarius, cronica sua digessit ab initio mundi usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi CCCCLIX.

Idacius. Idacius Lenicæ[2] civitatis Hyspaniarum episcopus cronica sua perduxit a primo Theodosii magni consolatu inchoata usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi CCCCXC.

Gennadius. Jennadius Massiliensis episcopus cronica sua de viris illustribus ab anno Incarnati Verbi CCCXCIIII. usque ad annum CCCCXC. perduxit.

Cassiodorus. Cassiodorus de Institutione divinarum litterarum scripsit anno Incarnati Verbi DXXXIII.

Justinian. Justinianus legislator libros de Incarnatione Domini edidit, quos etiam per diversas provincias misit anno Incarnati Verbi DXL.

Jornandes. Jordanis, archiepiscopus Ravennensis, contexit hystoriam de origine Gothorum anno Incarnati Verbi DLI.

Victor. Victor, Tumnutensis urbis episcopus in Affrica, hystoriam ab initio mundi scribit usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi DLXVII.[3]

Paulus Cassinensis. Paulus Cassinensis hystoriam Longobardorum terminat anno Incarnati Verbi DLXXII.

Gildas. Gilda Britonum gesta flebili sermone descripsit anno Incarnationis DLXXXI.

Gregory of Tours. Gregorius, Turonensis archiepiscopus, hystoriam Francorum digessit anno Incarnati Verbi DXCIII.

---

[1] *ccccxv.*] CCCXVIII., B.; CCCCVII., R.

[2] *Lenicæ*] Lemicensis.

[3] Victor Tunmutensis urbis epicopus scripsit anno Incarnationis DLXVIII., B.; DLXXXI. R.

Ysidorus, Hispalensis episcopus, cronica sua digessit ab initio mundi usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi DCXI. Isidore.

Beda scripsit hystoriam Anglorum anno Incarnati Verbi DCCXIIII.; cronicam vero suam ab initio mundi usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi DCCXXXIIII. Bede.

Hamonius Floriacensis cronica sua scribit a tempore Nini regis usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi DCCCXLIII. Hamo (Hugo) of Fleury.

Luithbrandus, diaconus Ticinensis,[1] ecclesiæ hystoriam Longobardorum scribit anno Incarnati Verbi DCCCXCI. Liutprand.

Regino, abbas Prumiensis,[2] chronica sua a Nativitate Domini inchoata perduxit usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi DCCCCX. Regino of Prum.

Windichindus hystoriam Saxonum anno Incarnati Verbi DCCCCLXXVIII.[3] scripsit. Witikind.

Odo, primus abbas Cluniacensis, chronica[4] digessit ab exordio mundi usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi DCCCCLXXXVII. Odo of Cluny.

Marianus Scotus chronica sua digessit ab Incarnatione Domini usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi MLXIX. Marianus Scotus.

Yvo, Carnotensis episcopus, regularum exceptiones ecclesiasticarum in unum corpus adunavit anno Incarnati Verbi MXC. Ivo of Chartres.

Sigisbertus Gemblacensis chronica sua, anno ab Incarnatione Domini CCCLXXXI. inchoata, perduxit usque ad annum MC. Sigebert of Gemblours.

Magister Hugo de Sancto Victore chronica sua digessit ab initio mundi usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi MCXXIII. Hugh of S. Victor.

Robertus, abbas Sancti Michaelis de Monte in Normannia, chronica sua digessit usque ad annum Incarnati Verbi MCXLVII. Robert de Monte.

Radulfus, Lundoniensis ecclesiæ decanus, ab Incarnationis anno M°C°XL°VII°. librum qui dicitur Ymagines Ralph de Diceto.

---

[1] *Ticinensis*] Tiscinensis, B.

[2] *Prumiensis*] Parimensis, A. C.; Primiensis, R.

[3] *DCCCCLXXVIII.*] DCCCCLXVIII., C.; DCCCCLXXIII., B.

[4] *chronica*] sua, ins. B.

Historiarum inchoavit, et perduxit ad annum usque [1] MCXC.[2]

Incipit Præfatio Justini in Libris Trogi Pompeii.[3]

Preface of Justin.

Cum multi ex Romanis, etiam consularis dignitatis viri, res Romanas Græco peregrinoque sermone hystoriæ[4] contulissent, seu æmulatione gloriæ, sive varietate et novitate operis delectatus, vir priscæ eloquentiæ, Trogus Pompeius, Græcas et totius hystorias orbis Latino sermone composuit, ut, cum nostra Græce, Græca quoque nostra lingua legi possent: prorsus rem magni et animi et corporis[5] aggressus. Nam cum plerisque auctoribus singulorum regum vel populorum res gestas scribentibus opus suum ardui laboris videatur, nonne nobis Pompeius Herculea audacia orbem terrarum aggressus videri debet? Cujus libris omnium sæculorum, regum, nationum, populorumque res gestæ continentur. Et quæ hystorici Græcorum, prout commodum cuique fuit, inter se gregatim occupaverint, omissis quæ sine fructu erant, ea omnia Pompeius divisa temporibus et serie rerum digesta composuit.

Julius Cæsar de Narratione Temporum.[6]

Divisions of Gaul.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtæ, nostra Galli appellantur. Hii omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt; et Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.

[7] Julius Solinus.

Solinus on Gaul.

Galliæ inter Rhenum et Pireneum, item inter Oceanum et montes porriguntur, præpinguibus glebis, accommodæ proventibus fructuariis. Finis erat orbis ora Gallici littoris, nisi Britannia insula nomen pene orbis alterius mereretur.

---

[1] *MCXC.*] So MSS. A. B.; MCXCIII., C.

[2] Here B. has the extracts from Bede, Insula . . . . gagatem; Eutropius, Gallorum . . . . laxantur; and Jul. Cæs., Galli . . . eorum, which occur pp. 25, 30, below.

[3] See Justini Historiæ Philippicæ, ed Gronovius, i. p. 1.

[4] *hystoriæ*] in historiam, Just.

[5] *corporis*] operis, Gronov.

[6] The following extract is omitted in MS. C. It is an abridgment of the opening sentences of Cæsar, de Bello Gallico, i. c. 1; directly extracted from Aimoin of Fleury, Gesta Francorum, lib. i. præf.

[7] This is omitted in C. See C. J. Solinus, Polyhist. c. 22, Mon. H. B. p. ix.

[1] *Bucolicis, Egloca I.* Penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos.

[2] JULIUS CÆSAR:—Galli sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et, cum novis semper rebus studeant, sicut ad bella suscipienda ipsorum alacres et prompti sunt animi, sic molles et minime resistentes ad calamitates perferendas mentes eorum.

Extracts from Virgil, Cæsar and Florus.

[3] EUTROPIUS, LIBRO TERTIO ROMANÆ HYSTORIÆ. Gallorum animi feroces, corpora plusquam humana, sed experimento deprehensum est quod virtus eorum, sicut primo impetu major quam virorum est, ita sequens minor quam feminarum. Alpina corpora, humenti cœlo educata, habent quiddam simile nivibus suis. Cum calore pugnæ statim in sudorem eunt, et levi modo quasi sole laxantur.

[4] EUSEBII JERONIMI PRESBITERI LAUS, QUA JOSEPHUM COMPUTAT INTER ECCLESIASTICOS SCRIPTORES.

Account of Josephus from S. Jerome.

Josephus Mathiæ filius, ex Jerosolimis sacerdos, a Vespasiano captus cum Tito filio ejus relictus est. Hic Romam veniens septem libros Judaicæ Captivitatis imperatoribus patri filioque obtulit, qui et biliothecæ publicæ traditi sunt, et ob ingenii gloriam statuam quoque Romæ meruit. Scripsit autem et alios xx. Antiquitatum libros ab exordio mundi usque ad quartum decimum annum Domiciani Cæsaris. Hic in octavo decimo Antiquitatum libro manifestissime confitetur propter magnitudinem signorum Christum a Phariseis interfectum, et Johannem Baptistam vere prophetam fuisse, et propter interfectionem Jacobi apostoli Jerosolimam dirutam. Scribit autem de Domino in hunc modum; "Eo tempore fuit Jesus, sapiens "vir, si tamen virum eum oportet dicere. Erat enim mira-"bilium patrator operum et doctor eorum qui libenter vera "suscipiunt. Plurimos quoque tam de Judæis quam de genti-"bus sui habuit sectatores, et credebatur esse Christus. Cum-"que invidia nostrorum principum cruci eum Pilatus addixerit, "nichilominus qui prius eum dilexerunt perseveraverunt. Ap-"paruit enim eis tertia die vivens. Multa hæc et alia mirabilia "carminibus prophetarum de eo vaticinantibus, et usque hodie "Christianorum gens ab hoc sortita vocabulum non deficit."

---

[1] Virgil, Ecl. i. v. 65.

[2] Cæsar, B. G. iii. 19; and iv. 5.

[3] The extract is not from Eutropius, but from Florus, lib. ii. cap. 4.

[4] The order of the following extracts is somewhat different in MS. B.: they stand thus; Eusebius, Orosius, Robert de Monte, Josephus, Hegesippus, Augustinus, Hugo de Sancto Victore, Yvo Carnotensis. The following passage is from S. Jerome's book de Viris Illustribus, c. xiii., Opp. ed. Vallars, ii. 837. It is in MS. R. fo. 16.

Prologue of Hegesippus.

EGISIPPUS.[1] Regnorum casus quos scriptura sacra complexa est, etiam ipse stilo prosecutus sum usque ad captivitatem Judæorum, murique excidium et Babilonis triumphos hystoriæ in modum composui. Machabeorum quoque res gestas propheticus sermo paucis absolvit. Reliquorum usque ad incendium Templi spolia et manubias Titi Cæsaris relatorum egregius hystorico stilo Josephus contexuit; utinam tam religioni et veritati attentus quam rerum indagini et sermonum sobrietati. Consortem se enim perfidiæ Judæorum etiam in ipso sermone exhibuit, quem de eorum supplicio manifestavit, et quorum arma deseruit eorum arma sacrilega non dereliquit. Deploravit flebiliter ærumpnam, sed ipsius causam ærumpnæ non intellexit. Unde nobis curæ fuit, non ingenii ope fretis sed intentione fidei, in hystoriam Judæorum ultra scripturæ seriem sacræ paulisper introrsum pergere, ut tanquam in spinis rosam quærentes inter sæva impiorum facinora, quæ digno impietatis pretio soluta sunt, eruamus aliqua, vel de sacræ legis reverentia vel de sanctæ religionis constitutionisque miraculo, quæ magnis licet hæredibus vel in adversis obtentui fuerint, vel honori in prosperis; simul, quod est indicium domesticæ improbitatis, liqueat universis quod ipsi sibi propriæ cladis auctores fuere. Primum quod alia curantes Romanos in se converterint; et ad cognitionem regni sui invitaverint, quibus ignorari satis fuit. Rogaverunt amicitiam fidem non servaturi. Pacem violaverunt virtute impares. Postremum bellum intulerunt quibus spes omnis in mœnibus non in viribus erat, cum sit omnium miserabile claudi obsidione. Quæ etiam si bene procedit, augere sæpius quam minuere pericula solet. At ne quis vacuum fide et superfluum putet nos suscepisse negotium, ideo per principes ductum Hebræorum genus consideremus, ut liquido clareat, utrum a femoribus Judæ nusquam generationis ejus successio claudicaverit; an vero offenderit in principum serie, sed manserit in Eo cui reposita manebant omnia, et Ipse erat spes gentium: hinc igitur sumam exordium.

Prologue of Augustine.

AUGUSTINUS DE CIVITATE DEI.[2] Interea cum Roma Gothorum irruptione, agentium sub rege Alarico, atque impetu magnæ cladis eversa est, ejus eversionem deorum falsorum multo-

---

[1] *Egisippus*] Egisippi prologus, B. Hegesippus, de excidio urbis Hierosolymitanæ, ed. Gualther, 1576, p. 1: the following extract contains the whole of the Prologue, as translated by S. Ambrose from the Greek of Hegesippus.

[2] This is the Prologue to the first book of S. Augustine, de Civitate Dei.

rumque[1] cultores quos usitato nomine paganos vocamus, in Christianam religionem referre conantes, solito acerbius et amarius Deum verum blasphemare cœperunt. Unde ego, exardescens zelo domus Dei adversus eorum blasphemias vel errores, libros de Civitate Dei scribere institui. Quod opus per aliquot annos me tenuit, eo quod alia multa intercurrebant quæ differri non oporteret, et me prius ad solvendum occupabant. Hoc autem de Civitate Dei grande opus, tandem viginti duobus libris est terminatum. Quorum quinque primi eos refellunt qui res humanas ita prosperari volunt ut ad hoc multorum[2] deorum cultum quos pagani colere consueverunt necessarium esse arbitrentur; et quia prohibentur, mala ista exoriri atque habundare contendunt. Sequentes autem quinque adversus eos loquuntur qui fatentur hæc mala nec defuisse unquam nec defutura mortalibus; et ea nunc magna, nunc parva, locis, temporibus, personisque variari, sed Deorum multorum[2] cultum, quo eis sacrificatur propter vitam post mortem futuram, esse utilem disputant. His ergo decem libris duæ istæ vanæ opiniones Christianæ religioni adversariæ refelluntur. Sed ne quisquam nos aliena tantum redarguisse, non autem nostra asseruisse reprehenderet, id agit pars altera operis hujus, quæ libris duodecim continetur; quamquam, ubi opus est, et in prioribus decem quæ nostra sunt asseramus, et in duodecim posterioribus redarguamus adversa. Duodecim ergo librorum sequentium, primi quattuor continent exortum duarum civitatum, quarum est una Dei, altera hujus mundi. Secundi quattuor excursum earum sive procursum. Tertii vero qui et postremi debitos fines. Ita omnes viginti et duo libri, cum sint de utraque civitate conscripti, titulum tamen a meliore acceperunt, ut de civitate Dei potius vocarentur. In quorum duodecimo libro non debuit pro miraculo poni in Abrahæ sacrificio flammam cœlitus factam inter diversas victimas cucurrisse, quoniam hoc illi in visione monstratum est. In septimo decimo libro quod dictum est de Samuele, "non erat de filiis "Aaron," dicendum potius fuit, "non erat filius sacerdotis." Filios quippe sacerdotum defunctis sacerdotibus succedere magis legitimi moris fuit. Nam in filiis Aaron reperitur pater Samuelis. Sed sacerdos non fuit, nec ita in filiis ut ipse eum genuerit Aaron, sed sicut omnes illius populi dicuntur filii Israel. *Hoc opus sic incipit,* Gloriosissimam.

Prologue of Augustine to the book *De Civitate Dei.*

---

[1] *multorumque*] mutorumque, Aug.

[2] *multorum*] mutorum, Aug.

OROSIUS DE ORMESTA MUNDI.[1]

Account of Orosius.

Orosius presbiter, Hispani generis, vir eloquentissimus et hystoriarum cognitor, scripsit adversus querulos Christiani nominis, qui dicunt defectum Romanæ reipublicæ Christi doctrina invectum, libros vii.; in quibus pene totius mundi calamitates et miserias et bellorum inquietudines replicans, ostendit magis Christianæ observantiæ esse quod contra meritum suum res Romana adhuc duraret, et pace culturæ Dei placatum retineat imperium. Sane in primo libro descripsit positionem orbis, Oceani intercisionem, et Tanai limitibus intercisum, situm locorum, et nomina et numerum, moresque gentium, qualitates gentium, initia bellorum, et tirannidis exordia finitimorum sanguine dedicata. Hic est Orosius qui ab Augustino, pro discenda animæ ratione ad Jeronimum missus, rediens, reliquias beati Stephani prothomartyris, tunc nuper inventas, primus intulit Occidenti. Claruit extremo Honorii imperatoris tempore. Qui[2] ab orbe condito usque ad urbem conditam, dehinc usque ad Cæsaris principatum Nativitatemque Christi, ex quo sub potestate urbis orbis mansit imperium, vel etiam usque ad annum Dominicæ Incarnationis quadringentesimum xviii^{um}, conflictationes generis humani, et veluti per diversas partes ardentem mundum face cupiditatis incensum speculo ostentaturus, necessarium duxit ut primo ipsum terrarum orbem quem inhabitat humanum genus, sicut a majoribus tripharium distributum, deinde regionibus provinciisque determinatum esse expediat, quo facilius cum locales bellorum morborumque clades ostentabuntur, studiosi quique non solum rerum ac temporum, sed etiam locorum scientiam consequantur.

Part of his prologue.

INCIPIT PRÆFATIO EUSEBII PAMPHILI AB BEATO JERONIMO INTERPRETATA.[3]

Preface to the Chronicle of Eusebius.

Moysen gentis Hebraicæ, qui primus omnium prophetarum ante adventum Domini Salvatoris divinas leges sacris litteris explicavit, Inachi fuisse temporibus eruditissimi viri tradide-

[1] The first part of this extract is from Gennadius, de illustribus Viris (ed. Fuchte, 1612), pp. 15, 16; Hieron. Opp. ii. 986.

[2] The remainder of the extract is from the first chapter of Orosius's own work, called the Hormesta, Ormesta, or Adversus Paganos Historiæ, lib. i. cap. 1 (ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 9).

[3] Part of the version by S. Jerome of the preface of Eusebius to his Chronicle: Hieron, Opp. (ed. Vallarsius), vol. viii. pp. 11–18.

runt, ex nostris Clemens et Affricanus et Tatianus, ex Judæis Josephus et Justinus[1] veteris hystoriæ monumenta replicantes. Porro Inachus quingentis annis Trojanum bellum antecedit. Ex ethnicis vero impius ille Porphirius in quarto sui operis libro quod adversum nos casso labore contexuit, post Moysen Semiramim fuisse affirmat, quæ apud Assyrios CL. ante Inachum regnavit annos. Itaque juxta eum octingentis pene et quinquaginta annis Trojano bello Moyses senior invenitur. Cum hæc ita se habeant, necessarium duxi veritatem diligentius persequi, et ob id in priore libro quasi quandam materiam futuro operi omnium michi regum tempora prænotavi, Caldeorum, Assyriorum, Medorum, Persarum, Lydorum, Hebræorum, Egyptiorum, Atheniensium, Argivorum, Sicioniorum, Lacedæmoniorum, Corinthiorum, Thessalorum, Machedonum, Latinorum, qui postea Romani nuncupati sunt. Utcumque autem quis volet computet, reperiet Inachi temporibus patriarcham Hebræorum fuisse Israhelem, a quo duodecim Judæorum tribus Israhelis vocabulum sortitæ sunt. Semiramin autem et Abraham contemporales fuisse manifestum est. Nam Moyses licet junior sit, tamen senior deprehenditur Homero Trojanoque bello, Hercule, Orpheo, Libero, Mercurio, Apolline, Jove quoque quem Græcia in arce divinitatis collocavit.

Preface to the Chronicle of Eusebius.

GLORIOSISSIMO[2] REGI NORTHUMBRORUM CELWLFO BEDA FAMULUS CHRISTI ET PRESBITER:—Historiam gentis Anglorum ecclesiasticam quam nuper edideram, libentissime tibi desideranti, rex, et prius ad legendum ac probandum transmisi, et nunc ad transcribendum ac plenius ex tempore meditandum retransmitto. Satisque studium tuæ sinceritatis amplector, quo non solum audiendis scripturæ sanctæ verbis aurem sedulus accommodas, verum etiam noscendis priorum gestis sive dictis, et maxime nostræ gentis virorum illustrium, curam vigilanter impendis. Sive enim historia de bonis bona referat, ad imitandum bonum auditor sollicitus instigatur; seu mala commemoret de pravis, nichilominus religiosus ac pius auditor sive lector, devitando quod noxium est ac perversum, ipse sollertius ad exsequenda ea quæ bona ac Deo digna esse cognoverit accenditur. Quod ipsum tu quoque vigilantissime deprehendens hystoriam memoratam in notitiam tibi simul et eis quibus te regendis divina præfecit auctoritas, ob generalis curam salutis latius propalari desideras.

Part of the introduction to Bede's History.

[1] *Justinus*] Justus, B., which has here the true reading.

[2] This is the first part of the Prologue to Bede's Historia Ecclesiastica, Mon. Hist. Brit. p. 106. It is omitted in MS. B.

Bede's description of Britain.

Beda, libro I°., capitulo I°.—[1] Igitur insula Britanniæ, cui quondam Albion nomen fuit, per milia passuum octingenta in Boream longa, latitudinis habet milia ducenta. Optima frugibus atque arboribus, et alendis apta pecoribus et jumentis. Vineas etiam in quibusdam locis germinans, sed et avium ferax terra marique generis diversi. Fluviis quoque multum piscosis ac fontibus præclara copiosis, et quidem præcipue isitio habundat et anguilla. Capiuntur autem sæpissime et vituli marini et delfines et balenæ, genera quoque conchiliorum quibus includitur margarita coloris maxime candidi. Habet fontes salinarum, habet et fontes calidos. Venis etiam metallorum, æris, ferri, plumbi, stanni, et argenti fecunda; gignit et lapidem gagatem. Hæc etiam quinque gentium linguis, Anglorum videlicet, Britonum, Scottorum, Pictorum, et Latinorum, facta est communis.

Part of the Preface of Robert de Monte to his chronicle.

Robertus abbas Sancti Michaelis de Monte in Normannia.—[2] Qui dicunt "quid necesse est vitas vel mortes vel diversos "casus hominum litteris mandare, prodigia cœli et terræ vel "aliorum elementorum scriptis impressa perpetuare?"—noverint bonam vitam et mores præcedentium ad imitationem subsequentium proponi, malorum vero exempla non ut imitemur, sed ut vitentur, describi. Prodigia autem vel portenta præterita, quæ famem vel mortalitatem vel aliqua alia flagella supernæ vindictæ pro meritis filiorum hominum cum videntur significant, ideo per litteras memoriæ commendantur, ut si quando similia evenerint, peccatores qui se iram Dei in aliquo incurrisse meminerint, mox ad remedia pœnitentiæ et confessionis per hæc Deum placaturi festinent. Hac de causa licet aliæ non desint, Moyses legislator in divina hystoria innocentiam Abel, Caini invidiam, simplicitatem Jacob, dolositatem Esau, malitiam undecim filiorum Israelis, bonitatem duodecimi, scilicet Joseph, pœnam quinque civitatum per consumtionem ignis et sulphuris manifestat, quatinus bonos imitemur, malorum esse pedisequos exhorreamus, prodigium autem incendii peccati fugiendo fœtorem devitemus. Hoc non solum Moyses sed et omnes divinæ paginæ tractatores et in hystoricis et in moralibus libris faciunt, virtutes commendando,

---

[1] An abridgment of the first chapter of the first book of Bede's Historia Ecclesiastica, Mon. Hist. Brit. 108, 109.

[2] This is a portion of the Preface of Robert de Monte to his book "de Temporum Descriptione," in continuation of Sigebert of Gemblours. It is printed by Pertz, ed. Bethmann; Mon. Hist. Germ. vol. viii. p. 480; Migne, Patrologia, vol. 160, c. 421.

vitia detestando, Deum timere simul et amare nos admonendo. Non igitur sunt audiendi qui libros Chronicorum maxime a catholicis editos negligendos dicunt, in quibus tam utilis intentio sicut et in cæteris tractatoribus generaliter habetur. Robert de Monte.

Magister Hugo de Sancto Victore :[1]—Fili, sapientia thesaurus est et cor tuum archa. Quando sapientiam discis, thesaurizas tibi thesauros bonos, thesauros immortales, thesauros incorruptibiles, qui nunquam veterascunt nec speciem suæ claritatis amittunt. In thesauris sapientiæ variæ sunt opum species, et in archa cordis tui conditoria multa, alibi aurum, alibi argentum, alibi lapides preciosi disponuntur. Dispositio ordinis illustratio est cognitionis. Dispone et distingue singula locis suis, seorsum ista et seorsum illa, ut scias quid ibi et quid ibi collocatum sit. Confusio ignorantiæ et oblivionis mater est; discretio autem intelligentiam illuminat et memoriam confirmat. Hugh of S. Victor.

Vides nummularium diversas monetas habentem, quemadmodum in marsupium suum intersepiat, ita ut unus ambitus plures intrinsecus cellas complectatur. Partita namque pecunia et monetis singulis ab invicem discretis, omnia suis locis servanda disponit, quatinus ipsa locorum distinctio rerum partitionem, sicut divisam suscepit, ita custodiat inpermixtam. Post hæc cernis in concambio quomodo manus prompta sequitur sine impedimento quocumque animus volentis perrexerit, et omne quod vel accepturus poposcerit vel promiserit daturus, velociter sine mora in apertum discretum et inconfusum producit, et fortassis ridiculum mirandumque satis intuentibus spectaculum præbetur, dum unus et idem sacculus tam multas species inpermixtas effunderet, si ipsa spelunca ore reserato tot intrinsecus antra hiantia non demonstrat. Nunc autem quæ demonstratur locorum discretio uno eodemque tempore et intuentibus tollit facti miraculum et agentibus faciendi impedimentum, sicut enim jam præfati sumus discretio rerum evidentiam facit. Evidentia vero rerum animum simul et in agnitione illuminat, et in memoria confirmat. Redi ergo, fili, ad cor tuum, et considera qualiter in eo disponere et collocare debeas pretiosos sapientiæ thesauros ut scias singula receptacula ejus, et cum quid in eis servandum posueris, tali ordine dispone ut, cum ratio poposcerit, facile illud per memoriam invenire et per intelligentiam et per facundiam proferre possis.

---

[1] MS. R. fo. 16; with the heading erased. The Chronicle of Hugh of S. Victor is still in MS. only. There are copies in several of the French Libraries.

Prologue of Ivo of Chartres.

Yvo Carnotensis episcopus:[1]—Exceptiones ex epistolis Romanorum pontificum, ex gestis conciliorum, ex tractatibus orthodoxorum patrum, ex institutionibus catholicorum regum, in unum corpus adunare curavi, ut qui scripta illa ex quibus ista excepta sunt ad manum habere non poterit, hinc saltem accipiat quod ad commodum causæ suæ valere prospexerit, nec sit quærenti necesse volumina tota revolvere. Si vero quæ legerit non ad plenum intellexerit, vel sibi invicem adversari crediderit, non statim reprehendat, sed quid secundum rigorem, quid secundum moderationem, quid secundum judicium, quid secundum misericordiam dicatur, diligenter attendat. Doctores siquidem ecclesiæ nec a se nec inter se dissentiunt cum illicita prohibent, necessaria jubent, summa suadent, venalia indulgent. Cum indulgent, majoribus morbis amovendis provident; cum illicita prohibent, a morte deterrent; cum necessaria jubent, salutem cupiunt servare; cum summa suadent, salutem student augere. Quid igitur sit ammonitio, quid præceptum, quid prohibitio, quid remissio, distinguendum est. Ammonitio pœnam non intentat, si quis post eam non eat, sed præmium adquiescentibus pollicetur. Indulgentia remedium habet, non præmium; si quis ad hoc declinaverit, meretur exitiale judicium. Præceptiones et prohibitiones quædam sunt mobiles, quædam immobiles. Præceptiones immobiles sunt quas lex æterna sanxit, ut "Diliges Dominum "Deum tuum." Mobiles sunt quas lex æterna non sanxit, ut "Hæreticum hominem post primam et secundam correptionem "devita." Immobiles prohibitiones sunt quæ adversus vitia loquuntur, qualia sunt "Non occides;" quæ si quis observaverit, non statim regno Dei dignus erit, quia inchoantia sunt hæc non perficientia. Cogunt multas inveniri medicinas multorum experimenta morborum. Tale est illud in evangelio, "Sit sermo vester, Est, est, Non, non; quod autem amplius est "a malo est," non jurantis sed jurare cogentis. In hiis in quibus observatis salus adquiritur, vel in quibus neglectis mors indubitata consequitur, nulla est admittenda dispensatio, sed ita sunt omnia mandata vel interdicta servanda, sicut sunt æterna lege sancita. In hiis vero quæ posterior sancxit diligentia, admittitur dispensatio; Dominus mittens discipulos ad prædicandum interdixit eis et peram et sacculum; instante passione reddidit utrumque, necessitati temporis cedens. Item

S. Matt. xxii. 37. — Titus iii. 10. — S. Matt. v. 37.

---

[1] This is an abridgment of the Prologue prefixed by Ivo of Chartres to his Decretum: Ivonis Opera (ed. Paris, 1647), p. 1. The following extract is omitted in C.

Galat. v. 2. Paulus dicit, "Si circumcidamini, Christus vobis nichil "proderit." Item tamen Timotheum Listris circumcidit. Multa principes ecclesiarum pro tenore canonum districtius judicant; multa pro temporum necessitate tolerant; multa pro personarum utilitate vel strage populorum vitanda dispensant. Non potest esse salubris correctio nisi cum ille corripitur, qui non habet sociam multitudinem; cum autem idem morbus plurimos occupaverit, nichil aliud restat bonis quam dolor et gemitus. Rursus in potestate judicis est mollire sententiam et mitius judicare quam leges. Itaque quod necessitas pro remedio reperit, cessante necessitate cesset. Nam aliud est ordo legitimus, aliud usurpatio quam aliquotiens fieri tempus impellit. Præterea translationes [1] episcoporum quæ prohibitæ fuerant propter honestatem personarum et populorum necessitatem sæpius introductæ sunt. Plurimos etiam degradatos [2] apostolica sedes restituit. Filios quoque presbiterorum quorum conversatio vel in monasteriis, vel religiosis ecclesiis, fuerit approbata, non solum ad presbiteratum sed etiam ad summum [3] sacerdotium promoveri permisit. Filios aliquorum etiam episcoporum, in hiis ecclesiis in quibus patres [4] eorum ministraverant, aliqua mediante persona, promotos audivimus. Quattuor ultima, Dominicalibus annis distincta, repperies infra.

Preface of Ivo of Chartres.

Anni Domini
[1] MCLXXVI.
[2] MCLIIII.
[3] MCLXI.
[4] MCLXI.

[1] Ivo, Opp. p. 4. The marginal dates are inserted by Ralph de Diceto: and they refer to the portions of his own work in which he has used the authority of Ivo:—in 1176 the translation of William of Champagne from Sens to Rheims leads him to quote this work on the question of translations: in 1154 the deposition of archbishop William of York; and in 1161 the appointment of Richard Peche, the son of a bishop of Coventry, to his father's see, are illustrated by parallels from the same source.

In Nomine Domini nostri Jesu Christi. Incipit Abbreviatio Chronicorum de diversis illustrium virorum codicibus diligenter excerpta.

Idea of the following work.

Cassiodorus de Institutione divinarum litterarum, capitulo XVII°.[1] Chronica sunt ymagines hystoriarum brevissimæque commemorationes temporum.

Five special points particularly illustrated.

Annorum itaque seriem, regnorum casus, persecutiones ecclesiæ, scismatum conflictationes, conciliorum statuta, sub brevitate claudamus, quæ regnum Angliæ maxime videntur contingere latius prosequentes. I. Quibus ergo temporibus, ubi vel quorum ministerio reges Anglorum munus consecrationis et regni diadema susceperint; II. Quantis ecclesia Cantuariensis juxta Romanorum pontificum instituta gaudeat munimentis; III. Qualiter Andegavia proficiens et succrescens fines suos dilataverit in immensum; IIII. Quid inter regnum et sacerdotium temporibus Anselmi, Thomæ, Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum emerserit quæstionis; V. Quo fine quieverit controversia diutius inter regem Henricum secundum et filios suos habita, diligens lector inveniet in sequentibus.

Apology for the plan.

Opus si quid præsens plurimum a compendio mutuatur, quantum ratio sinit adeo sub moderatione repressum, ut nec prodiga sit in eo copia, nec obscura brevitas, nec concinnitas tædiosa.

	CONDITIO.		
Creata[2]	Cœlum et terra.	In principio	Materia.
	I. Lux.	Prima die	
	II. Firmamentum.	Secunda die	
Disposita	III. Congregatio aquarum.	Tertia die	
	IIII. Luminaria.	Quarta die	In forma.
Ornata	V. Volucres et pisces.	Quinta die	
	VI. Bestiæ et homo.	Sexta die	
	RESTAURATIO.		Cœlum, aqua, aer, terra.

[1] Cassiodorus, Opera (ed. Garet, 1679), vol. ii. p. 550.

[2] This table is exhibited in the MSS. in a drawing of an arcade of five arches and two half arches: prettily illuminated in red and yellow.

The ages of the world, and succession of the patriarchs from Adam to Moses.

Secundum	*Hebraicam*	*veri-*	*tatem.*
Ab initio	*homo*	*genuit.*	*vixit.*
CXXX.	Adam	CXXX.	DCCCXXX.
CCXXXV.	Seth	CV.	DCCCCXII.
CCCXXV.	Enos	XC.	DCCCCV.
CCCXCV.	Cainan	LXX.	DCCCCX.
CCCCLX.	Malaleel	LXV.	DCCCXCV.
DCXXII.	Jared	CLXII.	DCCCCLXII.
DCLXXXVII.	Enoch	LXV.	CCCLXV.
DCCCLXXIIII.	Matusalam	CLXXXVII.	DCCCCLXIX.
I. LVI.	Lamech	CLXXXII.	DCCLXVII.
I. DLVI.	Noe*	D.	DCCCCL.
I. DCLVI.	Sem	C.	Ante diluvium.

*In Noe prima ætas terminata est ita quod et ipse in ea fuit.[1]

Prima ætas finitur continens annos I. DCLVI.

I. DCLVIII.	Sem	II. *post diluvium.*	DCII.
I. DCXCIII.	Arfaxat	XXXV.	CCCCXXXIX.
I. DCCXXIII.	Sale	XXX.	CCCCXXXIII.
I. DCCLVII.	Hebert†	XXXIII.	CCCCLXIIII.
I. DCCLXXXVII.	Falech	XXX.	CCXXXIX.
I. DCCCXIX.	Reu	XXXII.	CCXXXIX.
I. DCCCXLIX.	Seruch	XXX.	CCXXX.
I. DCCCLXXVIII.	Nachor	XXIX.	CXLVIII.
I. DCCCCXLVIII.	Thare§	LXX.	CCV.

†In cujus domo propria loquela remansit, ceteris linguis dispersis.

§In Thare terminatur ætas secunda, sed extenditur ad nativitatem Abrahæ.[2]

Secunda ætas finitur continens annos CCXCII.

II. XLVIII.	Abraham	C.	CLXXV.
II. CVIII.	Ysaac	LX.	CLXXX.
II. XCVII.	Jacob	LXXXIX.	CXLVII.
II. CCXLII.	Levi	XLV.	CXXXVII.
II. CCCIII.	Gaath	LXI.	CXXXIII.
II. CCCLXXIII.	Amram	LXX.	CXXXVII.
II. CCCCLIII.	Moyses	LXXX. annorum fuit in exitu Israel de Egypto.	

[1] *In Noe . . . fuit*] om. B. | [2] *In Thare . . . Abrahæ*] om. B.

The judges of Israel.

Pontifices.	Judices.	Præfuerunt.	Ab Abraham.	
Aaron. . .	II. CCCCXCIII.	Moyses	XL.	DXLV.
Heleazar . .	II. DXIX.	Josue	XXVI.	DLXXI.
Phinees . .	II. DLIX.	Othoniel	XL.	DCXI.
Abysue . .	II. DCXXXIX.	Aioth	LXXX.	DCXCI.
Bocci . . .	II. DCLXXIX.	Delbora et Baruch.	XL.	DCCXXXI.
Hozi . . .	II. DCCXIX.	Gedeon	XL.	DCCLXXI.
Hely . . .	II. DCCXXII.	Abimelech	III.	DCCLXXIIII.
Ophni et . .	II. DCCXLV.	Thola	XXIII.	DCCXCVII.
Phinees . .	II. DCCLXVII.	Jahir	XXII.	DCCCXIX.
Achitop. . .	II. DCCLXXIII.	Jepte	VI.	DCCCXXV.
Abimelec . .	II. DCCLXXX.	Abessan	VII.	DCCCXXXII.
Abiathar . .	II. DCCXC.	Achialon	X.	DCCCXLII.
Sadoch[1] . .	II. DCCXCVIII.	Iabdon Hujus tertio principatus anno Troja capta est.	VIII.	DCCCL.
	II. DCCCXVIII.	Samson	XX.	DCCCLXX.
† Trinovantum conditur quæ nunc dicitur Lundonia.	II. DCCCLVIII.	Heli †	XL.	DCCCCX.
	II. DCCCLXX.	Samuel	XII.	DCCCCXXII.

Reges	regnaverunt	ab	Abraham.
II. DCCCXC.	Saul	XX.	DCCCCXLII.

Tertia ætas finitur continens annos nongentos XLII. *a David.*

The kings of Judah and Israel.

†Eboracum et castellum Puellarum construuntur.	II. DCCCCXXX.	David†	XL.	XL.		
	II. DCCCCLXX.	Salomon	XL.	LXXX.	REGES ISRAEL.	
	II. DCCCCLXXXVII.	Roboam	XVII.	XCVII.	Jeroboam	XXII.
* REGES JUDA.	II. DCCCCXC.	Abia	III.	C.	Nadab	II.
	III. XXXI.	Asa	XLI.	CXLI.	Baasa	XXIIII.
	III. LVI.	Josaphat	XXV.	CLXVI.	Hela	II.
	III. LXIII.	Joram*	VII. vel VIII.	CLXXIII.	Zamri	VII.
	III. LXIIII.	Azarias	I.	CLXXIIII.	Amri	XII.
	III. LXX.	Athalia	VI. vel VII.	CLXXX.	Achab	XXII.
	III. XC.	Johas	XL.	CCXX.	Ochozias	II.
	III. CXXXIX.	Amasias	XXIX.	CCXLIX.	Joram	XI.
	III. CXCI.	Ozias	LII.	CCCI.	Hieu	XXVIII.

[1] *Pontifices a tempore Salomonis ad transmigrationem Babilonis*; Achimas, Azarias, Joiada, Azarias, Amarias, Achitob, Sadoch, Sellum, Elchias, Azarias, Syraias, Josedech,—add. B. in marg.

Kings of Judah and Israel.

	Reges Juda.			Reges Israel.	
III. CCVII.	Joathan	XVI.	CCCXVII.	Joachaz	XVII.
III. CCXXIII.	Achaz	XVI.	CCCXXXIII.	Joas	XVI.
III. CCLII.	Ezechias	XXVIII. vel XXIX.	CCCLXII.	Jeroboam	XLI.
III. CCCVII.	Manasses	LV. vel LVI.	CCCCXVII.	Zacharias	Menses VI.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO I°.[1] His temporibus septem fuerunt sapientes, scilicet Tales, Pitacus, Solon, Chilon, Pariandrus, Cleobolus, Bias; et post poetas theologos claruerunt. Hoc tempore Romulus mille pugnatores elegit quos a numero milites appellavit.[2] -

The wise men and the Sibylls.

AUGUSTINUS, LIBRO XVIII°.[3] CAPITULO XXV^to^. His temporibus plures fuerunt Sybillæ, quarum una fuit Etherea[4] sive Cumea, quæ ita contra cultores ydolorum loquitur, ut in eorum numero deputanda videatur, qui pertinent ad civitatem Dei.

Kings of Judah and Israel.

III. CCCIX.	Amon	II.		Zacharias	Menses VI.
III. CCCXL.	Josias	XXXI.	CCCCXVII.	Sellum	Mens. I.
III. CCCXL. et mensibus III.	Joachaz	Mensibus III.	CCCCXIX.	Manahen	X.
III. CCCLI.	Joachim*	XI.	CCCCL.	Faceia	II.
III. CCCLI. et mensibus III.	Joachin	Mensibus III.	CCCCLXI.	Facee	XX.
III. CCCLXII.	Sedechias	XI.	CCCCLXXII.	Osee	IX.

*Cantuaria et Wintonia conditæ sunt.[5]

III. CCCCXXII. Transmigratio Babilonica, LXX. Quarta ætas finitur continens annos CCCCLXXIIII.

Story of Protagoras.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO V^to^ CAP. III°.[6]—Per id tempus Pitagoram aiunt, victus quærendi gratia, in mercede missum vecturas hominum suo corpore factitavisse. Is de proximo rure Abdera in oppidum, cujus popularis fuit, caudices ligni plurimos funiculo brevi circumdatos portabat. Tum forte Democritus, ejusdem civis, homo ante alios virtutis et philosophiæ gratia venerandus, cum egrederetur extra urbem, videt eum cum illo genere oneris tam impedito ac tam incohibili[7] facile atque expedite incedentem, et prope accedit et juncturam positu-

He is discovered by Democritus.

---

[1] *Eutropius*] Under this name is generally quoted the Historia Miscella., which is edited by Eyssenhardt, in 1869, by Migne, in vol. xcv. of the Patrologia, and others.

[2] *Hoc tempore . . . . appellavit*] Historia Miscella, lib. i. c. 5.

[3] *Augustinus*] Augustinus, B. C. MS. B. gives the reference to the 25th chapter of the fifth book. The passage quoted, is, however, in the 22nd chapter of the eighteenth book, but it is not a literal extract.

[4] *Etherea*] Erythrea, Aug.

[5] *Cantuaria . . . sunt*] om. B.

[6] Aulus Gellius, Noctes Atticæ, lib. v. c. 3. The Pitagoras of the text is Protagoras.

[7] *incohibili*] inchoibili, A.

Story of Protagoras.

ramque ligni scite periteque factam considerabat, petitque ut paululum quiescat. Quod ubi Pitagoras, ut erat petitum, fecit, atque idem Democritus acervum illum et quasi orbem caudicum brevi vinculo comprehensum ratione quadam quasi geometrica librari contlnerique animadvertit, interrogavit quis id lignum ita composuisset. Et cum ille a se compositum dixisset, desideravit uti solveret ac denuo in modum illum collocaret. Ac postquam ille solvit ac similiter composuit, tum Democritus animi aciem sollertiamque hominis non docti demiratus, "Mi adolescens," inquit, "cum ingenium bene-"faciendi habeas, sunt majora melioraque quæ facere mecum "possis." Adduxitque eum statim secumque habuit et sumptum ministravit, et philosophias docuit, et eum esse fecit quantus postea fuit.

Why Democritus blinded himself.

[1] AGELLIUS, LIBRO XI° CAPITULO XVII°.[2] — Democritum philosophum, in monimentis hystoriæ Græcæ scriptum est, virum præter alios venerandum auctoritateque antiqua præditum, luminibus oculorum sua sponte se privasse, quia existimaret cogitationes commentationesque animi sui in contemplandis naturæ rationibus vegetiores et exactiores fore, si eas videndi illecebris et oculorum impedimentis liberasset.

---

[1] The order of the following extracts is very different in MS. B.: they stand there thus;—

1.	Pytagoras ex quo . . . inseparabilis	below,	p. 39.
2.	Democritum . . . liberasset	„	p. 38.
3.	Eodem tempore Pytagoras floruit, ex quo cœperunt appellari philosophi	„	p. 39.
4.	Euadus . . . reliquerunt	„	p. 39.
5.	Pytagoras eo tempore	„	p. 46.
6.	Apuleius. Igitur . . . mutabile	„	p. 46.
7.	Per id tempus . . . corpore	„	p. 46.
8.	Zantippe, &c., erased	„	p. 40.
9.	Xenon . . . pariunt	„	p. 39.
10.	Philippides . . . mortuus est	„	p. 39.
11.	Esse pueros . . . arboris	„	p. 39.
12.	Exin his scientiæ . . . divertebat	„	p. 40
13.	Vive præteritis . . . præsentibus	„	p. 40.
14.	Diagoras . . . efflavit	„	p. 40.
15.	Androclus . . . leonis	„	p. 40.
16.	Demosteneu . . . dicta sunt	„	p. 41.
17.	Varro dicit . . . delectent	„	p. 42.
18.	Item Varro . . . peccabitur	„	p. 42.
19.	Aristoteles . . . concesserunt	„	p. 42.
20.	Cornelius . . . vicisse	„	p. 43.
21.	Zantippe . . . facit	„	p. 40.

[2] Properly lib. x. c. 17.

Agellius, Noctium Atticarum libro v^to capitulo ix°.[1] — Euadus adolescens in disciplina Pytagoræ se dedit. Dimidium pecuniæ quam Pytagoras petierat priusquam disceret dedit, daturus reliquum dimidium cum apud judices orasset et vicisset. Postea cum diutile auditor assessorque Pytagoræ fuisset, causas tamen non reciperet, et facere id videretur ne reliquum mercedis daret, Pytagoras ante judices cum Euado litem contestatur, sic exorsus, "Disce, stultissime adolescens utroque id "modo fore uti reddas quod peto, sive contra te pronunciatum "erit sive pro te. Nam si contra te lis data erit, merces "michi ex sententia debebitur; quia ego vicero. Si vero ju-"dicatum pro te erit, merces michi ex pacto debebitur, quia "tu viceris." Euadus adolescens e contra, "Disce, magister "sapientissime, utroque modo fore uti non reddam quod petis, "sive contra me pronunciatum fuerit sive pro me. Nam si "judices pro causa mea senserint, nichil tibi ex sententia debe-"bitur, quia ego vicero. Si contra me pronunciatum fuerit, "nichil tibi ex pacto debeo, quia non vicero." Tum judices dubium hoc et inexplicabile videntes, rem injudicatam reliquerunt.

Story of Protagoras and Euathlus.

Dilemma and counter-dilemma.

Agellius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo xi°.[2]—Xenon et Plato, Socraticæ amœnitatis duo lumina certare æmularique inter sese existimati sunt, quia de his apud alios quis esset exuperantior certabatur. Et quia duæ eminentiæ, cum simul junctæ in arduum nituntur, simulachrum quoddam contentionis æmulæ pariunt.

Xenophon and Plato.

Agellius, libro iiii^to. capitulo vii°.[3]—Philippides cum in certamine poetarum præter spem vicisset et lætissime gauderet, inter illud gaudium repente mortuus est.

Philippides.

Agellius, libro xvii°. capitulo xxvii°.[4] — Esse pueros in utero Varro dicit capite infimo nixos, sursum pedibus elatis, non ut hominis natura est, sed ut arboris.

Saying of Varro.

Agellius, libro i°. capitulo ix°.[5]—Pytagoras, ex quo cœperunt appellari philosophi, et omnes simul qui a Pytagora in cohortem illam disciplinarum recepti erant, quod quisque familiæ pecuniæque habebat in medium dabat, et coibatur societas inseparabilis.

Pythagoras and the philosophers.

---

[1] Properly lib. v. c. 10. Euadus is properly Euathlus.

[2] Properly lib. xiv. cap. 3. The Xenon of the text is Xenophon.

[3] Properly lib. iii. c. 15.

[4] Properly lib. xvi. c. 16.

[5] The reference is correct; and the Pytagoras here referred to is Pythagoras, not Protagoras as above.

Discipline of Pythagoras.

Agellius, libro i°. capitulo x°.[1]—Mos erat Pytagoræ tam recipiendi quem instituendi discipulos. Adolescentium mores naturasque conjectatione quadam de vultus et oris ingenio, deque totius corporis tam filo quam habitu sciscitabatur. Exploratus ab eo receptusque in disciplina statim jubebatur tempus certum tacere. Discipulus, qui tacebat per biennium, quæ dicebantur ab aliis audiebat, neque percunctari si parum intellexerat, neque commentari quæ frequenter audierat, fas erat. Ast ubi res didicerat rerum omnium difficillimas, tum quærere verba, tum scribere quæ vel audierat, vel quæ opinaretur exprimere, potestas erat. Exin his scientiæ studiis ornatus, ad opera mundi perspicienda, non illotis pedibus divertebat.

Agellius, libro i°. capitulo xi°.[2]—Vive præteritis moribus, loquere verbis præsentibus.

Socrates tells Alcibiades why he tolerates Xantippe.

Agellius, libro i°. capitulo xvii.[3]—Zantipe Socratis uxor admodum morosa fuisse fertur et jurgiosa: quæ rerum et molestiarum muliebrium per diem perque noctem scatebat. Has ejus intemperies in maritum Alcipiades intendens, iratus interrogavit Socratem quænam esset ratio cur mulierem tam acerbam domo non excluderet. Inquit Socrates, "Cum illam domi "talem perpetior, insuesco simul et exerceor ut cæterorum "quoque foris petúlantiam et injuriam facilius feram."[4] Uxoris enim vitium aut tollendum est aut ferendum. Qui tollit vitium uxorem commodiorem præstat, qui fert sese meliorem facit.

Triumphs and death of Diagoras.

Agellius, libro iiii^to^. capitulo xv°.[5]—Diagoras tres filios adolescentes habuit; unum pugilem, alterum pancratiasten, tertium luctatorem. Eos omnes vidit vincere coronarique Olimpiæ eodem die; et cum ibi eum tres adolescentes amplexi, coronis suis in caput patris positis suaviarentur, tum populus gratulabundus flores undique in eum jaceret, idem in stadio inspectante populo, in osculis atque in manibus filiorum animam efflavit.

Story of Androclus and the lion.

Agellius, libro v°. capitulo x°.[6] Androclus iniquis domini sui cotidianisque verberibus ad fugam coactus est; et ut præsidio tutiori latebræ forent, concessit in camporum solitudines et arenarum. Cum defuisset cibus consilium fuit mortem aliquo pacto quærere. Specum itaque quandam nactus remotam latebrosamque in eam se recondit. Nec multo post ad eandem specum leo venit, uno debili cruentoque pede, gemitus edens

---

[1] An extract from the same chapter, lib. i. c. 9:—also referring to Pythagoras.

[2] Lib. i. c. 10.

[3] Lib. i. c. 17.

[4] The remainder of the sentence is a quotation from Varro, not a part of the dictum of Socrates.

[5] Properly lib. iii. c. 15.

[6] Properly lib. v. c. 14, where the story is differently arranged.

et murmura. Suum illud habitaculum ingressus leo vidit Androclum procul delitescentem. Leo mitis et mansuetus accessit, et sublatum pedem ostendere, pedem porrigere velut opis petendæ gratia, visus est. Androclus stipem ingentem vestigio leonis hærentem revellit, conceptamque saniem expressit, accuratiusque sine magna jam formidine, siccavit penitus atque detersit cruorem. Opera cujus et medela leviatus, in manibus Androcli pede posito, leo recubuit et quievit; et ex ea die triennium totum Androclus et leo simul in eadem specu simul eodem victu vixerunt. Quas leo venabatur feras ad specum deferebat Androclo. Qui copiam ignis non habens meridiano sole torrens eas edebat. Postmodum Androclus illius vitæ pertæsus, in venatum leone profecto, specum reliquit, et viam ferme tridui permensus a militibus visus et apprehensus ad dominum suum ex Affrica Romam deducitur. Captus est et leo Romamque transmissus. Leo corporis impetu, fremitu terrifico sonoroque, thoris comisque fluctuantibus, animos simul et oculos omnium in sese converterat. Introductus est Androclus, servus viri consularis, ad pugnam bestiarum. Hunc ubi leo vidit procul repente tanquam ammirans stetit, ac deinde sensim atque placide, quasi noscitabundus ad hominem accedit. Tum caudam, adulantium more canum, clementer et blande movet; hominis, prope jam exanimati metu, corpus, crura, manus lingua leniter demulcet. Androclus inter illata tam atrocis feræ blandimenta, spiritum amissum recuperat paulatim, et oculos ad contuendum leonem refert. Tum quasi mutua recognitione facta lætos et gratulabundos videres hominem et leonem. Ea re prorsus tam admirabili maximos populi clamores excitatos audires. Androclus accersitus a Cæsare rem ubi mirandam atque mirificam narrasset, cunctis petentibus, dimissus est et pœna solutus; cui leo suffragiis populi donatur. Videres postmodum Androclum et leonem loro tenui vinctum urbe tota circum tabernas ire; videres Androclum ære donari, videres floribus spargi leonem; audires obvios omnes undique dicere, "Hic est leo hospes "hominis! hic est homo hospes[1] leonis."

Story of Androclus and the lion.

Agellius, libro i°. capitulo vi^to^.[2] Demostenen traditum et vestitu cæteroque cultu corporis nitido venustoque nimisque accurato fuisse. Hinc ei ab æmulis adversariisque probra data, hinc etiam turpibus indignisque in eum verbis non temperatum, quin parum vir et ore quoque polluto diceretur. Ad eundem modum Ortensius ferme omnibus oratoribus ætatis suæ nisi Marco Tullio clarior, quod multa munditia et cir-

Neatness of dress charged as a fault against Demosthenes and Hortensius.

[1] *hospes*] medicus, orig.

[2] Properly lib. i. c. 5.

Hortensius reproached for his neatness.

cumspecte compositeque indutus et amictus esset, manusque ejus inter agendum forent argutæ admodum et gestuosæ, maledictis compellationibusque probrosis jactatus est; multaque in eum quasi in histrionem in ipsis causis atque judiciis dicta sunt.

Rules laid down by Varro for a pleasant banquet.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO XIII°. CAPITULO XX°.[1] Varro dicit convivarum numerum incipere oportere a Gratiarum numero et progredi ad Musarum, id est proficisci a tribus et consistere in novem. Convivium autem in rebus quatuor constat, si belli homunculi collecti sunt, si electus locus, si tempus lectum, si apparatus non neglectus. Nec loquaces autem, inquit, convivas, nec mutos legere oportet. Silentium autem in cubiculo esse debet sermones igitur id temporis habendos censet, non super rebus anxiis aut tortuosis, sed jocundos atque mutabiles, et cum quadam illecebra et voluptate utiles, ex quibus ingenium nostrum venustius fiat et amœnius. Dominum autem, inquit, convivii esse oportet non tam lautum quam sine sordibus, et in convivio legi non omnia oportet, sed eo potissimum quæ simul delectent.

Varro on the motives for abstaining from sin.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO XIII°. CAPITULO XX°.[2] Item Varro non pœnæ aut infamiæ metu non esse peccandum censebat, sed justi honestique studio et officiosi. Qui cum non essent tali vel ingenio vel disciplina præditi, uti se sua sponte facile a peccando tenerent, eos omnes tunc peccare proclivius existimabat, cum latere posse id peccatum putarent, impunitatemque ex ea latebra sperarent, ac si sciant, inquit, homines nil omnium rerum diutius posse celari, repressius prudentiusque peccabitur.

How Aristotle signified his choice of a successor.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO XIII°. CAPITULO XX°.[3] Aristotiles, annos ad duo fere sexaginta natus, corpore ægro effœtoque, ac spe vitæ tenui fuit. Tunc omnis sectatorum cohors ad eum accedit, orantes ut ipsis eligere loci sui et magisterii successorem. Erant tunc in ejus studio duo præcipui, Theophrastus et Menedemus. Theophrastus ex insula Lesbo fuit, Menedemus ex Rodo. Brevi tempore post a discipulis Aristotiles petit vinum. Eunt, curant, inveniunt, afferunt. Tunc Aristotiles Rodium petit, degustat, "Firmum," inquit, "Hercle, vinum et jocun-"dum." Petit mox Lesbium. Quo item degustato, "Les-"bium," inquit, "suavius est et commodius." Id ubi dixit nemini fuit dubium quin lepide simul et verecunde successorem illa voce sibi non vinum delegisset. Theophrastus erat e Lesbo, homo suavitate insignis, linguæ pariter atque vitæ.

[1] Properly lib. xiii. c. 11.
[2] Properly lib. xii. c. 11.
[3] Properly lib. xiii. c. 5.

Itaque non diu post, Aristotile vitæ defuncto, ad Theophrastum omnes concesserunt.

How Cornelius had a vision of Cæsar's victory.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO XVII°. CAPITULO XI°.[1] Cornelius quidam sacerdos et loco nobilis et sacerdotii religionibus venerandus, et castitate vitæ sanctus, repente mota mente conspicere se procul dixit pugnam acerrimam pugnari, ac deinde alios cedere, alios urgere; cædem, fugam, tela volantia, instaurationem pugnæ, impressionem, gemitus, vulnera; proinde ac si ipse in prælio versaretur, coram se videre vincere vociferatus est. Ac postea exclamavit Cæsarem vicisse.

How the boy Papirius kept secret the debate in the senate.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO I°. CAPITULO XX°I°.[2] Mos senatoribus Romæ fuit in curia cum prætextatis filiis introire. In senatu res major quæpiam consultata atque in diem prosperum prolata est, placuitque ne quis enunciaret priusquam decreta esset. Mater Papirii, pueri qui cum patre suo in curia fuerat, percunctata est puerum quidnam in senatu patres egissent. Puer respondit tacendum esse, neque id dici licere. Mulier fit audiendi cupidior, secretum rei et silentium pueri animum ejus ad inquirendum everberavit. Quærit igitur compressius. Tum puer, matre urgente, lepidi atque festivi mendacii consilium capit; actum in senatu dixit utrum videretur utilius esse, unusne ut duas uxores haberet, aut ut una apud duos nupta esset. Hæc illa ut audivit domo trepidans egreditur, ad cæteras matronas pervenit. Pervenit ad senatum postridie matrumfamilias caterva; lacrimantes atque obsecrantes orant, una potius ut duobus nupta fieret, quam ut uni duæ. Senatores ingredientes in curiam quæ illa mulierum intemperies, et quid postulatio istæc vellet, mirabantur. Puer Papirius in medium curiæ progressus, quid mater audire institisset, quid ipse matri dixisset, rem sicut fuerat denarrat. Senatus fidem atque ingenium pueri exosculatur, consultum facit uti posthac pueri cum patribus in curiam ne introeant præter ille unus Papirius.

How Favorinus congratulated the father of a newborn son.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO X°III°.[3] Nunciatum quondam est Favorino philosopho, nobis præsentibus, uxorem auditoris sectatorisque sui paululum ante enixam, auctumque eum esse nato filio. "Eamus," inquit, "et puerperam visum et patri gratulatum." Is erat loci senatorii ex familia nobiliore. Imus una qui tum aderamus, prosecutique eum sumus ad domum quo pergebat, et cum eo simul introgressi sumus. Tum in primis ædibus complexus hominem congratulatusque assedit, atque ibi per-

---

[1] Lib. xv. c. 18.
[2] Lib. i. c. 23.
[3] Properly lib. xii. c. 1. This extract is omitted in B.

Argument of Favorinus on the first duty of a mother.

cunctatus est quam diutinum puerperium et quam laboriosi nixus fuissent. At ubi puellam defessam labore ac vigilia sompnum capere cognovit, fabulari instituit prolixius et "Nihil," inquit, "dubito quin filium lacte suo nutritura sit." Sed cum mater puellæ parcendum esse ei diceret, adhibendasque puero nutrices ne ad dolores quos in enitendo tulisset munus quoque nutricationis grave ac difficile accederet; "Oro te," inquit, "mulier, sine eam totam integram matrem esse filii sui. Quid "enim hoc contra naturam inperfectum atque dimidiatum "matris genus peperisse, ac statim a sese abjecisse? aluisse "in utero sanguine suo nescio quid quod non videret, non alere "nunc suo lacte quod videat jam viventem, jam hominem, jam "matris officio implorantem? An tu quoque," inquit, "putas "naturam fœminis mammarum ubera quasi quosdam venus-"tiores nævulos non liberorum alendorum sed ornandi pectoris "causa dedisse? Si enim, quod a nobis scilicet abest, pleræque "istæ prodigiosæ mulieres fontem illum sanctissimi corporis "generis humani educatorem arefacere et exstinguere, cum "periculo quoque aversi correptique lactis laborant tanquam "sibi pulcritudinis insignia devenustet. Quod quidem faciunt "eadem vecordia qua quibusdam commentitiis fraudibus ni-"tuntur ut fœtus quoque ipsi in corpore suo concepti abor-"tiantur, ne æquor illud ventris inrugetur de gravitate oneris, "et labore partus fatiscat. Quod cum sit publica detestatione "communique odio dignum, in ipsis hominem primordiis, dum "fingitur, dum animatur, inter ipsas artificis naturæ manus "interfectum ire, quantulum hinc abest jam perfectum, jam "genitum, jam filium proprii atque consueti atque cogniti "sanguinis alimonia privare? 'Sed nichil interest,' hoc enim "dicitur, 'dum alatur et vivat, cujus id lacte fiat.' Cur igitur "iste qui hoc dicit si in capessendis naturæ sensibus tam "obsurduit, non id quoque nichil interesse putat cujus in "corpore, cujusque ex sanguine concretus homo et coalitus "sit? An quia spiritu multo et calore exalbuit, non idem "sanguis est nunc in uberibus qui in utero fuit? Nonne hac "quoque in re sollertia naturæ evidens est? Quam postquam "sanguis ille opifex in penetralibus suis omne corpus hominis "finxit, adventante jam partus tempore, in supernas se partes "profert, ad fovenda vitæ atque lucis rudimenta præsto est; "et recens natis notum et familiarem victum offert. Quam-"obrem non frustra creditum est, sicut valeant ad fingendas "corporis atque animi similitudines vis et natura seminis, non "secus ad eandem rem lactis quoque ingenia et proprietates "valere. Neque in hominibus id solum, sed in pecudibus "quoque animadversum. Nam si ovium lacte hædi aut ca-"prarum agni alantur, constat ferme in his lanam duriorem,

Favorinus on the first duty of a mother.

" in illis capillum gigni teneriorem. In arboribus etiam et " frugibus major plerumque vis et potestas est ad earum " indolem vel detrectandam vel augendam aquarum atque " terrarum quæ alunt, quam ipsius quod jacitur seminis. Ac " sæpe videas arborem lætam atque nitentem in locum alium " transpositam deterioris terræ suco deperisse. Quæ, malum, " igitur ratio est nobilitatem istam nati modo hominis corpus- " que et animum bene ingeniatis primordiis inchoatum insitivo " degenerique alimento lactis alieni corrumpere? Præsertim " si ista quam ad præbendum lactem adhibebitis aut serva " aut servilis est; et ut plerumque solet, externæ et barbaræ " nationis est; si improba, si informis, si impudica, si temu- ' lenta est; nam plerumque sine discrimine quæcumque id " tempus lactans est adhiberi solet. Patiemurne igitur infan- " tem hunc nostrum pernicioso contagio et spiritum ducere " in animum atque in corpus suum ex corpore et animo de- " terrimo? Id hercle ipsum est quod sæpenumero miramur, " quosdam pudicarum mulierum liberos parentum suorum " neque corporibus neque animis similes existere. Scite igitur " et perite noster Maro quod cum versus illos Homeri conse- " craretur 'Oyk a' etc.[1] non partionem solam tanquam ille " quem sequebatur, sed alituram quoque feram et sævam " criminatus est. Addit enim hoc de suo,

" 'Hyrcanæ heæque admorunt ubera tigres,'

" quoniam videlicet in moribus inholescendis magnam fere " partem ingenii altricis et naturam lactis tenet, quæ jam a " principio imbuta paterni seminis concretione ex matris etiam " corpore et animo recentem indolem configurat. Et præter " hæc autem quis illud etiam negligere aspernarique possit, " quod quæ partus suos deserunt ablegantque a sese et aliis " nutriendos dedunt, vinculum illud coagulumque animi atque " amoris quod parentes cum filiis consociat interscindunt; aut " certe quidem diluunt deteruntque? Nam ubi infantis alior- " sum dati facta ex oculis amotio est, vigor ille maternæ " flagrantiæ sensim atque paulatim restinguitur, omnisque " impatientissimæ sollicitudinis strepitus consilescit, neque " multo minor commendati ad nutricem aliam filii quam morte " amissi oblivio. Ipsius quoque infantis affectio animi, amoris, " consuetudinis in ea sola unde alitur occupatur. Et proinde, " ut in expositis usu venit, matris quæ genuit neque sensum

---

[1] An attempt to give the Greek,

Ούκ ἄρα σοί γε πατὴρ ἦν ἱππότα Πηλεύς,
'Ουδὲ Θέτις μήτηρ, γλαυκὴ δέ σε τίκτε θάλασσα
Πέτραι τ' ἠλίβατοι, ὅτι τοι νόος ἐστὶν ἀπηνής.

Argument of Favorinus.

" ullum neque desiderium capit. Ac propterea oblitteratis et " abolitis maternæ pietatis elementis, quiqui ita educati liberi " amare patrem atque matrem videntur, ex magna fere parte " non naturalis amor ille est sed civilis et obtinabilis.[1]" Hæc Favorinum dicentem audivi Græca oratione, cujus sententias communis utilitatis gratia quantum meminisse potui retuli. Amœnitates vero et copias ubertatesque verborum Latina omnis facundia vix quædam indipisci potuerit, mea tenuitas nequaquam.

Story of Lais and Demosthenes.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO I°. CAPITULO VIII°.[2] Lais Corinthia, ob elegantiam formæ, grandem pecuniam demerebat. Conventusque ad eam ditiorum hominum ex omni Græcia celebres erant, nec admittebatur nisi qui dabat quod posceret. Hinc natum est illud frequens adagium quod frustra iret Corinthum ad Laidem qui non daret quod posceretur. Ad hanc Demostenes clanculum adit, et ut sibi copiam sui faceret petit. At Lais denarium decem milia poposcit. Tali petulantia mulieris atque pecuniæ magnitudine ictus expavidusque Demostenes avertitur, et discedens "Ego," inquit, "pœnitere tanti non emo."

Self-discipline of Socrates.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO II°. CAPITULO PRIMO.[2] Per id tempus inter labores voluntarios et exercitia corporis ad fortuitas patientiæ vices firmandi id quoque accepimus Socratem facere insuevisse. Stare solitus Socrates dicitur pertinaci statu perdius atque pernox, a summo lucis ortu usque ad solem alterum orientem, incorruens, inmobilis, isdem in vestigiis et ore atque oculis eundem in locum directis, cogitabundus tanquam quodam secessu mentis atque animi facto corpore.

Pythagoras, Socrates, Plato.

Pytagoras eo tempore quo Judæorum est soluta captivitas cœpit excellere. Socrates Atheniensis post Esdram invenitur in cronicis. Non multo post Plato natus est, discipulus Socratis. Apuleius etiam discipulus Socratis de Deo Socratis librum scribens inter cætera dixit:—

Apuleius's view of mankind.

APULEIUS DE DEO SOCRATIS.[3] Igitur homines ratione plaudentes, oratione pollentes, inmortalibus animis, moribundis membris, levibus et anxiis mentibus, brutis et obnoxiis corporibus, dissimillimis moribus, similibus erroribus, pervicaci audacia, pertinaci spe, casso labore, fortuna caduca; sigillatim mortales, cuncti tamen universo genere perpetui, vicissim sufficienda prole mutabiles, volucri tempore, tarda sapientia, cita morte, querula vita, terras incolunt. Rursus:[4]—sunt dæmones inter nos et deos ut loco religionis sic ingenio mentis intersiti,

[1] *obtinabilis*] opinabilis, orig.
[2] This reference is correct.
[3] Apuleius, de Deo Socratis, c. 4.
[4] Apuleius, de Deo Socratis, c. 12.

habentes communem cum superis inmortalitatem, cum inferis passionem. Nam perinde ut nos pati possimus omnia animarum placamenta vel incitamenta, ut et ira incitentur et misericordia flectantur, et donis invitentur, et precibus leniantur, et contumeliis exasperantur, et honoribus mulceantur, aliisque omnibus ad similem nobis modum varientur; quippe ut finem comprehendam, dæmones sunt genere animalia, ingenio rationabilia, animo passiva, corpore aeria, tempore æterna. Rursus;[1] quæ aliena sunt ab homine vel infirma laudibus mei Socratis non admisceo. Quæ quidem sunt hæc: generosus est, parentes laudas; dives est, non credo fortunæ; validus est, ægritudine fatigabitur; pernix est, abit in senectutem; formosus est, expecta paulisper et non erit. At meus Socrates bonis artibus doctus et adprime eruditus, et quantum licet homini sapiens est et boni consultus. Hoc enim nec a patre hæreditarium est, nec casu pendulum, nec a suffragio amminiculum, nec a corpore caducum, nec ab ætate mutabile. Hæc omnia meus Socrates habuit, et ideo cætera habere contempsit.

Apuleius on dæmons.

The virtue of Socrates independent of earthly accident.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO PRIMO.[2] Post excidium Trojæ quadringentis decem et novem circiter annis, Romanum imperium, quo nullum fere minus ab initio, quo nullum per incrementa temporum fuit majus, exordium habuit, in Palatino monte Roma condita x°. kalendas Maias.[3]

Foundation of Rome.

Quinta ætas	$\overline{\text{III}}$. CCCCXXXVI.	Jesus	LXXIIII.	IIII.
	$\overline{\text{III}}$. CCCCLXII.	Joachim	C.	XXVI.
	$\overline{\text{III}}$. CCCCXCIIII.	Heliasib	CXXXII.	XXXII.
	$\overline{\text{III}}$. DXIX.	Judas	CLVII.	XXV.
	$\overline{\text{III}}$. DLXII.	Johannes	CC.	XLIII.
	$\overline{\text{III}}$. DCXII.	Jaddus	CCL.	L.

The fifth age.

The Jewish high priests.

[1] Apuleius, de Deo Socratis, c. 24.

[2] Eutropius, Hist. Rom. Breviar., lib. i. c. 1. Historia Miscella., lib. i. c. 5.

[3] The following extracts are thus arranged in B.:—

1. Euthicus:—Tempore Jaddi . . dissolvatur, p. 48.
2. Aimoin:—Italia . . . obruitur, p. 48.
3. Eutropius:—A Romanis . . . aperiebantur, p. 49.
4. Augustin:—Hujus tempore . . omnibus, p. 49.
5. Eutropius:—Samnites, p. 48.
6. „ Romani, p. 48.
7. „ A Romanis, p. 48.
8. „ Circa tempus, p. 48.
9. Agellius:—Mos senatoribus . . . Papirius, p. 43.
10. Agellius:—Lais Corinthia . . . . non emo, p. 46.
11. Agellius:—Julius Cæsar . . . gestandæ, p. 51.

Victory of the Samnites at the Furcæ Caudinæ.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO II°.[1] Samnites, qui nunc Beneventani dicuntur, apud Caudinas furculas angustiis locorum conclusos ingenti dedecore vicerunt Romanos. Universum namque Romanum exercitum turpiter captum, armis etiam vestimentisque nudatum, tantum singulis vilioribus operimentis ob verecundiam corporum tegendam concessis, sub jugo missum servitioque subjectum, longum agere pompæ ordinem præceperunt. Sexcentis autem equitibus Romanis in obsidiatum receptis, oneratos ignominia cæteris rebus vacuos consules Romanos remiserunt Samnites. A Romanis reparato bello vincuntur Samnites; ipsorum urbes dirutæ sunt, ut hodie Samnium in ipso Samnio requiratur, nec inveniri facile possit.

Ariminum and Beneventum built.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO II°.[2] Conditæ sunt a Romanis civitates Ariminum in Gallia, Beneventum in Samnio.

Story of Marcus Curtius.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO II°.[3] In urbis medio terra prærupta dissiliit, hiantia subito patuerunt inferna. Dixerunt aruspices hiatum illum hominis vivi sepulturam expetere. Marcus Curtius eques Romanus se in id baratrum armatus injecit, sicque conclusum est.

Boundaries of Italy.

HAMONIUS LIBRO III°.[4] Italia regio Romanorum a Circio in Eurum extensa habet ab Affrico Tyrenum mare et a Borea sinum Adriaticum; ab occidente autem obicibus Alpium obruitur.

Gog and Magog shut up by Alexander.

EUTHICUS PHILOSOPHUS.[5] Tempore Jaddi summi sacerdotis Alexander Magnus fudit columnas miræ magnitudinis et portas et limina et seras, et minans minavit Gogotas et Magogotas, et omnem sobolem eorum, et inclusit eos ad ubera Aquilonis, in anno uno et mensibus iiii^or^., erexitque portas ac linivit eas bitumine incognito, quod neque acumine neque ferro incidatur, neque igne neque aqua dissolvatur.

Portents of blood and milk.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO II°.[6] Locis in pluribus cruor fluxit, et de nubibus in specie pluviæ lac descendit.

Rome becomes famous.

IDEM, LIBRO II°.[7] Anno cccc°lxx°vii°. Clarum urbis Romæ nomen erat, extra tamen Ytaliam arma non moverat.

---

[1] Historia Miscella, lib. ii. c. 7.

[2] Historia Miscella, ii. c. 22. The following paragraphs are differently arranged in MS. C., the transcriber having misunderstood the columnar arrangement of the original.

[3] Historia Miscella, ii. c. 2.

[4] From the Chronicle of Hugh of Fleury, ed. Rottendorff, p. 35.

[5] Abridged from the Cosmographia of Ethicus, c. 41; ed. Wuttke, Leips., 1852, pp. 28, 29.

[6] Historia Miscella, ii. c. 22.

[7] Historia Miscella, ii. c. 23.

III. DCXXIX.	Onias	CCLXVII.	XVIII.	High priests.
III. DCXLV.	Symon justus	CCLXXXIII.	XVI.	
III. DCLXII.	Eleazarus	CCC.	XVII.	

Translation of the Septuagint;

AUGUSTINUS, LIBRO XVIII°., CAP. XLIIII°.[1] Hujus tempore traditur tam mirabilem ac stupendum planeque divinum in verbis septuaginta interpretum fuisse consensum, ut cum separatim singuli sederint, in nullo verbo quod idem significaret et tantundem valeret, vel in verborum ordine, alter ab altero discreparet, quoniam revera spiritus erat unus in omnibus.

under Ptolemy Philadelphus.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO II°.[2] Ptholomeus Philadelfus Judæos qui morabantur in Egypto liberos esse permisit, et Eleazaro pontifici summo Jerosolimorum vasa votiva transmittens, divinas scripturas in Græcam vocem ex Hebræa lingua per interpretes septuaginta transferre curavit.

III. DCXCIIII.	Manasses	CCCXXXII.	XXXII.
III. DCCIII.	Onias	CCCXLI.	IX.

The Punic wars.

Primum bellum Punicum duravit annis viginti duobus; secundum annis decem et novem; tertium annis quatuor.

III. DCCXV.	Symon	CCCLIII.	XII.
III. DCCXLIIII.	Onias	CCCLXXII.	XXIX.

Scipio Africanus.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO TERTIO.[3] Cipio consul factus in Affricam missus est; cui viro divinum quiddam inesse credebatur, in tantum ut putaretur etiam cum numinibus habere sermonem. Is de Carthaginensibus ingenti gloria triumphavit, et Affricanus ex eo vocari promeruit.

Destruction of Carthage.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO IIII°.[4] Diruta est Carthago, omni murali lapide in pulverem comminuto, cujus fuisse situs hujusmodi dicitur; viginti II. passuum muro amplexa toto pene mari cingebatur, absque faucibus quæ tribus milibus passuum aperiebantur. Sic Carthago lxx°. anno postquam condita fuit deleta est.

Portent near Rome.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO IIII°.[5] Eodem tempore quædam virgo, de Roma pergens in Apuliam, ictu fulminis exanimata est, omnibus sine scissura vestimentis ademptis ac pectoris pedumque vinculis, monilibus etiam anulisque, discussis, illæso corpore

---

[1] An abstract rather than an extract of part of the 43rd chapter.

[2] See Ado Viennensis, æt. v. The words are taken almost directly from S. Jerome's translation of the Chronicle of Eusebius, opp. viii. 545.

[3] Hist. Miscell., lib. iii. c. 21.

[4] Hist. Miscell., lib. iv. c. 12.

[5] Hist. Miscell., lib. iv. c. 32.

nuda jacuit. Equus quoque ejus pari modo frænis et cingulis peremptus jacuit dissolutis.

Plague of locusts in Africa.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO IIII°.[1] His diebus tanta per totam Affricam locustarum multitudo convaluit, ut simul fruges, herbas, arborum folia corticesque corroderent; quæ repentino vento sullevatæ sunt in Affricano pelago demersæ. Sed cum earum acervos fluctus per extenta littora protulissent, pestiferum odorem putrefacta congeries exhalavit. Unde simul omnium animantium pecudumque ac bestiarum pestis existens vitium corruptionis ampliavit. Qua pestilentia in Numidia hominum lxxx. milia, circa Carthaginem vero plusquam ducenta milia perierunt; Romanorum vero militum qui ibi ad præsidium erant xxx. milia sunt extincta.

High priests.

III. DCCLXXV.	Jesus qui et Jason	CCCCXIII.	XXI.
III. DCCLXXXVI.	Onias qui et Menelaus	CCCCXXIII.	X.
III. DCCXC.	Alchimus	CCCCXXVIII.	IIII.
III. DCCXCIII.	Judas	CCCCXXXI.	III.
III. DCCCXII.	Jonathas	CCCCL.	XIX.
III. DCCCXX.	Symon	CCCCLVIII.	XXXI.
III. DCCCXLVI.	Johannes	CCCCLXXXIIII.	X.

Portents before the civil wars of Rome.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO V°.[2] His diebus sub ortu solis globus ignis a regione septemtrionis cum maximo cœli fragore emicuit. Apud Aretinos in convivio cruor e panibus quasi e vulneribus corporum fluxit. Per vii. continuos dies grando lapidum inmixtis etiam testarum fragmentis terram latissime verberavit. In Samnitibus e vastissimo terræ hiatu flamma prorupit quæ usque in cœlum extendi visa est. Tunc etiam omnium generum animalia quæ inter homines vivere solita erant, relictis stabulis pascuisque cum balatu, hinnitu, mugituque miserabili, ad silvas montesque fugerunt. Canes quoque, quorum natura est extra homines esse non posse, lacrimosis ululatibus vagi luporum ritu oberrarunt. Nec mora, post hæc civilia bella secuta sunt.

High priests.

III. DCCCXLVII.	Aristobolus	CCCCLXXXV.	I.
III. DCCCLXXIIII.	Alexander	DXII.	XXVII.
III. DCCCLXXXIII.	Alexandra	DXXI.	IX.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO VI°.[3] Pompeius aliquantum agrorum Damacensibus dedit quo locus spatiosior fieret, delectatus loci

[1] Hist. Miscell., lib. iv. c. 27.
[2] Hist. Misc., lib. v. c. 6.
[3] Historia Miscella, lib. vi. c. 14.

amœnitate et aquarum abundantia. Inde Jerosolimam obsedit, quam vix tertio mense cepit, xiii. milibus Judæorum occisis, cæteros in fidem accepit, muros civitatis evertit, cujus circuitus iiii. milia passuum dicitur fuisse. Aliquantos Judæorum securi percussit, Yrcano sacerdotium restituit. Aristobulum captum Romam duxit. Acta sunt anno ab urbe condita DC°.XC°. circiter iii°. *Jerusalem taken by Pompey, A.U.C. 693.*

[1] Anno ab urbe condita DCXCIII. Julius Cæsar consul est factus. Decreta est ei Gallia et Illiricum cum legionibus denis. Vincendo semper ad oceanum usque Britannicum processit. Domuit annis novem omnem fere Galliam, quæ inter Alpes, flumen Rodanum, Renum et oceanum est. Britannis bellum intulit, quibus ante nec nomen Romanorum cognitum erat: eos quoque victos, obsidibus acceptis, stipendiarios fecit. Galliæ tributi nomine annuum imperavit sextertium quadringenties. Germanos quoque trans Renum aggressus inmanissimis præliis vicit. Cæsar ex Gallia rediens victor, cœpit alterum poscere consulatum. Contradictum est. Cæsar urbem ingressus dictatorem se fecit. Inde petens Hispanias, exercitus Pompeii superavit. Regressus in Græciam transiit, Pompeium vicit. Pompeium fugientem Ptolomeus occidit, caput ejus et annulum Cæsari misit. Ptolomeus postmodum Cæsari tendens insidias, et cum eo navali prælio decertans, tandem submersus est. Corpus ejus ad littus devolutum, indicio loricæ aureæ cognitum fuit. *Conquests of Julius Cæsar. He becomes dictator. Death of Pompey.*

[2] Post annum Cæsar Romam quatuor triumphis ingressus, quater se consulem fecit, et statim profectus est ad Hispanias. Cæsar civilibus bellis orbe toto compositis, Romam rediit, insolentius agere cœpit, honores ex sua voluntate præstitit, qui prius a populo conferebantur. Ad se venienti senatui non assurrexit. Cæsare nullus unquam bellis magis enituit; ductu siquidem ejus undecies centum nonaginta duo milia cæsa sunt hostium. Nam quantum bellis civilibus fuderit noluit annotare. Cæsar signis collatis quinquagies dimicavit. Tandem conjuratum est in eum a ccc^tis^lx^ta^ senatoribus equitibusque Romanis. *Triumphs of Cæsar.*

SUETONIUS, LIBRO PRIMO.[3] Cæsar circa corporis curam morosior fuit, ut non solum tonderetur sed et velleretur. Calvitii vero *Description of Cæsar.*

---

[1] Abridged from the Historia Miscella., vi. c. 16.

[2] Abridged from the Historia Miscella., lib. vi. c. 40.

[3] From Suetonius, Julius, c. 45:— This extract is thus introduced in MS. B.:—Agellius, xx. 19. Julius Cæsar perpetuus dictator, ingenii præcellentis, sermonis præter alios suæ ætatis castissimi, circa, etc. Then follows another extract from Aulus Gellius, lib. iii. c. 6. "Agel-

Description of Cæsar.

deformitatem iniquissime tulit. Ideoque et deficientem capillum revocare a vertice assueverat, et ex omnibus decretis sibi a senatu populoque honoribus non aliud aut recepit aut usurpavit libentius quam jus laureæ coronæ perpetuo gestandæ.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO SEXTO.[1] Cæsare nullus celerius scripsit, nemo velocius legit, quaternas etiam epistolas simul dictavit. Tantæ fuit bonitatis ut quos armis subegerat clementia magis vicerit.

III. DCCCCXVII. Hircanus DLV. XXXIIII.

Portents before the death of Cæsar.

SUETONIUS, LIBRO I°.[2] Anno vicesimo tertio Hircani principis Judæorum Julio Cæsari futura cædes evidentibus prodigiis denunciata est. Equorum namque greges quos in trajiciendo Rubicone flumine consecrarat, ac vagos et sine custode dimiserat, comperiit pertinacissime pabulo abstinere, ubertimque flere. Avem etiam regaliolum cum laureo ramulo, Pompeianæ curiæ se inferentem, volucres varii generis ex proximo nemore persecutæ, ibidem discerpserunt, pridie Idus Marcias. Ea vero nocte cui illuxit dies cædis, et ipse sibi visus est per quietem interdum supra nubes volitare, alias cum Jove dextram jungere.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO SEXTO.[3] Sub morte Cæsaris bos aranti dixit homines in brevi non frumenta defuturos.

Romæ tres simul exorti soles in eandem urbem coierunt.

Cæsar slain, B.C. 44.

SUETONIUS, LIBRO I°.[4] Idibus Marciis, dum Cæsar Pompeii curiam introisset hora fere quinta, strictis undique pugionibus ab insidiantibus impetitus, toga caput obvolvit, simul sinistra manu sinum ad ima crura deduxit, quo honestius caderet, etiam inferiore corporis parte velata. Atque iii. et xx. plagis confossus est, uno modo ad primum ictum gemitu sine voce edito.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO V^{to}.[5] Solida columpna lapidis Numidici supra quam Cæsar tumularetur a populo procurata est.

" lius, lib. iii. c. 5 (iii. c. 6.) Si super " palmæ arboris lignum magna pon- " dera imponas, ac tam graviter " urgeas oneresque ut magnitudo " oneris sustineri non queat, non " deorsum palma cedit nec intra " flectitur, sed adversus pondus re- " surgit, et sursum nititur recurva- " turque. Propterea, inquit Plu- " tarcus, in certaminibus palmam " signum esse placuit victoriæ, quo- " niam ingenium ligni ejusdem est " ut urgentibus opprimentibusque " non cedat."

[1] Hist. Miscell., lib. vi. c. 41.

[2] The passage from Suetonius (Julius, c. 81), begins with the word "Cæsari."

[3] Hist. Misc. vi. c. 41.

[4] Suetonius, Julius, cc. 81, 82. The passage is abridged.

[5] See Suetonius, Julius, c. 85.

Cæsar,[1] pridie quam occideretur, in sermone nato super cœnam quisnam finis vitæ commodissimus, repentinum protulit inopinatumque. Curiam in qua Cæsar occisus est, obstrui placuit; idusque Marcias parricidium nominari.[2] Cæsar's wish for a sudden death.

III. DCCCCXLVIII. Herodes rex DLXXXVI. XXXI. post VI.

SUETONIUS, LIBRO II°.[3] Octovianus cum de Oriente victor reversus esset, urbemque triplici triumpho ingressus esset, tunc primum Augustus, eo quod rem publicam auxerit, consalutatus est, atque extunc summam rerum potestatem, quam Græci monarchiam vocant, adeptus est. Octavian takes the name of Augustus.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO VI°.[4] Augustus dicebat jactantis esse ingenii et levissimi ardore triumphandi, et ob lauream coronam, id est, folia infructuosa, in discrimen per incertos eventus certaminum securitatem civium præcipitare; neque imperatori bono quicquam minus quam temeritatem congruere. Satis celeriter fieri quicquid commode gereretur, armaque, nisi majoris emolumenti spe, nequaquam movenda esse, ne compendio tenui, jactura gravi, petita victoria similis sit hamo aureo piscantibus, cujus abrupti amissique detrimentum nullo capturæ lucro pensari potest. Avunculi quoque inventum vehementer arguebat, qui milites commilitones novo blandoque more appellans, dum affecerat carior fieri, auctoritatem principis emolliverat. Denique erga cives clementissime versatus est; in amicos fidus extitit, quorum præcipui erant ob taciturnitatem Mecenas, ob patientiam modestiamque Agrippa: diligebat præterea Virgilium Flaccumque poetas. Rarus quidem ad recipiendas amicitias, ad retinendam constantissimus; liberalibus studiis, præsertim eloquentiæ in tantum incumbens, ut nullus ne in procinctu laberetur dies, quin legeret, scriberet, declamaret. His dislike of rashness. He disapproved his uncle's way of courting popularity. His friends.

SUETONIUS, LIBRO II°.[5] Genus eloquendi secutus est elegans et temperatum, vitatis sententiarum ineptiis atque concinnitate et reconditorum verborum, ut ipse dicit, fœtoribus. Præcipuamque curam duxit sensum animi quam apertissime exprimere: quod quo facilius efficeret, aut nec ubi lectorem vel auditorem obturbaret ac moraretur, neque præpositiones urbibus addere, neque conjunctiones sæpius iterare dubitavit, quæ detractæ afferunt aliquid detractionis etsi gratiam augent. His style of speech and grammar.

---

[1] *Cæsar . . . inopinatum*] Suetonius, Julius, c. 87.

[2] *Curiam . . . nominari*] From Suetonius, Julius, c. 88.

[3] See Suetonius, Augustus, c. 8. The words are from the Hist. Misc., lib. vii. c. 10.

[4] Hist. Misc., lib. vii. c. 16.

[5] Suetonius, Augustus, c. 86.

Character of Augustus.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO VII°.[1] Fuit idem Augustus mitis, gratus, civilis animi et lepidi; corpore toto pulcher, sed oculis magis, quorum acies clarissimorum siderum modo quia vibrabat, libenter accipiebat cedi ab intendentibus tanquam solis radiis aspectui suo. A cujus facie dum quidam miles averteret oculos, et interrogaretur cur ita faceret, respondit, "Quia fulmen "oculorum tuorum ferre non possum." Nec tamen vir tantus vitiis caruit. Fuit enim paululum impatiens, leniter iracundus, occulte invidus, palam factiosus, porro autem dominandi supra quam æstimari potest cupidissimus; studiosus aleæ lusor, libidini serviens usque ad probrum vulgaris famæ. Auxitque Romam ædificiis multis, isto glorians dicto, "Urbem "lateritiam reperi, relinquo marmoream."

His faults. His buildings.

Praises of Livy.

[2] JERONIMUS IN EPISTOLA AD PAULINUM PRESBITERUM.[3] His temporibus floruit Titus Livius scriptor belli Punici, de quo Jeronimus ait, "Ad Titum Livium lacteo eloquentiæ fonte manan- "tem, de ultimis Hispaniæ Galliarumque finibus quosdam "venisse nobiles legimus; et quos ad contemplationem sui "Roma non traxerat, unius hominis fama perduxit. Habuit "illa ætas inauditum omnibus sæculis celebrandumque mira- "culum, ut, urbem tantam ingressi, aliud extra urbem quære- "rent."

Sign of the death of Augustus.

SUETONIUS, LIBRO II°.[4] Mors Augusti Cæsaris ita præcognita est. Sub idem tempus ictu fulminis ex inscriptione statuæ ejus prima nominis littera effluxit. Responsum est centum solos dies posthac victurum, quem numerum C. littera notaret, futurumque ut inter deos referretur. Quod "esar," id est reliqua pars e Cæsaris nomine, Etrusca lingua deus vocaretur.

Quæ præsignaverint Nativitatem Christi.

Signs before the birth of Christ.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO IIII^to^.[5] In agro Bononiensi fruges natæ sunt in arboribus.

VIRGILIUS.[6] Jam redit et virgo, redeunt Saturnia regna,
Jam nova progenies cœlo demittitur alto.

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO VII°.[7] Romæ de taberna meritoria fons olei e terra exundavit, ac per totum diem largissimo rivo fluxit. Circulus etiam ad speciem cœlestis arcus circa solem apparuit.

Apollonius in Ethiopia.

JERONIMUS IN EPISTOLA AD PAULINUM PRESBITERUM.[8] His temporibus Apollonius perrexit Æthiopiam ut ginnosophistas et

[1] Hist. Misc., lib. vii. c. 17.
[2] The next two articles are transposed in B.
[3] Hieron. opp. i. 269.
[4] Suetonius, Augustus, c. 97.
[5] Hist. Miscella, lib. iv. c. 19.
[6] Virgil, Eclog. , 7.
[7] Hist. Miscella, lib. vii. cc. 11, 6.
[8] Hieron. opp. (ed. Vallars.), i. 269.

famosissimam solis mensam videret in sabulo. Invenit illo vir ubique quod disceret, et semper proficiens semper se melior fieret.

Additions to the Empire under Augustus.

EUSEBIUS, LIBRO VII°. Augustus Cæsar adjecit imperio Romano Cantabriam, Ægyptum, Armeniam, Illiricum, Dalmatiam, Pannoniam. Indi scite munera legatosque miserunt ad eum. Vicit Galathas, Dacos, Germanos. Cæsar amore tanto fuit apud barbaros ut reges in honorem ejus conderent civitates. Multi reges ex regnis suis ut obsequerentur ei venerunt, et habitu Romano, togati scilicet, ad equum ipsius vel vehiculum cucurrerunt. Adeo denique turbas, bella, simultates, execratus est, ut nisi justis de causis nunquam bellum indixerit.[1] Qui cum firmissimam pacem ubique composuisset, Christus in Bethleem natus est.[2]

Universal peace.

Birth of Christ.

Amici præcipui Cæsaris Augusti fuerunt, ob taciturnitatem Mecenas, ob patientiam Agrippa.[3]

Praises of Augustus.

EUSEBIUS, LIBRO VII°.[4] Augustus Cæsar, cunctis vulgo jactantibus utinam aut non nasceretur aut non moreretur, ex maxima parte Deo similis est putatus. Nullus eo felicior aut in bellis fuit aut in pace moderatior. In imperio civilissime vixit, in cunctos liberalissimus, in amicos fidelissimus, quos tantis evexit honoribus ut æquaret pene fastigio suo. Qui certe nunquam aut reipublicæ potentiam ad se traxisset, aut ea tamdiu potiretur, nisi magnis naturæ studiorumque bonis abundasset. Moriens divus appellatus rempublicam beatissimam Tyberio successori reliquit, qui repentinis responsionibus fuit melior quam meditatis.[5]

Ab Adam hucusque fluxerunt anni. { Secundum Hebraicam veritatem, *tria milia DCCCCXLVIII.*
Secundum LXX. interpretes, *Quinque milia CXCIX.* }

Beginning of the sixth age of the world.

Initium habet ætas sexta { vel a nativitate / vel a baptismate / vel a passione } Christi.

---

[1] *Multi reges . . . indixerit*] See Hist. Misc., lib. vii. c. 16.

[2] Hist. Misc., vii. 19.

[3] *Amici. . . . . Agrippa*] Hist. Misc., vii. 17.

[4] Hist. Miscella., lib. vii. c. 21.

[5] *qui . . . meditatis*] Hist. Misc., vii. 22. B. has here; "Quinta ætas " finitur. Inchoata est secundum " quosdam sexta ætas a nativitate " Christi, secundum apostolum qui " ait ' cum venit plenitudo temporis " ' etc. ;' secundum alios a die qua " baptizatus est, propter vim rege- " nerativam datam aquis ; secun- " dum alios a passione, quia tunc " aperta est porta et inchoata est " quodammodo septima quiescen- " tium."

Annis quingentis decies iterumque ducentis
Unus defuerat cum Deus ortus erat.

Birth of Christ.

I. EUSEBIUS, LIBRO I^{o}., CAP. VII°. Jesus Christus filius Dei in Bethleem Judæ viii. kalendas Januarii Dominica nocte nascitur.[1]

Circumcision, epiphany, and presentation.

Octava Dominica die circumciditur, xiii^{a}. die a Magis adoratur, xl^{a}. die in Templo præsentatur.

Slaughter of the innocents.

II. Herodes cum Christi nativitatem Magorum indicio cognovisset pueros jussit interfici.[2]

III.

IIII.

V.

Herod dies.

VI. Herodes consumptus vermibus exspiravit.[3]

VII. Judæorum rex Archelaus.

VIII.

IX. *Trogus Pompeius scribit hucusque.*

X.

XI.

XII. Puer Jesus remansit in Jerusalem. S. Luke, ii. 43.

Census of Rome.

XIII. Augustus censum Romæ agitans invenit hominum nonagies tercentena et lxx. milia.[4]

XIIII.

Augustus dies (A.D. 14).

XV. Archelaus Viennæ relegatur. Augustus, in Campania moriens, Romæ sepelitur in campo Martio.[5]

XVI.[6] Tiberius imperator. Judæorum Herodes tetrarcha.

XVII. Livius[7] hystoriographus moritur.

XVIII. Ovidius poeta perit in exilio.[8]

Valerius Maximus.

XIX. XX. XXI. *Valerius Maximus urbis Romæ cæterarumque gentium facta simul et dicta memoratu digna scripsit hoc tempore.*[9]

XXII.

XXIII.

XXIIII.

---

[1] See Euseb. Chron., Hieron. Opp. viii. 636.

[2] Euseb. Chron., ib. p. 637.

[3] See Euseb. Chron. A.D. 6, p. 637.

[4] Euseb. Chron. A.D. 14; 13, B.

[5] Euseb. Chron., Hieron. Opp. viii. 641.

[6] *xvi.*] Romanorum, præf., B.

[7] *Livius*] Euseb. Chron. A.D. 19, p. 641.

[8] Euseb. Chr. p. 641.

[9] *Valerius Maximus*] A.D. 18, B.

XXV.
XXVI. Pontius Pilatus procurator Judææ factus.[1] Pontius Pilate.
XXVII.
XXVIII.
XXIX. Johannes Baptista prædicavit in deserto.[2]
XXX. Jesus Christus baptizatus est.
XXXI. EUSEBIUS, LIBRO I°., CAPITULO XVII°.[3] Christus Letter o Abgarus to Christ.
XXXII. apostolos elegit.

"Abgarus thoparcha Jesu Salvatori bono salu-"tem. Auditum est michi et de te et de sani-"tatibus quas facis, quod sine medicamentis "aut herbis fiant. Quibus auditis statui in "animo meo unum esse de duobus, aut quia "tu sis Deus et descenderis de cœlo ut hæc "facias, aut quod filius Dei sis qui hæc facis. "Propterea ergo scribens rogaverim te ut "digneris usque ad me fatigari, et ægritu-"dinem meam, qua jam diu laboro, curare. "Nam et illud comperi quod Judæi murmu-"rant adversum te, et volunt tibi insidiari. "Est autem civitas mihi parva quidem sed "honesta."

EUSEBIUS LIBRO II°., CAPITULO VIII°.[4] Exemplum rescripti ab Jesu per Ananiam cursorem ad Abgarum thoparcham:

"Beatus es, quia credidisti in me, cum me "ipse non videris. Scriptum est enim de "me, quia hi qui me vident non credent "in me, et qui non vident ipsi credent et "vivent. De eo autem quod scripsisti "michi, ut venirem ad te, oportet me om-"nia propter quæ missus sum hic explere, "et posteaquam complevero, recipi me ad "Eum a quo missus sum. Cum ergo fuero "assumptus mittam tibi aliquem ex disci-"pulis meis ut curet ægritudinem tuam." Answer of Christ to Abgarus.

XXXIII. Christus crucifixus viii. kalendas Aprilis. Divisio apostolorum idus Julii. Crucifixion.

EUSEBIUS, LIBRO PRIMO, CAP. SECUNDO.[5] Tiberius Cæsar cum suffragio magni favoris retulit

---

[1] Euseb. Chron. A.D. 28.
[2] Euseb. Chron. A.D. 30.
[3] From Ruffinus's version of Eusebius, lib. i. c. 15.
[4] Ibid.
[5] Hist. Miscella., vii. 23.

Tiberius proposes to place Christ among the gods.
The senate refuses.

ad senatum ut Christus Deus haberetur, senatus indignatione motus cur non sibi secundum morem delatum esset, ut de suscipiendo cultu prius ipse discerneret, consecrationem Christi recusavit, edictoque constituit exterminandos esse urbe Christianos.[1]

Stephen martyred.

XXXIIII. Stephanus lapidatur vii°. kalendas Januarii, et Paulus eodem anno convertitur.[2]

XXXV.

Caligula emperor (A.D. 37).

XXXVI. Gaius imperator. *Philon Judæus scripsit hoc tempore.*[3]

XXXVII. Mathæus scribit Evangelium.

XXXVIII.

XXXIX. Cathedra Sancti Petri Antiochiæ.

XL. Judæorum princeps Agrippa.

XLI. Pilatus se ipsum interimit.[4]

Claudius emperor (A.D. 41).

Claudius imperator, qui subjugavit Britanniam secundo post Julium Cæsarem.

XLII.

XLIII. Philon Judæus scripsit hoc tempore.

S. Jerome's account of Philo.

[5] JERONIMUS DE CATHALOGO VIRORUM ILLUSTRIUM, CAPITULO UNDECIMO ;—Hic iccirco ponitur inter ecclesiasticos scriptores a Jeronimo quia temporibus Claudii Cæsaris in urbe Roma locutus est cum apostolo Petro, ejusque habuit amicitias, et ob hanc causam etiam Marci evangelistæ sectatores apud Alexandriam ornavit laudibus suis ; de quo scriptum est " aut Plato Philonem sequitur aut " Philo Platonem ; " tanta est similitudo sensuum et eloquii.

XLIIII.

---

[1] *Christianos*] Here MS. B., quoting Eusebius, i. 17, inserts the story of the cure of Abgarus, given below under A.D. 50.

[2] Euseb. Chr. p. 652.

[3] *Philon . . . . . tempore*] Ao. XXXVIII. Philo scriptorum insignissimus quanta Judæis acciderint mala quinque voluminibus exponit, B. See above, p. 20.

[4] Here MS. B. quotes Eusebius, ii. 8:—Pilatus, qui in Salvatorem iniqui judicis functus officio est, tantis ac talibus malorum cladibus excruciatus est ut propria se manu transverberasse et nefariam vitam vi abjecisse referatur. Nec enim poterat tanti piaculi minister impunitus evadere. (Ruffinus, ii. c. 7.)

[5] Hieron. Opp. ii. 833. This extract is omitted in B., and is inserted in the margin in A.

XLV. Cathedra Sancti Petri Romæ.

XLVI.

XLVII. Marcus evangelium, quod Romæ scripserat, Egypto prædicavit. Judæorum Agrippa princeps secundus. Claudius Orchades insulas Romano adjecit imperio. Claudius conquers the Orkneys.

XLVIII.

XLIX. Assumptio Mariæ matris Domini.

L. Eusebius, libro I°., capitulo XVII°. Thadeus apostolus veniens ad Abgarum thoparcham Thaddeus at Edessa.

LI.

LII. inquit, "Pono manum meam super te in

LIII. "nomine Jesu" et statim omni ægritudinis morbo quo tenebatur Abgarus absolvitur.[1]

LIIII.

LV.

LVI. Nero imperator, sub quo persecutio prima. PS I. Nero emperor, (A.D. 54).

LVII.

LVIII. Festus procurator Judææ, a quo Paulus vinctus Romam mittitur,[2] qui etiam ait ad Paulum, "Paule, nimiæ litteræ ad insaniam te convertunt." S. Paul at Rome. Acts, xxvi. 24.

"Senecæ Paulus salutem. Quotienscunque "tibi scribo et nomen meum sub secundo "gravem sectæ meæ et incongruentem rem "facio."[3] He writes to Seneca.

LIX.

LX.

LXI. Jacobus frater Domini lapidatus a Judæis.[4] S. James stoned.

LXII.

LXIII.

LXIIII.

LXV. Lucanus Cordubensis poeta obiit.[5]

LXVI.

LXVII.

LXVIII. Linum et Cletum ordinavit episcopos Petrus apostolus ad explenda exteriora ministeria; ipse vero orationi instabat. S. Peter ordains his successors.

---

[1] *Thadeus . . . absolvitur*] Placed under A.D. 33, in B. See Ruffinus, i. c. 15.

[2] Euseb. Chr. p. 665.

[3] *Senecæ . . . facio*] om. B. See Fabricius, Codex Apocryphus Novi Testamenti, p. 899. *Sub secundo* may be a misreading for *subscribo*, but the original has *præfero*.

[4] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 63, p. 668.

[5] Ibid. A.D. 66, p. 669.

Portents before the fall of Jerusalem.

[1] Eusebius, libro iii°., capitulo octavo. Vicesima die mensis Maii prope solis occasum visi sunt currus et quadrigæ per aerem ferri, et armatorum cohortes miscere nubibus, et urbes circumdare agminibus inprovisis. In festo Pentecostes noctu sacerdotes, ingressi templum ad ministeria de more complenda, motus quosdam strepitusque senserunt, voces subitas audierunt dicentes, "Migremus " hinc, migremus hinc." Additur his etiam aliud terribilius. Etenim quidam Ananiæ filius, Jesus nomine, vir plebeius et rusticus, ante quartum belli annum, cum civitas in pace et habundantia perduraret, in die festo tabernaculorum repente clamare cœpit, "Vox ab oriente, vox ab occidente, " vox a quatuor ventis, vox super Jeroso- " limam et super templum, vox super " sponsos et sponsas, vox super populum," et indesinenter die noctuque per omnes plateas circumiens hæc clamabat.

Martyrdom of SS. Peter and Paul.

LXIX. Passio apostolorum Petri et Pauli.

Linus papa.

Nero dies (A.D. 68).

Nero, cum a senatu quæreretur ad pœnam, e palatio fugiens magano semet interficit.[2]

LXX. Vespasianus,[3] imperator apud Judæam ab ex-

LXXI. ercitu appellatus, bellum contra Judæos Tito filio suo commendat.

Titus captures Jerusalem.

LXXII. Titus[4] Jerusalem subvertit, undecies centena milia Judæorum fame et gladio perierunt tempore azimorum: centum milia publice venundata sunt. Oportuit enim diebus azimorum Judæos interfici in quibus Salvatorem crucifixerunt.

Vox populi[5] d. c. etc. Adveniente Romano exercitu, secundum Josephum, divisi sunt

---

[1] Placed under A.D. 69 in B. See Euseb. ap. Ruffin., lib. iii. c. 8; Hist. Misc., lib. ix. cc. 3, 4.

[2] *Nero . . . . interficit*] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 70.

[3] *Vespasianus*] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 71.

[4] *Titus*] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 72.

[5] *Vox populi, &c.*] Written in the margin of A. and copied in C.; om. B.

Judæi in tres partes de prin- Seditions at Jerusalem before the capture.
cipatu contendentes, alii sibi
alium principem præponentes.
Pars autem populi et sacerdo-
tum tenebat Templum, arcem
vero et domum regiam pars
populi et principum; reliquam
quoque civitatem tertia pars
et maxime vulgus. Pugna-
batur ergo et extra contra
hostes et intra contra cives;
Romanis ergo urbem irrum-
pentibus, audita est vox plan-
gentis populi de civitate, vox
sacerdotum et qui cum eis
erant de Templo, vox etiam
Domini audita est in Romanis
exultantibus, qui Ejus nutu
venerunt, reddentis retribu-
tionem inimicis, scilicet Ju-
dæis, scilicet per Romanos.
Isa. lxvi. 6. Unde Ysaias, "Vox populi de
" civitate, vox de templo, vox
" Domini reddentis retribu-
" tionem inimicis Suis."

LXXIII. JOSEPHUS; EUSEBIUS, LIBRO I°., CAPITULO X°V°.[1] Josephus's mention of Christ.
LXXIIII. Fuit Jesus vir, si tamen virum eum appel-
LXXV. lare fas est. Erat enim mirabilium operum
LXXVI. effector, doctorque hominum eorum qui li-
LXXVII. benter quæ vera sunt audiunt. Christus
hic erat.

---

[1] This statement is given under A.D. 42 in B., thus: Josephus XVIII. antiquitatum libro scribit; "Fuit " autem iisdem temporibus Jesus " sapiens vir, si tamen virum eum " appellare fas est. Erat enim mira- " bilium operum effector, doctor- " que hominum eorum qui libenter " quæ vera sunt audiunt, et mul- " tos quidem Judæorum, multos " etiam ex gentibus sibi adjunxit. " Christus hic erat. Hunc actione " primorum nostræ gentis virorum, " cum Pilatus in crucem agendum " esse decrevisset, non deseruerunt " ii qui ab initio eum dilexerant. " Apparuit enim eis tertia die iterum " vivus, secundum quod divinitus " inspirati prophetæ vel hæc vel alia " de eo innumera miracula futura " esse prædixerant. Sed in hodier- " num Christianorum, qui ab eo " nuncupati sunt, et nomen perse- " verat et genus." This is the translation by Ruffinus of Eusebius's extract from Josephus. See above, p. 25.

Josephus at Rome.

LXXVIII. JERONIMUS, XIII. Josephus Romam veniens vii.
LXXIX. libros scripsit Judaicæ captivitatis.[1]

Character of Titus.

LXXX. Titus abstinuit aleæ; qui culpatus quare plus promitteret quam dare posset, ait "non "oporteret quemquam a sermone principis "tristem recedere." Titus imperator tantæ bonitatis fuit ut cum quadam die recordatus fuisset in cœna nichil se in illa die cuiquam præstitisse, dixit, "Amici, hodie diem perdidi."[2]

LXXXI. Cletus papa.

Domitian emperor (A.D. 81).

LXXXII. Domicianus imperator.[3] ꝐS IIa.

LXXXIII. Johannes in Pathmos insulam relegatur, ubi scripsit Apocalipsim.

LXXXIIII.
LXXXV. JERONIMUS DE CATHALOGO VIRORUM ILLUSTRIUM,
LXXXVI. CAPITULO XVº.[4] — Clemens iii. post Petrum
LXXXVII. Romæ fuit episcopus; siquidem secundus
LXXXVIII. Linus fuit, tertius Anacletus; tametsi plerique Latinorum secundum post Petrum putent fuisse Clementem.

LXXXIX.
XC.
XCI.

Spread of the church in Gaul.

XCII. Clemens papa. Quo tempore ad collocandum in Galliis novæ fidei fundamentum Pietas superna magnificos atque industrios viros destinavit; Parisiensibus videlicet Dionisium, Silvanectensibus Regulum, Rothomagensibus Nigasium, Ebroicensibus Taurinum, Arelatensibus Trophimum, Narbonæ Paulum, Tholosæ Saturninum, Arvernis Astremonium, Lemovicis Martialem, Turronicis Gazianum, Cenomannicis Julianum, Belvacensibus Lucianum, Ambianensibus Firminum, Lugdunensibus Photinum.[5]

---

[1] Josephus Romam veniens ob ingenii gloriam statuam Romæ meruit, scribens libros vii. Judaicæ Captivitatis, B., under A.D. 74.

[2] *Titus . . . perdidi*] Hist. Misc., ix. 10 (p. 200). Placed under A.D. 79 in B.

[3] Placed under A.D. 81 in B.

[4] Hieron. Opp., ed. Vallars, vol. ii. p. 840.

[5] *Clemens . . . Photinum*] This passage is an abstract of the statement of Gregory of Tours (Hist. Fr., lib. i. c. 28) respecting the progress of the gospel in Gaul during the Decian persecution, with addi-

xciii.
xciiii.
xcv.
xcvi. Persecutio tertia. Beatus Dionisius cum sociis suis martyrium subiit. Domicianus occiditur in palatio. Johannes apostolus ab exilio revocatur. The third persecution.
xcvii. Nerva imperator. P S III^a.
xcviii. Trajanus imperator. Trajan emperor (A.D. 98).
xcix. Anacletus papa.
c. Eutropius, libro octavo.[1] Trajanus gloriam
ci. militarem civilitate et modera-
cii. tione superavit. Romæ et per Character of Trajan.
ciii. provincias æqualem se omni-
ciiii. bus exhibens, amicos salutandi
cv. causa frequentans, vel ægro-
cvi. tantes, vel cum dies festos
cvii. habuissent, convivia cum is-
cviii. dem indiscreta vicissim ha-
cix. bens; sæpe in vehiculis eorum
cx. sedens; nullum senatorum
cxi. lædens; nil injustum ad au-
cxii. Euaristus papa. gendum fiscum agens; libe-
cxiii. ralis in cunctis, publice pri-
cxiiii. vatimque ditans omnes et
cxv. honoribus augens, quos vel
cxvi. mediocri familiaritate cogno-
cxvii. visset; orbem terrarum ædificans, multas immunitates civitatibus tribuens, nichil nisi tranquillum et placidum agens, adeo ut omni ejus ætate unus senator dampnatus sit, atque is tamen per senatum ignorante Trajano. Ob hæc per orbem terrarum Deo proximus nichil non venerationis meruit et vivus et mortuus. Inter alia dicam,

---

tions; and the names are here transferred to the days of Clement. It is not, however, a falsification by our compiler; it occurs in other authors, e.g., in the Annals of Waverley, ed. Luard, p. 132; and in French MSS. which are discussed by the authors of the Gallia Christiana. It is said to occur in a MS. chronicle by Ivo of Chartres, who may have invented it. See Matt. Paris, ed. Luard, i. p. 116, n. [1].

[1] Historia Miscella., lib. x. cap. 4.

Praises of Trajan.

hoc ipsius fertur egregium. Amicis enim culpantibus quod nimium circa omnes communis esset, respondit talem se esse imperatorem privatis quales esse sibi imperatores privatus optasset. Solus omnium intra urbem sepultus est.[1] Hujus tantum memoriæ delatum est ut adusque ad nostram ætatem non aliter in senatu principibus acclametur nisi "felicior Augusto, melior "Trajano." Adeo in eo gloria bonitatis optinuit, ut vel assentantibus vel vere laudantibus occasionem magnificentissimi præstet exempli.[2]

Date of Aulus Gellius.

cxviii. *Agellius scripsit hoc tempore.*[3]
cxix. Adrianus imperator. Hujus temporibus Agel-
cxx. lius in prohemio suo sic ait;
cxxi. AGELLIUS, LIBRO PRIMO[4]:—Ut
cxxii. librum quemque in manus
cxxiii. Alexander papa. ceperam vel quid memoratu
cxxiiii. dignum audieram id mihi ad
cxxv. subsidium memoriæ quasi
cxxvi. quoddam litterarum penus re-
cxxvii. condebam, ut quando usus
cxxviii. venisset, si rei vel verbi me
cxxix. repens oblivio forte tenuisset,
cxxx. et libri ex quibus ea sumpse-
ram non adessent, facile inde nobis inventu atque depromptu esset. Sed quoniam longinquis per hyemem noctibus in agro terræ Atticæ commentationes hasce ludere ac facere exorsi sumus, iccirco eas inscripsimus Noctium esse Acticarum.

Adrian emperor (A.D. 117).

cxxxi.

---

[1] *Solus . . . sepultus est*] Hist. Misc., x. 6, note (p. 208).

[2] *Hujus tantum . . . . exempli*] Hist. Misc., lib. x. c. 6 (p. 209).

[3] *Agellius . . . tempore*] om. B.

[4] Noctes Atticæ, Præf. c. 1.

CXXXII. Sixtus papa. Hic constituit cantare hymnum
"Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus" in officio
Missæ.[1]

CXXXIII.

CXXXIIII. Helius Adrianus imperator Jerosolimam mu-
CXXXV. rorum instructione reparat.[2]

CXXXVI.

CXXXVII.

CXXXVIII. Thelesphorus papa.

CXXXIX. *Quidam computant Clementem papam secundum
a Petro apostolo, quidam tertium, quidam
quartum, et ideo varietatem annorum Do-
minicalium in multis locis invenies.*

CXL. Antoninus imperator.[3] Antoninus emperor (A.D. 138).

CXLI.

CXLII.

CXLIII. Yginus papa.

CXLIIII.

CXLV.

CXLVI.

CXLVII. Anicius papa.

CXLVIII.

CXLIX.

CL.

CLI.

CLII.

CLIII.

CLIIII.

CLV.

CLVI. Pius papa.[4]

CLVII.

CLVIII.

CLIX.

CLX.

CLXI. PERSECUTIO IIII^{ta}. Marcus Antoninus et Lucius Marcus Aurelius (A.D. 161).
CLXII. Aurelius imperatores. Hi Romanum æquo
jure imperium amministraverunt.[5]

ꝐS IIII^{a}.

---

[1] See Marianus Scotus, A.D. 123.

[2] *Helius . . . . reparat*] Placed under A.D. 109 in B. Cf. Bed. Chr. M. H. B., p. 86; Euseb. Chr. ap. Hieron. viii. 713.

[3] *Antoninus imperator*] A.D. 138, B.

[4] *Pius papa*] Secundum Bedam hoc anno fuit Eleuter papa, a quo Lucius rex Britonum se fieri Christianum postulavit, B.

[5] Euseb. Chr., A.D. 163.

The church as yet untouched by heresy.

CLXIII. Jeronimus lxiiii. *Julius Affricanus breves tem-*
CLXIIII. *porum annotationes per generationes et regna*
CLXV. *scribit hoc tempore.*[1] Hucusque ecclesia virgo
CLXVI. vocabatur quia nondum fuerat adulterini
CLXVII. verbi surreptione corrupta. Sed Thobites
quidam, quia repulsam meruit episcopatus,
ipse cœpit in initio turbare omnia.
CLXVIII.
CLXIX. Sother papa.
CLXX.
CLXXI.
CLXXII.
CLXXIII.

Triumph of Marcus Aurelius.

CLXXIIII. Antoninus, post victoriam a Germanis et Sar-
CLXXV. matis habitam, adeo magnificus fuit in edi-
CLXXVI. tione munerum, ut centum simul leones
exhibuerit.[2]
CLXXVII.

Conversion of king Lucius.

CLXXVIII. Beda, libro i°., capitulo iiii°.[3] Eleuther papa, ad quem Lucius rex Britanniæ missa epistola se fieri Christianum impetrat. Eleuther ergo misit Faganum et Duvianum, qui regem Lucium baptizaverunt, templa etiam, quæ in honore plurimorum deorum fundata erant, uni Deo dedicaverunt. Erant tunc in Britannia xxviii. flammines, et tres archiflammines, et ubi erant flammines episcopos, ubi autem archiflammines archiepiscopos posuerunt. Lundoniensi archiepiscopo subjacuit Loegria et Cornubia, Eboracensi Deira et Albania; urbi autem Legionum Kambria.

Beda, libro i°., capitulo vicesimo sexto. Post dies hos[4] constructa est extra Cantuariam ecclesia Sancti Martini.

---

[1] Hieron. Opp., ed. Vallars, vol. i. p. 427. The rest of the sentence is from Ruffinus, iv. 22.

[2] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 181.

[3] Bede mentions Eleutherus and the letter of Lucius in the chapter quoted; but the rest of the information is derived from Geoffrey of Monmouth, Hist. Britonum, lib. iv. c. 19.

[4] *Post dies hos*] Tunc, B. This is only a general reference to Bede, who mentions the church of S. Martin in the chapter quoted.

Here C. has in the margin: *Nota de primatu Christianitatis in Anglia :—*

"Lucius rex Britanniæ primus
" fuit in Anglia baptizatus, sed tota
" Christianitas ipsius tempore ad-
" epta cito periit omnino deleta.
" Primus autem martir in Anglia,
" quæ adhuc Britannia dicebatur,
" fuit beatus Albanus, qui, bapti-

CLXXIX.

CLXXX. Commodus imperator. Commodus emperor (A.D. 190).

CLXXXI. JERONIMUS XXII. *Egesippus usque huc*[1] *decem libros ystoriarum scripsit.*

CLXXXII.

CLXXXIII.

CLXXXIIII.

CLXXXV.

CLXXXVI.

CLXXXVII.

CLXXXVIII.

CLXXXIX. Commodus imperator colossi capite sullato suæ ymaginis caput jussit imponi.[2]

CXC.

CXCI.

CXCII.

CXCIII. Victor papa.

Helius[3] Pertinax imperator, qui, obsecrante senatu ut uxorem suam Augustam et filium Cæsarem appellaret, contradixit, sufficere testatus quod ipse regnaret invitus. Pertinax emperor (A.D. 193.)

CXCIIII. Severus solus ex Affrica imperator fuit. Severus emperor (A.D. 193).

CXCV. JERONIMUS, LIIII.[4] *Tertullianus presbiter Cartaginensis, vir acris ingenii et vehementis, floruit hoc tempore.*

CXCVI.

CXCVII.

CXCVIII. PS Vta.

CXCIX.

CC.

CCI.

CCII.

CCIII.

CCIIII. Zepherinus papa.

" zante beato Amphibalo, decollatus, " et beatus Amphibalus est eviscerratus. Postea vero Christianitas " in Anglia fuit destructa et deleta. " Deinde anno gratiæ DC°. misso " Sancto Augustino a beato Gre- " gorio, baptizatus est Ædelbertus " rex Cantiæ, et nunquam postea " penitus deleta est Christianitas; " unde Lucius primus tempore, Al- " banus primus martirio, Augusti- " nus primus fuit apostolatu. Al- " banus tamen, quia martir primus, " id est, præcipuus omnium Chris- " tianorum Angliæ, titulo Christia- " nitatis insignitur, et merito signi- " fer appellatur."

[1] *huc*] a Passione Domini, ins. B.

[2] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 190. Severus imperator, B., omitting Commodus, A.D. 189.

[3] *Helius*] om. B. See Euseb. Chr. A.D. 194.

[4] Hieron. Opp., ed. Vallars, vol. ii. p. 875.

ccv.

ccvi.

Wall of Severus built.

ccvii. [1] Clodio Albino, qui se in Gallia Cæsarem fecerat, interfecto apud Lugdunum, Severus in Britannos bellum transfert, ubi ut receptas provincias ab incursione barbarica faceret securiores, vallum per cxxii. passuum milia a mari ad mare perduxit.

ccviii.

ccix.

ccx.

ccxi.

Severus buried at York.

ccxii. Severus moriens in Britannia sepelitur Eboraci.[2]

Caracalla emperor (A.D. 211).

ccxiii. Antoninus II^us imperator cognominatur Karakalla, propter genus vestis quod erogaverat Romæ.[3]

Origenes,[4] sæcularibus libris postpositis, a Demetrio episcopo docendi in ecclesiis accepit magisterium apud Alexandriam.

Account of Origen's views concerning the relations of spirits and bodies.

Augustinus de civitate Dei, libro xviii^o.[5] Sunt qui dicunt animas, non quidem partes Dei sed factas a Deo, peccasse a Conditore recedendo, et, diversis progressibus pro diversitate peccatorum a cœlis usque ad terras, diversa corpora quasi vincula meruisse, et hunc esse mundum, eamque causam mundi fuisse faciendi, non ut conderentur bona, sed ut mala cohiberentur. Hinc Origenes jure culpatur. Sed videre debuit Origenes et quicunque ita sapiunt, si hæc opinio vera esset, mundum ideo factum ut animæ pro meritis peccatorum suorum, tanquam ergastula quibus pœnaliter includerentur, corpora acciperent, superiora et leviora quæ minus, inferiora vero et graviora quæ amplius peccaverunt; dæmones, quibus deterius nichil est, terrena corpora quibus inferius et gravius nihil est, potius quam homines etiam bonos habere debuisse.

ccxiiii.

---

[1] Euseb. Chron., A.D. 207; Hieron. Opp., viii. 736; Bed. Chr. p. 87.

[2] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 212.

[3] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 214.

[4] *Origenes*] Placed under A.D. 208 in B. See Ruffinus, vi. 3.

[5] This is from Augustine, De Civitate Dei, lib. xi. c. 23.

CCXV.
CCXVI.
CCXVII.
CCXVIII.
CCXIX. Macrinus imperator. Macrinus emperor (A.D. 217).
CCXX. Aurelius imperator.
CCXXI. Calixtus papa. Helio-gabalus (A.D. 218).
CCXXII.
CCXXIII.
CCXXIIII. Alexander imperator Xersem regem Persarum gloriosissime vicit, et disciplinæ militaris tam severus corrector fuit, ut quasdam tumultuantes legiones exauctoraverit.[1] Alexander Severus (A.D. 222).
CCXXV. Urbanus papa.[2]
CCXXVI. Ulpianus juris consultus assessor Alexandri.[3]
CCXXVII.
CCXXVIII. EUSEBIUS, LIBRO VI°., CAPITULO OCTAVO.[4]
JERONIMUS DE CATALOGO VIRORUM ILLUSTRIUM.[5]
Origenes cum se propter amorem regni cœles- Journeys of Origen.
CCXXIX. tis castrasset et licenter cum viris et mu-
CCXXX. lieribus habitasset, ab Alexandria transiit
CCXXXI. Jerosolimam et Cæsaream. Ob hoc Demetrius
CCXXXII. episcopus Alexandrininus tanta adversus
CCXXXIII. eum debacchans est insania, ut per totum
CCXXXIIII. orbem super nomine ejus diffamando scri-
beret.
CCXXXV. Puntianus papa.
CCXXXVI. Maximinus imperator, primus ex corpore militari sine senatus auctoritate creatus est imperator.[6] Ꝑ S̄ VIª. Maximin emperor (A.D. 235).
CCXXXVII.
CCXXXVIII.
CCXXXIX. Anterus papa.
Fabianus papa.
Gordianus papa.
CCXL.
CCXLI.
CCXLII.
CCXLIII.
CCXLIIII.
CCXLV.

---

[1] Euseb. Chron. A.D. 224.
[2] *Urbanus papa*] A.D. 226, B.
[3] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 228.
[4] Ruffinus, lib. vi. c. 6.
[5] Hieron. Opp., ed. Vallars, vol. ii. 879.
[6] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 238.

Philip emperor (A.D. 244).

CCXLVI. Primus Christianus: Philippus imperator, filium suum Philippum consortem regni fecit, primusque omnium ex Romanis imperatoribus Christianus fuit.[1]

CCXLVII.

CCXLVIII.

CCXLIX.

CCL.

CCLI.

Decius (A.D. 249). Gallus (A.D. 251).

CCLII. Decius imperator. P S VII^a.

Gallus imperator.

CCLIII. Cornelius papa. Hic de catacumbis levavit

CCLIIII. per noctem corpora apostolorum, et Pauli

CCLV. quidem ossa posuit via Hostiensi, ubi decollatus est; Petri autem juxta locum ubi crucifixus est.[2]

CCLVI.

CCLVII.

CCLVIII. Lucius papa.[3]

CCLIX. Stephanus papa.[4]

Valerian emperor (A.D. 253).

CCLX. Valerianus imperator.[5]

CCLXI. P S VIII^a.

CCLXII. Eusebius, libro VII°., capitulo XVII°. Mulier a profluvio sanguinis a Salvatore curata, statuam Salvatoris fusam ære habentem fimbriam æream in loco editiore domus suæ collocavit. Herba vero nova specie nascens dum tangeret fimbriam omnes depellebat languores.[6]

CCLXIII. Sixtus papa, cum quo Laurentius martyrium

CCLXIIII. suscepit.[7]

Council of Antioch.

CCLXV. Eusebius, libro VII°., capitulo XXV°.[8] Dionisius papa. Hujus tempore habitum est concilium Antiochiæ contra Paulum hæreticum. Ad quod cum tenderet Gregorius Ponti provinciæ episcopus, et in Alpibus nusquam diversorium invenisset, intravit fanum Apol-

---

[1] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 247.

[2] See Marianus Scotus, A.D. 263. Pseudo-Isid. ed. Hinsch, p. 171.

[3] *Lucius papa*] A.D. 256, B.

[4] *Stephanus papa*] A.D. 259, B.

[5] *Valerianus imperator*] A.D. 256, B.

[6] *Mulier . . . . languores*] A.D. 247, B.; Ruffinus, vii. 14.

[7] Mar. Scot., A.D. 259 ; Euseb. Chr., A.D. 254.

[8] Ruffinus, vii. 25.

linis, et ibi nocte mansit. Sacerdos quidam erat fani ejus cui consulere simulachrum Apollinis mos erat, et reddere responsa poscentibus; ex quo ei etiam alimoniæ quæstus erat. Post digressum Gregorii nichil ex fano responsi veniebat; repetit sacerdos victimas, silentium permanet. Cumque stupore novi silentii æstuaret sacerdos, nocte ei assistens dæmonium dicit in somnis, "Quid me illic invocas, quo jam venire "non possum nisi Gregorius permiserit?" Quibus auditis sacerdos venit ad Gregorium, querelam depulsi numinis ponit, ademptam facultatem sui quæstus deplorat, reddi sibi omnia in pristinum statum deposcit. Tunc Gregorius scribit epistolam in hæc verba; "Gregorius Apollini. Permitto tibi redire "in locum tuum et agere quæ consuesti." Hac epistola posita juxta simulachrum, affuit dæmon ac dedit responsa sacerdoti. Tum sacerdos ait secum, "Si Gregorius jussit et "deus iste discessit, nec potuit redire nisi "jussus, et rursus jubente Gregorio resti-"tutus est, quomodo non multo melior isto "Gregorius, cujus hic obtemperat jussis!" Clausis igitur januis fani, descendit ad Gregorium, et ab eodem baptizatus est, et post in episcopatum successit Gregorio.

Story of Gregory bishop of Pontus.

Letter of Gregory to Apollo.

CCLXVI.

CCLXVII. Felix papa.

CCLXVIII.

CCLXIX. Euticianus papa.

CCLXX.

CCLXXI. Claudius imperator. Claudius emperor (A.D. 268).

CCLXXII.

CCLXXIII. Aurelianus imperator. Hic cum Christianis persecutionem movisset, fulmen ante eum ruit.[1] Aurelian (A.D. 270)

P S IX[a].

CCLXXIIII. Eutropius, libro octavo. Aurelianus imperator
CCLXXV. usum porcinæ carnis invenit,[2] et urbem quæ
CCLXXVI. vocatur Aurelianis in Francia condidit.

---

[1] *Aurelianus . . . . . ruit*] Hist. Misc. x. 37 (p. 233); Bede. Chr. p. 89.

[2] Hist. Miscell. x. 36, "porcinæ "carnis usum populo instituit." The reference is omitted in B.

CCLXXVII. Gaius papa.

Tacitus emperor (A.D. 275).

CCLXXVIII. Tacitus imperator.

Probus (A.D. 276)

CCLXXIX. Probus imperator.

CCLXXX.

CCLXXXI.

CCLXXXII.

CCLXXXIII.

Carus (A.D. 282).

CCLXXXIIII. Karus imperator.

CCLXXXV.

Diocletian (A.D. 284).

CCLXXXVI. Dioclitianus imperator. PS Xa.

Martyrdom of S. Alban.

CCLXXXVII. BEDA, LIBRO I°., CAPITULO VII°.[1] Hucusque sine perturbatione quievit in Britannia Christiana religio, sed Dioclitiani tempore subversæ sunt ecclesiæ, scripturæ sacræ mediis focis exustæ; sacerdotes cum fidelibus sibi subditis trucidati. De quorum numero prothomartyr Anglorum beatus Albanus migravit ad Dominum.

CCLXXXVIII. Marcellinus papa.

CCLXXXIX.

CCXC.

CCXCI.

CCXCII.

CCXCIII.

CCXCIIII.

CCXCV.

CCXCVI. Marcellus papa.

CCXCVII.

CCXCVIII.

CCXCIX.

CCC.

CCCI. Eusebius papa.

CCCII.

CCCIII. Melchiades papa.

CCCIIII. Dioclitianus et Maximianus Romæ triumpharunt, antecedentibus currum eorum Narsei

CCCV. conjuge, sororibus, liberis, et omni præda qua Partos spoliaverant.[2]

Resignation of Diocletian and Maximian (A.D. 305).

CCCVI. Silvester papa.

Dioclitianus Nichomediæ, Maximianus Mediolani, purpuram deposuerunt.[3]

---

[1] A general reference to Bede's account of the martyrdom of S. Alban. The words are chiefly from Ruffinus's translation of Eusebius, lib. ii. c. 2.

[2] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 305.

[3] Euseb. Chr. A.D. 307.

CCCVII.[1] Constantius imperator. *Constantius and Galerius emperors.*
Galerius imperator.
Constantius imperator summæ mansuetudinis et civilitatis, cum Galliam, Hispaniam regeret et Britanniam, obiit Eboraci xiii°. principatus sui anno.[2]
CCCVIII. Constantio mortuo, Constantinus, ex obscuriore matrimonio filius ejus, in Britannia creatus est imperator, et in locum patris exoptatissimus moderator accessit.[3] *Constantine (A.D. 306).*

EUTROPIUS, LIBRO X°.[4] Post Dioclitianum, Constantius et Galerius Augusti creati sunt, divisusque inter eos ita Romanus orbis, ut Gallias, Italiam, Affricam Constantius, Illiricum, Asiam, Orientem Galerius, obtineret, sumptis duobus Cæsaribus. Constantius tamen contentus dignitate Augusti Italiæ atque Affricæ administrandæ sollicitudinem recusavit; vir egregius et præstantissimæ civilitatis, divitiis provincialium ac privatorum studens, fisci commoda non admodum affectans, dicensque melius publicas opes privatis haberi quam intra unum claustrum reservari. Adeo autem cultus modici, ut feriatis diebus, si cum amicis numerosioribus esset epulandum, privatorum ei argento ostiatim petito triclinia sternerentur. Hic non modo amabilis sed venerabilis etiam Gallis fuit; præcipue quod Dioclitiani suspectam prudentiam et Maximiani sanguinariam temeritatem imperio ejus evaserant. Obiit in Britannia Eboraci principatus anno xiii°., atque inter divos relatus est. Constantio mortuo Constantinus ex obscuriore matrimonio ejus filius, in Britannia creatus est imperator, et in locum patris exoptatissimus moderator accessit.

Division of the empire between Constantius and Galerius.

Character of Constantius.

Death of Constantius.

---

[1] Galerius solus Augustus biennio imperium tenuit, B.

[2] Constantius xvi^{mo}. imperii anno diem obiit in Britannia Eboraci, post quem Constantinus, ex concubina Helena procreatus, regnum invadit. Quarto autem persecutionis anno Constantinus regnare orsus. B., from the Chronicon of Eusebius, Hieron. Opp. viii. 773.

[3] *Constantius . . accessit*] Chiefly from the Hist. Misc., as below: "summæ mansuetudinis et civili-" tatis"; Orosius (M. H. Brit. p. lxxx.); Bed. Chr. p. 88.

[4] Historia Miscella, lib. xi. c. 1.

Conversion of Constantine.

cccix. Constantinus imperator.
Eusebius, libro ix°., capitulo vii°.[1] Hic Christianæ religionis fautor verique Dei venerator, nondum, ut est sollenne nostris initiari, signum Dominicæ Passionis acceperat. Cum igitur esset anxius et multa secum de imminentis belli necessitate contra Maxentium
cccx. tyrannum pervolvens iter ageret, atque ad cœlum oculos sæpius elevaret, et inde sibi divinum precaretur auxilium, vidit per soporem in cœlo signum crucis igneo fulgore rutilare, et angelos astare dicentes, "Constantine Toytω nika," quod est, "in hoc vince." Extunc in dextera sua manu signum crucis ex auro fabrefactum dicitur habuisse. Cum itaque principis animus fluctuaret eo
cccxi. quod imperator Romanus et pater patriæ nominatus urbi Romæ bellum cogeretur inferre, precabatur ne dexteram suam, quam signo munierat salutari, cruore Romani sanguinis macularet. Et cum jam non procul a ponte Milvio castra posuisset, ecce
cccxii. subito Maxentius agitur in occursum; et proruptis urbis Romæ portis præcurrit armatus. Ut ergo ipse eques ac præcursor ingressus est pontem, naves quas paraverat ad decipulam subsedere, et in profundum dimersus totius belli futuras cædes unius nefandi capitis sui dirimit interitu, atque impollutam religiosi principis dexteram civili cruore servavit. Statim autem ubi ymagines sibi ob honorem triumphanti senatus
cccxiii. erexit, vexillum Dominicæ crucis in dextera sua jubet Constantinus depingi.

His victory over Maxentius. (A.D. 312.)

Constantine's dream of the future of Byzantium.

cccxv. Constantino[2] in urbe Bizantea soporato, visa est astitisse vetula rugis anilibus arata frontem; mox imperiali clamide amicta in juven-
cccxvi. culam refloruisse, viridisque formæ decore Constantini pellexisse oculum, ut non abstineret quin porrigeret ei osculum. Hujus sompnii solutionem Augustus, extruso sopore

---

[1] Ruffinus, ix. c. 9.

[2] This story is extracted from William of Malmesbury, Gesta Regum, lib. iv. § 354; who took it from the book of Aldhelm, de Laudibus Virginitatis, c. 25, to which reference is made in MS. B.

jejuniis et elemosinis extrahebat e cœlo. Et Dream of Constantine, and its interpretation.
CCCXVII. ecce post viii°. dies iterum soporatus, visus est videre Silvestrum papam paulo ante defunctum. Qui dixit ei, "Hæc quam vi-"disti anicula est civitas ista, ævi situ
CCCXVIII. "decrepita, cujus jam vetustate quassa mœ-"nia et vicinam ruinam minantia te repa-"ratorem desiderant. Non tamen tuo ar-
CCCXIX. "bitratu fundamenta jacies, sed ascenso "sonipede, cui quondam rudis Christicola "insidens Apostolorum Romæ circuisti ec-"clesias, laxatis habenis quo volet eundi "promptum illi cedes arbitrium; habebis-
CCCXX. "que in manu hastam regiam, cujus cus-"pide in terra tracta muri scribentur "vestigia."

CCCXXI. Porrigitur[1] Constantinopolis ingentibus mœniis, sed eam angustat convenarum innumerus populus. Quapropter rupium molibus Description of Constantinople.
CCCXXII.[2] et harenarum cumulis profundo injectis longe itur in saltum, et novo commento tellus invecta veteres contrahit undas. Stupet
CCCXXIII. itaque mare peregrinos vitreo in gurgite campos, urbemque suam totis terrarum commodis cingit et pascit. Est enim civitas undique præter ad Aquilonem mari magno
CCCXXIIII. cincta; ambitu murorum juxta situm pelagi
RUFFINUS, LIBRO X., CAPITULO II°. angulosa xx. milibus passuum muro complexa. Danubius, qui et Hyster, occultis canalibus sub terra influit urbi, diebusque
CCCXXV. constitutis ablato pessulo inductus, cœnum platearum pelago inportat.

CCCXXVI. CCCXXVII. CCCXXVIII. HUCUSQUE SCRIBIT HYSTORIAM EUSEBIUS PAMPHILI MARTYRIS CONTUBERNALIS, CÆSAREÆ EPISCOPUS; CUI JERONIMUS ISTA SUBJICIT.

CCCXXIX. Drepanam Bithiniæ civitatem Constantinus instaurans ex vocabulo suæ matris Helenopolim nuncupavit.[3] Foundation of Helenopolis.

---

[1] *Porrigitur*] From William of Malmesbury, G. R. § 355.

[2] *cccxxii.*] Ethicus philosophus cosmographiam scribit quam Jeronimus interpretatur, ins. B. See above, p. 21.

[3] Hieron. Chr. A.D. 330, p. 785.

Dedication of Constantinople.

CCCXXX. CCCXXXI. CCCXXXII. RUFFINUS AQUILEIENSIS PRESBITER NOVEM . LIBRIS EUSEBII ADDIT DUOS, DECIMUM ET UNDECIMUM DE ECCLESIASTICA HYSTORIA.

CCCXXXIII. Constantinopolis dedicatur pene omnium urbium nuditate.[1]

Licinius a Constantino in societatem regnandi ascitus, cum sororem Constantini duxisset uxorem, gravissime sævit in Christianos.[2]

Marcus papa.

CCCXXXIIII. Edicto Constantini gentilium templa subversa sunt.[3]

CCCXXXV.

CCCXXXVI. Julius papa.

Council of Nicæa (A.D. 325).

CŌ Ad[4] perfidiam Arrianorum arguendam synodus trecentorum x^m. et viii^o. episcoporum in Niceam urbem Bithiniæ congregatur, in qua cum imperator Constantinus resedisset, et a singulis qui causas habebant suscepisset libellos, ait ad episcopos, "Deus vos con-"stituit sacerdotes, vos non potestis ab ho-"minibus judicari." Querimoniarum autem libellos jussit exuri.

Discovery of the true cross by Helena.

RUFFINUS, LIBRO X^o. CAPITULO VII°.[5] Helena Constantini mater petiit Jerosolimam, locum Dominicæ Passionis perquirit, tres confuso ordine reperit cruces; ad tactum illius crucis quæ ad Dominicam fuerat gloriam mulier semiviva decumbens surrexit. Constantinus ex clavis quibus Dominicum corpus fuerat affixum frænos composuit.

CCCXXXVII. Nicholaus Mirreorum episcopus claret.

CCCXXXVIII.

CCCXXXIX. Constantinus extremo tempore vitæ suæ ab Eusebio Nichomediensi episcopo baptizatur.[6]

Constantius emperor (A.D. 337).

CCCXL. Constantius imperator cum Constantino et Constante.

CCCXLI.

CCCXLII.

CCCXLIII.

CCCXLIIII.

---

[1] Hieron. Chron., Hieron. Opp. viii. p. 788.

[2] See Ruffinus, ix. 10.

[3] Hieron. Chr. A.D. 335.

[4] This notice, which is certainly out of place, appears in B. under the year 321. See Ruffinus x. c. 2.

[5] Ruffinus, x. 7, 8. Placed under A.D. 329 in B.

[6] Hieron. Chr., A.D. 340.

CCCXLV.
CCCXLVI.
CCCXLVII. Liberius papa.
CCCXLVIII.
CCCXLIX. AUGUSTINUS, LIBRO XVIII°., CAPITULO XL°V°.[1] Jero- S. Jerome translates the Scriptures.
CCCL. nimus, homo doctissimus et omnium trium
CCCLI. linguarum peritus, non ex Græco sed ex
CCCLII. Hebræo in Latinum eloquium scripturas
CCCLIII. convertit. Sed ejus tam litteratum laborem,
CCCLIIII. quamvis Judæi fateantur esse veracem,
CCCLV. Septuaginta vero interpretes in multis errasse contendant, tamen ecclesiæ Christi tot hominum auctoritati neminem judicant præferendum.
CCCLVI.
CCCLVII. Felix papa.
CCCLVIII. Juliani mandato Judæos templum quod Jerosolimis subversum erat reædificare volentes, ultrix flamma cohercuit.[2] Julian tries to rebuild the Temple.
CCCLIX.
CCCLX. EUSEBIUS,[3] LIBRO VII., CAPITULO XV.[4]
CCCLXI. Signaculum crucis in vestimentis apparuit.[5]
CCCLXII.
CCCLXIII. Julianus imperator conversus ad ydolorum Apostacy of Julian.
CCCLXIIII. culturam blanda persecutione magis illexit quam impulit ad sacrificandum.[6]
CCCLXV.
CCCLXVI. EUTROPIUS ROMANAM HYSTORIAM HIC TERMINAT.[7] Jovian emperor (A.D. 363).
CCCLXVII. Jovinianus imperator.
CCCLXVIII. Valentinianus et Valens imperatores.

HAMONIUS, LIBRO III°.[8] "Vestrum," inquit, "O "milites, fuit mihi dare regimen imperii; "quod ubi suscepi, meum jam et non ves"trum est disponere de rebus communi"bus." Episcopis autem dixit, "Talem in "pontificali constituite sede cui et nos, qui Speeches of Valentinian.

---

[1] This notice is omitted in MS. B. See Augustine, De Civitate Dei, xviii. c. 43.

[2] *Juliani . . . cohercuit*] om. B. See Ruffinus, lib. x. c. 39.

[3] *Eusebius*] om. B.

[4] If this reference belongs to the following entry, it should be Ruffinus, x. 39.

[5] *Signaculum . . . apparuit*] om. B.

[6] Hieron. Chr. A.D. 365.

[7] *Eutropius . . . . terminat*] om. B.

[8] This notice is omitted in MS. B. See Hugo Floriacensis, ed. Rottendorff, p. 103.

Ambrose bishop.

" imperium gubernamus, capita submitta-" mus." Tunc Ambrosius vir consularis adhuc cathecuminus consensu omnium capitur, baptizatur et octava die pontifex ordinatur.

HILARIUS PICTAVENSIS EPISCOPUS SCRIPSIT HOC TEMPORE.

History of pope Damasus.

CCCLXIX.[1] Damasus papa. Hic adulterii accusatus
CCCLXX. purgatur a xliiii[or]. episcopis. Accusatores ejus ab ecclesia expelluntur.

CCCLXXI. Damasus papa decrevit ne quid contra episco-
CCCLXXII. pos præsumant archidiaconi qui dicuntur
CCCLXXIII. chorepiscopi, id est, regionum et villarum episcopi.

CCCLXXIIII. Damasus instituit "Gloria Patri et Filio et " Spiritus Sancto" in ecclesia dici.

Contra hunc insurgit Ursinus.

CCCLXXV.

CCCLXXVI. Floret Ambrosius.[2]

Hymns and anthems first used at Milan.

CCCLXXVII. HAMONIUS, LIBRO III[o]. Tempore Justinæ imperatricis Ambrosius cum orthodoxis, qui intra ecclesiam tenebantur inclusi, jejuniis continuisque vigiliis Deo vacabat. Qua occasione vigiliæ et hymni et antiphonæ in ecclesia Mediolanensi primum celebrari cœperunt.

CCCLXXVIII. Basilius Cæsariensis episcopus Cappadociæ.[3]

Theodosius emperor (A.D. 378).

CCCLXXIX. Theodosius imperator.

Sin and penance of Theodosius.

HAMONIUS, LIBRO III[o]. Theodosius cum apud Thesalonicam hominum quinque milia jussisset interfici, venit Mediolanum, et cum ecclesiam voluisset intrare prohibuit eum Ambrosius, dicens " Recede, recede, ne " secundo peccato nequitiam augere con-" tendas. Suscipe vinculum quo te Domi-" nus omnium ligat." Tunc Theodosius gemens et deflens ad palatium remeavit. Cum autem octo mensium transisset spatium, ad sacra limina perveniens, sacram

De causa XI[a]. q. iii., *cum ap. Thessalo.*

Codice, t. *de pe.* l. *si judicari.*

---

[1] *CCCLXIX*] *Jeronimus de Catalogo virorum illustrium :*—Hilarius Pictavorum episcopus relegatus a synodo Biterrensi scripsit hoc tempore, ins. B. The passages about Damasus are from Sigebert of Gemblours, A.D. 382, 383, 384.

[2] *Floret Ambrosius*] om. B.

[3] *Tempore . . . Cappadociæ*] om. B. See Hugo Floriacensis, ed. Rottendorff, p. 106.

non est ausus intrare basilicam, quousque legem quam petebat Ambrosius conscribi præciperet, et propria manu confirmaret. Quo facto vinculum ejus solvit Ambrosius.[1] Absolution of Theodosius.

CCCLXXX. JERONIMUS HIC TERMINAT CRONICA.

CCCLXXXI. INCIPIT CHRONOGRAPHIA SIGISBERTI. Character of Theodosius.

CCCLXXXII. Fuit[2] magnus Theodosius clemens animo, et
CCCLXXXIII. ita amicis communis, ut solo habitu differre
CCCLXXXIIII. se ab eis putaret. Præterea fuit in omnes
CCCLXXXV. homines munificus, sed effusior in bonos. Simplicia ingenia diligere, erudita mirari, largiri magno animo magna, et irasci rebus indignis, sed fletu cito. Hujus denique corpus Constantinopolim est translatum atque tumulatum.

CCCLXXXVI. Secunda synodus universalis, C. et L. patrum, habita est Constantinopolis jubente Theodosio imperatore et annitente Damaso papa, contra Macedonium.[3] Council of Constantinople (A.D. 381).
C Ō
CCCLXXXVII.
CCCLXXXVIII.
CCCLXXXIX.

CCCXC. Siricius papa.

CCCXCI. Anastasius papa.

CCCXCII. Franci, origine Trojani[4] post eversionem Trojæ, Priamo quodam duce, inde digressi, juxta Traciam super ripas Danubii consederunt, ædificantesque ibi civitatem vocabant eam Sicambriam. Manseruntque ibi usque ad tempora Valentiniani imperatoris, a quo inde expulsi, pro eo quod tributa Romanis juxta morem cæterarum gentium solvere recusarent, egressi inde, Marcomiro, Sannione et Genebrando ducibus, venerunt et habitaverunt circa ripas Reni, in confinio Origin of the Franks.

---

[1] B. omits this and all from A.D. 369–381. The passage about Theodosius is from the Chronicle of Hugh of Fleury, ed. Rottendorff pp. 113–116. The marginal references are, (1) to the second part of the Decretum, causa, xi., quæst 3, canon lxix., where the story of Theodosius is told from Ruffinus, c. 18. (2.) To the Code of Justinian, lib. ix. tit. 47, l. Si vindicari; which directs a delay of thirty days in case of severe punishments, and was issued by Theodosius in A.D. 382.

[2] *Fuit . . . . tumulatum*] om. B. It is from Hugh of Fleury, p. 118.

[3] See Hugh of Fleury, p. 110.

[4] *Franci, origine Trojani*] From Hugh of S. Victor, *Excerptiones priores*, lib. x. c. 1.

Origin of the Franks.

Germaniæ et Alemaniæ. Quos cum multis postmodum idem Valentinianus præliis attemptasset, nec vincere potuisset, proprio eos nomine Francos quasi ferancos, id est feroces appellavit. Ab illo tempore in tantum virtus Francorum excrevit ut totam tandem Germaniam et Galliam usque ad juga Pirenei et ultra subjugarent.

CCCXCIII. Innocentius papa. XI. milia virginum passæ sunt apud Coloniam.

Migration of Britons to Armorica.

Martinus Turonensis episcopus floret.

Guithelinus[1] Lundoniensis archiepiscopus Britones, a Pictis et Scotis et Hunis oppressos, collectis viribus de Minore Britannia, liberavit; fratrem regis Minoris Britanniæ Constantinum in regem Majoris Britanniæ consecravit, eique puellam de genere Romanorum ortam in matrimonium copulavit, de qua rex Constantinus genuit Constantem, Aurelium, Ambrosium et Uterpendragon.

CCCXCIIII. JERONIMUS LIBRUM ILLUSTRIUM VIRORUM HIC TERMINAVIT.

CCCXCV. GENNADIUS MASSILIENSIS EPISCOPUS AB HINC INCIPIT.[2]

CCCXCVI.

CCCXCVII.

Arcadius and Honorius (A.D. 395).

CCCXCVIII. Archadius et Honorius imperatores.

CCCXCIX. RUFFINUS AQUILEIENSIS PRESBITER HUCUSQUE SCRIBIT ECCLESIASTICAM HYSTORIAM.

CCCC. Romanorum[3] provincias hinc Wissigothi inde

CCCCI. Huni graviter incursant. Imperatores zelum patris sui Theodosii secuti jubent in toto orbe Romano templa ydolorum destrui.

The Burgundians.

CCCCII. HAMONIUS,[4] LIBRO I. Gens ab Italia quondam exiens supra Reni fluminis ripam resedit, et crebra habitacula quæ vulgo burgi vocantur condens, nomen ex opere assumpsit, a burgis enim Burgundiones appellari cœperunt.

---

[1] *Guithelinus . . . . Pendragon*] Abridged from Geoffrey of Monmouth, lib vi. cc. 4, 5.

[2] Gennadius Massiliensis episcopus ab hinc incipit librum de Cathalogo virorum illustrium, B.

[3] *Romanorum . . . destrui*] Sigebertus, A.D. 400, 401.

[4] *Hamonius*] Hugo Floriacensis, ed. Rottendorff, p. 123.

CCCCIII.

CCCCIIII. Innocentius[1] papa decrevit pacis osculum ad Missas dari, Sabbato jejunium celebrari, oleo ad usus infirmorum ab episcopo consecrato licere uti non solum presbiteris sed etiam omnibus Christianis in suam suorumque necessitatem ungendo. Pope Innocent I. (A.D. 402.)

BEDA, LIBRO I°. CAP. XVII°. In Britannia[2] Pelagius execrabili doctrina ecclesiam Christi commaculat; ad quem reprimendum transit in Britanniam Germanus Autisiodorensis episcopus; compressa itaque perversitate dampnabili, beatus Germanus omnium apostolorum diversorumque martyrum secum reliquias habens, petiit sanctum Albanum prothomartyrem, et facta oratione jussit revelli sepulcrum; pretiosa ibidem munera conditurus. Quibus depositis, de loco ipso ubi beati martyris effusus erat sanguis massam pulveris secum portaturus abstulit. Germanus confounds the Pelagians; he opens the grave of S. Alban.

CCCCV. JOHANNES CRISOSTOMUS SCRIPSIT HOC TEMPORE.[3]

CCCCVI.

CCCCVII.

CCCCVIII. Augustinus apud Ypponem, Jeronimus apud Bethleem Judææ, per epistolas inter se usque Disputes between Jerome and Augustine.

CCCCIX. ad simultatem disceptant. Johannes Crisostomus ab Archadio exilio relegatur, ibique moritur, pro cujus præjudicio Innocentius papa et occidentales episcopi ab Orientalium se communione suspendunt.[4] Quarrel between the East and West.

CCCCX. Antidius[5] Besuntionensis episcopus, iii. feria

CCCCXI. post Palmas vidit agmen dæmonum gesta sua principi suo referentium, et inter eos Æthiopem in manu sandalium præferentem, ad indicium quod Romanum præsulem, cujus hoc erat, per vii. annos impugnatum, tandem ad lapsum traxerit. Qui vocans ad se Æthiopem, et in virtute Dei et Sanctæ Crucis super eum ascendens, eo vectante Romam Vision of Antidius of Besançon.

---

[1] *Innocentius*] Sigeb. Gemblac., A.D. 404: from the Gesta Pontificum.

[2] *In Britannia*] Abridged from Bede, H. E. i. 17, 18; and Sigebert, A.D. 404.

[3] YSID, VI., B. in margin; cut off in A.; A.D 406, B.

[4] *Augustinus . . . . suspendunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 408, 409.

[5] *Antidius . . . . officii*] Taken directly from Sigebert, A.D. 411.

Wonderful adventure of Antidius.

venit, feria quinta, hora celebrandi officii, et, dæmone pro foribus expectante, papæ rem retulit; negantem per sandalium ad pœnitentiam movit, et Missa vice ejus celebrata, et parte crismatis a se consecrati assumpta, dæmone revectante ad ecclesiam suam rediit Sabbato sancto hora celebrandi officii.

Zosimus pope (A.D. 417).

CCCCXII. Zozimus papa.

Alaric takes Rome (A.D. 410).

CCCCXIII. Alaricus rex Wisigothorum Romam capit, a sanguine temperat, confugientibus ad ecclesiam indulget.[1]

CCCCXIIII. AUGUSTINUS DE CIVITATE DEI SCRIPSIT HOC TEMPORE.

Augustine's account of the ten persecutions of the church.

Proinde[2] ne illud quidem temere puto esse discendum sive credendum, quod nonnullis visum est vel videtur, non amplius ecclesiam passuram persecutiones usque ad tempus Antichristi, quam quod jam passa est, id est, decem; ut undecima eademque novissima sit ab Antichristo. Primam quippe computant a Nerone, secundam a Domiciano; a Trajano tertiam, quartam ab Antonino; a Severo quintam, sextam a Maximino; a Decio septimam, octavam a Valeriano; ab Aureliano nonam, decimam a Diocliciano et Maximiano. Plagas enim Egyptiorum, quoniam decem fuerunt antequam exire inde inciperet populus Dei, putant ad hunc intellectum esse referendas, ut novissima Antichristi persecutio similis videatur undecimæ plagæ, qua Egyptii, dum hostiliter persequerentur Hebræos, in mari rubro populo Dei per siccum transeunte perierunt.

Orosius.

CCCCXV. OROSIUS SCRIBIT SEPTEM LIBROS AUGUSTINO DE CHRONOGRAPHIA.[3]

CCCCXVI.

Decree of Zosimus.

CCCCXVII. Zozimus papa decrevit cereum Sabbato sancto Paschæ per ecclesias benedici.[4]

CCCCXVIII.

CCCCXIX.

---

[1] *Alaricus . . . . indulget*] Sigebert. Gemblac., A.D. 413.

[2] *Proinde, etc.*] om. B. Augustine, de Civ. Dei, lib. xviii. c. 52.

[3] Under A.D. 418, in B.

[4] Sigebert. Gemblac., A.D. 417: from the Gesta Pontificum.

ccccxx. Bonefacius[1] papa. Contra hunc ordinato Eulalio et pro hoc dissidente ecclesia, ambo jussu Honorii Augusti urbe egrediuntur; et sic reprobato Eulalio jussu Augusti, Bonefacius, quia prior ordinatus fuerat, sedi apostolicæ restituitur. Schism at Rome between Boniface and Eulalius (A.D. 418).

SC

ccccxxi.

ccccxxii.

ccccxxiii.

ccccxxiiii.

ccccxxv.

ccccxxvi. Celestinus papa. Hujus instituto excepti sunt de Psalmis introitus ad Missam, gradalia, offertoria, communiones.[2] Celestine I. (A.D. 422).

ccccxxvii.

ccccxxviii.

ccccxxix.

ccccxxx. Theodosius junior imperator.[3] Theodosius II.

ccccxxxi.

ccccxxxii.[4] Celestinus papa ad Scotos Paladium primum mittit episcopum. Post quem ad eosdem ab eodem Celestino missus est Sanctus Patricius filius Conches, sororis Sancti Martini Turonensis. Mission of Palladius to the Scots.

ccccxxxiii. Tertia synodus[5] Effesina prima cc^torum^. episcoporum contra Nestorium. Third General Council (A.D. 431).

CO

ccccxxxiiii. Syxtus papa,[6] qui a Basso criminatus, Romæ congregata synodo, coram lvi. episcopis synodico judicio purgatur. Sixtus III. (A.D. 432).

CO

ccccxxxv.

ccccxxxvi.

ccccxxxvii.

ccccxxxviii.

ccccxxxix.

ccccxl.

---

[1] *Bonefacius*] Sigebert. Gembl., A.D. 420: from the Gesta Pontificum.

[2] *Hujus . . . communiones*] Sigebert. Gemblac., A.D. 426: from the Gesta Pontificum.

[3] *ccccxxx. . . imperator*] om. B.

[4] *ccccxxxii.*] Beda, libro i. cap. 13. Gilda Historicus Britonum, ins. B. The passage is from Sigebert. Gemblac., A.D. 432, and borrowed by him from Marianus Scotus.

[5] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 433.

[6] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 434, 435: from the Gesta Pontificum.

A.D. 441.
Leo I., pope (A.D. 440–461).

ccccxli. Leo papa. Hic in omeliis declamandis vel declarandis multum valuit. Hic in canone Missæ addidit "sanctum sacrificium, inmaculatam hostiam." Hic, quotiens rogabatur ab aliquibus ut eis aliquorum apostolorum vel martyrum reliquias daret, consuefecit ad corpora vel memorias apostolorum vel martyrum, quorum reliquiæ petebantur, Missas celebrare in honore ipsorum, et sic brandeum altaris quo consecratum corpus Domini involverat particulatim dividebat, et pro reliquiis apostolorum vel martyrum dabat.

How he multiplied relics.

Unde si ab aliquibus dubitabatur, cultello pannos illos pungens sanguinem eliciebat; sic palam cunctis faciens quod in consecratione misteriorum Christi sanguis apostolorum et martyrum qui pro Illo effusus est intret per divinam virtutem in pannos illos.[1]

ccccxlii.

The body of S. John Chrysostom brought to Constantinople.

ccccxliii. Corpus Johannis Crisostomi, in exilio defuncti,
ccccxliiii. tandem Constantinopolim refertur, instantia Proculi episcopi et jussu Theodosii imperatoris cum lacrimis orantis ut veniam daret Archadio patri suo et Eudoxiæ matri suæ, qui eum exiliaverunt; etper hoc finita est dissensio quæ adhuc erat in ecclesia pro ejusdem Johannis dampnatione.[2]

Earthquake at Constantinople.

Constantinopoli per xiiii^or. menses terræ motu
ccccxlv. terra fluctuavit. Quidam coram omnibus orantibus, sullatus in aera a divina virtute, admonitus est a divina voce ut factis letaniis canerent omnes, "Sanctus Dominus, Sanctus "fortis, sanctus immortalis, miserere nobis." Et cessavit terræ motus.[3]

ccccxlvi. *Hystoria tripartita a Socrate, Theodorito, Zozomeno edita hic terminat.*

Meroveus, king of the Franks.

ccccxlvii. Meroveus[4] rex Francorum, a quo Franci cognominati sunt Merovingi.

---

[1] *Leo . . illos*] Sigebert. Gembl., A.D. 441: from the Gesta Pontificum.

[2] *Corpus . . . . . dampnatione*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 444: from Cassiodorus.

[3] *Constantinopoli . . . terræ motus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 444: from the Historia Miscella, lib. xiv. c. 15 (ed. Eyssenhardt, p. 326).

[4] *Meroveus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 448; A.D. 446, B.

CCCCXLVIII. Apud Ephesum[1] septem dormientes a somno surgunt. A.D. 447. The seven sleepers awake.

CCCCXLIX. QUO TEMPORE SAXONES VENERUNT IN BRITANNIAM.

CCCCL. BEDA, LIB. I., CAPITULO XIII°.[2] In Britannia pauperculæ Britonum reliquiæ mittunt epistolam cujus hoc principium est: "Echio "ter consuli Romanorum, gemitus Brito- "num;" et in processu epistolæ ita suas calamitates explicant; "repellunt barbari ad "mare, repellit mare ad barbaros; inter hæc "oriuntur duo genera funerum; aut jugu- "lamur aut mergimur." Neque hæc tamen agentes quicquam ab illo auxilii impetrare quiverunt. Initum est ergo consilium quid agendum, ubi quærendum esset præsidium ad evitandas et repellendas tam feras irruptiones Hibernorum, Pictorum, Scotorum. Placuitque omnibus cum suo rege Vortigerno ut Saxonum gentem de transmarinis partibus in auxilium vocarent.[3]

Misery of the Britons.

Their message to Ætius.

They invite the Saxons.

BEDA, LIBRO I., CAPITULO XV. Saxones itaque Britanniam tribus longis navibus advecti, inito certamine cum hostibus Britonum, victoriam reportarunt. Advenerant autem de tribus Germaniæ* populis, id est Saxonibus, Anglis et Jutis. De Jutarum origine sunt Cantuarii et Vectuarii; hoc est ea gens quæ Vectam tenet insulam. De Saxonibus venerunt Orientales, Meridiani et Occidui Saxones. De Anglis, hoc est de illa patria quæ Anglia dicitur, venerunt Orientales, Mediterranei Angli, Merchii, et tota Northaymbrorum progenies. Horum duces fuerunt Horsa et Hengest. Horsa autem occisus † a Britonibus monimentum habet in Cantia.[5]

Invasion of the Saxons.

The three German tribes who colonized Britain.

Hengist and Horsa.

* Omnis terra quæ sub septemtrione jacet Germania vocatur, quia tantum virorum germinat; et Angli et alii multi dicuntur Germani.[4]

† A Catigerno filio Vortigerni.

CCCCLI.

---

[1] *Apud Ephesum*] A.D. 446, B.; Sig. Gembl., A.D. 447.

[2] The reference is correct: and the extract full, down to *quiverunt.*

[3] *Initum . . . . vocarent*] Bede, H. E. i. 14.

[4] *Omnis . . . Germani*] Given twice in MS. B.

[5] Bede, H. E. i. 15, abridged.

A.D. 451. Marcian (A.D. 450-457). The fourth General Council (A.D. 451).

CCCCLII. Martianus imperator.

Instantia[1] Leonis papæ, jubente Martiano imperatore, congregata est quarta universalis synodus septingentorum xxx^ta^. episcoporum apud Calcedonem contra Euticen.

CO

CCCCLIII. Tempore[2] Maximi regis Britonum xi. milia virgines martyrium subierunt ab Hunis apud Coloniam Agrippinam.

Rome threatened by Attila. His excuse for his clemency.

CCCCLIIII.[3] Attila[4] Italiam aggressus omnes ejus pene civitates aut diripuit aut incendit. Ad eum papa Leo venit, et non solum salutem sed etiam ut Attila rediret obtinuit. Rex Attila, requisitus a suis cur ei tam fuisset placabilis, respondit se non eum fuisse reveritum, sed senem quendam venerabilem evaginato gladio sibi mortem minitantem, nisi ejus in omnibus expleret voluntatem.

Death of Attila (A.D. 453).

CCCCLV. Martiano[5] imperatori Dominus apparens in somPnis arcum Attilæ fractum ostendit. Attila sequenti nocte suffocatus est.

Theodoric conquers the Suevi.

CCCCLVI. Theodericus[6] rex Wisigothorum Suevos in Hispania vincit, et regno eorum destructo regnum suum eousque extendit. Avitus imperator constituitur a Romanis.

Leo emperor, A.D. 457.

Leo imperator.

CCCCLVII. Geisericus Romam capit.[7]

CCCCLVIII. Hyldericum insolenter se agentem Franci regno deturbant.[8]

---

[1] *Instantia . . . Euticen*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 452.

[2] *Tempore . . . Agrippinam*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 453.

[3] *ccccliv.*] Rex Hunorum Guanius; Rex Pictorum Melga, B. in margin.

[4] *Attila . . . voluntatem*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 454.

[5] *Martiano . . . . suffocatus est*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 455: from the Hist. Misc. xv. 10.

[6] *Theodericus . . . Romanis*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 457. MS. B. has the following addition from Geoff. of Monmouth, ix. c. 11:—

"Arturus rex Britonum, Frollone "consule Romanorum devicto Pa-"risius singulari certamine, comitia "Galliarum suis distribuit; dedit "namque Bedvero pincernæ suo "Neustriam, Kaioque dapifero An-"degaviam et Turoniam, Golfario "ensifero Pictaviam et Britanniam, "Odoni signifero Flandriam."

[7] *Geisericus . . . . capit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 457.

[8] *Hyldericum . . . . deturbant*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 461.

CCCCLIX. Cassiodorus, capitulo xvii. *Prosper Aquitani-* Prosper Aquitanicus.
CCCCLX. *cus, Leonis papæ primi notarius, hucusque*
chronica sua digessit, ab initio mundi.[1]
CCCCLXI.
CCCCLXII. Hylarus papa. Pope Hilarus (A.D. 461).
CCCCLXIII. Pictor[2] quidam, cum Salvatorem secundum similitudinem Jovis pingere voluisset, aruit manus ejus, quem culpam confessum sanavit Gennadius episcopus Constantinopoleos.[3]

Miracle at Constantinople.

Sidonius Claromontensis episcopus, ad electionem archiepiscopi Bituricensis vocatus, hæc habuit in concione verba: "Si eligimus humilem vocatur abjectus; si proferimus erectum superbire censetur. Si minus institutum, propter imperitiam creditur irridendus. Si aliquatenus doctum, propter scientiam clamatur inflatus. Si severum, tanquam crudelis horretur; si

Speech of Sidonius on the election of an archbishop.

---

[1] *Prosper . . . mundi*] See above, p. 22; Cass. de Inst. Div. Litt. c. 17.

[2] *Pictor . . . Constantinopoleos*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 463: from Hist. Misc. xvi. c. 2. The notice is omitted in B.

[3] Here MS. B. introduces the following passage, abridged from Geoffrey of Monmouth, libb. ix., x. "Rex Arturus in sollemnitate "Pentecostes curiam habuit in urbe "legionum. Dubricius "ejusdem urbis archi- "episcopus solemnia "Missarum explevit; "archiepiscopo Lundo- "niensi regem a dextera, Ebo- "racensi autem archiepiscopo a "sinistra, sustentantibus. Dilapso "subinde temporis aliquantulo spa- "tio recepit Arthurus litteras "Lucii reipublicæ procuratoris, "quibus ipsum majestatis reum "asseruit, non solum quia de Bri- "tannia tributum non solveret, "sed etiam quod alias regiones et "provincias Romanis tributarias "sibi subjugaret. Quibus lectis in "medium Cador dux Cornubiæ cum "risu prorupit in hæc verba, 'Ut "'nos otio deditos in pristinum sta- "'tum reduceret, Deus in hunc af- "'fectum Romanos induxit.' Ar- "thurus persuadet suis non modo "Romanis neganda, sed potius a "Romanis tributa Britonibus per- "solvenda, cum antecessores sui "non semel Romanos suæ ditioni "submiserunt; Brennum et Beli- "num necnon Constantinum Helenæ "filium et Maximianum eis in ex- "emplum proponens. Hohelus rex "Armoricorum et omnes quotquot "aderant regis laudavere senten- "tiam. Igitur Arthurus exercitu "congregato Lucio reipublicæ pro- "curatori venit obviam in Gallia "prope Lingonim, quem scilicet "cum ingenti Britonum casu pro- "stravit, et Alpibus transcensis, ut "Romam invaderet, audita Modredi "sui nepotis infamia redit Britan- "niam. Cadaver tamen Lucii "Leoni misit imperatori, mandans "'Hujusmodi tributa Romanis de- "'bent persolvi de Britannia.'"

Huic successit in archiepiscopatu David avunculus regis Arturi.

Sidonius on the election of the archbishop of Bourges.

"indulgentem, facilitate culpatur; si simplicem, despicitur ut brutus; si acrem, vitatur ut callidus; si diligentem, superstitiosus decernitur; si remissum, negligens judicatur. Si sollertem, cupidus; si quietum, pronunciatur ignavus; si abstemium producimus, avarus accipitur. Si eum qui prandendo pascat, edacitatis impetitur. Si eum qui pascendo jejunet, vanitatis arguitur. Libertatem pro improbitate condempnant; verecundiam pro rusticitate fastidiunt. Rigidos ob austeritatem non habent caros. Blandi apud eos communione vilescunt."[1]

Fate of the enemies of Sidonius.

Sidonium duo presbiteri accusabant, sed unus ejecturus eum emisit interna per posteriora. Alter eo mortuo, dum in locum episcopi ad cœnam sederet, pincerna narrante visionem, id est, quia eum Sidonius vocabat ad judicium ante judicem, mortuus est.[2]

CCCCLXIIII.

Anthemius (A.D. 467).

CCCCLXV. Antemius imperator.

Litanies instituted.

CCCCLXVI. Mamertus Viennensis episcopus ob feritatem luporum letanias instituit.[3]

Simplicius (A.D. 468).

CCCCLXVII. Simplicius papa.

CCCCLXVIII. Antemio et genero suo Ridhiemere patricio Romæ contendentibus de imperio, Ridhiemer Anthemium perimit.[4]

Theoderic, king of the Visigoths, slain (A.D. 465).

CCCCLXIX. Theodoricus rex Wissigothorum a fratribus suis jugulatur.[5]

CCCCLXX.

CCCCLXXI.

CCCCLXXII.

CCCCLXXIII.

---

[1] *Sidonius . . . vilescunt*] Sidon. Ep. vii. c. 9; Galland. Bibl. Patr. vol. x. p. 524.

[2] *Sidonium . . . mortuus est*] "Sidonium Claromontensem episcopum duo presbiteri accusaverunt, quorum unus ejecturus eum ut proposuerat, interna per posteriora emisit. Alter eo mortuo dum in locum episcopi ad cœnam sederet, pincerna narrante visionem, id est, quia Sidonius vocabat ad judicium ante summum Judicem, mortuus est." B. under A.D. 468. See Greg. Turon. Hist. Fr. ii. 23.

[3] *Mamertus . . . . instituit*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 468.

[4] *Antemio . . . . perimit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 468: from Hist. Misc. xvi. 5.

[5] *Theodoricus . . . . jugulatur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 469.

CCCCLXXIIII. Zenon imperator Theodoricum regem Ostrogothorum consulem ordinarium facit.[1] A.D. 474. Zeno makes Theodoric consul.

CCCCLXXV.

CCCCLXXVI.

CCCCLXXVII.

CCCCLXXVIII.

CCCCLXXIX. Agelmundus rex Longobardorum, iter faciens, vii. pueros uno partu editos in piscinam projectos invenit, quos cum revolveret unus hastam ejus firmiter tenuit, et ab eo extractus et nutritus eo virtutis processit, ut in regno ei successerit, et necem ejus in Bulgares ultus sit.[2] Agilmund, king of the Lombards, finds his successor.

CCCCLXXX.

CCCCLXXXI.

CCCCLXXXII. Felix papa. Felix III. (A.D. 483).

CCCCLXXXIII.

CCCCLXXXIIII.

CCCCLXXXV.

CCCCLXXXVI.

CCCCLXXXVII. Gelasius papa. Gelasius I. (A.D. 492).

CCCCLXXXVIII.

CCCCLXXXIX.

CCCCXC. Clodoveus Galliarum quicquid sub jure erat Romanorum ad jus Francorum transfert.[3] Clovis founds the Frank domination.

IDACIUS LENICÆ HISPANIARUM URBIS EPISCOPUS CHRONICA SUA A PRIMO THEODOSII CONSULATU INCHOATA HUCUSQUE PERDUXIT.[4]

GENNADIUS EPISCOPUS LIBRUM SUUM DE VIRIS ILLUSTRIBUS HUCUSQUE PERDUXIT.[5]

CCCCXCI. Anastasius papa. Anastasius I. pope (A.D. 497).

CCCCXCII. Anastasius imperator.

CCCCXCIII. Simachus[6] papa. Contra quem per contentionem ordinatur Laurentius. Symmachus pope (A.D. 498).

CCCCXCIIII. *De regibus West Saxonum quando regnaverunt.*[7]

CCCCXCV. Cerdicus rex West Saxonum.

CCCCXCVI.

CCCCXCVII.

---

[1] *Zenon . . . . . . facit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 474; from Hist. Misc.

[2] *Agelmundus . . . . . ultus sit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 479.

[3] *Clodoveus . . . . . transfert*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 489.

[4] *Idacius . . . perduxit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 490.

[5] *Gennadius . . . . . . perduxit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 490.

[6] *Simachus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 493.

[7] *regnaverunt*] regnare cœperunt, B.

CCCCXCVIII.

Clovis is baptized (A.D. 496).

CCCCXCIX. Clodoveus rex Alemannis bello congreditur; ibique laborante exercitu, voto suscipiendi Christianismi se obligare cogitur, sicque perempto Alemannorum rege, baptizatus est a Remigio Remorum episcopo.[1]

C Ō Simachus papa in concilio cxv. episcoporum se purgat.[2]

D.

DI.

DII.

DIII.

Miracle at Constantinople.

DIIII. Constantinopoli dum Deuterus Arrianus episcopus quendam baptizaret, et male distinguens Trinitatem diceret "Baptizo te in "nomine Patris, per Filium, in Spiritu "Sancto," aqua disparuit.[3]

DV.

DVI.

DVII.

Hormisda pope (A.D. 514).

DVIII. Ormisda papa.

Clovis conquers the Visigoths.

DIX. Clodoveus Alarico regi Wissigothorum congreditur, eoque perempto Tholosam sedem regni Gothorum invadit, et usque ad Pireneos montes regnum Francorum dilatavit. Ad quem Anastasius imperator coronam auream cum gemmis et tunicam bracteam misit.[4]

DX.

DXI.

Kynric, king of Wessex.

DXII. Kynricus rex West Saxonum.[5]

DXIII.

DXIIII.

DXV. Lotharius rex Francorum.

Rex Burgundiæ Sigismundus filium suum Sigericum perimit.[6]

DXVI.

DXVII.

Justin emperor, A.D. 518.

DXVIII. Justinus imperator.

---

[1] *Clodoveus . . . episcopo*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 499.

[2] *Simachus . . . purgat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 497.

[3] *Constantinopoli . . . disparuit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 504: from the Hist. Misc. xvii. 9.

[4] *Clodoveus . . . . . misit*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 509, 510. There is a picture of the crown and tunic in the margin.

[5] A.D. 534, Chr. S.

[6] *Lotharius . . . perimit*] Sigeb Gembl., A.D. 514, 515.

DXIX. Johannes papa. John I. pope (A.D. 518).
DXX.
DXXI. Boetius Papiæ relegatus librum de Consolatione Philosophiæ scribit, et a Theodorico rege una cum Simaco socero suo perimitur.[1] Fate of Boetius.
DXXII.
DXXIII. Felix papa. Felix IV., A.D. 526.
DXXIIII. Arturus rex Britonum Britanniam exiens sibi
DXXV. Franciam subjugavit; comitia suis distribuit.[2]
DXXVI.
DXXVII. Bonefacius papa. Boniface II. (A.D. 530).
DXXVIII. Justinianus imperator, legislator. Justinian (A.D. 527).
DXXIX.
DXXX. Johannes papa.
DXXXI.
DXXXII. Sanctæ Sophiæ magnam ecclesiam primum quidem fundavit amplam magnus Constantinus. Temporibus autem Theodosii primi fecerunt Arriani seditionem, et combusserunt tectum ipsius ecclesiæ. Quinto vero anno imperii Justiniani, inspiravit Deus mentem suam ut ædificaret tale templum quale non fuit constructum ab Adam usque in hodiernum diem. Scripsit autem Justinianus tributariis omnibus qui erant in provinciis omnibus, ut invenirent omnes columnas et marmora, et reliquam materiam quæ erat utilis ad constructionem templi. Collecta autem fuit tota materia per annos vii. et dimidium. Deinde vero Justinianus templum quod a Constantino constructum fuerat de fundamentis destruxit, et de illa materia in ædificatione templi sui nichil apposuit. Cœpit igitur de circumhabitantibus habitationes emere. Cum autem Anna vidua per internuncios regis sæpius sollicitata suas vendere nollet habitationes, rex tandem ad eam venit. Cui dixit Anna, "Pretium non accipiam de habitationibus meis, sed precor, "domine, ut sepeliatur corpus meum in "habitationibus meis;" unde contigit quod

The history of the church of S. Sophia at Constantinople.

Justinian prepares to rebuild it.

He buys up the houses about the site.

Anna begs to be buried in the new church.

---

[1] *Boetius . . . perimitur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 517, 521.

[2] *Arturus . . . . distribuit*] Galf. Mon. ix. 11. See above, p. 86, note [6].

A.D. 532.

Justinian's preparations for building the church of S. Sophia.

Ignatius, the architect, has a divine revelation of the plan.

The chambers and roof of gold glass.

Why the pavement was not of silver.

The precious materials of the Holy Table.

sola ipsa in templo sepulta est. Erant autem magistri operis centum; habebat autem unusquisque eorum operarios centum. Facti sunt omnes fabricatores x. milia. Figuram templi angelus Domini ostendit regi in visione. Erat autem magister operis Ignatius, cui die iiii[ta], hora v[ta] apparuit angelus Domini in similitudinem regis dicens, "Volo "ut facias mihi altare cum tribus porticibus, et illumina illud per tres absides, "in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus "Sancti." Et statim evanuit ab eo. Obstupefactus Ignatius accessit ad palatium et dixit regi, "Austerus tu rex, et unum "verbum verum non habes. Usque modo "michi dicebas, 'Faciamus unam cameram "'in altari,' aliquando autem duas. Quando "autem perfeci opus, astitisti michi dicens, "'Illuminare altare cum tribus cameris "'in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus "'Sancti.'" Tunc cognovit rex quia angelus Domini erat qui locutus fuit cum eo; et dixit, "O Ignati, sicut dixit tibi, sic et fac." Omnes autem cameras, et tecta superiorum sursum et deorsum, et quæ sunt in circuitu atrii, deauravit omnia aureo vitro candidato. Volebat autem rex facere totum pavimentum ecclesiæ argenteum; sed consiliaverunt quidam Athenienses philosophi, ut non faceret hoc ob hanc causam, quia in novissimis diebus venient regna paupertina, et tollent hæc de pavimento. Sanctam mensam altaris voluit rex facere meliorem quam de argento et auro, et dicit omnibus scientibus machinamentum, "Volo ut faciatis mihi talem "mensam, variam et specialem." Qui dixerunt, "Mittamus in sufflorium aurum, ar-"gentum, margaritas et sambucas, lapides "preciosos, stagnum, plumbum et ramnum "et electrum, ferrum et vitrum et reliquam "materiam; de omni metallo." Effuderunt hæc omnia in sufflorium, et sufflavit ignis, et congregantur omnia in se intus, et tulerunt artifices hæc de igne et effuderunt in formam. Et facta est sancta mensa suffusa

de omni metallo, et sic statuit eam in altare. Subtus autem mensam statuit ix. columpnas aureas cum margaritis et variis lapidibus. Pavimentum autem quod est subtus ix. columnas est totum argenteum. Gradum autem fecit in circuitu altaris, et inclusit totum argento. In ipso enim gradu stat patriarcha et sacerdotes, et osculantur sanctam mensam. Posuit ergo in sancta mensa in circuitu labia aurea cum margaritis et lapidibus, et sunt subscripta sic, "Tua de "Tuis Tibi offerimus, Domine, Justinianus "et Theodora." Fecit autem januas numero ccclxv. sursum jusum in exteriora atria et in circuitu, et in claustro fecit januas æreas magnas. In capitulis autem fecit januas eburneas sculptas, deauratas, tres in dextera parte templi et tres in sinistra. In medio autem earum statuit januas tres majores valde argenteas auro textas, et misit intus in eas pro vilibus lignis ligna de archa Noæ. Per singulos autem dies, ut præcipiebat rex, mittebant in pulverem duo milia denariorum. Et quando proficiebant opus artifices, ad vesperas conturbabant pulverem et inveniebant denarios. Hoc fecit rex in gaudium populi et in alacritatem. Templum autem totum constructum est per annos ix. minus mensibus duobus. Tota enim ecclesia Sanctæ Sophiæ est constructa cum reliquiis multorum et diversorum sanctorum. Fecit autem rex expendium in lectorium et in choro tributum de uno anno quod accipiebat de terra Egypti, auri libras ccclxv. Rex autem constituit et ordinavit possessiones et villas ccclxv. de Egypto et India et terra orientali et occidentali ad ministrationem ecclesiæ. Ordinavit etiam sacerdotes et usque in ultimum gradum ecclesiæ clericos mille, et divisit eos in duas ebdomadas. Templum autem totum intus et foris et in circuitu habuit expendium auri centenaria milia ducenta, sine expendio omnium sacrorum vasorum et reliquarum rerum. Quatuor autem venas virides quas posuit in pavimento templi nominavit iiii^uor^. flumina

A.D. 532.

The columns of gold under the altar.

Inscription.

Three hundred and sixty-five gates.

Materials.

Largess.

Time spent in the building.

Cost of the lectorium and choir.

Clergy appointed.

Total expenditure.

Representation of the rivers of Paradise.

A.D. 532.

quæ exeunt de Paradiso. Et posuit rex legem ut staret unusquisque in eas secundum peccata sua. Quando autem finivit opus Dei, in xxii[a]. die Decembris venit rex de magno palatio sedens super armos iiii[or]. equorum, coronatus, tenens sceptrum in manu. Quando autem exivit de palatio, præcepit ut occiderent oves vii. milia, boves mille, cervos secentos, gallos et gallinas xx[ti]. milia; frumenti dedit xxx[ta]. modios ut facerent panes. Hæc dedit pauperibus illo die usque horam iii[am]., et tunc venit in templum. Quando ergo venit in orologium, descendit de caruca et intravit in atrium templi, et quando venit ad januas argenteas templi, tenens manum patriarchæ Euticii, cum introisset rex cum pontifice intus in templo, dimisit patriarcham, et currens ascendit solus in lectorium. Levavit autem manus suas sursum dicens, "Gloria Deo "qui dignum duxit me perficere hoc opus." Et dixit iterum "Vici te, Salomon." Post autem introitum jussit rex Stratilium magistrum ut projiceret in terram auri libras tres ad populum, et in crastinum fecit dedicationem templi. Vocavit ergo rex Euticium patriarcham et dedicavit templum Sanctæ Sophiæ. Aderant autem omnes clerici celebrantes dedicationem magnæ ecclesiæ, et iterum præcepit rex et occiderunt plurima holocausta, et dabat togas et beneficia omnibus. Similiter faciebat et prandium. Sic faciebat et donabat cotidie usque Epiphaniam Domini per xv. dies.[1]

Completion of the church.

Festival.

Justinian's thanksgiving and his boast.

Dedication, from Dec. 23 to the Epiphany.

---

[1] This passage and those that follow on the same subject and on other acts of Justinian I have not been able to refer to any certain Latin author: they contain much that is common to the Anonymous writer *de Antiquitatibus Constantinopolitanis*, edited by Bandurius, Imperium Orientale, vol. i., but do not appear to be directly translated from that work; see pp. 57, sq., ed. Venet.; pp. 65, sq.: ed. Paris. They were not known apparently to Du Cange, or to any later writer whom I have been able to find, on the Antiquities of Constantinople. Extracts from the same source occur in the Chronicle of Ralph Niger, a contemporary of our author (ed. Anstruther), pp. 189, 190, 191.

Hujus tempore scripsit Cassiodorus. CASSIODORUS SCRIPSIT HOC TEMPORE. Cassiodorus.

DXXXIII. HAMONIUS, LIBRO III°. Agapitus papa. Hic Constantinopolis sinodum celebravit. Antimum ejusdem sedis patriarcham faventem hæreticis degradavit; et post ibi decessit; loco cujus Silverius papa Romæ creatus est, ad quem Justinianus misit epistolam inquiens, "Antimum episcopum revoca in "locum suum." Quod cum nollet, exilio deportatus est. Vigilius apocrisarius Constantinopolis papa creatus est, qui, cum mandato Augustæ Antimum nollet restituere, vi perductus est Constantinopolim, ubi multis affectus injuriis dixit; "Non me fecerunt "ad se venire Justinianus et Theodora, "sed Dioclitianus et Eleutheria."[1] Agapetus, pope (A.D. 535). Quarrels of Justinian with the popes.

Vegetius Renatus de re militari librum scribit, in quo sic inter cætera dicit; "Sit igitur "adolescens Martio operi deputandus, vigi-"lantibus oculis, erecta cervice, lato pectore, "humeris musculosis, valentibus digitis, lon-"gioribus brachiis, ventre modicus, exilior "cruribus, suris et cruribus non superflua "carne distentis sed nervorum duritia col-"lectis. Cum hæc in tyrone signa depre-"henderis, proceritatem non magnopere "desideres. Satius enim est milites esse "fortes quam grandes."[2] Vegetius on the qualifications of a warrior.

DXXXIIII. Silverius papa.[3] Silverius (A.D. 536),

DXXXV. Vigilius papa. Vigilius (A.D. 537).

DXXXVI.

DXXXVII. Theophilus cyrographum suum recipit a principe dæmoniorum.[4]

DXXXVIII.

DXXXIX. Cheulingus rex West Saxonum. Ceawlin, K. of Wessex.

---

[1] *Agapitus . . . . . Eleutheria*] Slightly abridged from Hugh of Fleury, ed. Rottendorff, p. 139. Cf. Ralph Niger, p. 190.

[2] *Sit . . . grandes*] Vegetius de re Militari, lib. i. cap. vii.

[3] DXXXIII. Agapitus papa; DXXXV. Silverius papa; DXXXVI. Vigilius papa, B.

[4] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 537.

Justinian's theological works.

DXL. YSIDORUS XVIII. *Justinianus imperator quosdam*
DXLI. *libros de Incarnatione Domini edidit, quos*
DXLII. *etiam per diversas provincias misit.*[1]

In ultima Britannia quam Arturus Britonum rex optinuit, est præcipua ferri materia, sed aqua ferro violentior.[2]

Victories and death of Arthur.

DXLII. Arthurus Lucium reipublicæ procuratorem oc-
DXLIII. cidit; in Britanniam rediens Modredum
DXLIIII. nepotem suum devicit; sauciatus in insulam
Avallonis ad vulnera curanda secessit.[3]

DXLV.

DXLVI.

DXLVII. Nullum apud Britones telum probatur quod
DXLVIII. non fluvio Calibi tingatur; unde gladius
Arturi Caliburch dicitur.

DXLIX.

DL. PAULUS DIACONUS ROMANAM HYSTORIAM HIC TERMINAT.

Fifth General Council (A.D. 553).

DLI. C Ō Quinta synodus universalis Constantinopolim celebratur, in qua condempnatur Theodorus.[4]

HUCUSQUE JORDANIS EPISCOPUS HYSTORIAM CONTEXUIT.

Pelagius pope (A.D. 555).

DLII. Pelagius papa. Hic insimulatus de morte Vigilii papæ tenens sancta evangelia et crucem jurejurando publice satisfecit.[5]

Miracle.

Puer quidam Judæorum filius, cum a coævis suis Christianorum filiis ad hoc deductus fuisset ut in ecclesia sanctæ Matris Jesu Christi, corpus et sanguinem perciperet, propter hoc a patre suo projectus in fornacem ardentem, illæsus inde a Christianis extractus est, asserens quod mulier quæ in

---

[1] Isidorus, de Viris Illustribus, c. xxxi. (ed. Arevalo, vii. 156).

[2] *violentior*] MS. B. has this under A.D. 516; and continues thus,—"quippe temperamento ejus ferrum "acrius redditur, nec ullum apud "eos telum probatur quod non flu-"vio Calibi tinguatur; unde et fini-"timi gladium ejusdem Arthuri "Caliburch dicunt." See below, under A.D. 547.

[3] *Arthurus . . secessit*] G. Monm. xi. 1, 2. "Sollempnitas purifica-"tionis instituta est a Justiniano "propter mortalitatem quæ fuit "Constantinopoli," B.

[4] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 551. *Hucusque Jordanis Ravennensis episcopus historiam contexuit de origine Gothorum*, B.

[5] *Pelagius . . . satisfecit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 552.

illa ecclesia puerum tenens depicta erat, A.D. 552.
pallio suo flammas ignis a se eventilasset.[1] Miracle.

DLIII.[2] Justinianus Augustus rempublicam regens, Famine and plague in the days of Justinian.
DLIIII. Sanctam Sophiam ædificavit. Hujus tempo-
DLV. ribus tellus exarescens victum negavit, et
DLVI. spem omnium regionum seges pauca, messis
DLVII. nulla, confudit. Per hæc fame grassante
DLVIII. lues publica vulgus depascebatur. Cadebant
DLIX. sine modo, sine numero, quos accelerabat cotidie recens ad dampna recentia funus. Peste pestis adolevit, dum insepultorum cadaverum tabes, sævos exhalans odores, aerem inficeret. Corruptior igitur cœli tractus ægrescentibus elementis civitatem attaminans, parum fuit quin evacuaret. Præveniebat celeritas mortis moriendi sensum, ut incolumis homo potissimum miraretur se repente translatum ad aliud sæculum. Serum ad hæc mala remedium excogitatum est, ut cum ymagine sanctæ Dei Genitricis processio fieret in civitate. Factum est. Et quocumque circuibat ymago fugiebat omnis invalitudo. Quid plura? Tertia die lustrationis affuit plena clementia, tabifluas discutiens nebulas, solidans corpora, nec multo post, annum reducens lætum et frugiferum. Tunc imperator et patriarcha, sanctam Dei Genitricem splendida remuneraturi vicissitudine, festivitatem Purificationis ejus, quæ nusquam ante fiebat, agi singulis annis constituerunt. Quæ quidem in totum orbem a Constantinopolitana civitate profecta manet adhuc semperque manebit præclara sollemnitas, et æternitate sua vincet sæcula.[3]

Processions with an image of the Blessed Virgin

The plague ceases.

Festival of the Purification instituted.

---

[1] *Puer . . . eventilasset*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 553; from Greg. Turon., De gloria Martyrum, i. 10.

[2] DLIII. *Justinianus . . . sæcula*] om. B., which has under this year, "Gregorius filius Gordiani senatoris Romæ adolescit: qui sex monasteriis in Sicilia fundatis et septimo Romæ in domo sua, ex prætore urbano factus monachus, sapientia et scientia, doctrina et sanctitate claruit." It is from Sigebert, A.D. 557, and through him from the Life of S. Gregory the Great.

[3] *Justinianus . . . . sæcula*] The authorship of this extract is not identified: but see Hugh of Fleury (ed. Rottendorff), p. 138; and above, p. 94, note.

A.D. 560. Sacrilege and punishment of a Jew.

DLX. Judæus quidam ymaginem Jesu Salvatoris de
ecclesia furtim deponens eam telo transfixit,
et eam clam ad domum suam deferens, cum
DLXI. eam flammis vellet exurere, se sanguine
ymaginis cruentatum videns, præ stupore
eam abscondit. Quam Christiani requirentes
DLXII. eam sanguinolentam receperunt, Judæum
vero lapidaverunt.[1]

Terræmotus terribilis nimis per decem dies factus est.[2]

Story of Vigilius.

Justiniani temporibus Vigilius papa creatus est. Qui cum Augustæ Theodoræ mandato nollet Antimum episcopum restituere, vi perductus est Constantinopolim. Ubi multis affectus injuriis dixit, "Non me fecerunt ad "se venire Justinianus et Theodora, sed "Dioclitianus et Eleutheria."[3]

DLXIII. Lotharius rex Francorum Crannium filium
DLXIIII.[5] suum peremit.[4]

Chilperic king of the Franks.

Chilpericus regnat in Francia, regno cum fratribus suis Eliberto, Guntranno, Sigisberto, legitime compartito.[6]

DLXV. David, qui et Dewi, Menevensis factus est
episcopus.

Justin II., emperor (A.D. 565).

DLXVI. Justinus, ex sorore Justiniani nepos ipsius, post
Justinianum creatus est Augustus.[7] Sub
ipso imperii hujus initio, die quinto, hora diei

Fall of the dome of S. Sophia.

DLXVII. sexta cecidit magnus Trullus ecclesiæ Sanctæ
Sophiæ, qui destruxit et contrivit lectorium
et chorum cum pavimento et ornamento
DLXVIII. eorum, quorum fuit expendium auri libræ
trecentæ sexaginta quinque. Reliqua autem
DLXIX. constructio templi cum quatuor majoribus
absidibus et columpnis mansit immobilis.
DLXX. Rex autem Justinus advocavit Ignatium qui
construxit templum. Cui dixit Ignatius,
"Avunculus tuus, domine, festinavit et

---

[1] *Judæus . . . . . lapidaverunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 560.

[2] *Terræmotus . . . est*] Placed under A.D. 558 in B.; as it stands in Sigebert.

[3] *Justinianus . . . Eleutheria*] om. B. See above, A.D. 533.

[4] *Lotharius . . . peremit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 563.

[5] *DLXIIII.*] Johannes papa, B.; from Sigebert, A.D. 564.

[6] *Chilpericus . . . . compartito*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 564.

[7] *Justinus . . . Augustus*] Justinus imperator, B.

DLXXI. "abstulit perticos ligneos qui erant in Trullo, A.D. 571.
"et continuo posuerunt musium et deaura-
"verunt illud cito. Faciamus igitur Trul-
DLXXII. "lum rotundum et planum, inferiorem priore
"quinque passibus." Ædificaverunt itaque
Trullum, et dimiserunt ligna et pilones
DLXXIII. usque novem annos. Quando autem vole-
bant magistri projicere omnia ligna per-
ticorum, impleverunt templum aqua usque
DLXXIIII. quinque cubitos. Incidebant ligna et pro-
jiciebant super aquam, et natabant supra,
et non commovebant fundamenta templi.[1]

Ignatius proposes to build a lower one.

Contrivance for building it.

DLXXV.

DLXXVI.

DLXXVII. PAULUS CASSINENSIS, LIBRO II°.[2] Narses patri-
cius et eunuchus, deleta gente Gothorum, a
Romanis invidiam pertulit, qui scripserunt
DLXXVIII. Justino Augusto et ejus conjugi Sophiæ,
dicentes quia expedierat Romanis potius
Gothis servire quam Græcis. Augustus com-
DLXXIX. motus est in tantum ut statim in Ytaliam
Longinum præfectum mitteret, qui Narsetis
locum optineret. Sophia, quia Narses eunu-
DLXXX. chus erat, mandavit ei ut cum puellis in
genicio[3] lanarum faceret eum pensa divi-
dere. Ad quam Narses ait, talem se eidem
telam orditurum qualem ipsa dum adviveret
deponere non posset. Qui statim Longo-
bardorum gentem invitat ut paupertina
Pannoniæ rura desererent, et ad Ytaliam
cunctis refertam divitiis possidendam veni-
rent. Igitur Longobardi relicta Pannonia
cum uxoribus et natis omnique supellectile
properant, Ytaliam possessuri, regem ha-
bentes Alboin.

Complaints of the Romans against Narses.

Longinus supersedes him.

Narses replies to the insult of the empress, and invites the Lombards into Italy.

DLXXXI. *Victor Tunnutensis urbis episcopus, hystoriarum*
dicta recensens, scribit hucusque, et hoc scrip-
sit ab initio mundi.

Victor Tunnutensis.

DLXXXII. Cheolricus rex West Saxonum.
Paulus Cassinensis hystoriam Longobardorum
scripsit.

Paulus Cassinensis.

---

[1] *Sub ipso . . . . . templi*] Anon. de Ant. Constant., ap. Bandurium, i. 68, 69. See above, p. 94, note.

[2] Abridged from Paulus Diaconus, Hist. Langobardorum, lib. ii. c. 5.

[3] *genicio*] gynœceo.

A.D. 583. Story of Alboin (A.D. 573).

DLXXXIII. Albuinus rex Longobardorum ab armigero suo perimitur fraude uxoris suæ, cujus patrem Cunimundum Gepidarum regem ipse olim in bello peremerat, et ex testa capitis ejus sibi pateram ad bibendum fecerat, quam cum uno die ei porrigeret dicens, "Bibe "cum patre tuo" illa fœmineo furore accensa illum ab armigero ipsius in lecto perimi fecit.[1]

Benedict I. (A.D. 574). Tiberius, emperor (A.D. 578). Pelagius II., pope (A.D. 578).

DLXXXIIII. Benedictus papa.[2]

Chelwlfus rex West Saxonum.[3]

Tyberius imperator.[4]

Pelagius papa. Hic novem præfationes ad missam cantandas instituit.[5]

Gilda Britonum gesta flebili sermone descripsit.

Maurice, emperor (A.D. 582). Story of Guntram.

DLXXXV. Mauricius imperator.

Guntrannus Francorum rex in venando fessus, dum in gremio armigeri sui dormiret juxta rivum aquæ, vidit armiger de ore regis parvum animal exire; cui volenti rivum transire nec valenti, armiger gladio trans rivum posito viam ei eundi et redeundi paravit.[6]

Leovigild kills his son.

DLXXXVI. Levigildus rex Wisigothorum Erminigildum filium suum interfecit.[7]

DLXXXVII. Kinglis rex West Saxonum.

DLXXXVIII. Ormisdam regem Persarum filius ejus Cosdroe interfecit.[8]

---

[1] *Albuinus . . . . . fecit*] A.D. 574, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 574, from Paulus Diaconus.

[2] *Benedictus papa*] A.D. 575, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 575.

[3] *Chelwulfus rex West Saxonum*] A.D. 576, B.

[4] *Tyberius imperator*] A.D. 577, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 577.

[5] *Pelagius . . . . instituit*] A.D. 581, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 581.

[6] *Guntrannus . . . paravit*] B. continues, "quo iterum in os ejus "intrante rex expergefactus et stu-"pefactus dixit se per somnium per "pontem ferreum transisse, et sub "monte quodam multos thesauros "vidisse. Ubi cum perrexisset, "secundum fidem somnii thesauros "invenit, et eos usibus sanctæ ec-"clesiæ delegavit." The whole is in Sigebert, A.D. 585, from Paulus Diaconus.

[7] *Levigildus . . . . . interfecit*] A.D. 589, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 586; who has instead of *interfecit*, damnat exilio; and gives the murder under 589.

[8] *Ormisdam . . interfecit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 591. MS. B. has under the year "Lotharius rex "Francorum." The dates for the West Saxon reigns are put quite at random.

HAMONIUS, LIBRO III°. Mauricius Augustus mallebat in hoc sæculo facinorum suorum corporali supplicio vindictam persolvere, quam tormentis gehennalibus cruciari.[1] A.D. 588. Maurice's choice.

Fuit Cassiodorus dandi avidus, accipiendi fastidiosus, detestator criminis, æquitatis amator. Quidnam fuit illi custodire difficile, qui se a rebus alienis decreverat abstinere. Est enim indigi animi signum famæ diligere commodum et lucra potius odisse causarum.[2] Character of Cassiodorus.

Gregorius Turonensis archiepiscopus, in extremis agens, canonicis suis præcepit, "Nunquam libros meos aboleri faciatis, aut rescribi, quasi quædam legentes ut quædam prætermittatis, sed imminuta omnia vobiscum illibata[3] permaneant."[4] Last wishes of Gregory of Tours.

DLXXXIX. Gregorius papa. Gregory I., pope, A.D. 590.

DXC.[5] REGISTRO, LIBRO III°., CAPITULO LX°I°. Mauricius Augustus sanxit, ut quisquis publicis amministrationibus fuerit implicatus ad ecclesias- Legislation of Maurice.

DXCI. ticum officium ei venire non liceat, nec in monasterium converti, licet ejus rationes

DXCII.[6] possint per monasterium fieri, possit etiam

---

[1] *Mauricius . . . cruciari*] Hugo Floriac. Chr. p.145. See below, p.103.

[2] *Cassiodorus . . . . causarum*] Cassiod. Variar., i. ep. 4 (Opp. i. 5.)

[3] *illibata*] illibataque, B.

[4] *Gregorius . . . . permaneant*] Placed under A.D. 593 in B. It is from Greg. Turon. lib. x. c. 19.

[5] MS. B. omits all that follows as far as sponte, p. 105, l. 5., below, except the passage noted under A.D. 598, below.

[6] *DXCII.*] MS. B. has here—

HAMONIUS, LIBRO III. Septiformis letania Romæ facta est ob pestem inguinariam. In primo namque choro fuit clerus omnis, in secundo omnes abbates cum monachis suis. In tertio omnes abbatissæ cum congregationibus suis; in quarto omnes infantes; in quinto omnes laici, in sexto omnes viduæ, in septimo omnes conjugatæ. (Hugo Floriac. Chr. pp. 143, 144, and below, p. 105.)

Gregorius papa. Hic inter cætera pietatis opera animam Trajani Romanorum quondam imperatoris, quamvis pagani, a pœnis inferi liberari miserando et plorando a Deo optinuit. Hic inter multa quæ utilia ecclesiæ fecit et instituit, antiphonarium regulariter centonizavit et utiliter compilavit; *Kyrie eleison* a clero ad missas cantari præcepit; *Alleluia* ad missas extra quinquagesimam dici fecit, in canone Hostiæ tria verba superaddidit, "Diesque nostros in tua pace disponas atque ab æterna dampnatione nos eripi, et in electorum tuorum jubeas grege numerari," orationem quoque Dominicam post canonem super Hostiam censuit recitari. This is from Sigebert of Gemblours, A.D. 592. See below, p. 106.

A.D. 593. Gregory rebukes the emperor.

agi ut ab eo loco in quo suscipitur, ejus quoque debita suscipiantur. Quam constitutionem vehementer expavit papa Gregorius, in hæc verba scribens imperatori,
DXCIII. "Dicit tibi Deus, Ego te de notario comi-
"tem excubitorum, de comite Cæsarem, de "Cæsare non solum imperatorem sed etiam "patrem imperatorum feci. Sacerdotes "meos tuæ manui commisi, tuque milites "tuos a servitio meo subtrahis."[1]

Item Gregorius imperatori Mauricio;

Gregory's argument about the Universal Bishop.

DXCIIII.[2] REG., LIBRO V^{to}. CAP. XXX°. Petrus claves regni cœlestis accepit; Petro totius ecclesiæ principatus committitur, et tamen universalis episcopus non vocatur; et vir sanctissimus consacerdos meus Johannes Constantinopolitanus episcopus universalis episcopus vocari conatur. Exclamare compellor et dicere, O tempora, O mores, ecce cuncta in Europæ
DXCV.[3] partibus barbarorum juri tradita sunt, et tamen sacerdotes vanitatis sibi nomina expetunt, et novis ac prophanis vocabulis gloriantur. Nunquid ego hac in re causam propriam defendo? Nunquid specialem injuriam vendico? Causam defendo Omnipotentis Dei, causam universalis ecclesiæ. Quis est iste qui contra statuta patrum, contra canonum decreta, novum sibi nomen
DXCVI. usurpare præsumit? Utinam vel sine imminutione unus sit qui vocari appetit universus! Si igitur illud nomen in ecclesia sibi quisquam arripit, quo caput se bonorum

He remonstrates against the assumption of the patriarch John.

---

[1] *Mauricius . . . subtrahis*] See Gregory, Epistt. iii. 65; Mansi, ix. 1151 (A.D. 593).

[2] *DXCIIII.*] B. inserts here "Gormundus rex Affricanorum et "Ysembertus nepos regis Francorum armata manu Britanniam in"traverunt; succenderunt urbes, "patriam vastaverunt. Theonus "autem Lundoniensis archiepiscopus et Kadiocenus Eboracensis, "dum ecclesias sibi subditas de"structas vidissent, sedes proprias "relinquentes, transfugerunt ad "Walliam." See Galfr. Mon. xi. 8–10.

[3] *DXCV.*] Richaredus rex Wissigothorum synodo lx^{ta} ii^{orum} episcoporum apud Toletum congregata, ibique Arriana hæresi anathematizata, Wissigothorum gentem confirmat in fide Catholica. B. from Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 595, and through him from Fredegar. Cf. p. 105 below.

omnium facit, universa ergo ecclesia, quod absit, a statu suo corruit, quando is qui appellatur universalis cadit. Quid est ergo quod nos hujus vocabuli gloriam et oblatam non quærimus, et alter sibi hanc arripere non
DXCVII. oblatam præsumit! Quia vero non causa mea sed Dei est, quia non solus ego sed tota turbatur ecclesia, quia piæ leges, quia veneranda synodus, quia ipsa etiam Domini nostri Jesu Christi mandata superbi atque pompatici cujusdam sermonis inventione turbantur, piissimus imperator locum secet
DXCVIII. vulneris, atque resistentem ægrum angustet vinculis auctoritatis.[1]

A.D. 596. Gregory's address on the title of Universal Bishop.

He appeals to the emperor.

Hucusque Gregorius Turonensis archiepiscopus Hystoriam Francorum digessit.

[2] Hamonius, libro iii[io]. Quadam nocte Mauricius imperator dum in stratu suo quiesceret, vidit per somnium ante se æneam astare Salvatoris effigiem, quæ erat ante palatii
DXCIX. sui portam; ex qua emissa est vox ad eum dicens, "Date Mauricium." Et tenentes eum quidam judiciarii ministri exhibuerunt ei. Tunc ait ad eum Salvatoris ymago, "Ubi vis reddam tibi mala quæ meruisti? "Hic an in futuro sæculo?" Et ille, "O "amator hominum Domine, hic potius quam "in illo." Tunc jussit divina vox tradi eum et Constantiam uxorem et omnem ejus cognationem Focæ militi. Focas autem factus imperator Mauricium, uxorem ejus et quinque filios interfecit.

Story of the dream of Maurice.

His death (A.D. 602).

Focas imperator.[3]

Phocas, emperor (A.D. 602).

---

[1] *Petrus . . . auctoritatis*] Greg. Epistt., lib. v. ep. 20; Mansi, ix. 1206 (A.D. 594).

[2] B. has in the margin, under A.D. 608; "*Hamonius, libro iii.* "Mauricius Augustus dum esset "vir timens, malebat in hoc seculo "facinorum suorum corporali sup- "plicio vindictam persolvere quam "tormentis gehennalibus cruciari. "Quod cum jugiter in suis oratio- "nibus deprecaretur, meruit exau- "diri. Quadam itaque nocte dum " . . . . interfecit," as in the text. See Hugo Floriac. p. 145, and above, p. 101.

[3] Mauricius imperator cum uxore et filiis a Foca perimitur, et Focas imperat viii. annis, B. under A.D. 603.

A.D. 603.

Letter of pope Gregory to Phocas.

REG., LIBRO XIIII°., CAP. XX°V°.[1] Gregorius Focæ Augusto: Gloria in excelsis Deo, Qui juxta quod scriptum est immutat tempora, transfert regna, Qui dominatur excelsus in regno hominum, et cui voluerit Ipse dat illud. In omnipotentis quippe Dei dispensatione sunt alterna vitæ mortalium moderamina. Nam aliquando, cum multorum peccata ferienda sunt, unus erigitur per cujus duritiam tribulationis jugo subjectorum colla premantur. Quod in nostra diutius afflictione probavimus. Aliquando vero, cum misericors Deus mœrentia multorum corda sua consolatione confovere discernit, unum ad culmen regiminis provehit, et per ejus misericordiæ viscera cunctorum in mentibus suæ gratiam exultationis abundantia roborari citius credimus, qui benignitatem vestræ pietatis ad imperiale fastigium pervenisse gaudemus. Lætentur cœli, lætetur et exultet terra de benignis actibus vestris, universus reipublicæ vehementer afflictus hucusque populus hilarescat. Comprimantur jugo vestræ dominationis superbæ mentes hostium; animi subjectorum depressi vestra misericordia releventur. Virtus gratiæ cœlestis vos inimicis terribiles faciat: pietas subjectis benignos. Quiescat felicissimis temporibus vestris in universa republica prolata sub causarum ymagine præda pacis. Redeat cunctis in rebus propriis secura possessio, sine timore quislibet habeat quæ non sunt suis fraudibus acquisita. Reformetur jam singulis sub imperio vestro libertas sua. Nam hoc inter reges gentium et imperatores reipublicæ distat, quod reges gentium domini servorum sunt, imperatores vero reipublicæ domini liberorum.

Varieties of divine dispensations.

Good wishes for his reign.

Difference between the emperor and kings.

Letter of Gregory to Leontia.

REGISTRO, LIBRO XIII°., CAPITULO XXXII°.[2] Gregorius papa Leontiæ Augustæ. Quæ lingua loqui, quis animus cogitare sufficiat quantas Deo gratias debeamus quod tam dura longi temporis pondera cervicibus nostris amota sunt, et imperialis culminis lene jugum rediit, quod libeat portare subjectis? Reddatur ergo Creatori cunctorum ab ymnidicis angelorum choris in cœlo gloria, persolvatur ab hominibus in terris actio gratiarum, quoniam universa respublica, quæ multa mœroris pertulit vulnera, jam nunc vestræ consolationis invenit fomenta. Vos omnipotens Deus in amore Catholicæ fidei faciat defensores Suos, quos ex opere benigno fecit imperatores nostros. Infundat in vestris mentibus zelum simul et mansuetudinem, ut pio semper fervore valeatis, et quicquid in Deum exceditur non inultum relinquere, quicquid etiam in vos delinquitur parcendo

Congratulations and good wishes.

---

[1] Greg. Epistt. xlii. 31; Mansi, x. 362 (A.D. 603).

[2] Greg. Epistt. xiii. 39; Mansi, x. 368 (A.D. 603).

tolerare. Rogare debui forsitan ut ecclesiam beati Petri, quæ nunc usque gravibus insidiis laboravit, haberet vestra tranquillitas specialiter commendatam. Sed quoniam scio quod Omnipotentem diligitis, non debeo petere quod ex benignitate vestræ pietatis exhibetis et sponte. A.D. 603. Letter of Gregory to Leontia.

DC. Augustinus, a Gregorio papa transmissus in Angliam, Ædelbertum Cantiæ regem ad fidem Christi convertit.[1] Mission of Augustine to England.

AMONIUS, LIBRO III°. Ob pestem inguinariam papa Gregorius letaniam instituit septiformem. In primo namque choro fuit clerus omnis, in secundo omnes abbates cum monachis suis; in tertio omnes abbatissæ cum suis congregationibus; in quarto omnes infantes; in quinto omnes laici; in sexto omnes viduæ; in septimo omnes conjugatæ.[2] Gregory's litany.

Richaredus rex Wisigothorum Toleti synodum congregavit adversus Arrianos.[3] Council of Toledo.

Gregorius papa Ædelberto regi Anglorum:—Gloriose fili, gratiam illam quam accepisti divinitus sollicita mente custodi; Christianam fidem in populis tibi subditis festinanter extende, zelum tuæ rectitudinis in eorum conversione multiplica; cultus ydolorum insequere; fanorum ædificia destrue. Deus enim Ipse vestræ gloriæ nomen etiam posteris gloriosius reddet, cujus vos honorem quæritis reservatis in gentibus. Sic Constantinus quondam piissimus imperator Romanam rempublicam revocans a perversis cultibus ydolorum omnipotenti Deo se subdidit. Unde factum est ut antiquorum principum nomen suis ille vir laudibus vinceret, et præcessores suos in bono semper opere superaret.[4] Letter of Gregory to Ethelbert. Constantine is to be his example.

Gregorius papa Bertæ reginæ Anglorum:—Omnipotentem Deum benedicimus qui conversionem gentis Anglorum mercedi vestræ dignatus est propitius reservare. Nam sicut per Helenam recordandæ memoriæ matrem piissimi Constantini Romanorum imperatoris, ad Christianam fidem corda Romanorum accensa sunt, sic per gloriæ vestræ studium in Anglorum gente misericordiam Dei confidimus operari.[5] Letter to Bertha. She is to copy S. Helena.

DCI. Gregorius papa Augustino Anglorum episcopo:—Quis narrare sufficiat quanta lætitia in omnium corde fidelium fuerit exorta, quod gens Anglorum, operante Omnipotentis gratia, Gregory to Augustine.

---

[1] *Augustinus . . . convertit*] episcopalem quoque sedem in Dorobernia suscepit, add. B., with reference, *Beda, libro i., cap. xxvi*to., omitting all that follows down to *connumeres*, p. 106, l. 15, below.

[2] *Ob . . . . . conjugatæ*] Hugo Floriac. pp. 143, 144; above, p. 101, note.

[3] *Richaredus . . . Arrianos*] See above, p. 102, note.

[4] *Gregorius . . . superaret*] From Bede, Hist. Eccl. i. c. 32.

[5] *Gregorius . . . operari*] Greg. Ep. xi. 29; Mansi, x. 297.

A.D. 601. Gregory's congratulations to Augustine.

et tua fraternitate laborante, expulsis errorum tenebris, sanctæ fidei luce perfusa est, quod mente integerrima jam calcat ydola, quibus prius vesano timore subjacebat; quod omnipotenti Deo puro corde substernitur; quod a pravi operis lapsibus sanctæ prædicationis regulis ligatur; quod præceptis divinis animo subjacet et intellectu sublevatur; quod usque ad terram se in oratione humiliat, ne merito jaceat in terra. Cujus hoc opus est nisi Ejus Qui ait, "Pater Meus usque modo operatur, et "Ego operor?"[1] S. John, v. 17.

Gregory's great acts.

Gregorius animam imperatoris Trajani gentilis, a pœnis inferi liberavit, Antiphonarium regulariter centonizavit, Kirrieleyson et Alleluia cantari præcepit ad Missam. In canone Missæ tria verba superaddidit scilicet, "Dies nostros in Tua "pace disponas;" "Ab æterna dampnatione nos eripias;" "In electorum Tuorum grege connumeres."[2]

Augustine's consecration (A.D. 597).

DCII. BEDA, LIBRO I., CAP. XX°VII°.[3] Augustinus ivit Arelas, et ab Etherio, civitatis ejusdem archiepiscopo, genti Anglorum episcopus consecratus est. Reversusque Britanniam misit continuo Romam Laurentium presbiterum, et Petrum monachum, qui beato Gregorio gentem Anglorum fidem Christi suscepisse, ac se episcopum factum esse, referrent. Beatus vero Gregorius misit cum præfatis legatariis plures cooperatores ac verbi ministros. In quibus primi et præcipui erant Mellitus, Justus, Paulinus, Ruffinianus. Misit etiam litteras in quibus significat se ei pallium direxisse, simul et insinuat qualiter episcopos in Britannia constituere debuisset, scribens in hæc verba:—Quia nova Anglorum ecclesia ad Omnipotentis Dei gratiam, eodem Domino largiente et te laborante, perducta est, usum tibi pallii in ea ad sola Missarum sollennia agenda concedimus, ita ut per loca singula xii. episcopos ordines qui tuæ subjaceant ditioni, quatinus Lundoniensis civitatis episcopus semper in posterum a synodo propria debeat consecrari, atque honoris pallium ab hac sancta et apostolica, cui Deo auctore deservio, sede recipiat. Ad Eboracum vero civitatem te volumus episcopum mittere, quem ipse judicaveris ordinare; ita dumtaxat ut si eadem civitas cum finitimis locis verbum Dei receperit, ipse quoque xii^cim. episcopos ordinet et metropolitani honore perfruatur, quem tamen tuæ fraternitatis volumus dispositioni subjacere. Sit vero inter Lundoniæ et Eboracæ civitatis episcopos in posterum

Gregory sends new missionaries.

His orders to Augustine about the new hierarchy.

---

[1] *Gregorius . . . operor*] Greg. Epistt. xi. 28; Mansi, x. 295.

[2] *Gregorius . . . . connumeres*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 592. See above, p. 101, note.

[3] The following paragraph is an abridgment of Bede, Hist. Eccl. i. cc. 27, 28, 29.

honoris ista distinctio, ut ipse prior habeatur qui prius fuerit ordinatus. Tua vero fraternitas episcopos quos ordinaveris, qui vel per episcopum Eboracæ fuerit ordi- A.D. 603.

Gregory's instructions to Augustine.

DCIII. nati, sacerdotes etiam totius Britanniæ subjectos habeat.[1]

DCIIII.[2] Gregorius papa Theodorico regi Francorum:—

Letter of Gregory to Theoderic, king of the Franks.

REGISTRO, LIBRO XI°., CAP. XXX°IIII°. Quoniam Augustino reverentissimo fratri nostro, dum ad Anglorum gentem proficisceretur, excellentia vestra multa bona noscitur impendisse, gratias magnas exsolvimus, petentes ut et monachis quos ad eundem fratrem nostrum dirigimus, uberius vestra beneficia ministretis, ne quas in itinere cœpto vobis patrocinantibus difficultates inveniant.[3]

Gregory writes to Brunichild, on appointing the substitute for an infirm bishop.

REGISTRO, LIBRO XIII°., CAP°. IIII°. Gregorius papa Brunichildæ reginæ Francorum:—Sicut episcopo vivente quem ab amministratione officii sui non culpa sed ægritudo subduxit, alium ipsius loco sacri nullomodo permittunt canones ordinari, sic si nullo tempore redit ad sanæ mentis officium, quem capitis gravat infirmitas, quæri persona debet decorata moribus et vita, quæ curam animarum gerere, quæ causam et utilitates ejusdem ecclesiæ salubri valeat ordinatione disponere.[4]

Consecrations by Augustine.

BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAPITULO TERTIO.[5] Augustinus ordinavit Mellitum episcopum in civitate Lundonia: Justum in civitate Rofensi.

S. Paul's church founded.

BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAPITULO TERTIO. Edelbertus rex construxit ecclesiam Sancti Pauli Lundoniis.

Conference with British bishops.

BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAPITULO TERTIO. Augustinus pro se ordinavit Laurentium episcopum, et episcopos Britanniæ convocavit ad colloquium.

DCV.

---

[1] *Tua vero . . . habeat*] om. B.

[2] B. omits all the matter here given under A.D. 604, proceeding with *Augustinus*, line 27, below.

[3] *Quoniam . . . inveniant*] An abstract of Gregory's letters, Ep. xi. 29 and 60; to Theoderic and Theodebert.

[4] *Gregorius . . . . disponere*] Greg. Epistt., lib. xiii. ep. 6. Mansi, x. 345.

[5] These three paragraphs are culled from Bede, Hist. Eccl. ii. 3, except the last half sentence, which represents c. 2.

A.D. 605. Sabinianus (A.D. 604).

DCVI. Sabinianus papa.

Miracle.

DCVII. Pauper quidam cum a nautis peteret eleemosinam nec acciperet, dicente nauclero "De-"siste elemosinam petere a nobis, qui nihil "hic præter lapides habemus;" cum subjecisset pauper "Omnia ergo vertantur in "lapides," quicquid manducabile in navi erat in lapides conversum est, colore et forma rerum earundem permanente.[1]

A.D. 607. Boniface III. obtains precedence for Rome over Constantinople.

Bonefacius papa. Hic optinuit apud Focam imperatorem ut ecclesia Romana caput esset omnium ecclesiarum, quia ecclesia Constantinopolitana scribebat se esse primam omnium ecclesiarum. Hoc in concilio sexaginta duorum episcoporum decrevit sub anathemate.[2]

C Ō

DCVIII.

A.D. 609. Boniface IV. consecrates the Pantheon.

DCIX. Bonefacius papa. Hic optinuit a Foca Cæsare vetus fanum quod Panteon vocabatur consecrari ecclesiam.[3]

DCX. Bonefacius papa.

DCXI. *Ysidorus Yspalensis episcopus ab initio mundi*

DCXII. *huc cronica sua digessit.*

Heraclius emperor (A.D. 610). He opens the Caspian gates.

DCXIII. Heraclius imperator. Hic portas Caspias, quas Alexander Macedo clauserat, aperuit, et centum quinquaginta milia milites auro loricatos adducens contra Saracenos, qui erant ducenta milia, pugnare volebat, sed de exercitu Heraclii quinquaginta ii. milia in stratu gladio Dei mortua sunt.[4]

Deusdedit pope (A.D. 615).

DCXIIII. Deusdedit papa.

Flight and return of Mellitus and Justus.

BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAPITULO VI°. Mellitus Lundonia ejectus, et Justus Rofensis, Galliæ partes consilio Laurentii archiepiscopi adierunt, quos sequi volentem Laurentium Petrus apostolus flagellis affecit. Quo

DCXV. audito Ethebaldus rex, relicta ydolatria, Mellitum et Justum revocavit.[5]

---

1 *Pauper . . . permanente*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 606.

2 *Bonefacius . . . . anathemate*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 607.

3 *Bonefacius . . . . . ecclesiam*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 609. B. omits "consecrari ecclesiam."

4 *Heraclius . . . . mortua sunt*] Fredegar. Chron. c. lxvi. ; (Greg. Tur. ed. Ruinart, p. 640.

5 *Mellitus . . . . revocavit*] See Bede, H. E. ii. cc. 5, 6.

DCXVI. A.D. 616.

DCXVII. Laurentius archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Laurentius archbishop (A.D. 604).

DCXVIII.

DCXIX. Bonefacius papa.[1] Boniface V. (A.D. 619).

DCXX. Caduallo rex Britonum.[2]

DCXXI. Mellitus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Mellitus archbishop (A.D. 619).

DCXXII. Cenwallus rex West Saxonum.

Post Laurentium Mellitus fit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, qui laborabat podagra.[3]

Syrois, rex Persarum, Chosdroen patrem suum perimit.[4]

Honorius papa. Honorius I. (A.D. 625).

DCXXIII.

DCXXIIII. Justus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus. Justus archbishop (A.D. 624).

DCXXV.

DCXXVI. BEDA, LIBRO II°. CAPITULO IX°. Ordinatus est Paulinus Eboracensis archiepiscopus a Justo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Paulinus consecrated to York (A.D. 625).

Sicut Cantia subjicitur Romæ, quod ex ea fidem accepit, ita Eboracum subjicitur Cantuariæ, quæ eo prædicatores misit.[5] Sicut igitur sedes Cantuaria prima fuit in fide, prima sit in honore.[6] York subject to Canterbury.

Post Mellitum Justus Rofensis episcopus fit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cui Bonefacius papa, Justo scilicet Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, scripsit in hæc verba. "Auctoritate beati Petri præcipientes firmamus ut in Dorobernia civitate semper in posterum metropolitanus totius Britanniæ locus habeatur, omnesque provinciæ regni Anglorum præfati loci metropolitanæ ecclesiæ subjiciantur."[7] Letter of pope Boniface to Justus.

---

[1] *Bonefacius papa*] om. B.

[2] *Britonum*] West Saxonum, B.

[3] *Post . . . . . podagra*] om. B. Bede, H. E. ii. c. 7.

[4] *Syrois . . . . . perimit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 629. It appears under A.D. 623 in B.

[5] *Sicut . . . . misit*] From Lanfranc's speech on the supremacy of Canterbury, W. Malm., Gesta Pontiff. i. § 41.

[6] Bede, Hist. Eccl. ii. c. 9. MS. B. alters the order of the three following passages, and places them partly under A.D. 624.

[7] From the letter, as given by William of Malmesbury, Gesta Pontificum, lib. i. § 31.

A.D. 627. Baptism of Edwin.

DCXXVII. BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAP. XVI°. Paulino prædicante Eadwinus rex Norzanzinbrorum baptizatus est, et præfectus Lindocolniæ baptizatus est a Paulino similiter.[1]

Honorius archbishop of Canterbury, consecrated at Lincoln by Paulinus.

DCXXVIII.[2] BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAPITULO XVI°. Post Justum Honorius fit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ; quem consecravit Paulinus in civitate Lincolnia; ad quos scripsit Honorius papa in hæc verba; "Cum Dorobernensis antistes vel "Eboracensis de hac "vita transierit, is qui "superest habeat potestatem alterum ordinandi."

Si de consecrationibus archiepiscoporum Cantuariæ contrarium aliquid inveneris in autentico libro quam in hoc volumine repperiatur, adquiescam in omnibus.

Letter of pope Honorius to him.

DCXXX.
DCXXXI.
DCXXXII.
✠

Scripsit Honorius papa Honorio Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. "Tuæ jurisdictioni subjici "præcipimus omnes Angliæ ecclesias et "regiones; et ut in civitate Dorobernnia "metropolitanus locus et honor archiepiscopatus et caput omnium ecclesiarum Anglorum semper in posterum servetur."[3]

A.D. 633. Death of Edwin.

DCXXXIII. Rex Eadwinus interfectus est a Cedualla et Penda regibus.

Paulinus retruns to Kent.

Turbatis rebus Norzanhimbrorum, Paulinus in Cantiam rediit, et factus Rofensis episcopus ibi obiit.[4]

---

[1] Bede, Hist. Eccl. ii. c. 16.

[2] MS. B. reads as follows:—"Paulinus Eboracensis archiepi-"scopus consecravit Honorium "Cantuariensem archiepiscopum in "civitate Lincolnia, et præfectum "Lincolniæ baptizavit. *Honorius* "*papa*; Cum Cantuariensis archi-"episcopus vel Eboracensis de hac "vita transierit, is qui superest ha-"beat potestatem alterum ordi-"nandi. Honorius papa Honorio "Cantuariensi archiepiscopo;—"Tuæ jurisdictioni subjici præcipi-"mus omnes Angliæ ecclesias et "regiones." See Bede, H. E., ii. c. 18; W. Malmesb. Gest. Pont. i. § 32. Then follows:—"Beda, "libro iii°., cap. vi°. Honorius papa "Byrinum misit in Angliam ad "prædicandum. Per quem Byri-"num Kineglys rex Occidentalium "Saxonum cum sua gente credi-"dit." After this a blank until A.D. 640.

[3] *Scripsit* . . . . *servetur*] Will. Malmesb. Gest. Pontif. i. § 32.

[4] *Turbatis* . . . *obiit*] From Florence of Worcester, A.D. 633.

Dagobertus rex Francorum. A.D. 633.
Severinus papa. Severinus (A.D. 638).
Johannes papa.[1] John, pope (A.D. 640).
Oswaldo,[2] regi Northanimbrorum, a Scotis missus est Aidanus episcopus. Evangelizante Birino, ab Honorio papa prædicandi gratia in Angliam misso, Kinegils, rex Occidentalium Saxonum, cum sua gente credidit. Quem de fonte baptismi exeuntem rex suscepit Oswaldus. A quibus idem pontifex civitatem Dorecestræ ad faciendam inibi sedem episcopalem accepit. Sigisbertus, infans filius Dagoberti regis, a Sancto Amando baptizatur, ubi cunctis tacentibus ipse infans quadraginta dierum Amen respondit.[3] Conversion of Northumbria and Wessex. Miracle.
Hoc tempore fuit Macometus propheta magnus, cui cultum Deitatis exhibent Saraceni.[4] Rise of Mahomet.

DCXXXIIII.
DCXXXV.
DCXXXVI. Theodorus papa.[5] Theodorus (A.D. 642).
DCXXXVII.
DCXXXVIII.
DCXXXIX.
DCXL.
DCXLI. A.D. 642.
DCXLII. Erchembertus rex Cantuariorum in regno suo destruit ydola.[6]
Oswaldus rex occisus est a Penda rege Merciorum.[7] Oswald slain.
Sancta Osida, filia Fredewaldi et Wilburgæ filiæ Pendæ regis, uxor fuit Siheri, quam Hecca et Baldewinus, episcopi Orientalium Anglorum, Deo dedicaverunt.[8] S. Osyth made a nun.

---

[1] *Johannes papa*] This and the following paragraphs appear in B. under A.D. 643.

[2] *Oswaldo, &c.*] From Florence of Worcester, A.D. 635.

[3] *Sigisbertus . . . respondit*] Sigebert. Gembl., A.D. 633.

[4] *Hoc . . Saraceni*] Hoc tempore fuit Muhamut princeps Sarracenorum, cui gentes adhuc cultum deitatis exhibent, B., A.D. 648, 649. See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 630.

[5] A.D. 645, B.

[6] *Erchembertus . . . ydola*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 640.

[7] *Oswaldus . . . . . Merciorum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 642.

[8] *Sancta . . . dedicaverunt*] See the Life of S. Osyth, in Surius, Vitæ Sanctorum; Oct. 7, fo. 222. The last three notices are placed under A.D. 650 in B.

A.D. 643. Constantine III. (A.D. 641).

DCXLIII.

DCXLIIII. Constantinus imperator Constantinopolitanus.
Kenewaldus filius Kinegilsi regis ecclesiam Wintoniæ construxit, in qua sedes pontificalis est.[1]

DCXLV.

Clovis II. (A.D. 633).

DCXLVI. Clodoveus[2] rex Francorum.

DCXLVII.

Martin I. (A.D. 649).

DCXLVIII. Martinus papa.
Hic congregavit concilium in quo Sergius, Paulus et Cyrus dampnati sunt.[3]

CŌ

DCXLIX.[4]

DCL.

DCLI.

DCLII.

Deusdedit archbishop of Canterbury (A.D. 655).

DCLIII. Post Honorium Deusdedit fit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ, ab Ytamaro Rofensi episcopo consecratus; vacabat enim tunc episcopatus Lundoniensis mortuo Cedda.[5]

DCLIIII.

DCLV. Seburch regina West Saxonum.

DCLVI. Eswine rex West Saxonum.

DCLVII. Deusdedit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ.

DCLVIII.

Eugenius I. (A.D. 654).

DCLIX. Eugenius papa.

DCLX. Kenwine rex West Saxonum.

Vitalian (A.D. 657).

DCLXI. Vitalianus papa.

Rise of the mayor of the palace in France.

DCLXII. Abhinc Francorum regibus a solita fortitudine et scientia degenerantibus, regni potentia disponebatur per majores domus, regibus solo nomine regnantibus, quibus moris erat principari quidem secundum genus, et nil agere vel disponere præterquam irrationabiliter edere et bibere, domique morari, et kalendis Maii præsidere coram tota gente et salutari; obsequia et dona accipere et

---

[1] *Kenewaldus . . . . est*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 643. Placed under A.D. 655 in B.

[2] *Clodoveus*] A.D. 656, B.

[3] *Martinus . . . sunt*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 652; A.D. 656, B.

[4] *DCXLIX.*] Beda, lib. . cap. v., "Rex Oswaldus ad mensam "discum argenteum pauperibus "erogari præcepit. Aidanus episcopus manum apprehendens ait, "'Non putrescat hæc manus.'"

[5] *Post . . . Cedda*] A.D. 656, B. Cf. Flor. Wig., A.D. 653. The notice of the vacancy of London is one of the compiler's own remarks which often recurs.

repender, et sic secum usque ad alium Maium permanere.[1] A.D. 662.

DCLXIII. Francorum rex Lotharius.

DCLXIIII. Ealfridus[2] rex Northanhimbrorum Wilfridum A.D. 664. Chad consecrated bishop.
DCLXV. abbatem Ripensis monasterii ad regem Galliarum mittens, episcopum sibi rogavit ordinari. Wilfrido adhuc in transmarinis partibus demorante, consecratus est in episcopatum Eboraci, a Wine civitatis Wentanæ episcopo, Cedda vir sanctus.[3]

DCLXVI. BEDA, LIBRO II°., CAPITULO VI°. Wine,[4] civitatis Wentanæ episcopus, a rege Kenewalcho de suo præsulatu pulsus, ad regem Merciorum Wilfhere secessit, et ab eo adquisita per pecuniam sede civitatis Lundoniæ, ejus episcopus mansit usque ad terminum vitæ suæ; et ideo inter Lundonienses episcopos non connumeratur, quia Lundoniensem ecclesiam titulatam non habuit. A.D. 666. Wine made bishop of London.

Francorum rex Teodericus.[5]

DCLXVII. Cadualadrus[6] rex Britonum.

DCLXVIII. Theodorus Tharso Ciliciæ natus, sæculari et ecclesiastica philosophia præditus, Græce et Latine sufficienter instructus,[7] ordinatus est Romæ Dorobernensis archiepiscopus a papa A.D. 668. Theodore made archbishop of Canterbury.
DCLXIX. Vitaliano. Cui Vitalianus scripsit in hæc verba: "Commendamus tuæ sagacissimæ
✠ "sanctitati omnes ecclesias in insula Bri-
DCLXX. "tanniæ positas."

Constantinus imperator.

Adeodatus papa. Adeodatus, pope (A.D. 672).

Theodorus archiepiscopus Cantiam venit. Is primus in archiepiscopis Doroverniæ erat cui omnis ecclesia Anglorum manus dare consentiret. Itaque perlustrans universa ordi- Theodore's government at Canterbury.

---

[1] *Abhinc . . . permanere*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 662.

[2] *Ealfridus*] Balfridus, A. C.

[3] *Ealfridus . . . sanctus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 664.

[4] *Wine*] Beda, libro iii[to], cap. vi°., B. The passage is chiefly from Flor. Wig., A.D. 666. The last three lines are added by the compiler.

[5] *Francorum rex Teodericus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 667. B., A.D. 677.

[6] *Cadualadrus*] Cadualladrus, B.

[7] *Theodorus . . . . . instructus*] Flor. Wig. A.D. 668. The extract from Vitalian's letter is from Will. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 33.

A.D. 672. Theodore confirms Chad in his episcopal character.

navit locis oportunis episcopos, et ea quæ minus perfecta repperit his quoque juvantibus corrigebat; in quibus et Ceddam episcopum Eboracensem, a Wine Wentanæ civitatis præsule ordinatum, cum argueret non fuisse rite consecratum, respondens ipse voce humillima, "Si me," inquit, "nosti "episcopatum non rite suscepisse, libenter "ab officio discedo, quippe qui neque me "unquam hoc esse dignum arbitrabar, sed "obedientiæ causa jussus subire hoc quamvis indignus consensi." ✠ At ille audiens humilitatem responsionis ejus, dixit eum episcopatum dimittere non debere, sed ipse ordinationem ejus denuo catholica ratione consummavit.[1]

DCLXXI.

DCLXXII.

DCLXXIII. Cedwalla rex West Saxonum.

A.D. 674. Theodore holds a synod.

DCLXXIIII.[2] Theodorus in Anglia synodo habita constituit multa ecclesiæ utilia. Hic Theodorus scripsit Pœnitentialem librum, mirabili et cauta discretione distinguens modum singularum culparum.[3]

S. Etheldreda takes the veil.

Regina Northanhymbrorum Ætheldreda, diu postulans maritum suum regem Ecgfridum ut relictis sæculi curis in monasterio regi Christo servire permitteretur, ubi vix aliquando impetravit, monasterium Sanctæ Ebbæ, Sancti Oswaldi germanæ, intravit, et velamen sanctimonialis ab antistite Wilfrido suscepit.[4]

Ine king of Wessex.

DCLXXV. Ine rex West Saxonum.

DCLXXVI.

Donus, pope (A.D. 676).

DCLXXVII.[5] Donus papa.

DCLXXVIII.

Agatho, pope (A.D. 678).

DCLXXIX. Agatho papa.

Sancta Ermenburga uxor Merewaldi regis Merciorum peperit tres filias, Sanctam

---

[1] *Theodorus . . . . consummavit*] Abridged from Bede, H. E. iv. c. 2.

[2] *DCLXXIIII.*] Anglorum rex Lotharius, B. Cf. Sigebert, A.D. 673.

[3] *Theodorus . . . . . culparum*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 674.

[4] *Regina . . . . . suscepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 672, from Bede, H. E. iv. c. 19.

[5] *DCLXXVII.*] Francorum rex Theodoricus, B.

Milburgam, Sanctam Mildritham, et Sanctam Mildgydham, unumque filium Merefin, eximiæ sanctitatis puerum.[1] A.D. 679. Family of Ermenburga.

DCLXXX. Francorum rex Theodoricus.

Theodorus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus in loco qui dicitur Heortford episcoporum cogit concilium; in quo Wilfridus Northanhimbrorum archiepiscopus per proprios legatarios fuit. Affuerunt etiam alii Anglorum episcopi de termino Paschæ et aliis necessariis ecclesiæ negotiis tractaturi, ut in Anglorum reperitur hystoria.[2] Council of Hertford (A.D. 673).

✠

Offensus Wilfrido Merciorum episcopo per meritum cujusdam inobedientiæ, Theodorus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus eum de episcopatu deposuit, et in loco ejus Saxulfum episcopum ordinavit, constructorem et abbatem monasterii quod dicitur Burch in regione Gyrviorum.[3] Theodore deposes Winfrid, bishop of Mercia.

Beda, libro IIII°., capitulo VI°. Tum etiam orientalibus, quibus eo tempore præfuerunt Sebbe et Sighere in civitate Lundonia, defuncto Cedda, Erkenwaldum episcopum constituit.[4] Erkenwald, bishop of London.

Cujus viri et in episcopatu et ante episcopatum vita et conversatio fertur fuisse sanctissima. Hic fecit duo monasteria, unum sibi, alterum sorori. Suum Certeseie dicitur, quod amminiculo Frithewoldi subreguli opulentia rerum et monachis implevit. Sororis cœnobium appellatur Berkingum, ubi ipsa prima abbatissa fuit.[5] He founds monasteries at Chertsey and Barking.

Orta inter regem Ecgfridum et archiepiscopum Eboracensem Wilfridum dissensione, pulsus est idem antistes a sede sui episcopatus, et duo in locum ejus substituti sunt; Bosa monachus et Eata abbas Mailrosensis; Bosa in civitate Eboraci, Eata in Haugustaldensi sive Lindisfarnensi ecclesia.[6] Wilfrid is driven from his see. New sees in Northumbria.

---

[1] *Sancta . . puerum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 675.

[2] *Theodorus . . . hystoria*] A.D. 677, B. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 673.

[3] *Offensus . . . . . Gyrviorum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 675.

[4] *constituit*] Theodorus, add. B. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 675.

[5] *Cujus . . . . fuit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 675.

[6] *Orta . . . ecclesia*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 677.

A.D. 680. Consecrations by Theodore. Wilfrid converts the Frisians.

✠ Ordinati sunt Bosa et Eta Eboraci a Theodoro archiepiscopo Dorobernensi.

Pulsus ab episcopatu Wilfridus, Romamque iturus, ubi navem conscendit, flante Favonio Fresiam est pulsus; ubi primus opus evangelicum cœpit, et multa milia barbarorum ad fidem convertit, hyememque ibidem cum nova Dei plebe feliciter exegit.[1]

Sixth general council (A.D. 680).

DCLXXXI. CŌ Sexta sinodus universalis Constantinopoli congregatur, in qua Georgius Constantinopolitanus episcopus ab errore Monothelitarum revocatur. Macharius vero Antiochenus et cuncti duas voluntates et operationes in unam Christi personam negantes anathematizantur. In hac synodo fuerunt episcopi ducenti octoginta novem.[2]

Council at Rome (A.D. 680). Wilfrid present.

DCLXXXII. CŌ Hamonius, libro iii°. Agatho papa contra Monothelitas Romæ synodum celebravit cxxv. episcoporum, in qua Wilfridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus absolutus est.[3]

Wilfrid converts the South Saxons.

Wilfridus episcopus Frisiam reliquit, Romam adiit, ubi Benedicti papæ et plurimorum episcoporum judicio absque crimine accusatus fuisse, episcopatuque inventus est dignus fuisse, qui Britanniam rediens provinciam Suth-Saxonum Christo credere fecit.[4]

S. Etheldreda dies.

Obiit beata Etheldreda Helyensis abbatissa, cui soror ejus Sexburh successit ministerium.[5]

Five sees founded in in Mercia.

✠ Merciorum provincia in quinque parochias divisa, Bosel a Theodoro archiepiscopo Dorobernensi ad Wicciam præsul, ordinatur, habens sedem episcopatus in civitate Wigorna; Cuthwinus ad Licetfeldensem; Saxulfus ad Mediterraneam Angliam, habens episcopatus sedem in civitate Leogera; ad Lindensem provinciam Æthelwinus, sedem episcopatus habens in Lindeseia; ad Suth-

---

[1] *Ordinati . . . . exegit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 677.

[2] *Sexta . . . . . . novem*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 681.

[3] *Agatho . . . est*] om. B. See Hugo Floriac., Chr. p. 154.

[4] *Wilfridus . . . . . fecit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 679.

[5] *Obiit . . . ministerium*] om. B. See Fl. Wig., A.D. 679. Beda, "lib. iii. c. ix.: — Sebba rex factus monachus in ecclesia Sancti "Pauli Lundoniæ, ibidem sepultus "est," ins. B.

angliam Etla habens episcopatus sedem in Dorchecestre.[1] A.D. 683. Glory of S. Etheldreda.

DCLXXXIII. In Anglia claret Ætheldreda regina, quæ, duobus viris nupta, virgo permansit; cujus mortuæ corpus post undecim sepulturæ suæ annos incorruptum inventum est.[2]

BEDA, LIBRO IIII^to^., CAP. XVII°.

Theodorus archiepiscopus cœtum episcoporum doctorumque plurimorum collegit in loco qui dicitur Hæthfeld, ut cujus essent singuli fidei sciret.[3] Council of Hatfield (A.D. 680).

Clotario regi Francorum successit Theodericus, et Childericus.

Interfuerunt concilio Egfridus Northanhumbrorum et Adelredus rex Merciorum et Wlfus rex Estanglorum, Lotarius rex Cantuariorum.

Beda cum esset vii. annorum Biscopo abbati datus est educandus. Bede educated by Biscop.

Post annos tres abscessionis Wilfridi, ad ecclesiam Hagustaldensem Thumbertum, remanente Eata ad Lindisfarnensem, et Trumwine ad terram Pictorum, Theodorus archiepiscopus ordinavit. Eathedum de Lindessi reversum Ripensi præfecit ecclesiæ.[4] Two new bishops consecrated in Northumbria.

DCLXXXIIII. Leo papa.

DCLXXXV. Benedictus papa.

✠ Theodorus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus Cuthbertum Eboraci consecravit episcopum Lindisfarnensem.[5] A.D. 685. Cuthbert consecrated.

DCLXXXVI. Johannes papa.

Wilfridus iterum præsulatu expellitur et Mediterraneorum Anglorum suscipit episcopatum, et Ostorch Wictiorum consecravit episcopum, quia Theodorus archiepiscopus jam defunctus erat.[6] Wilfrid again expelled.

DCLXXXVII. Chonon papa. Conon, pope (A.D. 686).

---

[1] *Merciorum . . . Dorchecestre*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 680, and his list of bishops, M. H. B., p. 622.

[2] *In . . . inventum est*] Sigebert. Gembl., A.D. 683.

[3] *Theodorus . . . . sciret*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 680.

[4] *Beda . . . ecclesiæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 681.

[5] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 685.

[6] *Wilfridus . . erat*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 691.

A.D. 688. Sergius, pope.

DCLXXXVIII. Sergius papa.[1]

DCLXXXIX. Justinianus imperator secundus.

Cadualadrus rex Britonum, a Sergio papa confirmatus, migravit ad Dominum.

Brihtwald, archbishop of Canterbury,

DCXC. BEDA, LIBRO V°., CAP. OCTAVO. Brichtwaldus[2] abbas de Raculf, Dorobernensium electus antistes, consecratus est a Godwino metropolitano Walliarum.

receives the pall from pope Sergius.

✠ Sergius papa universis episcopis Britanniæ: "Vobis insinuamus quod dilectissimus frater Brictwaldus, Cantuariorum provinciæ præsul, juxta ritum priscæ consuetudinis, primatum totius Britanniæ sortitus, cum sacro pallii usu, ac venerabilis dalmaticæ, illic demandatus est; mandantes ut eidem archiepiscopo primatum gerenti efficaciter obediatis.[3]

DCXCI.

DCXCII.

DCXCIII

DCXCIIII.

DCXCV.

DCXCVI.

DCXCVII. Justinianus imperator sextam synodum nititur infirmare.[4]

A.D. 698. Council of Aquileia.

DCXCVIII. Leo imperator.[5]

CŌ Hyldebertus rex Francorum.

Synodus Aquileiæ facta quintam universalem synodum, a Justiniano imperatore et Vigilio papa Constantinopoli celebratam, suscipere diffidit.[6]

DCXCIX. Tyberius imperator.[7]

DCC.

DCCI.

John VI., pope.

DCCII. Johannes papa.

DCCIII.

---

[1] *papa*] secundus, ins. F.

[2] *Brichtwaldus . . . Walliarum*] Brichwaldus, B. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 693; Bede, H. E. v. c. 8; vel Galliarum, B. interl.

[3] *Sergius . . . . obediatis*] Will. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 35.

[4] *Justinianus . . . . infirmare*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 695.

[5] *Leo imperator*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 696.

[6] *Synodus . . . . diffidit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 698.

[7] *Tyberius imperator*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 698.

DCCIIII. Johannes papa. A.D. 705

DCCV. Episcopatus Dorcescestriæ divisus est in duas parochias, una data Danieli, id est Wintonia, altera Aldelmo, id est Siresburnia. John VII., pope. Wessex divided.

Mortuo rege Ælfrido Wilfridus ad propriam sedem revertitur.[1] Wilfrid returns.

DCCVI. Justinianus iterum imperator.[2]

Sisinnius papa.

Constantinus papa.

DCCVII. Choered et Offa reges Anglorum Romam veniunt, ibique in monachis attonsi Regi regum militaverunt.[3] Coenred and Offa go to Rome.

DCCVIII. Beda xxx°. ætatis suæ anno, gradu presbiteratus accepto, libros suos incepit, in quibus componendis xxix. annis laboravit.[4] Bede ordained priest.

Sanctus Egwinus Wictiorum episcopus, cum rege Merciorum Kynred et Offa rege Orientalium Saxonum Romam veniens, ut monasterium quod in territorio Wigornensi construxerat ab improborum irruptione securius redderet, epistolam privilegii a papa Constantino impetravit.[5] Egwin, bishop of Worcester goes to Rome and obtains a privilege for his monastery.

A.D. 709.

DCCIX. Wilfridus, sanctis meritis et nomine magnus,
Quindecies ternos postquam egit episcopus annos,
Transiit et gaudens cœlestia regna petivit,
Actatus multis per tempora longa periclis.[6] Death of Wilfrid.

DCCX.

DCCXI.

DCCXII. Adelardus rex West Saxonum.

DCCXIII. Romanorum Philippicus.[7]

DCCXIIII. *Hoc tempore Beda scripsit historiam Anglorum ad Ceowlfum regem Northanimbrorum.*

DCCXV. Gregorius papa secundus.[8] Hic constituit ut Quadragesimali tempore jeju- Gregory II. (A.D. 715.)

---

[1] *Episcopatus . . . . revertitur*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 705.

[2] *Justinianus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 705.

[3] *Choered . . . . militaverunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 707.

[4] *Beda . . laboravit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 707, B.

[5] *Sanctus . . . impetravit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 708.

[6] *Wilfridus . . . periclis*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 709 ; from Bede, H. E. v. 19.

[7] *Philippicus*] imperator, add. B. See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 712.

[8] *secundus*] om. B.

A.D. 715. nium Missarumque celebritas fieret, quod ante eum non erat.[1]

Anastasius II., emperor. Romanorum imperator Anastasius.

Charles Martel. Mortuo Daguberto, Franci Danielem clericum in regem levaverunt, atque Chilpericum nuncupant, contra quem Karolus Martellus pugnam iniit atque in fugam compulit.[2]

Hic finita est successio Merovingorum.

His descent. Nam post migrationem generationis, ex filia Clotarii regis Ansbertus genuit Arnoldum, Arnoldus genuit Arnulfum, Arnulfus genuit Anseisum, Anseisus genuit Pippinum, Pippinus genuit Karolum Martellum.[3]

Wimborne founded. Sancta Cuthburch monasterium virginum Deo devotarum in loco qui dicitur Winburna construxit.[4]

DCCXVI.

DCCXVII. Theodosius imperator.

Leo the Isaurian, emperor (A.D. 717). DCCXVIII. Leo imperator.

DCCXIX.

DCCXX.

DCCXXI.

DCCXXII.

DCCXXIII. *Ab initio mundi usque ad annum ab Incarnatione Domini septingentesimum tricesimum quartum Beda Chronica sua perduxit.*[5]

DCCXXIIII.

DCCXXV.

DCCXXVI.

DCCXXVII.

DCCXXVIII.

DCCXXIX.

DCCXXX. Gudredus rex West Saxonum.

A.D. 731. Gregory III. DCCXXXI. Gregorius papa iii^tius^.[6]

Tatwin, archbishop. Tatwinus fit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ, cui Gregorius papa scripsit in hæc verba: "Præ- ✠ "cipimus ut omnis homo totius Angliæ tibi

---

[1] *Hic . . . erat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 714.

[2] *Mortuo . . compulit*] Abridged from Fredegar. Chr., A.D. 715.

[3] *Nam . . . Martellum*] See Chron. Breve Francorum, ap. Bouquet, iii. 365.

[4] *Sancta . . . construxit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 718.

[5] *Ab initio . . . perduxit*] Placed under A.D. 732 in B.

[6] *Gregorius*] Placed under A.D. 726 in B.

"obediat et te sciat esse primatem totius "insulæ.[1]" A.D. 731.

DCCXXXII.[2] Lotharius rex Francorum.

DCCXXXIII. Dorobernensi archiepiscopo Thatwine defuncto, Nothelmus ecclesiæ Lundoniensis presbiter in archiepiscopatum successit.[3] Nothelm, archbishop (A.D. 734).

DCCXXXIIII. Sacerdos venerabilis Beda viii°. kalendas Junii Death of Bede (A.D. 735).
DCCXXXV. migravit ad Dominum. Qui quousque anima
DCCXXXVI. in corpore fuit, "Gloria Patri," et alia quæ-
DCCXXXVII.[4] dam spiritualia expassis manibus dicendo,
DCCXXXVIII. non cessabat Deo gratias agere. Cum autem cantando "Gloria Patri et Filio et Spiritui "Sancto," Spiritum Sanctum nominasset, spiritum e corpore exhalavit ultimum.[5]

DCCXXXIX. Nothelmus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus a Gregorio papa pallium suscepit; qui Australibus Saxonibus, Wilfrido cum pace domum reverso, Eadrithum præfecit antistitem.[6] Nothelm receives his pall.

DCCXL. Chilpericus rex Francorum.

Gregorius papa constituit in Missa "quorum "sollennitas hodie" et reliqua usque "Largitor admitte."[7] Pope Gregory's additions to the Mass.

Karolus Martel Raginfredo civitatem dedit Andegavensem;[8] Pipinum filium suum Papiam direxit ut juxta morem Luibrandi regis Longobardorum capillum succideret, quem incidens Luibrandus pater effectus est Pipini.[9] [10] Luitprand adopts Pipin.

Aquensi urbe a Saracenis desolata, corpus beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ a Gerardo comite

---

[1] *Tatwinus . . . . insulæ*] A.D. 726, 727, B. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 731; W. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 36.

[2] *DCCXXXII.*] Hystoricus Anglorum Beda Cronica sua digessit ab initio mundi usque ad annum ab Incarnatione Domini DCCXXXIIII., B.

[3] Nothelmus Lundoniensis ecclesiæ presbiter fit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, B., A.D. 731. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 734.

[4] *DCCXXXVII.*] Cuthbertus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, B.

[5] *Sacerdos . . . ultimum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 734.

[6] *Nothelmus . . . antistitem*] om. B. The first part of the sentence is from Flor Wig., A.D. 736: the latter part is an inference from Bede, H. E. v. 19.

[7] *Gregorius . . . admitte*] Mar. Scot., A.D. 732; from Anastasius, V. Greg. III.

[8] *Karolus . . . . Andegavensem*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 722.

[9] *Pipinum . . . Pipini*] Paulus Diaconus, lib. vi. c. 53.

[10] *Karolus . . . Pipini*] Karolus filius Pippini, major domus et Martellus dictus obiit, B.

A.D. 740. S. Mary Magdalene translated to Vezelai.

Burgundiæ ad cœnobium Viceliacum, a se constructum, transfertur.[1]

DCCXLI.[2]

DCCXLII.

DCCXLIII.

DCCXLIIII.

DCCXLV.

Karloman becomes a monk.

DCCXLVI. Karlomannus[3] filius Pipini regis a Zacharia papa in monachum tonsoratur.

DCCXLVII. *Paulus Cassinensis scribit hucusque.*[4]

DCCXLVIII.[5]

Cuthbert, archbishop of Canterbury (A.D. 741).

DCCXLIX. Cuthbertus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis.[6]

List of the Mayors of the Palace.

DCCL. *Collige breviter quot reges Francorum et quot majores domus fuerint ab anno* DCLXII. *usque huc et invenies in sequenti.*

Sigebertus rex West Saxonum.

[7] Anno siquidem DC°LX°II°. Ebroinus major domus primo super Lotharium regem Francorum, postmodum super Theodoricum regem fratrem Lotharii principabatur. Theodoricus vero rex propter insolentiam Ebroini a Francis repudiabatur, et frater ejus Hyldericus in regnum collocatur. Hylderici major domus erat Wlfohaldus; postea, occiso Hylderico, Theodoricus regno restituitur, et Leudesius major domus efficitur. Rursum Ebroinus Leudesium majorem domus perimit; Clodoveum quendam fingens esse filium Lotharii regis regem sibi facit. Wlfohado majore domus mortuo, Pipinus pater Karoli Martel principatur in Austria. Ebroinum majorem domus Ermenfridus perimit. Warato pro Ebroino major domus statuitur sub

---

[1] *Aquensi . . transfertur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 745.

[2] *DCCXLI.*] Zacharias papa, B.

[3] *Karlomannus*] Under A.D. 742, B. See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 746.

[4] *Paulus*] Under A.D. 742, B.

[5] *DCCXLVIII.*] Theodoricus rex cum Berthario, Pippino congressus perimitur; Pipinus autem, &c., as at A.D. 750, B.

[6] *Cuthbertus*] A.D. 737, B.

[7] The following list of the Mayors of the Palace is possibly an abridgment made by our author himself from one of the continuators of Fredegar. It contains much that in words resembles Paulus Diaconus. See, however, the Continuation of Fredegar, Bouquet, ii. 450, sq., 692, 693, 699, sq., 665; and the Chronicle of Ado, ibid. 670, sq.

rege Theodorico. Waratone quoque mortuo Bertarius fit major domus sub rege Theodorico. A.D. 750.

Zacharias papa. Zacharias, pope (A.D. 741).

Pipinus autem primo sub Theodorico rege, postmodum sub Clodoveo rege solus toti regno principatur. Grimoaldus filius Pipini in aula Hyldeberti regis major domus statuitur. Grimoaldo mortuo, Theodwaldus nepos Pipini sub Hyldeberto rege major domus efficitur. Mortuo Hyldeberto Francorum rege, Clodoveus filius ejus regnat post eum. Franci Chilpericum regem statuunt, et Raginfredum majorem domus. Lothario rege mortuo, qui successit Clodoveo, Karolus Martellus major domus Chilpericum regem sibi facit. Mortuo Chilperico, idem Karolus Theodericum sibi facit regem. Theodorico mortuo regnat Hyldericus, pro quo Pipinus filius Karoli Martelli in Francia principatur, et post novem annos Hyldericus rex in monachum tonsoratur. List of the Mayors of the Palace.

DCCLI. Pipinus rex Francorum. Pipin becomes king; anointed, A.D. 752.

DCCLII. Stephanus papa. Hic Pipinum unxit in regem.[1]

DCCLIII.

DCCLIIII. Kinewlfus rex West Saxonum.

DCCLV. CŌ Constantinus imperator sinodum congregat trecentorum triginta episcoporum, et de ymaginibus deponendis contra orthodoxos tyrannizat.[2] Constantine Copronymus abolishes images.

DCCLVI.

DCCLVII.

DCCLVIII. Yvor filius Cadwaladri, et Yvor nepos ejus, Saxones inquietaverunt.[3] Welsh wars.

DCCLIX.

DCCLX. Breowinus fit[4] archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Bregwin, archbishop (A.D. 759).

DCCLXI. Paulus papa.[5]

---

[1] *regem*] contra quem, scilicet Stephanum, Constantinus intruditur, B.

[2] *Constantinus . . . tyrannizat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 755.

[3] *Yvor . . inquietaverunt*] om. B.

[4] *Breowinus fit*] Bregwinus, B. Here B. has the passage "Offa . . . "positum est," given at A.D. 787, below.

[5] Placed under A.D. 758, B.

A.D. 762. Jaenbert, archbishop.

DCCLXII. Jambertus abbas Sancti Augustini Dorober-
DCCLXIII. nensium electus antistes, benedictionem et pallium a papa Paulo suscepit.[1]

DCCLXIIII.

Miracle of an image of our Lord at Berytus.

DCCLXV. Pipinus rex Agentium, Petragoricas et Engolismum devastat.[2] Judæi ymaginem Jesu Salvatoris nostri invenientes in domo cujusdam Judæi, ibi relictam a quodam Christiano, eam deponunt, et omnia obprobria quæ Judæi Jesu Christo intulerunt ymagini ejus inferebant. Tandem lancea latere ejus aperto exivit de eo sanguis et aqua. Quod illi supposita ampulla suscipientes, omnes infirmos in synagoga sua collectos sanabant. Quod cum vidissent Judæi, baptizati sunt omnes. Passio autem Dominicæ ymaginis celebratur singulis annis v^to idus Novembris apud Berithum.[3]

A.D. 766. Council of Gentilli.

DCCLXVI. In præsentia Pipini regis inter Græcos et Romanos celebratur synodus de Sancta Trinitate et Sanctorum ymaginibus.[4]

CO

DCCLXVII.

A.D. 768. Charles the Great.

DCCLXVIII. Pipino successit Karolus filius ejus, pro felicitatis magnitudine cognominatus Magnus.[5]

Stephen IV., pope.

CO SC Constantino papa scismatico oculis privato, Stephanus papa constituitur. Hic synodum Romæ congregat, et ordinatos a Constantino scismatico reordinat.[6]

DCCLXIX.

DCCLXX.

DCCLXXI.[7]

Adrian I., pope.

DCCLXXII. Adrianus papa. Hic ad tuendas res ecclesiæ Karolum Romam accersit.

Charles comes to Rome.

DCCLXXIII. Quo pergens Papiam obsedit; ibique relicto exercitu Romam pervenit, sanctam resur-

---

[1] *Jambertus . . . suscepit*] Placed under A.D. 759, B.

[2] *Pipinus . . . devastat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 765.

[3] *Judæi . . . . Berithum*] om. B. It is from Sigebert, A.D. 765.

[4] *In . . ymaginibus*] venerandis, ins. B. Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 766.

[5] *Pipino . . . . Magnus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 768.

[6] *Constantino . . . . reordinat*] Abridged from Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 768.

[7] DCCLXXI.] Brictricus rex West Saxonum, B. See below, A.D. 773.

Cō rectionem ibi peregit. Postea rediens Papiam cepit iterumque Romam rediit. Sinodum constituit cum Adriano papa aliisque centum quinquaginta tribus religiosis episcopis et abbatibus, in qua Adrianus papa cum universa synodo dedit ei jus eligendi pontificem et ordinandi apostolicam sedem, dignitatem quoque patriciatus. Insuper archiepiscopos et episcopos per singulas provincias ab eo investituram accipere diffinivit, et ut nisi a rege laudetur et investiatur episcopus a nemine consecretur.[1] A.D. 773. Charles obtains the right of electing the pope.

Karolus rex Desiderium regem Papiæ perpetuo exilio damnat, Veronem capit, urbem Forum Julii subjugat. Duos clericos Romam misit, ut auctenticum cantum a Romanis discerent, et Gallos docerent.[2] He conquers Desiderius;

DCCLXXIIII. Brictricus rex West Saxonum.

DCCLXXV.

DCCLXXVI. Winthichindus dux Saxonum a Karolo subjugatur.[3] and Witikind;

DCCLXXVII. Leo imperator Constantinopolis.

DCCLXXVIII. Karolus in Hyspania Cesaraugustam delet, Pampilonem subjicit.[4] destroys Saragossa, and takes Pampeluna.

DCCLXXIX.

DCCLXXX.

DCCLXXXI. Leo imperator, cum insaniret cupiditate circa preciosos lapides, adamavit magnam Sanctæ Sophiæ coronam, et accipiens portavit, et exierunt carbunculi in capite ejus, et captus a febre mortuus est. Leo. IV. His covetousness and death.

DCCLXXXII. Yrene imperatrix Constantinopolis cum filio suo Constantino.[5] Irene empress, with Constantine VI. (A.D. 780).

DCCLXXXIII.

DCCLXXXIIII.

DCCLXXXV.

DCCLXXXVI.

---

[1] *Adrianus . . . . . consecretur*] From the Anchin (Aquicinense) continuation of Sigebert of Gemblours, A.D. 773. See Pertz, scr. vi. 393.

[2] *Karolus . . . docerent*] From Sigebert, A.D. 773, 774.

[3] *Winthichindus . . . subjugatur*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 777.

[4] *Karolus . . . subjicit*] Sigeb., A.D. 778.

[5] *Leo . . . Constantino*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 781.

A.D. 787. Athelhard, archbishop (A.D. 793).

DCCLXXXVII. Adelardus Wintoniensis episcopus fit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ.

Offa founds the archbishopric of Lichfield.

Offa rex Merciorum, interfecto rege Adelberto, contraxit inimicitiam cum Cantuaritis. Jambertum quoque Dorobernensem archiepiscopum primatu spoliare regnumque Merciorum archiepiscopatu insignire affectans, epistolis ad Adrianum papam directis, egit ut pallio Aldulfum Lichesfeldensem episcopum efferret, omnesque Merciorum episcopos, scilicet Wigornensem, Legecestrensem, Cidnacestrensem, Herefordensem, ei subjugaret; et præterea duos Orientalium Anglorum episcopos, scilicet Elmanensem et Dummocensem. Stetit autem hæc perversitas toto præsulatus Jamberti tempore, sed Adelardus successor Jamberti in contrarium impetravit rescriptum a Leone papa, cujus exemplum infra positum est.[1]

It is abolished by Leo III.

Signum crucis in vestibus hominum apparuit.[2]

Sanguis de cœlo et terra profluxit.[3]

A.D. 788. Charles goes to Rome.

DCCLXXXVIII. Karolus rex Romam venit. Eregisus dux Beneventi gratiam ejus redimit.[4]

Seventh general council, at Nicea.

CŌ

Instantia Tharasii patriarchæ Constantinopolitani et Adriani papæ secundo apud Nicheam universalis synodus ccc^{torum}]^{ta}. episcoporum congregatur, et hæresis execrantium ymagines Dei in perpetuum abdicatur in præsentia Yrenes et filii ejus Constantini.[5]

Victories of Charles.

Thassilo dux Baioariæ, Hardericus dux Austrasiorum, Adelgisus filius Desiderii regis, Sclavonenses etiam contra Karolum venientes, aut perimuntur aut exiliantur.[6]

DCCLXXXIX.

Munificence of Charles.

DCCXC. Karolus rex in Egypto, in Syria, in Affrica, sed præcipue in Jerosolimis liberalitate ele-

---

[1] *Offa . . . positum est*] Placed under A.D. 760 in B. The whole is an abridgment from William of Malmesbury, Gesta Pontificum, lib. i. § 7.

[2] *Signum . . . apparuit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 786.

[3] *Sanguis . . . profluxit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 787.

[4] *Karolus . . . . redimit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 787.

[5] *Instantia . . . . Constantini*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 788.

[6] *Thassilo . . . exiliantur*] From Sigebert, A.D. 788.

mosinarum Christianis pauperibus solatiabatur.[1] A.D. 791.

DCCXCI. Constantinus matrem suam Yrenem imperio privat.[2]

In dormitorio beati Martini Turonensis, in Castello Novo, duo angeli ingressi sunt; unus extendebat indicem, alter monachum quem ille ostenderat percutiebat; unus vigilans solus evasit dicens, "Adjuro te per "nomen Omnipotentis Dei, ne me percu-"tias." Monachi illi, ut refert Sanctus Odo, nimis delitiose vivebant, et sericis induebantur vestibus; calciamenta erant vitrei coloris.[3] Miraculous appearance in the monastery of S. Martin at Tours.

DCCXCII. Pipinus Karoli regis ex concubina filius, adversus patrem insurgens, tonsoratur et monachatur.[4] A.D. 792. Rebellion and humiliation of Pipin.

DCCXCIII. Ædbrictus[5] rex West Saxonum.

---

[1] *Karolus . . . . . solatiabatur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 790: from Einhard, V. Karoli, c. 27.

[2] *Constantinus . . privat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 791.

[3] *In . . . coloris*] Chron. Breve, ap. Bouquet, v. 380; Duchesne, iii. 358.

[4] *Pipinus . . . monachatur*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 792.

[5] *Ædbrictus*] Eadbrictus, B. Under this year MS. C. (the S. Alban's MS.) has the following: "Inventio Sancti Albani a rege Offa kalendis Augusti:—Rex Offa eadem die kalendis Augusti, qua die beatus Albanus inventus fuit, Willegodum abbatem primum monachis introductis ecclesiæ beati Albani præfecit, et sub regulari vita vivere instituit. Willegodo successit Ædricus abbas secundus; Ædrico Wlsigus abbas tertius. Wlsigo Wlnothus abbas quartus. Wlnotho Ædfridus abbas quintus. Ædfrido Wlsinus abbas sextus. Wlsino Ælfricus abbas septimus. Ælfrico Ældredus abbas octavus. Ældredo Ædmarus abbas nonus. Ædmaro Æluricus abbas decimus. Hic factus est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ. Cui successit in abbatia Sancti Albani Leofricus abbas undecimus, frater ipsius Ælurici.
"Kinewlfi regis anno primo Ethelboldo regi Mercæ successit Bronred in regnum, sed brevi, Offa enim eodem anno aufugavit eum, regnavitque super Merciam xxxix. annis. Offa juvenis nobilissimus fuit filius quidem Wingferd, filii Eanwlf, filii Osmod, filii Epa, filii Wibba, filii Creada, filii Cynewald, filii Cnibba, filii Ycil, filii Eomer, filii Angelteu, filii Offa, filii Wermund, filii Witlat, filii Woden. Offa rex strenuissimus fuit, vicit namque Kentenses prælio; vicit etiam Westsexas prælio: vicit quoque Northanhimbros prælio. Offa vir religiosus fuit. Transtulit namque Sancti Albani ossa in

A.D. 794. Accomplishments of Charles the Great.

DCCXCIIII. Karolus rex non solum patria lingua sed etiam peregrinis linguis eruditus, barbara et antiquissima carmina quibus veterum regum bella actus canebantur scripsit et memoriæ mandavit. Inchoavit etiam grammaticam patrii sermonis. Mensibus anni juxta propriam id est Teutonicam linguam vocabula imposuit, ventos etiam duodecim propriis nominibus appellavit, cum antea quatuor tantum cardinales venti nominarentur.[1]

A.D. 795. He builds a church at Aachen.

DCCXCV. Karolus rex extruxit basilicam Aquisgrani, ad cujus structuram columpnas et marmora devehi fecit a Roma et Ravenna.[2]

Murder of king Ethelbert of East Anglia.

Adelbertus rex Orientalium Anglorum Offæ regis Merciorum jussione, et Cynedrithæ reginæ nefaria persuasione, vita privatus est capitis abscisione.[3]

A.D. 796. Leo III. pope.

DCCXCVI. Leo papa, qui mox clavem confessionis Sancti Petri cum vexillo Romanæ urbis Karolo regi misit.[4]

His letter to archbishop Athelhard.

Leo papa Adelardo archiepiscopo Doroberniæ: —"Tibi, Adelarde, tuisque successoribus "omnes Anglorum ecclesias, sicut a priscis "temporibus fuere, in perpetuum in ipsa tua "metropolitana sede per subjectionis cog-"nitionem irrefragabili jure concedimus "obtinendas. Si qnis vero, quod non opta-"mus, contra hanc diffinitionis nostræ vel "apostolici privilegii auctoritate venire "temptaverit, ex apostolica auctoritate sta-"tuimus ut, si archiepiscopus vel episcopus

---

"monasterium quod construxerat "multisque modis ditaverat. De-"ditque vicario beati Petri Romanæ "urbis pontifici redditum statutum "de singulis domibus regni suæ "in æternum. De quo redditu "singulis annis per universam Bri-"tanniam colligendo et sanctæ Ro-"manæ ecclesiæ pro stabilitate "regni sui et salute communi trans-"mittendo, decrevit ut quantum in "terra sancti martyris Albani pro-"venerit, ab his quibus injunctum "fuerit ab abbate ipsius monasterii "undecumque collectum nullate-"nus alias asportetur, sed altari "beati Albani fideliter oblatum ad "utilitatem ejusdem ecclesiæ secun-"dum quod abbas decreverit in-"violabiliter expendatur."

[1] *Karolus . . . . . nominarentur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 794.

[2] *Karolus . . . Ravenna*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 795.

[3] *Adelbertus . . . . . abscisione*] Fl. Wig., A.D. 793.

[4] *Leo . . . misit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 796.

"fuerit, ex ordine præsulatus sit dejectus. "Similiter presbiter vel diaconus aut alius "quilibet minister sacri ministerii si fuerit, "ab ordine sit depositus. Si autem ex "numero laicorum fuerit, tam rex quam "princeps aut quælibet magna sive parva "sit persona, sacræ communicationis par"ticipatione se noverit alienum."[1] A.D. 797.

DCCXCVII. Yrene imperatrix filium suum Constantinum oculis et imperio privat.[2] Irene sole empress.

DCCXCVIII. Sol obtenebratus est per dies xvii^{cim}.[3]

DCCXCIX. Leonem papam celebritatem Letaniæ majoris agentem Romani capiunt, linguam ei et oculos evellunt, cui voce et visu reddito divinitus, iterum ei oculos et linguam eruunt.[4] Mutilation of pope Leo.

DCCC. In mense Julio aspera et gelu concreta bis fuit pruina, sed nichil fructibus nocuit.[5]

Wluredus Dorobernensium electus antistes Romæ consecratus est a Leone papa. Wulfred, archbishop of Canterbury (A.D. 805).

DCCCI. Romani, quia Leonem papam indigne tractaverant, a rege Karolo dampnantur.[6]

Quoniam Yrene imperatrix excæcato imperatore Constantino filio suo Romanis imperabat, uno omnium consensu Karolo rege imperatorias laudes acclamant, eumque per manum Leonis papæ coronant; Cæsarem et Augustum appellant.[7] A.D. 801. Charles becomes emperor.

Immutato ordine regnorum immutatus est etiam ordo titulorum, quia abhinc sub uno comprehendendum est regnum Francorum et Romanorum, et Constantinopolitanum regnum distinguendum est a regno Romanorum.[8] Union of the Franks and Romans.

HAMONIUS, LIBRO TERTIO. Christus vincit, Christus regnat, Christus imperat. Karolo

---

[1] *Leo . . . alienum*] See Will. Malmesb., Gesta. Pontiff. i. § 37.

[2] *Yrene . . . . . privat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 798.

[3] *Sol . . . xvii^{cim}*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 798.

[4] *Leonem . . . . eruunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 799.

[5] *In . . . nocuit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 800.

[6] *Romani . . dampnantur*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 800.

[7] *Quoniam . . . appellant*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 801.

[8] *Immutato . . . . Romanorum*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 801.

A.D. 801. Charles, emperor, after Constantinople had been the seat of empire for 468 years.

Augusto a Deo coronato magno et pacifico imperatori Romano, vita et victoria.[1]

Ex quo Bisantium, Traciæ civitas, a primo Constantino in novam ampliata et in regiam urbem est exaltata, et translata in illam omni Romanæ dignitatis gloria, in sedem Romani imperii dedicata, et nova Roma est appellata, evolutis annis circiter quadringentis sexaginta octo, diviso a Constantinopoli Romano imperio, Karolus primus Francorum imperat Romanis annis xiii.[2]

Karolo imperatori rex Persarum elephantem mittit.[3]

DCCCII.

DCCCIII.

A.D. 804. Conquest of the Huns.

DCCCIIII. Avares qui et Huni quicquid pecuniæ et thesauri per sæcula multa congesserant, totum victoriæ Francorum cessit.[4]

A.D. 805. Settlement of the Avars.

DCCCV. Avares non ferentes infestationem Sclavorum, a Karolo imperatore inter Sabariam et Charantanum impetraverunt habitandi locum, ibique sine regni nomine resederunt sub ditione Francorum.[5]

Charles makes his peace at Constantinople.

Karolus imperator, indignantibus contra se imperatoribus Constantinopolitanis propter invidiam imperatorii nominis, a Romanis sibi impositi, crebris legationibus eos sibi conciliabat.[6]

A.D. 806. He makes his will.

DCCCVI. Karolus inter filios suos partitionem regni facit, et inde testamentum factum sua et Leonis papæ auctoritate confirmat.[7]

A.D. 807. S. Nicholas destroys the Saracen fleet.

DCCCVII. Chumeid amiras, missus ab Aaron rege Persarum ad exscindendam Liciam, cum venisset Mirram, nisus Sancti Nicholai conterere archam, pro ea contrivit aliam, et pro temeritate incurrens vindictam, subsequente inevitabili tempestate classem amisit totam.[8]

---

[1] *Christus . . . . victoria*] See Hugh of Fleury, p. 172.

[2] *Ex . . . xiii.*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 801.

[3] *Karolo . . . . . mittit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 801.

[4] *Avares . . . . . cessit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 804.

[5] *Avares . . Francorum*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 805.

[6] *Karolus . . conciliabat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 805.

[7] *Karolus . . . confirmat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 806.

[8] *Chumeid . . . . totam*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 807.

DCCCVIII. Temporibus Karoli imperatoris, inter Græcos et Romanos in Ytalia primo conflictus habitus est, secundo in Ytalia inter Francos et Avares; tertio inter Avares et Bajoarios; quarto inter Avares et Francos, et in omnibus locis Karolus suis provenisse victoriam lætatus est.[1]

A.D. 808. Wars in the time of Charles.

Alchuinus de Britannia oriundus, magister deliciosus regis Karoli, scientia litterarum præpollet in Gallia, cujus præcipue magisterio ipse rex omnes liberales artes didicit. Hic multa scripsit, inter quæ eminent libri de Sancta Trinitate scripti ad ipsum regem.[2]

Alcuin teaches Charles.

Karolus imperator, per manum Pauli diaconi sui decerpens optima quæque de scriptis catholicorum patrum, lectiones unicuique festivitati convenientes per circulum anni in ecclesia legendas compilari facit.[3]

Charles compiles lessons for the churches.

Hamonius, libro tertio. Hic liberos suos ita censuit instituendos, ut tam filii quam filiæ primo liberalibus studiis, quibus et ipse operam dabat, erudirentur; filias vero lanificio colo ac fuso, ne per otia torperent, impendere jussit operam.[4]

His domestic management.

DCCCIX. Pipinus rex Ytaliæ Venetiam bello sibi subigit, et non multo post Mediolani obit; et Karolus imperator Venetiam Nicheforo reddit.[5]

A.D. 809. Venice restored to Nicephorus.

DCCCX. Karolus in tres partes regni sui tres exercitus misit, unum trans Albiam qui Hylviones debellavit, unum in Pannoniam qui reliquias Hunorum et Sclavos compressit, unum contra Britones qui eorum perfidiam contudit, et ubique sibi victoria provenit.[6]

A.D. 180. Charles's three armies.

Karolus imperator rerum suarum hæredem Christum testamento facit, et quicquid in re mancipi habebat in tres partes divisit; ter-

He divides his property into three parts.

---

[1] *Temporibus . . . . lætatus est*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 788.

[2] *Alchuinus . . . regem*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 790.

[3] *Karolus . . . . . facit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 807.

[4] *Hic . . operam*] Hugo Floriac. pp. 176, 177 (ed. Rottendorff).

[5] *Pipinus . . . . reddit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 809.

[6] *Karolus . . . provenit*] om. B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 810.

A.D. 810. Charles's disposition of his goods.

tiam eorum pauperibus et famulantibus palatio delegavit, duas vero partes in partes viginti et unam subdivisit,[1] et metropolitanis episcopis, qui totidem sibi suberant, distribuit, ut metropolis ecclesia tertiam assignatæ sibi partis haberet, et duas inter suffraganeos episcopos divideret.[2]

Tertiæ[3] partis quam integram reservari voluit iiii^or facta sunt subdivisiones. Una earum addita est duabus supradictis partibus, secunda filiis et filiabus divisa est; tertia usibus pauperum; quarta usibus famulantium.[4]

Nomina[5] *archiepiscopalium civitatum quæ erant sub Karolo.*

Names of the archiepiscopal sees under Charles's rule.

Roma. Ravenna. Mediolanum. Forum Julii quæ et Aquileia. Gradus. Colonia. Maguntia. Juvavum quæ et Salzburch. Treveris. Senonis. Besontio. Lugdunus. Vienna. Rothomagus. Remis. Arelas. Daranthasia. Ebredunum. Burdegala. Turonis. Bithurice.[6]

A.D. 811. His bridge over the Rhine is burnt.

DCCCXI. Maguntiæ pons quingentorum passuum longitudinis trans Rhenum, quem Karolus imperator per x. annos ingenti labore et mirabili opere de lignis construxit, ita ut inperpetuo durare posse videretur, ita tribus horis conflagravit

---

[1] MS. B. reads as follows;—Karolus imperator quicquid in auro et argento et gemmis et ornatu regio habebat trina divisione partitus est. Unam partem integram reservari præcepit, duas vero partes in partes viginti et unam subdivisit, &c. See Einhard, V. Karoli, c. xxxiii.

[2] *Karolus . . . divideret*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 810.

[3] *Tertiæ*] vero, ins. B.

[4] *famulantium*] in palatio, ins. B., which proceeds:—capellam quoque suam, id est, ecclesiasticum ministerium, tam id quod congregavit quam quod hæreditario ad eum pervenit, integrum reservavit; vasa, libri, ornamenta quæ capellæ collata non fuerant, et quæ in camera erant vel vestiario, justo pretio vendita pauperibus erogata sunt. Taken apparently direct from Einhard, V. Karoli, c. xxxiii.

[5] *Nomina, &c.*] From Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 810; Einhard, c. xxxiii.

[6] *Bithurice*] Karolus imperator cum quatuor mensas haberet, unam auream et tres argenteas; una earum quæ fuit quadrangula ad basilicam beati Petri Romæ delata est: altera mensa rotunda ecclesiæ Ravennati collata est. Tertia ex tribus orbibus connexa, et quarta quæ fuit aurea, inter hæredes et pauperes distributæ sunt. From Einhard, V. Karoli, c. xxxiii.

ut ne una quidem hastula super aquam remaneret.[1] A.D. 812.

DCCCXII. Karolus imperator Ludovico filio suo coronam imperialem imposuit, et Bernardum filium Pippini regis regem Ytaliæ facit.[2] Lewis crowned by his father.

DCCCXIII. Karolus imperator per totas Gallias concilia super statu ecclesiarum ab episcopis celebrari edicit; unum fuit Maguntiæ, alterum Remis, tertium Turonis, quartum Cabillonis, quintum Arelathe.[3] A.D. 813. Charles orders five provincial councils.

DCCCXIIII. Karolus imperator gloriosus, regno et imperio suo pacato et dilatato, statu quoque ecclesiæ sancte et religiose ordinato, moritur et sepelitur Aquisgrani, anno ætatis suæ septuagesimo secundo; qui pro magnitudine operum agnominatus est Magnus, cujus vitam Alcuinus descripsit. Post quem Ludovicus Pius filius ejus imperavit annis viginti sex.[4] A.D. 814. He dies and is buried at Aachen. Lewis succeeds.

Ædbrictus rex West Saxonum Bernulfum regem Merciorum vicit apud Hyllendune in Midelsexia.[5] Battle of Ellandune.

DCCCXV. Romanorum Ludovicus imperator.

DCCCXVI. Stephanus papa. Iste obviavit Ludovico in magno campo Remensium, et sequente Dominica unxit eum in imperatorem, et coronam capiti Hyrmigardæ reginæ imposuit.[6] A.D. 816. Coronation of Lewis.

DCCCXVII. Paschalis papa.

DCCCXVIII. Temporibus Ludovici imperatoris floruit Theo-
DCCCXIX. dulfus Aurelianensium episcopus. Hic insi-
DCCCXX. mulatus multis criminibus apud imperatorem
DCCCXXI. Andegavis est exilio relegatus. Contigit
DCCCXXII. autem ut ibidem die Palmarum veniret im-
DCCCXXIII. perator. Et cum secus domum qua tenebatur episcopus processio pertransiret, præsente imperatore illos pulcherrimos versus qui nunc Theodulf of Orleans in exile at Angers.

---

[1] *Maguntiæ . . . remaneret*] om. B. From Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 811.

[2] *Karolus . . . . . facit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 812.

[3] *Karolus . . . Arelathe*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 813.

[4] *Karolus . . sex*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 814.

[5] This entry, which should stand under A.D. 824 (see Flor. Wig) or more probably under A.D. 825, is probably indebted for the geographical identification to Ralph de Diceto himself.

[6] *Stephanus . . . imposuit*] Marianus Scotus, A.D. 817.

A.D. 824. He is released for the sake of a hymn.

usque ea die psalluntur a se editos per fenestram decantavit, "Gloria, laus, et honor Tibi "sit Rex Christe," et cætera. Quibus imperator emollitus eum a vinculis absolutum priori gratiæ redonavit. Hoc tempore floruit.[1]

Eugenius II., pope. Marriage of Lewis and Judith.

DCCCXXIIII. Eugenius papa.

Mortua Yrmigardi regina, Ludovicus Judith filiam Welfi ducis Baioariæ duxit, ex qua genuit Karolum calvum.[2]

He gives France to Charles the Bald.

DCCCXXV. Ludovicus imperator Karolo calvo filio suo

DCCCXXVI. Franciam partemque Burgundiæ coram filiis suis dedit.[3]

DCCCXXVII.

DCCCXXVIII. *Qui prius vocati sunt reges West Saxonum ab hinc vocandi sunt reges Anglorum.*

DCCCXXIX.

DCCCXXX. Edelwolfus rex Anglorum.

Valentinus papa.

Gregory IV: Lewis is deposed and shut up in a monastery.

Gregorius papa, qui et Leo papa quartus.[4]

Tres filii Ludovici imperatoris, reginam Judith

DCCCXXXI. separantes ab eo, Pipinus in Aquitaniam, Lu-

DCCCXXXII. dovicus in Bavariam perrexit. Lotarius vero

DCCCXXXIII. patrem ad Aquisgrani palatium duxit, ubi imperator episcoporum judicio arma deposuit, et ad agendam pœnitentiam inclusus est.[5]

A.D. 835. He is restored.

DCCCXXXIIII. Ludovicus patrem suum imperatorem ab in-

DCCCXXXV. clusione ejecit, et in sedem imperialem restituit.[6]

Completion of the Leonine city.

DCCCXXXVI. Gregorius papa consummatam novæ urbis fab-

DCCCXXXVII. ricam sollenniter dedicavit, eamque urbem

DCCCXXXVIII. Leonianam appellavit, vel a Leone tertio hujus nominis papa qui hujus operis funda-

---

[1] *Hoc . . . . . floruit*] So A. and C.; om. B. The passage is found in a "Fragmentum Historiæ "Francicæ," printed in Duchesne, vol. iii., p. 334, and in Bouquet, vi. p. 231.

[2] *Mortua . . . calvum*] See Marianus Scotus, A.D. 821; Flor. Wig., A.D. 820; Einhard, Annales, A.D. 819.

[3] *Ludovicus . . . . dedit*] Mar. Scot., A.D. 830; Flor. Wig., A.D. 829.

[4] *quartus*] dictus est, add. B.

[5] *Tres . . . . . inclusus est*] See Mar. Scot., A.D. 834; Flor. Wig., A.D. 833; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 833.

[6] *Ludovicus . . . restituit*] Mar. Scot., A.D. 835; Flor. Wig., A.D. 835.

menta olim jecerat, vel a se ipso quia et ipse Leo quartus dictus est.[1] A.D. 838.

DCCCXXXIX. Feologildus Doroberniæ archiepiscopus.

DCCCXL. Ceonodus Doroberniæ archiepiscopus. Ceolnoth archbishop (A.D. 833).

DCCCXLI. Ludovicus et Karolus copiis congregatis apud Fontaniacum fratrem Lotharium bello vicerunt.[2] Battle of Fontenay.

Tres fratres regnum Francorum inter se diviserunt.

DCCCXLII. Karolus accepit occidentalia regna a Britannico Oceano usque ad Mosam fluvium, qua parte extunc et modo nomen Franciæ remansit. A.D. 842. Division of the Frank dominions.

Ludovico orientalia regna cesserunt, omnis scilicet Germania usque ad Reni fluenta, et aliquæ trans Renum civitates cum adjacentibus pagis propter vini copiam.

DCCCXLIII.[3] Lotharius, qui major natu erat et imperator appellabatur, omnia Ytaliæ regna tenuit cum ipsa Roma.[4] A.D. 843. Lothar emperor.

Adelwulfus rex Anglorum.

Karolus calvus rex Francorum.

HAMONIUS CRONICA SUA HIC TERMINAT.

De origine comitum Andegavensium.[5]

Fuit vir quidam de Armorica Gallia in pago Redonico nomine Torquatius, quem Karolus calvus illius forestæ quæ nidus merulæ nuncupatur forestarium constituit. Hic genuit Tertullum. Tertullus quidem acer ingenio fortunam suam animi amplitudine supervadens, in Franciam abiit, sub rege Karolo militaturus. Quem Karolus calvus ob merita sua karissimum habens, uxorem ei dedit Origin of the counts of Anjou. Torquatius. Tertullus.

---

[1] *Gregorius . . dictus est*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 836.

[2] *vicerunt*] superant, B. See Mar. Scot., A.D. 841, where the reading is *vincunt;* and Flor. Wig., A.D. 841, where the word is *superant.*

[3] *DCCCXLIII.*] The order of the entries under this year is somewhat different in MS. B.

[4] *Tres fratres . . . Roma*] Mar. Scot., A.D. 842; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 844.

[5] This passage, with the others that follow on the origin and history of the house of Anjou, is abridged from the Gesta Consulum Andegavensium, printed in D'Achery's Spicilegium (second edition), vol. iii. p. 234, sq. These passages are printed from the MS. S. Victor, 419, in Bouquet, xii. 534–539; and in the Chroniques d'Anjou, ed. Marchegay and Salmon, i. 319, sq., as the work of Thomas Pactius, prior of Loches; but they are clearly extracted from some MS. of R. Diceto.

A.D. 843.

filiam ducis Burgundiæ nomine Petronillam, cum beneficio in Landonensi castro et aliis terris in pago Gastinensi et aliis locis per Franciam. Qui genuit Ingelgerium.

Ingelger.

Michael imperator Constantinopolitanus.

Normanni sub Bier filio regis Danemarchiæ et magistro ejus Hastingo Franciam infestant, et usque Parisius navigio veniunt.[1]

Ethelwulf pays Rome-scot.

Edulfus rex West Saxonum tributum Sancto Petro solvit quod vocatur Romescoth. Hic in juventute, sicut legitur, fuit episcopus Wintoniæ.[2]

Leo papa iiii^{tus} hujus nominis.

Alfred sent to Rome and anointed.

Ad quem Athewlfus rex Anglorum filium suum Aluredum magno nobilium numero constipatum, honorifice Romam transmisit. Quem Leo papa rogatu sui patris ordinans unxit in regem.[3]

DCCCXLIIII. Sergius papa.

DCCCXLV.

DCCCXLVI. *Si de unctione regum Angliæ contrarium aliquid inveneris, quam hic vel insequenti repereris, in autentico libro condam.*

DCCCXLVII.

DCCCXLVIII. Theodoricus episcopus Lundoniæ.

DCCCXLIX.

Donation of king Ethelwulf.

Athewlfus rex Anglorum decimam totius regni sui partem ab omni regali servitio liberavit, Romam perrexit, filium suum Aluredum secum duxit, anno integro Romæ moratus est.

He is supplanted by Ethelbald.

Interim Athelbaldus filius suus adversus patrem conspiravit, Roma redeuntem non admisit. Adunatum itaque antea regnum inter patrem et filium dividitur; Athelwlfus igitur Judith filiam Karoli calvi regis Francorum, quam a patre suo in Francia acceperat, reginam sibi sociavit.[4]

Normanni per mare Britannicum ostia Ligeris ingressi, urbem Nannetem invadunt, episco-

---

[1] *Normanni . . . veniunt*] Partly from Sigebert, A.D. 846, and Will. Gemmet. i. c. 8.

[2] *Edulfus . . . Wintoniæ*] Partly from Henry of Huntingdon, partly from Florence of Worcester. These passages are transposed in B.

[3] *Ad quem . . regem*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 853.

[4] *Athewlfus . . . sociavit*] Placed under A.D. 850–852 in MS. B. It is an abstract of the statements of Henry of Huntingdon and Florence of Worcester.

pum sabbato sancto Paschæ baptismum cele- A.D. 849.
brantem trucidant, clerum et populum per- Ravages of
imunt, inde Andegavis deinde Turonis the Normans.
occupant, et ut tempestas omnia diruunt,
templum etiam Sancti Martini incendunt.[1]

DCCCL. Athelbaldus[2] rex Anglorum.

DCCCLI. Benedictus[3] papa, adversus quem Anastasius Benedict
præsulatum invadit. III., pope (A.D. 855).

DCCCLII.

DCCCLIII.

DCCCLIIII.

DCCCLV.

DCCCLVI. Ludovicus imperator Romanus.

DCCCLVII. Nicholaus papa. Nicholas I., pope.

DCCCLVIII.

DCCCLIX. Athelbricht rex Anglorum.

DCCCLX. Numeneus rex Britonum, regnum Francorum Death of
infestans, a Sancto Maurilio quondam Ande- Numeneus, king of
gavensi episcopo baculo percussus in capite, Brittany.
periit.[4]

DCCCLXI.

DCCCLXII. Lotharius rex Waldradam pelicem superduxit A.D. 862.
conjugi suæ Thebergæ, consentientibus sibi Adultery of king Lothar.
archiepiscopis Gunthario Coloniensi et Tiegaudo Treverensi, quos papa Nicholaus ab ordine movit, excommunicavit, uti tantum laicali communione concessit.[5]

DCCCLXIII.

DCCCLXIIII. Æthelred rex Anglorum. Ethelred king of Wessex.

DCCCLXV.

DCCCLXVI.

DCCCLXVII.

DCCCLXVIII. Adrianus papa. Adrian II., pope (A.D. 867).

DCCCLXIX.

DCCCLXX.

DCCCLXXI.

---

[1] *Normanni . . . incendunt*] A.D. 853, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 853.

[2] *Athelbaldus*] A.D. 854, B.

[3] *Benedictus*] A.D. 854, 855, B.; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 854.

[4] *Numeneus . . . . periit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 860.

[5] *Lotharius . . concessit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 862.

A.D. 872. Alfred, king of the English. | DCCCLXXII. Aluredus rex Anglorum, quem Leo papa Romæ consecraverat, mortuis tribus suis fratribus nunc primum cœpit regnare.[1]

Basil emperor (A.D. 867). | Basilius imperator Constantinopolitanus.

Impiety and death of Lothar. | Lotharius rex Romam ad Adrianum papam se excusatum vadit, a quo dum pro comprobatione innocentiæ suæ ad examinationem Corporis et Sanguinis Domini tam ipse quam optimates regni invitati fuissent, et ipse et omnes qui Corpus Domini cum eo temere præsumpserunt accipere infra ipsum annum perierunt, ipso statim in redeundo Placentiæ defuncto.[2]

Ethelred, archbishop of Canterbury, consecrates Welsh bishops. | ✠ Æthelredus Dorobernniæ archiepiscopus. Hic Chevelliauc episcopum Landaviæ, et post Libau episcopum Landaviæ, et post Lunverd episcopum Sancti David Cantuariæ consecravit.[3]

Carloman blinded. | Karolus Calvus rex Francorum Karlomannum filium suum ad apostasiam lapsum excæcavit.[4]

John VIII., pope. | DCCCLXXIII. Johannes papa.

Departure of the Normans. | Normanni, ducem habentes Bier, cum per xx. annos Galliam infestassent, in patriam suam reversi, intestino bello perierunt.[5]

---

[1] *Aluredus . . . regnare*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 871.

[2] *Lotharius . . . defuncto*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 870.

[3] *Æthelredus . . . consecravit*] Chevelliauc episcopus Landaviæ, et post Libau episcopus Landaviæ, et post Lunverd episcopus Sancti David, apud Cantuariam consecrati sunt ab Æthelredo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, B. It is uncertain whether our author derived these notices from the records at Canterbury, where they are endorsed on the Profession Rolls of the bishops, or whether they were recorded on those rolls upon his authority. Chevelliauc of Llandaff and Lunverd of S. David's may (so far as their dates affect the question) have been consecrated by Ethelred; but Libau did not succeed till the year 929. See Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents, ed. Haddan and Stubbs, i. 208, 209.

[4] *Karolus . . excæcavit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 872.

[5] *Normanni . . . . . perierunt*] Chiefly from Sigebert, A.D. 854; W. Gemmet., lib. i. The story of Bier is told by our author in the *Gesta Normannorum*, abridged from William of Jumieges, which will be found in another part of this edition of his works.

DCCCLXXIIII. Locustæ Galliam depopulantur innumerabiles, ceteris locustis majores.[1] A.D. 874. Plague of locusts.

DCCCLXXV.

DCCCLXXVI.

DCCCLXXVII. Karolus imperator Romanorum. Charles the Bald, emperor.

DCCCLXXVIII.

DCCCLXXIX. Karolus imperator Romanorum. Charles the Fat.

Ludovicus Balbus rex Francorum.[2] Lewis the Stammerer.

DCCCLXXX. Ludovicus balbus moriens reliquit uxorem gravidam, quæ peperit Karolum simplicem.

Ludovici balbi ex concubina Ludovicus et Karlomannus dicti, regnum interim Francorum inter se diviserunt regnantes annis quinque.[3] A.D. 880. Lewis and Carloman.

Ingelgerius[4] juvenis alacer et miles optimus, dominam pagi Gastinensis, matrem sibi spiritualem, de adulterio falso impetitam, monomachico certamine liberavit, et ob id factum egregium apud Landonense castrum casamentum ejus plurimum augmentatum est. Postea vero Ludovicus filius Karoli calvi vicecomitatum Aurelianensem et præfecturam Turonorum et dimidium Andegavis comitatum ei in casamento donavit. Ultra Meduanam alter comes habebatur. Rursus Adalardus et Raimo, ambo germani fratres, Turonensium et Andegavensium pontifices, neptem suam Aelendim nomine cum allodiis suis, scilicet Ambazio, Busentiaco et Castellione, ei in conjugium copularunt. Qui post gravia bella insignesque victorias concessit in fatum, sepultusque est in ecclesia beati Martini Castri novi.[5] Ingelger saves his godmother in trial by battle. He acquires part of Anjou. He marries the heiress of Amboise.

DCCCLXXXI. Æthelredus archiepiscopus Cantuariæ.

DCCCLXXXII. Normanni duce Rollone, adjunctis sibi Danis, Franciam et Lotharingiam pervagantes, Ambianis, Atrebatum, Cameracum, Turnacum, fines Morinorum, et terram circa Scaldum Conquests of Rollo.

---

[1] *Locustæ . . . majores*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 874.

[2] *rex Francorum*] om. B.

[3] *Ludovicus . . . quinque*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 880.

[4] *Ingelgerius*] Primus comes Andegavensium. Rubric in B.

[5] *Ingelgerius . . . . Castri novi*] Gesta. Cons. Andeg. cap. iii. (ed. D'Achery, p. 238. See p. 135, above.

A.D. 882. Rollo besieges Rouen.

flumen devastant. Postmodum ostium Sequanæ penetrantes Rotomagum obsident.[1]

DCCCLXXXIII.

DCCCLXXXIIII.

DCCCLXXXV.

Marinus pope (A.D. 882).

DCCCLXXXVI. Marinus papa.

DCCCLXXXVII. Leo imperator Constantinopolis.

Alfred sends alms to India.

Suithelmus Syreburnensis episcopus. Hic elemosinam regis Aluredi ad Sanctum Thomam in Indiam detulit, indeque prospere rediit.[2]

DCCCLXXXVIII.

Adrian III., pope (A.D. 884).

DCCCLXXXIX. Adrianus papa.

Odo king of the Franks.

Franci neglecto Karolo Simplici regem sibi præficiunt Odonem ducem Aquitaniæ.[3]

DCCCXC.

Arnulf emperor.

DCCCXCI. Arnulfus imperator Romanus.

Odo rex Francorum.

AB HOC TEMPORE LUITBRANDUS DIACONUS TICINENSIS ECCLESIÆ HYSTORIAM SUAM ORDITUR.

DCCCXCII.

DCCCXCIII.

Charles the Simple, king of the Franks.

DCCCXCIIII. Franci Karolum Simplicem in regnum revocant, et Remis a Fulcone archiepiscopo in regem benedici faciunt.[4]

DCCCXCV. Stephanus papa.

Foundation of Cluny.

Berno, ex comite abbas Gigniacensis cœnobii a se fundati, construxit Cluniacum in cellam Gigniacensem.[5]

DCCCXCVI.

DCCCXCVII.

Plegmund archbishop (A.D. 891).

DCCCXCVIII. Pleiemundus[6] fit archiepiscopus Dorobernniæ.

DCCCXCIX.

Edward I., king of the English.

DCCCC. Edwardus rex Anglorum est consecratus in regem a Pleemundo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestune.

Huic etiam regina sua Alfleda duos filios

---

[1] *Normanni . . obsident*] Chiefly from Sigebert, A.D. 882; who, however, does not mention Rollo. The name is taken from the Gesta, abridged from William of Jumieges. See above, p. 138.

[2] *Suithelmus . . . rediit*] From Florence of Worcester, A.D. 883.

[3] *Aquitaniæ*] filium Roberti ducis Parisiorum, ins. B. See Sigebert, A.D. 890.

[4] *Franci . . . . faciunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 894.

[5] *Berno . . . . . Gigniacensem*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 895.

[6] *Pleiemundus*] Pleimundus, B.

peperit Hathelstanum et Ædwinum, et sex filias, quarum Eadfleda et Æthelhilda sanctimoniales apud Wiltonam requiescunt; Eadivam vero habuit conjugem Otto Romanorum imperator; Eadhildam autem Karolus simplex rex Francorum; sanctam Eadchidam Sithricus rex Northanhymbrorum; Hugo magnus filius Roberti ducis Parisiensium duxit quartam, id est, Ealfgifam. Regina vero sua Ediva peperit Eadmundum et Ædredum et Sanctam Eadburgam, quæ apud Wintoniam requiescit.[1] A.D. 900. Sons and daughters of king Edward.

DCCCCI.

DCCCCII. Karolus simplex rex Francorum.

Formosus papa. Hic cum esset episcopus Portuensis a Johanne papa viii°. usque ad laicalem habitum degradatus est, jurans se non amplius Romam intraturum nec episcopatum urbis suæ repetiturum. Quem post Marinus papa successor Johannis restituit. Account of Formosus, pope (A.D. 891-896).

Arnulphus imperator Romam venit, et cum non esset a Romanis admissus Romam obsedit. Arnulf besieges Rome.

Lepusculo forte versus urbem fugiente et exercitu cum clamore nimio sequente, Romani timentes se de muro projiciunt et hostibus murum ascendendi locum faciunt. Sic Roma capta Arnulfus in imperatorem benedicitur. Rome taken. Arnulf crowned.

Fulco Remorum archiepiscopus perimitur, jussu Baldewini Flandrensium comitis, a Winemaro satellite suo, pro eo quod abbatiam Sancti Vedasti Atrebatis a Karolo simplice acceperat, quam Baldewinus ante invaserat.[2] Murder of Fulk of Rheims.

DCCCCIII. Bonefacius papa.

Stephanus papa.

Arnulfus imperator consumptus pediculis exspiravit.[3] Arnulf dies (A.D. 899).

---

[1] *Edwardus . . . . . requiescit*] Chiefly from William of Malmesbury, G. R. ii. § 126; partly from Florence of Worcester. The placing of the coronation at Kingston is probably an addition of Ralph de Diceto.

[2] *Formosus . . . invaserat*] From Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 900. Here MS. B. inserts the passage "Frithe-" stanus . . . . pontifices," placed under A.D. 909 below.

[3] *Arnulfus . . exspiravit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 902.

A.D. 902. Posthumous history of Formosus.

Stephanus papa ordinationes Formosi papæ devocavit in irritum. Legitur enim quia ipse et non Sergius papa corpus Formosi a sepulcro in concilio protractum, et papali veste exutum, laicali induit, et abscisis tribus digitis dexteræ manus ejus in Tyberim præcipitari fecit;[1] quem a piscatoribus inventum et in basilica Sancti Petri deportatum, quædam sanctorum ymagines adorasse et venerabiliter salutasse palam omnibus visæ sunt.[2]

DCCCCIIII. Romanus papa.

Lewis IV., emperor.

Ludovicus imperator Romanus.

DCCCCV. Theodorus papa. Hic contra Stephanum papam sentiens, reconciliavit ordinatos a Formoso.

Synod at Ravenna.

CO Johannes papa. Hic ad confirmandam Formosi ordinationem synodum septuaginta iiii^uor episcoporum apud Ravennam congregavit.[3]

DCCCCVI. Benedictus papa.

Leo V., pope (A.D. 903).

DCCCCVII. Leo papa; contra hunc Christoforus surgit.[4] SC

Constantine Porphyrogenitus.

DCCCCVIII. Constantinus imperator Constantinopolis.

DCCCCIX. Sergius papa.

Rollo driven from Chartres.

Rollo civitatem Carnoti obsedit, sed episcopus ejusdem urbis, Walterius nomine, tunicam Sanctæ Mariæ Virginis in manibus ferens Rollonem fugavit.[5]

Seven bishops consecrated at Canterbury in one day.

Frithestanus ad Wintoniensem, Æthelstanus ad Cornubiensem, Westanus ad Scireburnensem, Athelmus ad Wellensem, Eadulfus ad Cridiensem, Bernechus Australibus Saxonibus, Kenulfus ad civitatem Dorcacester a Pleimundo Dorobern iæ archiepiscopo uno die Cantuariæ ordinati sunt pontifices.[6]

---

1 *Stephanus . . . . fecit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 902.

2 *quem . . . . visæ sunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 907.

3 *Theodorus . . . . congregavit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 903.

4 *Leo . . . . surgit*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 905.

5 *Rollo . . . fugavit*] Abridged from Dudo of S. Quentin, lib. ii. ed. Duchesne, p. 80. Cf. Will. Gemmetic. ii. c. 15.

6 *Frithestanus . . . . pontifices*] A.D. 903, B. The passage is probably from the ancient list of the English bishops appended to Florence of Worcester, Mon. Hist. Brit. p. 620. Cf. W. Malmesb. G. R. ii. § 129; G. P. i. § 13.

Formosus papa omnibus episcopis Angliæ: "Sicut ex scriptis beati Gregorii papæ ejusque successoribus tenemus, in Dorobernia civitate metropolim sedemque primam episcopalem constat esse; et sicut beatus papa Gregorius primo vestræ gentis episcopo Augustino omnes Anglorum episcopos esse subjectos constituit, sic nos Pleimundo Doroberniæ archiepiscopo ejusque successoribus legitimis eandem dignitatem confirmamus."[1] Edict of Formosus touching Canterbury.

DCCCCX. *Regino abbas Prumensis cronica sua a nativitate Domini inchoata usque ad hunc annum perduxit.* Regino of Prum.

DCCCCXI.

DCCCCXII. Baptizatus est Rollo dux Normannorum cum multitudine gentis suæ virorum illustrium a Francone Rothomagensi archiepiscopo; factaque est pax inter Karolum regem Franciæ et Rollonem, deditque ei Karolus filiam suam Gislam; qua mortua sine filiis Rollo accepit Popam prius repudiatam uxorem, filiam scilicet Widonis comitis Silvanectensis, de qua genuit Willelmum Longam Spatam.[2] Baptism of Rollo. His wives and son.

Fulco Ruffus, secundus comes, filius Ingelgerii, integrum comitatum Andegavensium et abbatias Sancti Albini et Sancti Sergii, quæ antea regis dominicæ fuerant, adeptus est. Qui duxit uxorem nomine Rocillam, Garnerii filiam, cum tribus castellis, scilicet Lochis, Vilentras et Lahaie. Iste genuit tres filios, Guidonem qui factus est episcopus Suessonensis, Ingelgerium qui interfectus est a Normannis, et Fulconem qui vocatus est bonus. Fulco Ruffus senex et plenus dierum mortuus est, et sepultus in ecclesia beati Martini juxta patrem suum.[3] Fulk the red, count of Anjou (A.D. 888-938). His marriage and acquisitions. His sons.

DCCCCXIII.

DCCCCXIIII. Athelmus Wellensis episcopus Doroberniæ levatur archiepiscopus. Athelm archbishop.

---

[1] *Formosus . . . . confirmamus*] W. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 38, ed. Hamilton, p. 60.

[2] *Rollo . . . . Longam Spatam*] Abridged from Dudo of S. Quentin, pp. 83, 84, 85, 86.

[3] *Fulco . . . suum*] Gesta Cons. Andeg. cap. iv. (ed. D'Achery), p. 244. See note, p. 135 above.

A.D. 915. DCCCCXV.

DCCCCXVI.

William I., duke of Normandy (A.D. 927). Lando, pope (A.D. 913).

DCCCCXVII. Willelmus Longa Spata Rolloni successit in ducatu Normanniæ.
Anastasius papa.
Lando papa.

DCCCCXVIII.

John X. (A.D. 914).

DCCCCXIX. Johannes papa.

DCCCCXX. Henricus imperator Romanorum.

DCCCCXXI.

Charles the Simple surrenders Lorraine to king Henry.

DCCCCXXII. Karolus simplex Robertum ducem Parisiensium, regnum invadentem Francorum, cum multis peremit, et se et Franciam Henrico regi Teutonico, qui ei auxilio fuerat, submittit, Lotharingiæ regnum reddit.[1]

DCCCCXXIII.

A.D. 924. Athelstan king.

DCCCCXXIIII. Edelstanus filius Edwardi regnavit annis xvi., consecratus ab Athelmo Doroberniæ archiepiscopo apud Kingestune.

Wulfhelm archbishop.

Wlfelmus Wellensis episcopus fit archiepiscopus Doroberniæ.

Charles the Simple imprisoned.

Karolus simplex rex Francorum, a comite Hereberto captus, in custodiam Peronæ truditur ob necem Roberti ducis Parisiensium ab eo perempti.[2]

A.D. 925. Military system of Henry I., king of Germany.

DCCCCXXV. Rex Henricus trans-Renanus agrarios milites recensens, edixit ut octo eorum in agris et nonus in urbe moraretur, ut octo in agris et sibi et nono laborarent, nonus vero in urbe tertiam partem omnium frugum illorum reservaret in ædibus a se ad hoc exstructis, ut in bello nichil alicui eorum deesset, urbesque rebus et viris plenæ essent.[3]

Death of Charles the Simple (A.D. 922). Ralph king of France.

DCCCCXXVI. Karolus simplex in custodia Hereberti moritur. Radulfus[4] regnat in Francia.[5]

DCCCCXXVII. Ludovicus filius Karoli simplicis transit in

DCCCCXXVIII. Angliam, quem anno sequenti rex Ethelstanus avunculus suus, accepto prius jurejurando

---

[1] *Karolus . . . . reddit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 922, 923.

[2] *Karolus . . . perempti*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 924.

[3] *Rex . . . essent*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 925.

[4] *Radulfus*] dux Burgundiæ, B., interlined.

[5] *Karolus . . . Francia*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 926.

a Francorum legatis in Franciam, cum qui- A.D. 928.
busdam episcopis et aliis fidelibus suis dirigit. Lewis crowned.
Qui susceptus a Francis apud Laudunum ab
Artallo archiepiscopo coronatur.[1]

DCCCCXXIX.

DCCCCXXX. Leo papa.

DCCCCXXXI.

DCCCCXXXII. Frethestanus Wintoniensis episcopus, ordinato pro se in episcopatum Brinstano, Wintoniæ resedit. Hic Frethestanus cotidie missam pro defunctorum requie cantavit; nocte cimiteria circumivit, pro animarum salute psalmos cantavit. Quadam vice hoc agens dum expletis omnibus subjungeret "requiescant "in pace," subito voces, quasi exercitus infiniti, e sepulchris audivit respondentium "Amen."[2] A.D. 932. Frithstan bishop of Winchester resigns.

DCCCCXXXIII. Bellum inter Willelmum Longam Spatam et Riculphum.[3]

DCCCCXXXIIII.

DCCCCXXXV. Johannes papa. John XI.

DCCCCXXXVI. Leo papa. Leo VI.

DCCCCXXXVII. Stephanus papa. Stephen IX. (A.D. 939).

Odo episcopus Malmesburiæ[4] eligitur in Dorobernensem archiepiscopum, sed ille, quia nondum amicisset monachum, constantius cœpit reniti, ne majorum morem ambitione sua Odo chosen archbishop of Canterbury.

DCCCCXXXVIII. turbare videretur. Nullum enim viderat ad id tempus archiepiscopum nisi monachili

DCCCCXXXIX. scemate indutum fuisse. Sed cum regiæ voluntati episcoporum omnium assensus accederet, tandem propositi sui rigore edomito, transito mari, apud Floriacum monachilia suscepit,[5] et Angliam rediens in Cantuariensi archiepiscopatu magnam apud Athelstanum regem gratiam obtinuit. He becomes a monk at Fleury.

---

[1] *Ludovicus . . coronatur*] Frodoardus, Hist. iv. c. 26; Bouquet, viii. 166; Frod. Chronic., A.D. 936; ibid. viii. 190.

[2] *Frethestanus . . . Amen*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 932.

[3] *Bellum . . . Riculphum*] See R. de Monte, A.D. 934; Will. Gemmet. Hist. iii. c. 2.

[4] *Malmesburiæ*] So A. C.; B. has the true reading "Ramesburiæ." The order of events from A.D. 933 to 940 is somewhat different in B.

[5] *Odo . . . suscepit*] Will. Malmesb., G. P. lib. i. § 14: the rest of the sentence is from § 15.

A.D. 940. Edmund king of the English.

Otto emperor.

DCCCCXL. Eadmundus rex Anglorum consecratus est ab Odone Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestune.[1]

Oto imperator Romanorum.

Stephanus papa.

DCCCCXLI.

A.D. 942. William, duke of the Normans, is slain by the contrivance of Arnulf of Flanders.

DCCCCXLII. Marinus papa.

Occiditur Willelmus Longa Spata dux Normannorum, filius Rollonis, nequitia et tra-
DCCCCXLIII. ditione Arnulfi comitis Flandrensium. Cum enim idem Arnulfus Herlevino comiti Pontivi Monasteriolum castrum, tradente quodam
DCCCCXLIIII. proditore, abstulisset, uxorem ipsius Herluini cum filiis ad regem Angliæ mittit, cujus calamitati dux Normannorum Willelmus com-
DCCCCXLV. passus, collecta non modica manu, Monasteriolum pugnando recepit, et ex militibus Arnulfi quos intus invenit nonnullos intere-
DCCCCXLVI. mit; quosdam vero propter uxorem ipsius Herluini recipiendam reservavit.[2] Unde Arnulfus efferatus, invitans ducem ad colloquium, trucidari fecit apud Pinchinniacum.[3]

Richard succeeds.

Ricardus dux Normannorum.

Decision of the law of inheritance by representation.

Orta dissensione inter principes de varietate legis, utrum deberent avis superstitibus filii filiorum post patres defunctos hæreditare, an exhæredatis fratruelibus deberet hæreditas ad patruos redire, ex regis Otonis omniumque principum sententia cognitio veritatis commissa est gladiatorio judicio; cessitque victoria hiis qui censebant fratrum filios debere cum patribus hæreditare.[4]

A.D. 947. Edred succeeds Edmund.

DCCCCXLVII. Eadredus frater Athelstani consecratus est ab Odone Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestune.[5]

---

[1] *Eadmundus . . . Kingestune*] The fixing of the place of coronation is probably due to Ralph de Diceto himself. Cf. Flor. Wig., A.D. 940. Odo did not succeed to the archbishopric until A.D. 942.

[2] *Occiditur . . . reservavit*] R. de Monte, A.D. 942. Frodoardus, Chronic., Bouquet, viii. 192.

[3] *Unde . . . . . Pinchinniacum*] From William of Jumiéges, lib. iii. cc. 11, 12.

[4] *Orta . . . . hæreditare*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 942.

[5] *Eadredus . . . . Kingestune*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 946.

DCCCCXLVIII. Odo archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, in Northan- A.D. 948.
DCCCCXLIX. hymbros profectus, patris Wilfridi reliquias Translation of S. Wilfrid.
DCCCCL. a Ripensi ecclesia transtulit apud Cantuariam.[1]

Stephanus et Constantinus imperatores, filii Romani imperatoris, ægre ferentes se juxta patris sui severitatem a juvenili levitate coherceri, patrem de palatii solio deponunt, et tonso capite ad vicinam insulam, in qua cœnobitæ philosophabantur, transmittunt.[2] The emperor Romanus deposed by Stephen and Constantine.

Dum rex Ludovicus moraretur Rothomagi, Haigroldus Normannus, qui Bajocis præerat, mandat ei quod ad eum venturus esset, condicto tempore vel loco, si rex ad illum locum accederet. Veniente denique rege ad locum denominatum, Haigroldus cum multitudine Normannorum advenerat, invadensque socios regis pœne cunctos interemit. Rex solus fugam iniit. Qui Rothomagum veniens comprehensus est ab aliis Normannis, quos sibi fideles esse putabat, et sub custodia detentus. Narrow escape of king Louis at Rouen.
Sed tandem filio suo obside dato cum Widone Suessorum episcopo rex a Normannis dimittitur.[3] He is released.

Stephanus et Constantinus post patris depul- Stephen and Constantine made monks.
DCCCCLI. sionem a Constantino filio Leonis imperatoris
DCCCCLII. tonsis capitibus ad idem monasterium ad
DCCCCLIII. quod patrem suum Romanum imperatorem transmiserant, et ipsi ad philosophandum transmittuntur cum monachis.[4]

DCCCCLIIII.
DCCCCLV. Agapitus papa. Agapetus II. (A.D. 946).
DCCCCLVI.
DCCCCLVII. Edwius filius Ædmundi rex Anglorum consecratus est ab Odone Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestune.[5]  Edwy king (A.D. 955).

Liudulphus filius imperatoris Ottonis primi

---

[1] *Odo . . . . . Cantuariam*] W. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 15.

[2] *Stephanus . . . transmittunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 944.

[3] *Dum . . dimittitur*] Frodoard, Chron., A.D. 745; Bouquet, viii. 199; W. Gemmet., iv. 7, 8. Cf. R. de Monte, A.D. 972.

[4] *Stephanus . . monachis*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 945.

[5] *Edwius . . . . Kingestune*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 955.

A.D. 958. Rebellion of Ludolf.

DCCCCLVIII. instinctu Conradi ducis contra patrem suum rebellat.[1]

DCCCCLIX.

DCCCCLX.

Lotharius rex Francorum.

History of Fulk the good, third count of Anjou (A.D. 938-958).

[2] Fulco bonus, tertius comes Andegavensium, in ecclesia Sancti Martini in castello novo canonicis ascriptus fuit. In festis sancti ejusdem in choro inter psallentes clericos cum veste clericali et sub disciplina eorum astabat. Hospitabatur apud mediocrem aliquem ex clericis, et domum ipsius magno cultu et sumptu venustabat, ut in discessu suo tenuis hospes ditatus remaneret. Contigit quodam tempore regem Francorum Lotharium apud Turonim civitatem in festo Sancti Martini æstivalis affore. Affuit autem et comes Andegavorum in habitu clericali, et quæ Dei sunt in choro cæteris devotior celebrabat. Ob hoc nobiles palatini lateri regis adhærentes, cum ipso rege cœperunt deludendo dicere quod comes Andegavorum ut presbiter canebat. Rex autem Franciæ cum aliis deludens nobile opus viri derisit. Quo audito comes Andegavorum litteras hujusmodi formam habentes scripsit; "Regi Francorum comes Andegavorum; "Noveritis, domine, quod rex illiteratus est "asinus coronatus." Composuit idem reverendæ memoriæ consul hystoriam duodecim responsoriorum cantu et melodia luculentam, in honore beati Martini. Quodam tempore cum ecclesiam beati Martini procul aspiceret, sicut semper solitus fuerat, equo desiliit, ac flexis genibus, toto corpore prostratus in terra diutius oravit. Cum surgeret ab oratione, vidit a dextris hominem aspectu horribilem leprosa impetigine miserabiliter occupatum, et manum mittens ad loculum misericordiam

His answer to Lewis's courtiers.

His compositions in honour of S. Martin.

---

[1] *Luidulfus . . . rebellat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 952. "Natus ex "Ediva filia Edwardi senioris regis "Anglorum;" note in B.

[2] *Fulco bonus*] The following passage is an abridgment from the Gesta Consulum Andegavensium, cap. v. (D'Achery, iii. 244, sq.). See Chroniques d'Anjou, ed. Marchegay and Salmon, i. 320, sq.; and note at p. 135, above.

leproso volebat impendere. Cui leprosus ait, "Non, domine mi; non indigeo modo hu-"juscemodi indulgentia. Sed quia pedibus "lepra corrosis nec ipse ire nec ab alio de-"ferri ad ecclesiam confessoris præ nimia "ægritudine possum, necessitas michi ac vo-"luntas esset quatinus tu ipse me deferres; "forsitan ibi invenirem aliquem Dei homi-"nem qui pro redemptione peccaminum in "conventu leprosorum michi necessaria ad-"ministrari juberet." Quo audito comes proprio mantello diligenter leprosum ac devote involvit, ac cæteris partim illudentibus, partim stupentibus, propriis humeris pium pondus fere per duas leugas deferens ad ecclesiam beati Martini devenit. Quo peracto forma leprosi tam a pondere deferentis quam ab oculis intuentis evanuit. Cumque comes sequenti nocte in clericali habitu in choro beati Martini juxta decanum resideret divinitus obdormivit. Interea quidam vir reverendus habitu prætextus stola candida, habens in comitatu leprosum, dixit, "Ego sum Mar-"tinus dominus tuus; iste leprosus est "Christus, Quem tu sæpius in membris Suis "pie fovisti; sed hodie in Sua persona et "capite humeris portans honorasti." Dum rediret Andegaviam, apparuit ei angelus dicens, successores suos usque ad nonam generationem dominationis suæ fines semper in immensum extendere. Iste Fulco pius tres filios habuit, quorum primogenitus Gaufridus consulatum rexit; alter Guido nomine, episcopus Podii fuit; cui etiam Drogo junior benignitate Hugonis regis in episcopatu Podii successit. Contigit quodam tempore in festo beati Martini hyemalis, cum de manu episcopi Missam canentis Corpus et Sanguinem Christi acciperet, rediens in choro levi tactus incommodo, inter manus clericorum sociorum suorum exspiravit; sepultusque est in eadem ecclesia juxta patrem suam.

His miraculous vision of the leper.

Vision of S. Martin.

Angelic prophecy of the power of his descendants.

Dunstanus abbas Glastoniæ dum regem Edwium ab erroribus revocaret, a rege proscriptus mare transiit.[1]

Banishment of Dunstan.

[1] *Dunstanus . . . . transiit*] Cf. Flor. Wig., A.D. 956.

A.D. 961. Edgar king. Dunstan bishop of Worcester.

DCCCCLXI. Edgarus rex Anglorum.

Dunstanus abbas ab eo revocatus, ecclesiæ Wigornensis electus antistes, consecratus est ab Odone Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Cantuariam.[1]

Odo primus abbas Cluniacensis.

DCCCCLXII. Johannes papa.

Dunstan bishop of London.

Rex Ædgarus Lundoniensem ecclesiam proprio pastore viduatam commisit regendam Dunstano Wigornensi episcopo. Et sic Dunstanus Lundoniensem ecclesiam commendatam habuit et intitulatam. Qui Dunstanus Wlsinum abbatem instituit apud Westmonasterium instructo ad duodecim monachos cœnobiolo, in loco ubi quondam Mellitus Lundoniensis episcopus ecclesiam Sancto Petro fecerat.[2]

He institutes monks at Westminster.

Death of archbishop Elfsin.

DCCCCLXIII. Odoni archiepiscopo successit Ælfsinus Wentanus episcopus. Qui dum Romam pro petendo pallio tenderet, in Alpibus gelu constrictus defecit.

Rejection of Brihthelm.

Brichthelmus Wellensis episcopus eligitur ad archiepiscopum, sed reprobatur.[3]

DCCCCLXIIII. Johannes papa.

Dunstan made archbishop of Canterbury (A.D. 959).

DCCCCLXV. DCCCCLXVI. DCCCCLXVII. Dunstanus Wigornensis episcopus, concordi omnium episcoporum consensu pressus, fit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ. Qui Oswaldum Wigornensem episcopum consecravit, qui post factus est archiepiscopus Eboracensis, et quia Dani Northanymbriam vastaverant, simul obtinuit episcopatum et archiepiscopatum.[4]

Otto crowned at Rome (A.D. 962).

Otto rex Romam veniens,

Dum venit ante fores
Jurat prius urbis honores
Post homo fit papæ
Quo sumit dante coronam.[5]

DCCCCLXVIII. Leofwinus, qui octavus extitit Legecestrensis episcopus, conjunxit episcopatus Lindisfaro-

---

[1] *Dunstanus . . . Cantuariam*] Cf. Flor. Wig., A.D. 957.

[2] *Rex . . . fecerat*] Partly from Flor. Wig., A.D. 957; and W. Malmesb., lib. ii. § 81.

[3] *Odoni . . . reprobatur*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 959.

[4] *Dunstanus . . . archiepiscopatum*] Cf. Flor. Wig., A.D. 959, 960, 972.

[5] *Otto . . . coronam*] This was the inscription on the picture of the coronation of Lothar II., in the Lateran palace; see Radewic, Gesta Friderici, lib. i. c. 10.

rum, qui nunc dicitur Lincolniensium et Legecestrensium.[1] A.D. 968.

Edgar is crowned king at Bath (A.D. 973).

Eadgarus rex Anglorum ab archiepiscopis Dunstano Dorobernensi et Oswaldo Eboracensi consecratus est in regem in civitate Acheman, qui duos filios Eadmundum et Egelredum ex Ælfritha Ordgari ducis filia suscepit. Habuit etiam prius ex Ægelfleda Edwardum postea regem et martyrem, et de Wilfrida virginem Deo devotam Editham.[2]

Quarrels at Rome between the rival popes John XII. and Leo VIII. (A.D. 963, 964).

CŌ Collecta a tota Italia episcoporum synodo, Johannes de nefariis causis infamatur, qui dum se excusatum venire cunctatur, Leo SC̄ adhuc laicus electione omnium et consensu imperatoris papa substituitur. Sic Leo fecit ordinationes et alia quæ erant apostolica. Nec longum Romani alterata fide apud imperatorem CŌ papam recipiunt Johannem. Ille synodo collecta Leonem deposuit et ejus gesta cassavit. Statutumque est synodum a Leone habitam non nominandam synodum sed prostibulum favens adulteris. Quicunque ergo eo ordinante erant dampnati jussi sunt suam ipsorum proscriptionem præsentare in carta, hæc continente, "Pater meus nichil "sibi habuit, nichil michi dedit," et sic depositi remanserunt in illis gradibus quos habuerant nondum a Leone ordinati.

Death of John XII.

Johannes papa, se cum uxore cujusdam oblectans, a diabolo in tempore percutitur, ac sine viatico Dominico obiit.[4]

Benedict V. elected (A.D. 964).

Romani contra juramentum quod imperatori fecerant, se nunquam electuros papam sine ejus et sine filii ejus Ottonis consensu, Bene- SC̄ dictum papam constituunt.[5]

Benedictus papa.

Rome besieged.

Imperator, Roma obsessa, adeo Romanos afflixit,

---

[1] *Leofwinus . . Legecestrensium*] From Will. Malmesb., G. P. lib. iv. §§ 176, 177.

[2] *Eadgarus . . . Editham*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 964, 973. MS. A. has after "consecratus" "peracta sep-"tenni pœnitentia," and after "Acheman" "id est Batonia" interlined.

[3] *Collecta . . ordinati*] Sigebert. Gembl., A.D. 963.

[4] *Johannes . . . . obiit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 963.

[5] *Romani . . . constituunt*] Ibid.

Leo VIII. (A.D. 965).

SC ut Leonem papam se recepturos promitterent. Sic Benedictus rejicitur.[1]

Leo papa.

Arnulfo Flandrensium comiti Baldewinus filius ejus successit.

Richard, duke of the Normans, marries Gonnor.

Emma uxor Ricardi primi ducis Normanniæ, filia Hugonis magni, absque liberis moritur. Ipse vero quandam virginem nomine Gonnor, ex Danorum prosapia ortam, in matrimonio desponsavit; ex qua genuit Ricardum qui ei successit, et Robertum postea archiepiscopum Rotomagensem, et Malgerum comitem Curbuliensem, aliosque duos, et tres filias; Emmam scilicet quæ postea Ædelredo regi Anglorum nupsit, de qua idem rex genuit Ædwardum et Aluredum; secundam Haduis nomine uxorem Goisfridi Britannorum comitis. Tertia fuit Matildis uxor Odonis comitis. Genuit etiam duos filios et totidem filias ex concubinis, quorum unus Godefridus, alter vero dicebatur Willelmus. Horum prior comes fuit Aucensis. Quo defuncto accepit frater ejus eundem comitatum, quem adhuc heredes ejus jure possident successionis, licet comes Brionensis Gilebertus, filius prædicti Godefridi, eundem comitatum parumper tenuerit antequam occideretur a Radulfo de Waceio filio Roberti archiepiscopi Rothomagensis.[2]

Their children.

Other descendants of Richard

John XIII. (A.D. 965).

DCCCCLXIX. Johannes papa.

Meeting of Gerberga and Otto.

Regina Francorum Gerberga, mater Lotharii regis, et Hawidis uxor Hugonis Parisiensium comitis, quorum filius fuit Hugo, qui postea regnavit in Francia, occurrerunt Ottoni imperatori fratri suo apud Aquisgranum.[3]

DCCCCLXX. Hoc tempore Danis, qui Christum Jesum et ydola simul colebant, cum Popone clerico in convivio altercantibus super cultura Dei et

[1] *Imperator . . rejicitur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 963.

[2] *Emma . . . . Rothomagensis*] R. de Monte, A.D. 964; Will. Gemmet., lib. iv. c. 18.

[3] *Regina . . . . . Aquisgranum*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 965. After "Hugo" "Chapet" is interlined in A.

deorum, Danis asserentibus Jesum Christum quidem esse Deum, deos vero majores et antiquiores esse Illo; Popono e contra affirmante Jesum Christum solum verum Deum esse, unum in substantia, trinum in personis; rex Danorum Araldus condixit clerico ut fidem propositam a se probaret testimonio veritatis. Quod annitente clerico, ingentis ponderis ferrum valde ignitum manibus illius ferendum apponitur. Quod cum clericus usque ad placitum omnium tulisset absque ulla læsione, rex penitus abjecta ydolatria suos ad colendum verum solum Deum convertit: clericus vero ad episcopatum promotus est.[1] A.D. 970. The Danes try Christianity by ordeal of hot iron.

DCCCCLXXI. Johannes papa.

DCCCCLXXII. Otto junior a Johanne papa cum patre suo coronatur.[2] Otto II. crowned emperor.

DCCCCLXXIII.

DCCCCLXXIIII.
DCCCCLXXV. Rex Edgarus, consilio Dunstani archiepiscopi et Ethelwoldi Wintoniensis episcopi, a majoribus ecclesiis clericos expulit et monachos induxit.[3] Edgar expels the clerks from the monasteries.

Johannes papa Dunstano Dorobernensi archiepiscopo:—" Primatum tuum, in quo tibi ex " more antecessorum tuorum vices aposto- " licæ sedis exercere convenit, ita tibi ad " plenum confirmamus, sicut beatum Augus- " tinum ejusque successores Dorobernensis " ecclesiæ pontifices habuisse dinoscitur."[4] Letter of John XIII. to Dunstan.

DCCCCLXXVI.

DCCCCLXXVII. Johannes imperator Constantinopolis.

Edwardus regis Eadgari filius consecratus est a Dunstano Dorobernensi et Oswaldo Eboracensi archiepiscopis apud Kingestune.[5] A.D. 975. Edward king of the English.

DCCCCLXXVIII. Stephanus papa.

WINDIGINDUS[6] HYSTORIAM SAXONUM USQUE AD HUNC ANNUM CONSCRIPSIT.

---

[1] *Hoc tempore . . . promotus est*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 966.

[2] *Otto . . coronatur*] Cf. Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 968.

[3] *Rex . . . induxit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 963-969.

[4] *Johannes . . . dinoscitur*] Will. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 39.

[5] *Edwardus . . . . Kingestune*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 975.

[6] *Windigindus*] Windichindus, B.

A.D. 958-987. Account of Geoffrey, the fourth count of Anjou.

[1] Gaufridus iiii^tus comes Andegavensium. Hic filius Fulconis boni ob insignia summi et singularis meriti a rege Roberto in præliis signifer, et in coronatione regum dapifer, tam ipse quam ejus hæredes constituuntur. In diebus illis Hasten Danus tribus annis Gallias infestans tandem in vallem amœnam et pulcherrimam inter locum qui mons Morentius dicitur et Parisius cum xv. milibus Danorum fixit tentoria. Cujus præsumptionis timore rex Robertus in sollennitate Pentecostes proceres suos undequaque Parisius congregare disposuit: videns sibi nullam fieri cum illo copiam pugnandi, cum Franci intra mœnia urbis refugere compulsi foras erumpere non erant ausi. Singulis igitur diebus Ethewlfus Danus veluti alter Goliath agminibus Francorum exprobrans ante urbem Parisiacam singulare duellum ab aliquo Francorum exigens veniebat; a quo cum complures milites ex fortioribus et nobilioribus Francorum duello devicti et perempti essent, rex dolore commotus ne quis amplius contra eum exiret prohibuit. Gaufridus comes Andegavis, cum certissime virtutem et crudelitatem prædicti Dani didicisset, fingens se ad colloquium cujusdam amici sui abscondite ire, suis ut eum in Landonensi castro, quod suum erat, expectarent præcepit. In crastino consul furtivus viator egreditur, uno solo milite cum duobus armigeris secum retento, et non longe a Parisiaca urbe, burgum Sancti Germani devitans, a molendinario quodam navigium sibi parari imperavit. In cujus domo nocte illa dormivit. Facto mane clamore Dani audito comes infremuit, et armatus cito equum ascendit, relictis in navi sociis, solus ei obviavit. Comes itaque perforato hostis pectore Danum prostravit, et abstracto ipsius proprio gladio velut alter David caput abscidit, et domino navis qui eum transvexerat caput, ut in

Paris besieged by the Danes under Hasting.

Count Geoffrey conquers the Danish champion.

[1] The following is an abridgment from the *Gesta Consulum Andegavensium*, cap. vi. (D'Achery, iii. 246, sq.). Cf. Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 323–325; and see note, p. 135 above.

A.D. 958-987.

civitatem deferat tradidit. Ipse clandestinus in Landonensi castro ad suos rediit. Bajulus capitis venit in urbem et rege præsente nomen et personam militis qui Danum interfecerat se firmat ignorare. Dani recesserunt confusi. Venerunt itaque principes convocati Parisius. Gaufridus comes, indutus tunica illius panni quem Franci grisetum vocant, inter principes sedebat. Molendinarius ad hoc convocatus a rege comitem agnovit. Cujus arrepta tunica regi et cæteris ait, "Hic cum hac griseta tunica sternendo "Danum Francorum obprobrium abstulit." Rex deinceps ut Gaufridus Grisatunica vocaretur edixit. Venerunt Dani circa Suessionis regionem; secuti sunt Franci, et cum de bello tractarent ordinando, negotium illud Andegavensi commiserunt Gaufrido. Ordinatæ sunt itaque sex acies. Rex postremus cum acie sua gradiebatur. Gaufridus, qui suum deferebat vexillum, properus affuit, Danisque miles audacissimus obstitit. Ad illius primipilaris impetum Franci animo resumpto in Danos irruunt unanimiter. Exterriti sunt autem Dani præ timore nimio, et repente cuneis eorum labantibus, fugæ se commiserunt. Rursus quidam Teutonicus de Suevia, Etheltedus nomine, qui de genere Pharamundi et Clodovei descenderat, regnum Francorum jure hæreditario exigebat. Qui auxilio Othonis regis Italiæ Lotharingiam et superiores partes Franciæ impugnabat. Conquerebatur in propatulo de fœderatis pactionibus quas Hugo rex in præsentia Henrici ducis Lotharingiæ et Ricardi comitis Normanniæ et Gaufridi Andegavis, in quodam colloquio fecerat, scilicet quod regnum Francorum Hugo sibi dimitteret, ita dumtaxat ut sibi ducatum totius Franciæ daret, sicut dux Hugo olim possederat. Quod prædicti principes, ut aiebat, et multi alii magnates fide sua pepigerant. Gaufridus Grissatunica aliis dubitantibus surrexit et ait, "Perjurii nus-"quam volo redargui, nec patiar ut nobis

The Danes retreat.

Geoffrey's grey gown.

He defeats the Danes near Soissons.

Attempts of the Germans on France.

Speech of Geoffrey.

A.D. 958-987. Geoffrey defeats the Saxon Berthold.

" domineris. Regem meque et socios meos " de fide mentita defendo." Bertoldus frater ducis Saxoniæ, vir factus ad unguem, pro Theutonico duellum arripit. Ventum est ad prælium. Primo impetu neuter cecidit, sed Bertoldus, dum equum giraret, a comite lancea graviter inter scapulas vulneratur. Ad ultimum rupta lorica Bertoldi, Gaufridus Grisatunica victor extitit. Qui zonam beatæ Mariæ virginis, quam regina Franciæ consanguinea ejusdem eidem pugnaturo contulerat, Luchis posuit. Genuit autem plures filios, quorum junior, Mauritius nomine, cæteris patre superstite mortuis, supervixit.

His death.

Ipse vero Gaufridus Grisatunica viam universæ carnis ingrediens sepultus est in ecclesia beati Albini Andegavis.

Otto imperator Romanorum.

DCCCCLXXIX. Occiditur rex Eadwardus a noverca sua Ethelfritha.[1]

Ethelred king of the English (A.D. 978).

Æthelredus, frater Edwardi regis ex patre Eadgaro, a Dunstano et Oswaldo archiepiscopis et decem episcopis consecratus est

DCCCCLXXX. apud Kingestune.[2]

AB HINC DE CONSTANTINOPOLITANO IMPERIO TACEATUR.

AB HINC DE NOMINIBUS ROMANORUM PONTIFICUM TACEATUR USQUE AD TEMPUS NICHOLAI PAPÆ SECUNDI.

Otto II. defeated in Calabria.

DCCCCLXXXI. Otto imperator Apuliam et Calabriam Italiæ
DCCCCLXXXII. provincias, ad jus regni Græcorum appen-
DCCCCLXXXIII. dentes, transferre ad imperium Romanum
DCCCCLXXXIIII. conatur;[3] sed Græci auxilio Saracenorum Ottonem superant.

DCCCCLXXXV.

DCCCCLXXXVI. ODO PRIMUS ABBAS CLUNIACENSIS AB EXORDIO
DCCCCLXXXVII. MUNDI USQUE HUC CHRONICA SUA DIGESSIT.[4]

---

[1] *Occiditur . . . . Ethelfritha*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 978.

[2] *Athelredus . . . . Kingestune*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 978.

[3] *Otto . . . . conatur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 981; the rest of the sentence is abridged from the same author, A.D. 982.

[4] *Odo . . . digessit*] Odo abbas Cluniacensis scripsit hucusque, A. in the text; corrected in the margin, in the same hand, as above, and thus inserted in B., under A.D. 978.

[1] Lotharius rex Francorum obiit, et successit Ludovicus filius ejus, qui, sicut quidam dicunt, nono anno regni sui obiit sine filiis. Karolus autem frater Lotharii præfati regnum Francorum obtinuit. Eodem vero anno Hugo Chapet contra Karolum hunc ultimum rebellavit. Cernens itaque Hugo Chapet quod nullo modo posset Karolum vincere, consilium habuit cum Ascelino traditore, Lauduni pontifice et ejusdem consiliatore Karoli. Tradens itaque Ascelinus Laudunum Hugoni Chapet, cunctis quiescentibus, Karolus cum uxore sua captus est intus, atque civitate Aurelianis in carcere recluditur; nondum enim unctus erat in regem, Hugone contradicente. Qui reclusus Aurelianis duos filios Karolum et Ludovicum genuit. Eodem vero anno ipse Hugo dux, cognomento Chapet, unctus est in regem civitate Remis, Robertumque filium suum in ipso anno diademate sullimari fecit apud Noviomum. In diebus illis Arnulfus frater præfati Karoli, natus tamen de concubina, ecclesiam Remorum gubernabat. Huic Hugo ordinatus rex plurimas insidias tetendit, cupiens exterminare omnem progeniem Karoli. Qui congregans concilium in civitate Remis Arnulfum degradari fecit, atque Aurelianis cum præfato Karolo custodiæ mancipavit, dicens non debere ex concubina natum pontificali infula sullimari. In cujus locum Gerbertum monachum philosophum consecrari fecit, eo quod fuerat magister Roberti regis filii sui. Quo audito Romanus pontifex episcopos qui ordinationi Gerberti et Arnulfi degradationi consenserant, a sacerdotali honore suspendit, misitque Leonem abbatem a sede apostolica ad Seguinum archiepiscopum Senonum, qui vice sua in civitate Remis congregaret concilium. Col-

A.D. 987.

Lewis V., son of Lothar, dies.

Charles, his brother, captured by Hugh Capet.

Hugh Capet and his son Robert crowned.

Arnulf archbishop of Rheims deposed: Gerbert appointed.

Mission of Leo.

[1] The following passage is chiefly from the Chronicle printed as Hugh of Fleury by Bouquet, viii. 324; x. 219, 220. Cf. Aimoin, lib. v. cc. 44, 45 (ed. Freher); Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 987–992.

A.D. 987.

Submission of Gerbert.

He becomes archbishop of Ravenna,

and lastly pope.

lecto igitur concilio, prædictus Arnulfus, jam tertium annum in vinculis agens, cum honore reponitur in sede propria. Gerbertus vero intelligens quod pontificatus honorem usurparet injuste, pœnitentia ductus judicabat se indignum tali honore. Per idem tempus electione Ottonis imperatoris, et acclamatione populi, idem Gerbertus suscepit episcopatum Ravennæ urbis. Quo per plures annos ibidem residente, Romano papa defuncto,[1] a populo urbis Romæ acclamatur sibi dari pontifex. Qui assumptus de Ravenna constituitur apostolicus in urbe Romana. Unde monosticum illud dictum est, "Transit ab R. Gerbertus ad R. pro papa "vigens R."[2]

A.D. 988. Ethelgar archbishop.

DCCCCLXXXVIII. Dunstano archiepiscopo successit Ethelgarus Australium Saxonum episcopus.[3]

A.D. 989. Sigeric archbishop.

DCCCCLXXXIX. Athelgaro archiepiscopo successit Syricius Wil-

DCCCCXC. tonensium episcopus, qui expulsis a Cantuaria clericis monachos induxit.[4]

DCCCCXCI.

Saying of Odilo of Cluny.

DCCCCXCII. Odilo Cluniacensis abbas cum reprehenderetur

DCCCCXCIII. quod in peccantes misericordior justo esse videretur, "Si dampnandus sum," inquit, "malo dampnari de misericordia quam de "duritia."[5]

A.D. 994. Elfric archbishop.

DCCCCXCIIII. Siricio Dorobherniæ archiepiscopo mortuo successit Alfricus Wiltunensium episcopus.[6] Hic Blederi episcopum Landaviæ et Tramerin episcopum Sancti David, et Elnodum episcopum Sancti David Cantuariæ consecravit.

Robert king of the Franks

DCCCCXCV. Robertus rex Francorum, mortuo patre suo rege Hugone Chapeth, solus regnat.[7]

---

[1] *defuncto*] Vocatus Johannes papa quintus decimus; sedit autem decem mensibus, et in ecclesia quæ vocatur Jerusalem Romæ mortuus est, ins. B.

[2] *Unde . . . R.*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 992.

[3] *Dunstano . . . . . episcopus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 988.

[4] *Athelgaro . . . induxit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 989.

[5] *Odilo . . . . . duritia*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 993.

[6] *Siricio . . . . episcopus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 995. The rest of the sentence is from another source: see above, p. 138, note .

[7] *Robertus . . . . regnat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 996.

Obiit primus Ricardus dux Normanniæ, filius Willelmi filii Rollonis; cui successit filius ejus secundus Ricardus.[1] A.D. 996. Richard II., duke of the Normans.

[2] Circa hoc tempus Hinguar et Hubba Angliam vastaverunt: corpusque Sancti Cuthberti ab Eardulfo Lindisfarnensi episcopo in Dunelmum perlatum est, et sedes episcopalis ibidem constituta, quæ retro temporibus fuerat in Lindisfarnensi insula quæ Halingeland appellatur.

DCCCCXCVI. Hoc tempore, incluso quodam indicante, loca eructantia flammarum incendia, quæ ab incolis ollæ Vulcani nominantur, prope Siciliam sunt inventa, in quibus voces et terrores, dæmonum ejulatus etiam audiuntur plangentium, quod animæ dampnatorum eriperentur de manibus eorum per elemosinam et preces fidelium. Hoc itaque comperto, abbas Cluniacensis Odilo constituit per omnia monasteria sibi subjecta, ut sicut primo die Novembris sollennitas omnium sanctorum agitur, ita sequenti die memoria omnium in Christo quiescentium celebretur. Qui ritus ad multas ecclesias transiens fidelium defunctorum memoriam sollennizari fecit.[3] Volcanic eruptions near Sicily. All Souls day instituted.

Mauricius quintus comes Andegaviæ duxit uxorem de Alniensi pago, filiam Haimerici consulis Sanctonici, neptem Raimundi Pictavensis comitis, ex qua Fulconem Nerram genuit. Surrexit in eum Landricus Dunensis auxilio Odonis Campaniensis, auxilio etiam Geldoini Salmuriensis. Qui cum eis viriliter restitisset, præoccupatus morbo naturæ concessit, sepultusque jacet in ecclesia Sancti Albini juxta patrem suum.[4] Maurice count of Anjou.

DCCCCXCVII. Rex Anglorum Egelredus, habito consilio cum regni sui primatibus, utile dixit a Danis

---

[1] *Obiit . . . Ricardus*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 996.

[2] The following passage is from Florence, A.D. 995: the mistake, however, of placing Hinguar and Hubba at this date is our author's own.

[3] *Hoc tempore . . . . sollennizari fecit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 998.

[4] *Mauricius . . . . suum*] Gesta Com. Andeg., cap. vii. (D'Achery, iii. 249); see Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 326, and p. 135 above.

Ethelred pays tribute to the Danes.

post diutinam eorum infestationem dextras
DCCCCXCVIII. accipere, illisque ut a malis cessarent pla-
DCCCCXCIX. cabile tributum solvere. Quod ubi Danis
M. complacuit, statutum est eis tributum xxiiii. librarum.[1]

He marries Emma.

Eodem anno Emmam, Saxonice Elfgivam vocatam, ducis Normannorum primi Ricardi filiam, rex Egelredus duxit uxorem.[2]

Translation of S. Oswald.

Aldulfus archipræsul Eboracensis, coepiscopis et religiosis viris congregatis, Sancti Oswaldi archipræsulis ossa e tumulo levavit; nec multo post ipse defunctus Wigorniæ est sepultus; cui successit abbas Wlstanus.[3]

Massacre of the Danes.

Rex Egelredus omnes Danos Angliam incolentes, majores et minores, utriusque sexus occidere jussit in die festivitatis Sancti Bricii, quia totius Angliæ dominium suæ ditioni conati sunt subdere.[4]

Otto III. defeats and hangs Crescentius.

MI. Otto imperator Romæ Crescentem patricium bello aggreditur, sed victus Crescens et ex fuga retractus capitur, vilique jumento averse impositus circumducitur et paulatim membris truncatur, ad ultimum ante urbem suspenditur.[5]

A.D. 1002. Conspiracy of the Romans against Otto III.

MII. Otto imperator degens Romæ cum Romanis se remissius agit, tractans qualiter jura regni et ecclesiæ ad antiquum statum reformaret. Romani per hoc ad contemptum ejus adducti subito contra eum conspirant, et aliquot militum ejus peremptis eum in palatio obsident, unde per industriam Henrici ducis Baiuariæ et Hugonis marchionis Italiæ, simulato pacto vix extractus, Roma recedit cum Silvestro papa. Et quia uxor Crescentis imperatorem spe regnandi ad amorem sui pellexerat, dolens pro ejus discessu venenum ei misit; quo ille consumptus inter remeandum in Ytalia moritur.

He is poisoned and dies.

---

[1] *Rex . . librarum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1302.

[2] *Eodem . . . . . uxorem*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1002.

[3] *Aldulfus . . . Wlstanus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1002.

[4] *Rex . . . subdere*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1002.

[5] *Otto . . . . suspenditur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1001.

A.D. 1002.

Milites transalpini, corpus imperatoris defuncti cum insignibus imperii ad Galliam referentes, crebris Italorum incursibus lacessiti armis sibi viam parant. Sed cum jam res in tuto esse putaretur, dux Baioariæ Henricus, injuriato Heriberto Coloniensium archiepiscopo, a cujus ore omnes pendebant, insignia regni ab eo violenter extorsit, quasi jure hæreditario sibi competentia. Erat quippe filius Henrici ducis, qui fuit genitus de Henrico fratre primi Ottonis imperatoris. Henricus igitur dux, conciliatis sibi animis quorundam principum regni, unguitur in regem a Willigiso Maguntino archiepiscopo.[1]

His body is brought home.

Henry, duke of Bavaria, seizes the insignia of royalty, and is anointed king.

MIII. Henricus imperator Romanorum.

Henry II. emperor.

MIIII. Alfegus Wintoniensis episcopus fit archiepi-
scopus Cantuariensis.[2]

Elfege archbishop (A.D. 1006).

MV. Rex Dacorum Suein occisionem suorum in
MVI. Anglia ferens indigne, cui Deus regnum
Angliæ destinaverat, cum navibus multis et
gentibus crudelissimis venit in Angliam apud
Norwic, eamque combussit.[3]

Sweyn burns Norwich.

MVII. Rex Anglorum Egelredus pro bono pacis tri-
MVIII. butum xxxvi. librarum persolvit Danis.[4]

Tribute paid to the Danes.

MIX. [5] Fulco Nerra, cui consuetudo fuit animas Dei
MX. jurare, juvenis adhuc, collecto exercitu ultra
Blesim profectus, ad castrum Dunum devenit. Itaque præmissis Ambaziensibus Andegavi Dunenses coangustaverunt, et plurimos gladio necaverunt. Victor igitur rediens Fulco Ambazio domum Landrici obsedit, quam Gaufridus Grisatunica eidem hæreditario possidendam contulerat. Landricus et sui ab Ambazio expelluntur, et domus Landrici recepta funditus deletur. Fulco castrum Lochas et Ambaziacum Lisoio ad cus-

History of Fulk Nerra, count of Anjou (A.D. 987-1040).

---

[1] *Otto . . . archiepiscopo*] Sigebert. Gembl., A.D. 1002.

[2] *Alfegus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1006.

[3] *Rex . . combussit*] Hen. Hunt. lib. vi.; M. H. B., p. 752; R. de Monte, A.D. 1006.

[4] *Rex . . . . Danis*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1007.

[5] The following is an abridgment of the Gesta Consulum Andegavensium, cap. ix. (D'Achery, iii. 249); Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 326. See note, p. 135 above.

History of Fulk Nerra, A.D. 987-1040.

todiendum tradidit. Interea Conanus comes Britanniæ, Fulconem sciens ab Andegavi abscessisse, ad curiam regis Aurelianis ire disposuit, filiis suis ut Andegavim infestarent præcepit. Dum Fulco et Conanus Aurelianis regem expectarent, Fulco in quadam domo ad requisita naturæ secessit. In thalamo ejusdem domus a Fulcone solo pariete diviso, Conanus venit, qui sibi aperit quod filii sui quarto die usque ad portas Andegavis omnia demoliendo discurrent. Quo audito comes ad succursum suorum festinat, fingensque se Landonensi castro suo ire, nocte et die equis sæpe mutatis equitat, suis in via ut se sequantur imperat. Britones statuto die usque ad portas urbis securi impetuose currunt. Fulco et latitantes sui in eos securos celerrime irruunt; alios prosternunt, alios in fugam conversos insequuntur. Nam regressu consulis cognito, resistendi nec ad momentum constantiam habuerunt inimici. Ita dispersi quo quisque potuit citissime diffugerunt. Mortui sunt in illo conflictu duo filii Conani, innumerique pedites perempti; alii duo cum multis aliis baronibus et militibus et peditibus capti. Fulco autem statim ad curiam regis citissime redit, et ipso die quo rex venerat, ipse et quidam suus miles, equitans varium equum Alani primogeniti filii Conani, ante aulam regiam descenderunt. Quæsitum est a Britonibus quomodo equus ab illis habeatur, verumque auditur et Conano nunciatur. Deflet Conanus casum suorum, coram rege lamentatur. Ab episcopis pax quæritur, et mediante rege Roberto et Ricardo Normanniæ duce, qui Juditham filiam Conani habebat uxorem, concordia efficitur. Alanus primogenitus Conani cum fratre suo redimitur, omnes capti dato competenti pretio liberantur, et a Fulcone consulatus ultra Meduanam quiete et pacifice possidetur. Postmodum vero inter ipsum Conanum et prædictum Fulconem Andegavorum comitem, exortum est indissolubile jurgium, ita ut crebris suorum invicem depopulationibus ac

He discovers a plan of the count of Brittany to ravage his estates.

He anticipates this, and defeats the Bretons.

Peace is made and Fulk retains the county beyond the Mayenne.

Continuance of the struggle.

sanguinis effusionibus lacessiti, ad ultimum inirent cominus prælium. Cum igitur diu multumque vicissim sibi mala quæ poterant irrogassent, ab utroque decretum est, ut in loco qui Concretus dicitur quisque illorum cum suo exercitu die constituto advenientes, prælii certamen inirent. Sed Britonum exercitus, cogitata fraudis decipula, partem Fulconis exercitus nequiter prostraverunt. In prædicto denique loco ubi certamen ineundum fuerat, clam prævenientes plerique Britonum, ibique nimium astute profundum atque perlongum fodere vallum, ramisque arborum densatim superinsertis, imposita videlicet hostibus muscipula, recesserunt. Die igitur constituto, juxta condictum, dum illuc uterque cum suo exercitu adveniret, atque acies utraque jam in procinctu videretur informata, gens Britonum callida fraudisque propriæ conscia, simulat se velle fugam arripere, ut avidius demergerent hostem in muscipulam. Quod cernens Fulconis exercitus cupiensque expedite super eos irruere, corruit pars ex eis non modica in foveam Britonum astu paratam. Ilico autem conversi Britones, qui prius fugam simulaverant, inhianterque super Fulconis exercitum irruentes, asperrima quamplures ex eis cæde necaverunt. Ipsum etiam Fulconem pulsum de equo in terram loricatum dejecerunt. Qui exsurgens nimio accensus furore, dictis suos relevat exacuitque suorum animos. Hii vero, velut turbo vehementissimus per densas segetes, impellentes omnem exercitum Britonum, eos crudeli nimium cæde mactaverunt; deletoque pene universo exercitu Britonum, ipsum etiam Conanum illorum principem truncatum dextera vivum capientes Fulconi reddiderunt. Quo potito victoria et reverso ad propria non illi postmodum quispiam Britonum molestus extitit. Cum circumquaque in diversis præliorum eventibus humanum fudisset sanguinem, metu gehennæ territus, sepulchrum Salvatoris Jerosolimis adiit, et inde rediens ex uxore sua Gaufridum Martellum et filiam Adelam no-

A.D. 987-1040.

Preparation for a pitched battle.

Stratagem of the Bretons.

Fulk's force drawn into it.

Fulk dismounted.

The Breton army destroyed; and the count captured.

Fulk goes to Jerusalem.

A.D. 987–1040.

His second pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

Impositions of the Saracens.

The trick by which Fulk deceived them.

His son rises against him during his absence.

Fulk builds a church at Loches.

Attempts of Odo of Champagne and Gelduin of Saumur on Montrichard.

mine genuit. Postea idem Fulco gratia peregrinationis Romam venit, et a papa Sergio benedictione accepta iter eundi Jerusalem rursus arripuit. Sub conductu vero Jerusalem ducitur; portam tamen urbis intrare non potuit, ad quam peregrini ut intrarent violenter dare urgebantur. Dato autem pretio tam pro se quam pro aliis Christianis ad portam sibi prohibitam morantibus, urbem celeriter cum omnibus intravit, sed sepulchri claustra eis prohibuerunt. Nempe cognito quod vir alti sanguinis esset, deludendo dixerunt nullo modo alio ad sepulchrum optatum pervenire posse, nisi super illud et crucem Dominicam mingeret. Quod vir prudens licet invitus annuit. Quæsita igitur arietis vesica purgata atque mundata et optimo albo vino repleta, quin etiam apte inter ejus femora posita est; et comes discalciatus ad sepulchrum Domini accessit, vinum super sepulchrum fudit, et sic ad libitum cum omnibus sociis intravit, et fusis multis lacrimis peroravit. Interim dum esset in peregrinatione, Gaufridus Martellus, filius ejus, quem custodem comitatus reliquerat, adversus patrem insurgit. Munitiones Andegavorum usurpat, patrem redeuntem excludit. Controversia protracta diutius, tandem viris intercurrentibus religiosis filius patri reconciliatur. Ut autem Fulco quæ fecerat mala corrigeret, et Deo gratum munus offerret, Lochis juxta Angerem fluvium, Bello Loco scilicet, ecclesiam in honore sancti sepulchri, monachos cum abbate imponens ibi, construxit. Anno et dimidio quo Fulco moratus fuerat in peregrinatione, Odo Campaniensis et Geldoinus Salmuriensis terram et homines Fulconis afflixerunt. Fulco oppidum quod Monstricardum vocatur componit. Ad cujus deletionem Odo multos milites et pedites Blesis congregat. Fulco ab Ambazio discedens prope Pontilevium venit. Herebertus Cenomannensis comes, amicus Fulconis, juxta ripas Cari equitans, Benregio castra fixit. Quid plura? Acies ordinantur. Milites Odonis impetus Andegavorum et ictus Ceno-

mannorum sustinere non ferentes, protinus versi sunt in fugam. Ita fere vi. tam captis quam peremptis reliqui evaserunt. Sequenti anno Fulco ad distringendam urbem Turonicam oppidum in Monte Budelli statuit. Odo Campaniensis adjuncto sibi Salmuriensi Geldoino munitionem illam obsedit. Fulco Ligerim transmeat, et festinus tota nocte equitans summo diluculo Salmurium defensoribus vacuum intrat, et totum oppidum confestim cepit, et arcem postmodum. Fulco inde abiens Viennam transit, et Montem Basonis obsidet. Odo ab obsidione Montis Bodelli secessit. Fulco ad Lochas rediit. Sic uterque remisso exercitu quievit. Rex Robertus Constantiam filiam Willelmi Arelatensis comitis, natam de Blanca sorore Fulconis, accepit uxorem; quam idem rex consilio Hugonis Belvacensis comitis odiosam habebat. Factum est ut die quadam rex in silvam venatum iret, et Hugo comes cum illo. Duodecim igitur milites missi a Fulcone Andegavorum comite, avunculo scilicet reginæ Constantiæ, Hugonem supradictum ante regem trucidaverunt. Rursus Fulco Montem Basonis obsedit et cepit, et senescallo suo Lisoio neptem Supplicii thesaurarii uxorem dedit. Cui etiam Ambazium cum omnibus apenditiis suis donavit, et sic terra Fulconis usque ad obitum suum in pace siluit. Bis jam Jerosolimam perrexerat. Tertio autem itinere peracto, rediens intra Metensem urbem diem clausit extremum. Corpus autem illius conditum aromatibus apud Lochas sepultum est.

A.D. 987–1010.

Fulk takes Saumur and besieges Mont Bazon.

King Robert hates his wife the niece of Fulk, by the instigation of Hugh of Beauvais; whom Fulk kills.

He goes a third time to Jerusalem.

His death.

MXI.

MXII. Hoc anno persolvebatur Danis tributum de Anglia xlviii. librarum.[1]

A.D. 1012. Tribute.

Sacrosancto Dominicæ requiei sabbato archipræsuli Alfego a Danis proponitur conditio, ut si vita et libertate velit potiri, iiii. librarum persolvat. Illo nolente, necem ejus usque ad aliud sabbatum protelant. Quo

The Danes demand a ransom of Elfege.

[1] *Hoc . . . librarum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1012.

A.D. 1012.
Martyrdom of S. Elfege.

adveniente adversus illum exarserunt ira magna. Et quia vino nimis inebriati fuerant, et quia prohibuerat ne quis pro sua redemptione quicquam eis daret, de carcere ducitur, ad eorum concilium protrahitur. Mox illi e sedibus prosiliunt; aversis securibus illum dejiciunt, lapidibus, ossibus bovinis obruunt. Ad ultimum quidam Thrum nomine, quem confirmarat pridie, impia motus pietate securim capiti illius infixit. Qui statim in Domino xiii°. kalendas Maii obdormivit. Cujus corpus die sequenti Lundoniam defertur, et ab episcopis Alfhuno Lundoniensi et Eadnotho Lincolniensi in ecclesia Sancti Pauli sepelitur.[1]

He dies April 19, 1012; and is buried at S. Paul's.

Living archbishop.

Livingus, qui et Æthelstanus, Wellensis episcopus, archipræsulatum Doroberniæ suscepit.[2]

MXIII.

Miraculous dance in the churchyard of S. Magnus, in Saxony.

In cimiterio Magni martiris in Saxonia, quibusdam choream ducentibus et cantilenas sæculares obstrepentibus, in nocte Natalis Domini, sacerdos, primam Missam inchoans, imprecatus est dicens, "Placeat Deo et "Sancto Magno ut ita cantantes permaneatis usque ad annum." Qui sic permanserunt; quos nec frigus nec calor, nec fames nec sitis, nec lassitudo per annum affecit. Anno evoluto Herebertus Coloniensis archiepiscopus manus eorum solvit, et ante altare Magni martyris reconciliavit, tribus eorum statim morientibus, xv. per triduum dormientibus.[3]

Sweyn lands at Sandwich, conquers England, and makes peace with the Londoners.

Rex Danorum Suenus, qui dira fame Angliam perurgente Danemarchiam petierat, iterum reversus cum ingenti classe ad Sandicum portum est appulsus. Qui tirannidem suam exercens ubique totam Angliam in brevi sibi subjecit. Cives etiam Lundonienses datis obsidibus pacem cum eo fecerunt. Quod videns rex Ægelredus, præmissa re-

---

[1] *Sacrosancto . . sepelitur*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1012.

[2] *Livingus . . . . suscepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1013.

[3] *In cimiterio . . . dormientibus*] Abridged from William of Malmesbury, G. R. lib. ii. § 174. This story is given under A.D. 1036 in MS. B.: it occurs, however, here in MSS. A. C. and D.

gina sua Emma cum filiis suis Edwardo et Aluredo et eorum magistro Alfhuno Lundoniensi episcopo ad fratrem reginæ, secundum Ricardum Normannorum ducem, ipse subsecutus Normanniam venit, et a Ricardo duce cum honore suscipitur.[1] Hoc tempore Ricardus dux Normannorum duxit uxorem Judith nomine, sororem Goisfredi ducis Britannorum, de qua tres filios genuit, Ricardum, Robertum, et Willelmum; totidemque filias, quarum una nomine Adelizh Reinaldo Burgundionum comiti nupsit; altera Baldewino comiti Flandrensi; tertia virgo obiit.[2]

A.D. 1013. Ethelred sends his family to Normandy.

Marriage of duke Richard of Normandy.

His children.

MXIIII. Suenus tyrannus, post innumerabilia mala quæ in Anglia gesserat, ex oppido ubi pretiosi martyris corpus Eadmundi incorruptum requiescit, quod nemo prius audebat facere, grande tributum cum minis ausus est exigere. Denique imminente vespera diei Purificationis Sanctæ Mariæ, apud Geagnesburh, in generali placito quod tenuerat, hæc eadem minitans reiteravit, cum Danorum cuneis circumvallatus densissimis, Sanctum Eadmundum ex adverso venientem solus vidit armatum. Quem cum vidisset expavit, et nimio clamore vociferari cœpit, "Succurrite," inquit, "commilitones, succurrite; ecce Sanctus Eadmundus me venit occidere." Et hæc dicendo acriter a sancto confossus cuspide, de emissario cui insederat decidit, et usque ad noctis crepusculum magno cruciatus tormento, iii[tio] nonas Februarii miserabili morte vitam finivit.[3] Siquidem in provincia quæ dicitur Eastsexe quidam nobilis Wlmarus tanto languore jacebat percussus ut nullo membrorum suorum officio, nec linguæ quidem, per triduum uteretur. Cum quadam nocte parentes circumstantes exitum præstolarentur, recupe-

A.D. 1014. Sweyn demands tribute from S. Edmund's.

At Gainsborough he has a vision of S. Edmund.

His death, Feb. 3.

Story of Wulmar.

---

[1] *Rex . . . suscipitur*] Abridged from Flor. Wig., A.D. 1013.

[2] *Hoc . . . obiit*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1012; from Will. Gemmet., lib. v. c. 13.

[3] *Suenus . . . finivit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1014.

A.D. 1014. Wulmar's vision of the death of Sweyn.

rata virtute in sessum se erigens, voce gratulabunda dixit, "Hac nocte et hac hora "Sancti Eadmundi lancea transverberatus "rex Suenus oppetiit." Quod cum dixisset, in lectulo recubans ultimum flatum emisit.[1]

Canute chosen king by the Danes.

Mortuo igitur Sveno, filium ejus Canutum sibi regem constituit classica manus Danorum. At majores natu totius Angliæ ad regem Egelredum pari consensu miserunt se nullum plus amaturos quam suum dominum si eos mitius solito vellet tractare.

Ethelred makes promises of good government, and is restored.

Quibus auditis rex Egelredus, misso ad eos Eadwardo filio suo, se in omnibus eorum voluntati consensurum promisit. Ab Anglis itaque in Normanniam mittitur, rex festinato, tempore Quadragesimali, reducitur, et Canutum cum Lindisiensibus, qui Canuto favebant, bello devicit, et eum cum classica manu abire coegit, anno sequenti reversurum.[2]

A.D. 1016. Ethelred dies, April 23.

MXV. MXVI. Rex Anglorum Egelredus ix. kalendas Maii Lundoniæ defunctus est, post multas vitæ suæ tribulationes, quas super illum venturas, regalis consecrationis die post impositam coronam, prophetico spiritu sanctus ei prædixerat Dunstanus:

Dunstan's prophecy concerning him.

"Quoniam," inquit, "aspirasti ad regnum per mortem fratris "tui, quem occidit mater tua, propterea "audi verbum Domini. Hæc dicit Dominus, 'Non deficiet de domo tua gladius "'sæviens in te omnibus diebus vitæ tuæ, "'interficiens de semine tuo, quousque reg"'num tuum transferatur in regnum alie"'num cujus ritum et linguam gens cui "'præsides non novit. Nec expiabitur nisi "'longa vindicta peccatum tuum et pec"'catum matris tuæ et peccatum virorum "'qui interfuerunt consilio ejus nequam.'" Corpus autem illius in ecclesia Sancti Pauli apostoli honorifice est sepultum. Cujus

[1] *Siquidem . . . . . emisit*] This seems to be an extract from some Chronicle of S. Edmund's, hitherto unidentified. The story however occurs in the Miracula S. Edmundi; Marteno and Durand, Ampl. Coll. vi. 828, 829.

[2] *Mortuo . . . reversurum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1014.

post mortem episcopi, abbates, quique nobiliores Angliæ Canutum in regem elegere. A.D. 1016.
At cives Lundonienses et pars nobilium qui tunc erant Lundoniæ Eadmundum Ferreum Latus dictum, regis Ægelredi filium, regem levavere.[1] Double election of Canute and Edmund.
Consecratus autem est a Livingo Dorobherniæ archiepiscopo apud Lundoniam. Rex igitur Eadmundus filius Egelredi cum Canuto et plerisque ducibus Anglorum, quos Eadricus Streona, dux perfidissimus, qui patriæ suæ semper anhelabat insidiis, a rege in Danorum partem averterat, multotiens bellum commisit, et victoriam fere semper obtinuit. Victories of Edmund Ironside.
Sed tandem consilio suorum coactus pace facta cum Canuto regnum divisit, et apud Deorhist ambo convenerunt. Corona tamen regni Eadmundo remansit.[2] Division of the kingdom.
Post hæc rex Eadmundus, nocte sequentis diei festivitatis Sancti Andreæ, Lundoniæ perimitur dolo Eadrici Streonæ perfidissimi ducis, veru ferreo in secreta naturæ transfixus, dum in secessu resideret. Ille enim dux Eadricus quendam in loco stercoris abscondit, qui regem egesturum veru confoderet. Edmund murdered.
Sic defunctus rex Eadmundus cum avo suo rege pacifico Eadgaro sepultus est Glestoniæ.[3] He is buried at Glastonbury.
Canutus vero a primatibus regi in regem eligitur, fratribus Eadmundi et filiis abjectis et repudiatis. Canute sole king.

MXVII. Canutus totius Angliæ suscepit imperium. Consecratus est autem a Livingo Dorobherniæ archiepiscopo apud Lundoniam, regnumque in quatuor partes divisit, West A.D. 1017. Canute divides the kingdom into four provinces.

---

[1] *Rex Anglorum . . . levavere*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1016. The rest of the paragraph is an abridgment from the same writer: the mention of the coronation of Edmund Ironside being an addition from some other source, or probably an inference of our author's own.

[2] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1016.

[3] *Posthæc . . . Glestoniæ*] The date is nearly the same as that given by Florence; and the notice of Edmund's burial is from Florence; but the story of his death is either a paraphrase of the language of Henry of Huntingdon, or more probably an extract from some unknown Chronicle. The rest of the paragraph is abridged from Florence.

A.D. 1017.

Saxoniam sibi, East Angliam Turkillo comiti, Merciam Eadrico duci, Northymbriam Hyrco comiti.[1]

Canute sends the sons of Edmund abroad to be killed.

Canutus rex consilio Eadrici Eadwardum et Eadmundum, regis Eadmundi filios, necare proposuit. Sed quia magnum dedecus sibi videbatur ut in Anglia perimerentur, ad regem Suævorum occidendos misit, qui precibus illius nullatenus adquiescens illos ad regem Ungarorum Salomonem misit nutriendos. Quorum unus, scilicet Eadmundus, ibidem vitam finivit. Eadwardus vero Agatham filiam germani imperatoris Henrici in matrimonium accepit, ex qua Margaritam Scottorum reginam et Eadgarum suscepit.[2]

They go to Hungary.

Marriage of Edward.

A.D. 1018. Canute marries queen Emma: and condemns Eadric Streone.

MXVIII. Rex Canutus derelictam regis Egelredi reginam Elsgivam in conjugium accepit, ac in Nativitate Domini cum esset Lundoniæ perfidum ducem Eadricum in palatio jussit occidere; quia timebat insidiis ab eo aliquando circumveniri, sicut domini sui priores Ægelredus et Eadmundus, quorum diutina proditione alterum vexavit, alterum interfecit.[3]

Leofsius Thornegiensis abbas suscepit episcopatum Wigornensis ecclesiæ.[4]

Canute pays off the Danes.

Hoc anno de tota Anglia lxxii. et de Lundonia x.d. libræ exercitui Danorum sunt persolutæ, et cum rege Canuto xl. naves remansere, cæteræ vero Danemarchiam sunt revectæ.[5]

The laws of Edgar accepted by Danes and English.

Angli et Dani apud Oxenefordam de lege regis Eadgari tenenda concordes sunt effecti.[6]

War in Friesland.

In Frisonia Deoderico comite filio Arnulfi Gandavensis debellante Frisones, in vindicta patris sui ab eis occisi, Godefridus dux ad eum debellandum ab imperatore mittitur, et conserto prælio repente voce nescitur unde

---

[1] *Canutus . . comiti*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1017.

[2] *Canutus . . . suscepit*] Ibid.

[3] *Rex . . interfecit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1017; with some variations.

[4] *Leofsius . . . . ecclesiæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1016.

[5] *Hoc anno . . . revectæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1018.

[6] *Angli . . . effecti*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1018.

emissa, "Fugite, fugite," cunctis fugientibus, multi a paucis Frisonibus perimuntur; dux vero capitur.[1] A.D. 1018. Victory of the Frisians.

MXIX. Rex Anglorum et Danorum Canutus Danemarchiam adiit, et per totam hyemem mansit ibi.[2] A.D. 1019. Canute goes to Denmark.

MXX. Livingus Dorobernie archiepiscopus obiit, cui Ethelnotus qui bonus appellabatur, nobilis viri Agelmari filius, successit.[3] Hic Joseph episcopum Landaviæ et Bleduc episcopum Sancti David Cantuariæ consecravit. A.D. 1020. Ethelnoth archbishop.

Rex Canutus consilio cleri et procerum, et maxime Elfgivæ reginæ suæ, constituit monachos in monasterio quod Badricesurde vocatur, in quo rex et martyr Eadmundus incorrupto corpore requiescit.[4] Monks at S. Edmund's.

Hoc anno ecclesia quam rex Canutus et comes Turkillus in monte qui Assandun dicitur construxerant, illis præsentibus, a Wlstano Eboracensi archiepiscopo et multis aliis episcopis dedicata est.[5] Church dedicated at Assandun.

Defuncto Alfhuno Lindisfarnensi episcopo, tribus pene annis pastorali destituebatur solatio. Facto in unum conventu, cum de episcopi electione tractaretur, religiosus presbiter quidam Eadmundus supervenit, et joco dixit, "Cur me episcopum non elegistis?" Cujus jocum non jocose accepere qui aderant, sed elegerunt illum, et triduano indicto jejunio Sancti Cuthberti super hoc velle quærebant. Celebrante presbitero Missam ad caput ipsius sancti, in medio canone quasi de ejusdem patris sepulchro vox audita est, quæ tribus vicibus Eadmundum episcopum nominavit.[6] Strange election of a bishop of Lindisfarne.

---

[1] *In Frisonia . . capitur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1018.

[2] *Rex . . . ibi*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1019.

[3] *Livingus . . . successit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1020. The rest of the sentence is from some other source. See above, p. 138.

[4] *Rex . . . requiescit*] See the Chronicle of S. Benedict of Hulme, Mon. Angl. iii. 135.

[5] *Hoc anno . . . dedicata est*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1020.

[6] *Defuncto . . . nominavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1020.

A.D. 1021. S. Edmund's church built.

MXXI. Alfwinus, Orientalium Anglorum episcopus, primus ecclesiam Sancti Eadmundi ædificare cœpit.[1]

A.D. 1022. Ethelnoth goes to Rome.

MXXII. Athelnodus Doroberniæ archiepiscopus Romam ivit, quem Benedictus papa cum honore suscepit, et pallium illi dedit.[2]

A.D. 1023. Death of Wulfstan archbishop of York.

MXXIII. Wlstanus Eboracensis archiepiscopus Eboraci defungitur, sed in Heli sepelitur.[3] Qui cum quodam tempore orationis causa illuc veniens in capite processionis episcopali more baculo pastorali staret innixus, terramque subito usque ad medium pene sui baculus intraret, ipse de rei admirans eventu, suæ ibi requiei prophetavit præsagium, pluribus dicens audientibus "Hæc " requies mea in sæculum sæculi, hic ha" bitabo." Jacet ergo in Helyensi ecclesia ubi de infixione baculi suam prædixit sepulturam, cui successit Alfricus Wintoniensis præpositus.

He chooses his grave.

A.D. 1024. Translation of S. Elfege.

MXXIIII. Corpus Sancti Alfegi martyris de Lundonia Doroberniam est translatum.[4]

Second marriage of the duke of Normandy.

Post mortem Judith accepit Ricardus secundus dux Normannorum uxorem nomine Papiam, et genuit ex ea duos filios, Malgerum archiepiscopum Rothomagensem, et Willelmum comitem de Archis.[5]

His war in Burgundy.

Idem Ricardus exercitum Normannorum per tertium Ricardum filium suum usque ad Milinandum castrum juxta Alpes duxit, et idem castrum viribus Normannorum cepit, et Hugonem comitem Cabilonensem, dominum ejusdem castri, qui Rainaldum Burgundionum comitem trans fluvium Araris, generum ejusdem Ricardi, in vinculis tenebat, ad liberationem ejus coegit. Dedit etiam

---

1 *Alfwinus . . . . cœpit*] Chron. S. Ben. of Hulme; Mon. Angl. iii. 205.

2 *Athelnodus . . . . dedit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1022.

3 *Wlstanus . . . sepelitur*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1023. The story that follows is taken from the Historia Eliensis, lib. ii. c. 86 (ed. Stewart, i. 205).

4 *Corpus . . . translatum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1023.

5 *Post . . . . . Archis*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1024; from Will. Gemmet. lib. vii. cap. 7.

idem Ricardus secundus duas villas in Normannia, scilicet Wellebum supra Sequanam et Cambaium in Oximensi pago, antecessoribus Symonis comitis Vulcasini, ut liceret exercitum Normanniæ transire per terram suam ad supradictam expeditionem peragendam.[1]

A.D. 1024. He purchases a passage through the Vexin.

MXXV.

MXXVI. Ricardus secundus dux Normannorum obiit. Successit ei filius ejus Ricardus tertius. Hic genuit Nicholaum postea abbatem Sancti Audoeni. Qui primo anno ducatus sui mortuus est. Cui successit Robertus frater ejus, qui genuit Willelmum de Herleva non sponsata, qui postea Angliam conquisivit.[2]

A.D. 1026. Richard III. and Robert II. dukes of the Normans.

MXXVII. Cum regi Anglorum et Danorum Canuto intimatum fuisset quod Norregani regem suum Olavum propter ejus simplicitatem et mansuetudinem, æquitatem et religiositatem nimis vilipenderent, multum auri et argenti quibusdam illorum misit, rogans ut illo spreto deditionem sibi facerent, ac super se regnare permitterent. Qui cum aviditate munera suscipientes, ei remandaverunt ad illum suscipiendum se paratos fore quandocunque vellet venire.[3] Sequenti igitur anno L. navibus magnis Norregam devectus rex Canutus Olavum regem de illa expulit, sibique eam subjugavit, et tertio anno ad Angliam rediit.[4]

A.D. 1027. Canute contrives the conquest of Olaf king of Norway.

He returns to England in the third year.

Mortuo Baldewino cum Barba comite Flandrensi, successit ei Balduinus qui vocatus est de Insula, qui duxit Alam filiam Roberti regis Francorum, ex qua genuit Balduinum, et Robertum Frisonem, et Mathildem quam Willelmus dux Normanniæ duxit; de qua genuit Robertum, Willelmum, Ricardum, Henricum, et filias Ceciliam, Aeliz, Con-

Succession of the counts of Flanders.

Matilda duchess of the Normans.

---

[1] *Idem . . . peragendam*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1024; from Will. Gemmet. lib. v. cap. 16.

[2] *Ricardus . . . conquisivit*] See Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1026.

[3] *Cum . . . venire*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1027.

[4] *Sequenti . . rediit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1028, 1029.

A.D. 1027.

stantiam, Adelam quæ nupsit Stephan comiti Blesensi.[1]

Praises of Canute.

[2] De probitate et potentia Canuti regis Anglorum pauca sunt perstringenda; nec enim ante eum tantæ magnitudinis rex fuerat in Anglia. Erat autem dux totius Daciæ, totius Angliæ, totius Norwagiæ, simul et Scotiæ. Extra numerum vero bellorum quibus maxime splenduit, tria gessit eleganter. Primum quod filiam suam Gunnildam imperatori Romano cum ineffabilibus divitiis maritavit.

He marries his daughter to the emperor Henry III. He redeems half the tolls on pilgrims.

Quam Rodingarus Alemannicus impetivit de adulterio, sed Mimekinus eam defendit et Rodingarum interfecit.[3]

Secundum quod Romam pergens omnes malas exactiones in via quæ per Gallias tendit, quæ vocantur telonea vel transversa, data pecunia sua, diminui fecit usque ad medietatem; tertium quod cum maximo vigore floreret imperii sedile suum in littore maris cum ascenderet statui jussit. Dixit autem mari ascendenti, "Tu meæ "ditionis es, et terra in qua sedeo mea est, "nec fuit qui impune meo resisteret imperio. "Impero igitur tibi ne in terram meam as-"cendas, ne vel vestes vel membra domina-"toris tui madere præsumas." Mare vero de more conscendens pedes ejus et crura sine reverentia madefecit. Rex igitur resiliens ait, "Sciant omnes habitantes orbem vanam et "frivolam regum esse potentiam, nec regis "quempiam nomine dignum præter Eum "Cujus nutu cœlum, terra, mare, legibus "obediunt æternis." Rex igitur Canutus, qui a quibusdam Cnut dicitur, nunquam postea coronam auream cervici suæ imposuit, sed super ymaginem Domini quæ cruci affixa erat posuit eam in æternum ad laudem Dei regis magni.

How he rebuked the flattery of his courtiers.

He places his crown on the Crucifix.

---

[1] *Mortuo . . . Blesensi*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1027.

[2] *De probitate*] The following passage is taken from Henry of Huntingdon, Hist. Angl. lib. vi.; Mon. Hist. Brit. pp. 757, 758; R. de Monte, A.D. 1027.

[3] *Quam interfecit*] Inserted in the margin of MS. A. See Will. Malmesb. G. R. ii. § 188; Bromton, ap. Twysden, c. 933.

MXXVIII. A.D. 1030.

MXXIX.

MXXX. Sanctus Olavus rex et martyr, Haroldi regis Norreganorum filius, in Norrega injuste perimitur a Norreganis.[1] Martyrdom of S. Olaf.

MXXXI. Canutus rex de Danemarchia magno cum honore Romam ivit, et Sancto Petro ingentia dona obtulit, et a Johanne papa ut scolam Anglorum ab omni tributo et theloneo liberaret impetravit, et ante sepulchrum apostolorum vitæ suæ emendationem Deo devovit.[2] Scripsit etiam ad Ethelnothum metropolitanum et ad omnes episcopos et primates totius Angliæ in hæc verba: "Præ-"cipio et obtestor omnes meos episcopos "et regni præpositos per fidem quam mihi "et Deo debetis, quatenus faciatis ut ante-"quam ego in Angliam veniam omnia de-"bita quæ Deo secundum legem antiquam "debemus, sint persoluta, scilicet elemosinæ "pro aratris et decimæ animalium ipsius "anni procreatorum, et denarii quos Romæ "ad Sanctum Petrum debemus sive ex "urbibus sive ex villis; et mediante Au-"gusto decimæ frugum, et in festivitate "Sancti Martini primitiæ seminum, ad ec-"clesiam in cujus parochia quisque degit, "quæ Anglice Cyricsceat appellantur."[3]

A.D. 1031. Canute's visit to Rome.

His letter to the clergy.

Robertus rex Francorum obiit, cui successit filius ejus Henricus.[4] Henry I. king of the French.

MXXXII. Constructam basilicam apud Bedricheswrdam Dorobernensis archipræsul Agelnothus consecravit in honore Sancti Eadmundi regis et martyris.[5] A.D. 1032. Consecration of S. Edmund's.

MXXXIII. Robertus et Ricardus minuendæ domo multitudinis causa, hoc tempore a Normannia Francorum digressi, Apuliam expetunt, et Italis inter se dissidentibus, dum contra A.D. 1033. The Normans in Italy.

---

[1] *Sanctus . . . Norreganis*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1030.

[2] *Canutus . . devovit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1031. The rest of the paragraph is an abridgment of Canute's letter, given in full by Florence.

[3] *appellantur*] nominantur, D.

[4] *Robertus . . Henricus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1032; Will. Gemmet. lib. vi. c. 6.

[5] *Constructam . . . . . martyris*] This is noticed by Florence, but not in these words.

A.D. 1033. Conquests of the Normans.

alterum auxilium præstant, hac opportunitate Italos callide et fortiter debellant, et successus urgendo suos nomen suum dilatant et futuræ prosperitatis sibi viam parant.[1]

A.D. 1034. Brihtege bishop of Worcester.

MXXXIIII. Britheagus Persorensis abbas, filius sororis Wlstani Eboracensis archiepiscopi, Wicciorum factus est episcopus.[2]

Foundation of the abbey of Bec.

Herluinus Beccensis ecclesiæ primus abbas, de militia ad monachatum venire desiderans, in fundo sui juris qui Burnevilla dicitur monasterium in honore Sanctæ Mariæ construxit, et ibidem est abbas constitutus. Sed quia locus inaquosus erat, in vallem ad rivum qui Beccus dicitur secessit, et ibi in honore ejusdem matris Domini nobile cœpit ædificare cœnobium, et primo Lanfrancum,
MXXXV. deinde Anselmum, ambos postmodum Cantuariæ archiepiscopos, secum associavit.[3]

A.D. 1036. Canute disposes of his kingdoms to his sons before his death.

MXXXVI. Canutus rex ante suum obitum filium suum et Alfgivæ reginæ, Suanum scilicet, super Norreganos regem constituit; super Danos etiam suum et Alfgivæ filium Hardecnutum regem constituit. Haroldus vero dixit se filium esse Canuti et Alfgivæ, licet id minime verum esset. Dicunt enim filium cujusdam sutoris illum fuisse, et Alfgivam reginam illum rege nesciente in filium sibi adoptasse, et quasi regis filium fecisse nutriri. Eodem modo dicunt Suanum esse filium cujusdam presbiteræ.[4]

Henry III. emperor.

Henricus imperator Romanus.

Surnames of the emperors.

Imperatores ab antiquis temporibus modo Romæ, modo Constantinopolis reipublicæ commodis inhiantes, in quo maxime fecerunt sibi nomen, et notariis notum est et redactum in actis. Itaque Julii Cæsaris strenuitatem, felicitatem Augusti, Titi liberalitatem, innocentiam Trajani, Constantini

[1] *Robertus . . . . parant*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1032.

[2] *Britheagus . . . . . episcopus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1033.

[3] *Herluinus . . . . . associavit*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1034. A very brief abstract of William of Jumiéges, lib. vi. cap. 9.

[4] *Canutus . . . . . presbiteræ*] Abridged from Flor. Wig., A.D. 1035.

fidem, Theodosii pœnitentiam, magisterium Justiniani, Karoli magnanimitatem, facetiam Henrici poteris admirari, poteris approbare, poteris æmulari, dum te mundus agnoverit, imperiali collocatum in sede.[1]

A.D. 1036. Characteristics of the emperors.

Imperatoris Henrici fuit in curia diaconus quidam qui litterarum peritiam et elegantiam vocis vitio corporis deformabat, vehemens mulierum amator. Cui quadam nocte sollempni volutato cum meretricula, cum hoc ad imperatoris conscientiam pervenisset, mandat imperator ut ad evangelium publice legendum se præparet. Diaconus, accessum altaris pro peccati conscientia subterfugiens, obtemperare detrectat. Imperator instat et urget ut diaconi probet constantiam; et ait, "Quia mihi parere nonvis in obsequio "tam facili, terram meam exeas." Diaconus amplexus sententiam, cum sarcinis recessit ab urbe. Quem missis cum festinatione nunciis revocat imperator, dicens, "Quia "pluripenderis Dei timorem quam meas "minas, episcopatum habeto qui primus "vacaverit, tantum renuncies amori mere"triculæ."[2]

How the emperor promoted an unchaste deacon who, conscious of his sin, had refused to read the Gospel.

Idem imperator sororem habens sanctimonialem, eam suo deesse lateri non patiebatur. Cum autem quidam clericus curialis quadam nocte cum sanctimoniale cupitis frueretur amplexibus, et diutius se voluptas protenderet, illuxit dies. Et ecce totam terram nix operuerat. Ne vero clericus deprehenderetur, juxta votum suum monialis dorsum ascendit et extra curiam est evectus. Imperator autem per fenestram forte prospiciens, clericum equitantem aspexit; vacantem episcopatum eidem dedit. Quem modeste redarguens et auribus insusurrans dixit, "Vide ne ulterius mulierem inequites." Sororem

How the emperor saw his sister carrying her lover on her back.

Promotion of the lover.

[1] *Imperatores . . sede*] This passage, apparently part of an address to an emperor, was perhaps found by our author in the collection of anecdotes from which he gathered the following stories.

[2] *Imperator . . . meretriculæ*]. See Will. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 191; where the story is told in similar but not identical language.

A.D. 1036. The sister made abbess.

autem abbatissam constituit, dicens, "Vide "ne clericum amplius equitem patiaris."[1]

How the emperor was rebuked for despising an ugly priest.

Idem imperator venaturus silvam adiit Missam auditurus. Sacerdos ultra modum deformis erat. Imperator secum tacitus cogitabat quare Deus tam deformem hominem sacramenta sua conficere sineret. Mox cum ad versum tractus ventum esset, "scitote quo-"niam Ipse est Deus," sacerdos, socordiam pueri ministrantis increpitans, respexit et concitatiore voce, quasi cogitanti imperatori responderit, dixit "Ipse fecit nos, et non "ipsi nos." Quo dicto repercussus imperator propheticum virum æstimans, invitum et renitentem sullimavit in episcopum.[2]

The priest promoted.

A tumult takes place at Mentz between the servants of the archbishop and those of the abbot of Fulda.

Idem imperator Pentecosten apud Maguntiam celebravit. Fuldensis autem abbas privilegium habet ut in præcipuis festivitatibus sedeat imperatoris ad dexteram. Igitur inter cubicularios abbatis et archiepiscopi de ponendis sedilibus oritur controversia. Pars altera sudes accipere, pars saxa jacere; pars properat enses evaginare. Sic furore per ecclesiam grassante, sanguine pavimentum inundat. Sed episcopis mediantibus pax reformatur, sollemnis dies agitur, cantibus festivis insistitur. Sequentia quæ sic incipit, "Sancti Spiritus," cum ultimo versu, scilicet "hunc diem gloriosum fecisti," percantatur. Cum autem hinc inde chori conticuissent, vox ab aere lapsa late satis intonuit, "Hunc diem bellicosum ego feci." Imperator itaque dapes regias quæ tam sibi quam curialibus paratæ fuerant pauperibus erogavit, et pauperibus diem gloriosum fecit.[3]

A miraculous utterance thereupon.

Quidam de genere senatorio duxit uxorem; convivium sodalibus fecit; ludo vacaturus in Martium campum exivit. Anulum spon-

---

[1] *Idem . . . . . patiaris*] Will. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 190.

[2] *Idem . . . episcopum*] This story is peculiar to our author, and is perhaps evidence that he took the whole series from some independent source common to William of Malmesbury. See Steindorff, Jahrbücher des Deutschen Reichs unter Heinrich III., vol. i., p. 536.

[3] *Idem . . fecit*] Will. Malmesb. G. R. ii. § 192.

salitium æreæ statuæ quæ digitum habebat extentum in digito posuit. Post ludum anulum repetens, invenit statuæ digitum ad volam usque curvatum. Intempesta nocte redit ad statuam, et digitum iterum extentum et anulum surreptum miratus est. Cumque se juxta conjugem collocasset, sensit quiddam nebulosum et densum inter illam et se volutari, quod sentiri posset nec videri posset. Hoc obstaculo prohibitus ab amplexu, vocem etiam audivit, "Mecum "concumbe, nam hodie me desponsasti. "Venus ego sum, digito cujus anulum im- "posuisti, quem habeo, nec reddam alicui." Tunc juvenis, habito cum amicis consilio, cuidam Palumbo presbitero suburbano, nigromanticis artibus instructo, rem ex ordine pandit. Qui grandi victus mercimonio compositam juveni tradit epistolam, dicens, "Vade illa noctis hora foras urbem ad "compitum; stans tacite considera; trans- "ibunt hominum figuræ utriusque sexus; "quicquid ad lætitiam pertinet vel tristi- "tiam in illorum videbis et vultibus et "gestibus. Nullum illorum compellabis, "et si loquatur tecum non respondeas. "Sequetur illam turbam quidam reliquis "statura procerior et forma corpulentior. "Huic tacitus epistolam trades legendam." Juvenis presbiteri jussa complevit. Inter cæteros transeuntes vidit mulierem ornatu meretricio mulam inequitantem. Ultimo, qui dominus videbatur, protenta manu tacitus porrexit epistolam. Dæmon notum sigillum non ausus contempnere, legit scriptum, moxque brachiis in cœlum elatis, "Deus," inquit, "omnipotens, quamdiu patieris nequi- "tias Palumbi presbiteri!" Mox a latere suo missi satellites anulum a Venere plurimum tergiversata vix tandem extorquent. Ita juvenis sine quovis obstaculo potitus est uxoris amore. Sed Palumbus, cum dæmonis clamorem ad Deum de se factum audisset, finem dierum sibi præsigniri præsensit. Quocirca membris omnibus ultro truncatis

A.D. 1036.

Story of the young bridegroom who put his ring on the finger of the statue of Venus.

The advice of the priest Palumbus.

The young man recovers the ring.

End of Palumbus.

A.D. 1036.

How pope Gregory VI. governed by force of arms.

confessus est papæ coram populo flagitia multa.[1]

Circa dies istos fuit Gregorius papa VI^tus^.

Hic arma undecunque et equos conquisivit, milites adornavit, et primum basilicam beati Petri præoccupans, raptores oblationum vel extinxit vel effugavit, et prædia omnia et oppida multis temporibus amissa in antiquum jus reformavit. Ita pax, per multorum segnitiem exulans, per unum hominem in patriam rediit. Unde Quirites rapto assueti sanguinarium illum vocabant. Cardinales etiam, cum beatus ille valetudine decumberet, ausu temerario eum ammonebant ne se in ecclesia beati Petri cum cæteris apostolicis tumulari præciperet, quam tot hominum cædibus fœdasset. Quibus ille "Omnia committamus divino examini. Corpus meum "antecessorum meorum more compositum "ante januas ecclesiæ sistite. Januæ seris "et repagulis dampnentur. Si Deus voluerit ut ingrediar, applaudetis miraculo. "Si minus, de cadavere meo facite quod "vestris insederit animis." Cum ille spiritum efflasset extremum, ante portas seris occlusas exanimis præsulis exuvias deportant. Sed mox divinitus turbo emissus omnia repagulorum obstacula dirumpens, valvas etiam ipsas vehementi patefactas impetu ad parietem impulit. Populus astans acclamat in gaudium; pontificis corpus cum patribus celebri veneratione locatur.[2]

The cardinals question his right to be buried in S. Peter's.

How the question was settled.

[3] Circa dies istos Eustachius cum Gernovagis comes Boloniensium Ydam Godefridi ducis Boloniæ[4] primogenitam duxit uxorem; ex qua tres filios sustulit, Eustachium qui

Eustace of Boulogne married a daughter of duke Godfrey of Bouillon.

---

[1] *Quidam . . . multa*] Will. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 205. See also Pertz, Mon. Hist. Germ. x. 471.

[2] *Circa . . . locatur*] Abridged from Will. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 201–203. It is quite apocryphal.

[3] The following section consists of the account of the family of Eustace of Boulogne, which our author probably took from William of Malmesbury, with the commentary of his own abridged from Aulus Gellius, as given above, p. 43.

[4] *Boloniæ*] Altered from Builoniæ, in A.

patri successit in comitatu; Godefridum quem tempore procedente, subacta Jerusalem, Christiani communiter elegerunt in regem; Baldeuinum qui fratri Godefrido succedens consecratus est rex Jerosolimorum. Yda siquidem comitissa tribus his filiis suis munus nutricationis exhibuit. Nam credidit esse contra naturam imperfectum atque dimidiatum matris genus parere, statimque partum a se projicere jam viventem, jam hominem, jam matris officia implorantem. Credidit etiam naturam fœminis mammarum ubera, quasi quosdam venustiores nævulos, liberorum alendorum et non ornandi pectoris causa dedisse. Sunt enim matres prodigiosæ quæ fontem illum, sanctissimi corporis humani generis educatorem, arefaciunt et extinguunt, quæ partus suos deserunt, ablegant a se, nutriendos aliis dedunt, vinculum illud coagulumque animi atque amoris, quod parentes cum filiis consociat, intercindunt. Ille namque vigor maternæ flagrantiæ sensim atque paulatim restringitur; et omnis impatientissimæ sollicitudinis strepitus consilescit, neque multo minor commendati ad nutricem aliam filii, quam morte amissi oblivio.

A.D. 1036.

Her three sons.

AGELLIUS, LIBRO X°III°.

How she did a mother's duty towards them

Mortuo jam Canuto et Wintoniæ in veteri monasterio sepulto, misit rex Haroldus Wintoniam, et opum quas rex Canutus Alfgivæ reliquerat meliorem partem ademit, et quasi justus hæres, non tamen cunctis consentientibus, cœpit regnare. Sed in brevi regnum Angliæ sorte dividitur, et Haroldo pars septemtrionalis, Hardecnuto provenit australis.[1]

King Harold seizes his step-mother's treasures.

Division of the kingdom.

Obiit Robertus dux Normanniæ frater tertii Ricardi ab Jerosolimis rediens, apud Niceam civitatem, cui successit Willelmus Bastard filius ejus in pucrili ætate; qui Angliam

Death of duke Robert of Normandy.

[1] *Mortuo . . . australis*] From Flor. Wig., A.D. 1035.

A.D. 1037.

postea conquisivit, pater Willelmi regis Rufi et Henrici.[1]

The Ethelings, Alfred and Edward, come to England.

MXXXVII. Innocentes clitones Aluredus et Eadwardus, Ethelredi regis quondam filii, de Normannia, ubi cum Ricardo avunculo suo manserant tempore longo, multis Normannis militibus secum assumptis, in Angliam paucis transvecti navibus ad suæ matris colloquium, quæ morabatur Wintoniæ, venere. Quod indigne ferebant potentes nonnulli, qui, licet injustum esset, Haroldo multo devotiores extitere quam illis; maxime comes Godwinus. Hic quidem Aluredum, cum versus Lundoniam ad regis Haroldi colloquium, ut mandarat, properaret, retinuit et artam in custodiam posuit. Sociorumque illius quosdam disturbavit, quosdam cathenavit et postea cæcavit; nonnullos cute capitis abstracta cruciavit, et manibus ac pedibus amputatis multavit; multos etiam vendi jussit, et mortibus variis apud Gyldefordam sexcentos viros occidit. Quo audito regina Elfgiva filium suum Eadwardum, qui secum mansit, cum festinatione Normanniam scilicet remisit. Deinde Aluredus Godwini et aliorum jussione ad insulam Hely ducitur, ubi oculis ejus erutis monachis traditur custodiendus.[2]

Alfred is seized, and his attendants scalped and mutilated.

Edward sent back to Normandy.

A.D. 1038. Harold becomes sole king.

MXXXVIII. Haroldus rex Merciorum et Northanhymbrorum, ut per totam regnaret Angliam, a principibus et omni populo eligitur. Hardecanutus vero, quia in Danemarchia moras innexuit, penitus abjicitur. Cujus mater Ælfgiva regina hyemis initio sine misericordia expellitur Anglia. Quæ in Flandriam transvecta, a nobili comite Baldeuino cum honore suscipitur.[3]

Emma goes to Flanders.

---

1 *Obiit . . . Henrici*] This passage is taken, through Robert de Monte, A.D. 1035, from William of Jumiéges, lib. vi. cap. 13, and Flor. Wig., A.D. 1035.

2 *Innocentes . . . . custodiendus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1036.

3 *Haroldus . . . suscipitur*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1037. Here the Dublin MS. proceeds at once with the discovery of the tomb of Pallas, below, p. 187; omitting all that intervenes.

MXXXIX. Athelnothus Dorobernıæ archiepiscopus vita decessit, cui regis capellanus Eadsius in archiepiscopatum successit.[1] A.D. 1039. Eadsin archbishop.

Mortuo Alfrico Estanglorum episcopo, Stigandus regis capellanus pro eo episcopus est constitutus. Sed postmodum ejecto Stigando Grimkitel Sutsaxonum episcopus pro eo substituitur.[2] Stigand bishop of East Anglia.

Constantia mater Henrici regis Francorum, novercalibus incitata machinamentis, filium suum regem a regno Francorum expellere modis omnibus attemptavit.[3] Constantia conspires against Henry king of France.

Stigandus Australium Saxonum episcopatum tenuit, et fratri suo Egelmaro Orientalium Anglorum præsulatum adquisivit.[4] Stigand bishop in Sussex.

MXL. [5] Gaufridus Martellus post mortem patris sui consulatum adeptus est, et in Ambaziaco milites multos cum Lisoio posuit, qui Turonim Blesimque vastarent; et ad ultimum omnibus copiis suis congregatis, Turonicam urbem obsedit, quam Henricus rex Francorum, ablatam a filiis Odonis Campaniensis Theobaldo et Stephano, eidem Martello contulerat. Dimisit tamen Martellus Lisoium senescallum suum Ambaziaco cum CC. militibus et mille quingentis peditibus, qui vias custodirent, ne Blesenses ad ejus exercitum libere descenderent. A.D. 1040. Geoffrey Martel, count of Anjou, besieges Tours.

Comes Teobaldus cum infinita gente per Pontilevium transiens juxta Monstricardum ad flumen Cari descendit, et in pratis Sancti Quintini ante Blu-

Helias filius Johannis de Fleca Sibillam filiam cujusdam comitis Longobardiæ, neptem scilicet Heberti quondam Cenomannensis comitis, duxit uxorem, et cum

Theobald of Champagne comes as far as the Cher.

---

[1] *Athelnothus . . . . . successit*] Eadsius regis capellanus fit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, B. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1038.

[2] *Mortuo . . . substituitur*] om. B. The passage is an abridgment from Florence, A.D. 1038.

[3] *Constantia . . . attemptavit*] This passage is cited in the *Imagines*, A.D. 1173, as from Hugh of S. Victor; see below, p. 364. Cf. W. Gemmet., lib. vi., c. 7.

[4] *Stigandus . . adquisivit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1038.

[5] The history of Geoffrey Martel is from the Gesta Consulum Andegavensium, cap. ix.; Chroniques d'Anjou, i., 331–334; see above p. 135, note.

A.D. 1040.

Preparations for battle.

ream tentoria fixit. Martellus relicta obsidione Laudiaco monte prima die eis obvius venit. In crastino Blesenses ex castris proruunt, Andegavenses a Laudiaco eis e contra procedunt. Cumque jam se invicem contuerentur, Martellus per sex acies exercitum suum distribuit, totumque de comite transferens se in militem, alios lancea, alios ense persequitur. Teobaldini impetus Andegavorum non ferentes, in fugam versi, scapulas dederunt, Qui cum Martello erant omnes in ferrum ruunt, ipso præ omnibus fortissime et fugante fugientes et prosternente. Theobaldus itaque cum D. et lxxx. militibus in nemore quod Braium dicitur, capitur et abstrahitur. Stephanus frater Theobaldi, arrepta fuga, cum aliquibus militibus evasit. Theobaldus, cum esset in vinculis, et pro eo nullam argenti et auri Martellus redemptionem vellet accipere, Turonim pro sua liberatione concessit. Quindecim sacramenta juravit Theobaldus propria manu consuli Gaufrido, et xx. barones castellenses cum eo, et xl. milites vavassores eisdem verbis quibus et ipse.

ea comitatum Cenomannensem suscepit. De Sibilla vero genuit Sibillam quam Fulco filius Fulconis Rechin, postmodum rex Jerosolimorum, duxit uxorem; de qua genuit Galfridum Plantegenest et Sibillam Flandriæ comitissam.[1]

Defeat and capture of Theobald.

He gives up his claim on Tours.

Quarrel of Geoffrey with William of Poictou about Saintonge,

[2] Willelmus Pictavensis comes comitatum Santonicum suum esse dicebat, et vi occupatum tenebat, quia patrui sui fuerat; cujus hæredes absque liberis mortui erant, et ideo ad hæredes rem debere reverti

Martellus eundem consulatum reclamabat, quia avi sui fuerat. sororis avi sui honorem affirmabat. Denique

[1] *Helias . . . comitissam*] From the 8th book of William of Jumiéges, written by Robert de Monte; with the pedigree brought two generations lower.

[2] *Willelmus, &c.*] Gesta Cons. Andeg. cap. ix. § 12. See Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 332, sq.

hujus litigii causa Martellus cum Willelmo pugnare disponens, oppidum quod Capud Multonæ dicitur cum exercitu adiit. Willelmus Martello et suis occurrit. Pictavenses tremefacti, duce suo graviter vulnerato, respirandi locum non habebant. Martellus igitur fugientes insequitur. Pictavensis comes vulneratur et capitur.[1] Andegavenses cæde peracta reversi sunt in campo, et ibi intra tentoria nocte illa quieverunt. Pictavensis comes consulatum Sanctonicum quietum concessit Gaufrido Martello, et multis pecuniis datis liber a captione, qua illum Martellus spatio trium annorum tenuerat, ad propria remeans, ipso in anno finem vitæ habuit.[2] A.D. 1040. Victory of Geoffrey; capture of William. William surrenders his claims on Saintonge.

In diebus illis Willelmus dux Normannorum Herebertum Cenomannicum consulem nimis impugnabat. Cui Martellus auxiliator et tutator fuit, et idcirco dux Normannorum, qui Angliam adquisivit, multa perpessus est a Martello. Gaufridus Martellus cum filios non haberet, nepotibus suis Gaufrido barbato et Fulconi Rechin, filiis scilicet Adhelæ sororis suæ et Alberici comitis de Gastineis, bona sua dereliquit. Andegaviam et Sanctonas Fulconi, Turonicam cum Landonensi castro Barbato donavit.[3] Ædificavit autem cœnobium Sanctæ Trinitatis apud Windocinum castrum. Uxor vero ejus ædificavit ibidem in supercilio montis ecclesiam Sancti Georgii, canonicosque imposuit, et capellam consulis vocari præcepit; Gaufridus etiam comes perfecit ecclesiam Sancti Nicholai in suburbio urbis Andegavis, quam pater ejus Fulco inceperat nec perfecerat, ibidemque sepultus quiescit.[4] William of Normandy has quarrels with Geoffrey. Geoffrey's disposal of his estates. His buildings. His death (A.D. 1060).

Haroldus rex Anglorum obiit Lundoniæ, et in Westmonasterio sepelitur. Quo sepulto pro- Death of Harold.

---

[1] *Willelmus . . . capitur*] Gesta Cons. Andeg. c. ix. § 12–17; greatly abridged.

[2] *Andegavenses . . . habuit*] Gesta Cons. And. c. ix. § 18.

[3] *In diebus . . . donavit*] Gesta Cons. And. c. ix. § 19.

[4] *Ædificavit . . . quiescit*] Gesta Cons. And. c. ix. § 20.

A.D. 1040. Hardicanute becomes king.

ceres Angliæ ad Hardecanutum in Flandriam apud Briegc, ubi cum matre sua morabatur, mittentes, eum in regem gaudenter susceperunt. Consecratus est autem ab Ethelnotho Doroberniæ archiepiscopo apud Lundoniam. Qui mox ut regnare cœpit, injuriarum quas vel sibi vel genitrici suæ fecerat rex Haroldus non immemor, Aluricum Eboracensem archiepiscopum, Gowinum comitem, Styr majorem domus et alios magnæ dignitatis viros Lundoniam misit, et ipsius Haroldi corpus effodere et in gronnam projicere jussit. Quod cum projectum fuisset, id extrahere jussit, et in flumen Tamense mandavit projicere. Brevi autem post a quodam piscatore ad Danos allatum est, et in cimiterio quod habuerunt Lundoniæ sepultum est apud Sanctum Clementem.[1]

He punishes the ministers of Harold and disinters his body, which is buried at S. Clement Danes.

A.D. 1041. The Etheling Edward comes to England.

MXLI. Eadwardus Egelredi quondam regis Anglorum filius de Normannia, ubi multis exulaverat annis, venit in Angliam, et a fratre suo Hardecanuto rege susceptus honorifice in curia sua mansit.[2]

A.D. 1042. Death of Hardicanute.

MXLII. Hardecanutus, dum apud Lamhythe in convivio cum magna lætitia bibens staret, repente inter bibendum miserabili casu in terram corruit, et sic mutus permanens vi^to^. idus Junii exspiravit, et Wintoniam delatus juxta patrem suum Canutum est tumulatus. Cujus frater Eadwardus, annitentibus maxime Gowino comite et Wigornense præsule Livingo, Lundoniæ levatur in regem. Cujus pater Egelredus, cujus pater Eadgarus, cujus pater Eadmundus, cujus pater Eadwardus senior.[3]

Edward succeeds.

Elsinus fit archiepiscopus Cantuariæ.[4]

---

[1] *Haroldus . . . Clementem*] From Florence of Worcester, A.D. 1041; who, however, does not mention the churchyard of S. Clement Danes.

[2] *Eadwardus . . . mansit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1041.

[3] *Hardecanutus . . senior*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1043.

[4] *Elsinus . . . Cantuariæ*] See above, A.D. 1039.

MXLIII. Eadwardus ab archipræsulibus Eadsio Dorobernensi et Alurico Eboracensi aliisque præsulibus Angliæ prima die Paschæ ungitur in regem Wintoniæ.[1]



A.D. 1043. Coronation of Edward.

Romæ corpus Pallantis repertum est, ad capud cujus ardens est inventa lucerna quæ nullius flatus violentia, nullius liquoris aspergine, valeret extingui. Quod cum multi mirarentur, unus stilo subtus flammam foramen fecit; sic aer introductus ignem extinxit.[2]

Discovery of the tomb of Pallas.

MXLIIII. Ailwardus Lundoniensis præsul, qui et ante episcopatum et in episcopatu abbatis jure Eoveshammensi cœnobio præfuit, cum pontificatum amministrare pro sua infirmitate minus sufficeret, ad monasterium Ramesege secessit ibique resedit.[3]

A.D. 1044. Ailward, bishop of London, retires to Ramsey.

Capellanus regis Stigandus præsulatum Estangliæ suscepit.[4]

Stigand bishop.

MXLV. Apud Valesdune commissum est bellum inter Henricum regem Francorum et proceres Normannorum.[5]

A.D. 1045. Battle of Val-es-dunes.

SC

Benedictus, qui simoniace papatum invaserat, cum esset rudis litterarum, alterum ad vices ecclesiastici officii exequendas secum papam Silvestrum consecrari fecit. Quod cum multis non placeret, tercius superducitur Gregorius, qui solus vices duorum impleret.[6]

SC

Three popes at once.

MXLVI. Romæ uno contra duos, et duobus contra unum de papatu altercantibus, rex Henricus contra eos Romam vadit, et eis canonica et imperiali censura depositis, Clemens præsidet, et ab eo rex Henricus in imperatorem benedicitur, jurantibus Romanis, se sine ejus consensu nunquam papam electuros.[7]

A.D. 1046. The emperor Henry appoints a new pope, Clement.

---

[1] *Eadwardus . . Wintoniæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1043.

[2] *Romæ . . . . extinxit*] om. B. This is in MS. D., which omits all that follows down to A.D. 1051. The passage is from William of Malmesbury, G. R. lib. ii. § 206.

[3] *Ailwardus . . . . resedit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1044.

[4] *Capellanus . . . suscepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1044.

[5] *Apud . . . . . Normannorum*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1046; Will. Gemmet. lib. vii. c. 17.

[6] *Benedictus . . impleret*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1045.

[7] *Romæ . . . . electuros*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1046.

A.D. 1046. Aldred bishop of Worcester.

Aldredus Statuitocensis[1] abbas Wicciorum pontificatum suscepit.[2]

MXLVII. Nix tanta in Occidente cecidit ut silvas frangeret.[3]

A.D. 1048. Leo IX. pope.

MXLVIII. Leo papa.

His piety.

Hic, cum ad capessendam sedem apostolicam Romam tenderet, audivit voces angelorum canentium, "Dicit Dominus, Ego cogito "cogitationes pacis et non afflictionis." Hic de multis sanctis cantus composuit, et multa fecit et scripsit utilia ecclesiæ. Hic cum in papatu pauperem leprosum ante fores offendisset, eum fotum diligenter collocavit in lecto suo; quem cum reserato ostio non invenisset, in pauperem se Christum suscepisse obstupuit.[4]

A.D. 1049. Council.

MXLIX. Cō Concilium habitum est apud Viceliacum, in quo Wlwinus Lincolniensis episcopus interfuit.[5]

Council at Rheims.

Cō Leo papa magnam synodum archiepiscoporum, episcoporum, et abbatum in Francia Remis sex diebus celebravit. In qua fuit Ailwinus Ramesiensis abbas, et abbas monasterii Sancti Augustini, a rege Anglorum Eadwardo illo directi.[6]

A.D. 1050. Robert archbishop of Canterbury.

ML. Eadsius Dorobernensis archiepiscopus obiit. Cui Robertus primo abbas Gemeticensis, tunc vero Lundoniensis episcopus et genere Normannus, successit.[7]

Spearhafoc disappointed of his see.

Sperafocus, abbas Abbændoniensis, Lundoniæ præsulatum suscepit; sed, antequam esset consecratus, a rege Eadwardo est ejectus.[8]

---

[1] *Statuitocensis*] Stavitocensis, B. Tavistock is the place meant.

[2] *Aldredus . . . suscepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1046.

[3] *Nix . . frangeret*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1047; Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1047. Here MS. C. inserts "Lef-"stanus abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Al-"bani xii^us."

[4] *Leo . . . . obstupuit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1048.

[5] *Concilium . . . . interfuit*] Wulfwy became bishop of Dorchester in 1053. The council in question is perhaps that of Vercelli in 1050, and the bishop Ulf. See Chr. S., A.D. 1047, and R. de Monte, Accessiones ad Sigebertum, p. 723.

[6] *Leo . . . . directi*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1049.

[7] *Eadsius . . . successit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1049.

[8] *Sperafocus . . . ejectus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1050.

Ramesiensis ecclesiæ ædificator fuit Sanctus A.D. 1050.
Oswaldus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, cooperante Agelwino quodam Anglorum comite.[1]

MLI. Aluricus Eboracensis archiepiscopus Suthweallæ defunctus est, et Medeshastide, id est, Burh sepelitur; cui regis capellanus Kinsigius successit.[2] A.D. 1051. Kinsige archbishop of York.

Rex Eadwardus absolvit Anglos a gravi vectigali, tricesimo octavo anno ex quo pater suus rex Egelredus primitus id Danicis solidariis solvi mandavit.[3] Danegeld abolished.

Rex Eadwardus reginam Eadgitham, filiam ducis Godwini, propter iram quam adversus patrem suum, eo quod patriam sæpius infestavit, habuerat, repudiavit, et cum una pedissequa ad Werewellam eam sine honore misit et abbatissæ custodiendam commendavit.[4] Edward dismisses his wife.

Willelmus dux Normannorum Angliam venit; quem rex Eadwardus et socios ejus honorifice suscepit, et magnis multisque donatum muneribus ad Normanniam remisit.[5] William of Normandy visits England.

Willelmus regis capellanus Lundoniensem episcopatum, qui Sperhafoco prius datus fuerat, suscepit.[6] William bishop of London.

MLII. Comes Godwinus et filii sui Haroldus et Leofwinus, allectis sibi in auxilium butsecarlis qui portus nauticos custodire debebant, cum ingenti classe Lundoniam venere. Rex igitur Eadwardus collecto exercitu festinanter eis obviam venit. Sed quia ibi et cum rege et cum Godwino perpauci erant nisi tantum Angli, pugnare adversus propinquos et compatriotas pene omnes abhorrebant. Unde sapientiores quique ex utraque parte inter regem et ducem pacem redintegrabant; et sic Godwinus pristino restitutus est honori. Filiam quoque ejus Eadgytham reginam digniter A.D. 1052. Return of Godwin and Harold from exile.

---

[1] *Ramesiensis . . . comite*] Will. Malmesb., G. P. lib. iv. § 181.

[2] *Aluricus . . . successit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1051.

[3] *Rex . . mandavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1051.

[4] *Rex . . . commendavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1051.

[5] *Willelmus . . . remisit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1051.

[6] *Willelmus . . . suscepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1051.

A.D. 1052. Expulsion of the Normans.

rex recepit. Facta igitur concordia populo rectam legem promiserunt, et omnes Normannos qui leges iniquas invenerant exlegaverunt; paucos tamen quos plus cæteris rex dilexerat, eique et populo fideles extiterant, in Anglia permanere concesserunt. Sed archiepiscopus Doroberniæ, et Lundoniæ præsul Willelmus, et Ulf Lindicolniensis antistes, cum suis vix evadentes, mare transierunt. Sed Willelmus, propter suam bonitatem parvo post tempore revocatus, in suum episcopatum recipitur.[1] Stigandus qui quondam, dimisso Anglorum Orientalium episcopatu, sullimiorem gradum meditatus, Wintoniensem invaserat, innocentis regis Eadwardi simplicitatem circumveniens, vivente Roberto archiepiscopo, Cantuariensem archiepiscopatum obtinuit.[2]

Stigand's promotions.

A.D. 1053. Circumstances of the death of earl Godwin.

MLIII. Eadwardus rex secunda Paschali feria cum Wintoniæ ad mensam sederet, Godwinus socer suus recumbens juxta eum dixit, "Sæpe tibi, rex, falso delatum est me pro-"ditioni tuæ invigilasse, sed si Deus cœli "verax et justus est, hoc panis frustulum "concedat ne michi guttur pertranseat, si "unquam te perdere vel cogitaverim." Deus autem verax et justus audivit vocem proditoris, et mox eodem pane strangulatus, mortem prægustavit æternam.[3]

A.D. 1055. Henry, king of France, invades Normandy.

MLIIII. Henricus rex Francorum ob improperium Willelmi ducis Normannorum, quibus semper invidebant Franci, ex quo arva Neustriæ occidentalis cœperunt incolere, Normanniam est aggressus duobus hostium agminibus. Unum ad Calcivum subvertendum territorium direxit, cui fratrem suum Odonem præfecit; alteri vero cum Gaufrido Martello,

---

[1] *Comes . . recipitur*] Abridged from Florence of Worcester, A.D. 1052.

[2] *Stigandus . . . obtinuit*] Will. Malmesb., G. P. i. § 23; cf. Walt. Cov. i. 68.

[3] *Eadwardus . . æternam*] From Henry of Huntingdon, lib. vi. (Mon. Hist. Brit. p. 760); R. de Monte. The word *gener*, which Henry wrote by mistake for *socer*, has in our MS. A. been erased and *socer* substituted.

comite scilicet Andegavensium, ad demoliendum comitatum Ebroicensem ipse præfuit. Dux igitur Willelmus, nobili tactus dolore, milites protinus elegit, quos ad comprimendos Calcii subversores direxit. Ipse autem cum suorum nonnullis contra regem se contulit. Venientes vero Normanni ad Francos reppererunt eos apud Mortuum Mare; cum quibus ilico mane commissum bellum in continua cæde ad usque nonam ab utrisque est protractum: novissime autem Franci victi fugerunt. At dux Willelmus, audito eventu certaminis, Henricum regem tali conterruit legatione. Nuntius enim ducis, regalibus castris appropinquans, in quodam proximo monte noctu stans, fortiter clamare cœpit, "Rodulfus de Toenia nominatus sum, "vobisque defero lugubre nuntium. Ad "Mortuum Mare currus vestros cum carris "ducite, et inde cadavera carorum vestro-"rum reportate. Franci quippe Norman-"norum militiam experiri super nos vene-"runt, eamque multo quam voluissent "majorem invenerunt. Odo regis frater "turpiter fugatus est, et Wido Pontivi "comes captus est. Reliqui omnes aut "capti, aut perempti sunt, aut obnixe fu-"gientes vix evaserunt. Hoc ex parte ducis "Normannorum renunciate regi Franco-"rum." Rex ut infortunium suorum audivit, a Normannica infestatione quam citius valuit retro pedem retraxit.[1]

A.D. 1054. William marches against him.

Battle of Mortemer.

Rhyming address of Ralph de Toeny to the king.

Retreat of the king.

MLV. Victor papa.

MLVI. Romanorum Henricus filius Henrici impera-

MLVII. toris.[2]

A.D. 1056. Henry IV.

MLVIII. Sivardus comes Northanhymbrorum et Huntedunesire, profluvio ventris ductus, ait, "Pudor est me tot in bellis mori non potu-"isse, sed vaccarum morti cum dedecore "reservari. Induite me lorica mea, præ-"cingite gladio, scutum in læva, secu-

A.D. 1058. Death of earl Siward.

[1] *Henricus . . . retraxit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1054; Will. Gemmet. lib. vii. cap. 24.

[2] *Victor . . . imperatoris*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1055, 1056.

A.D. 1058. Earl Siward dies.

"rim auratam in manu ponite, ut modo "militis moriar." Et sic, ut dixerat armatus, honorifice spiritum exhalavit.[1]

Edward, the king's nephew, visits England and dies.

Eadwardus, regis Edmundi Ferrei lateris filius, ut ei mandarat patruus suus, de Hungaria, quo in exilium missus fuerat, Angliam venit. Decreverat enim rex Eadwardus illum post se regni hæredem constituere; sed ex quo venit parvo post tempore decessit Lundoniæ.[2]

Munificence of Leofric and Godiva.

Comes Leouricus et uxor sua Godiva monasterium de Coventrea de patrimonio suo construxerunt a fundamentis, et preciosis locupletaverunt ornamentis. Ecclesiam etiam quam Lindicolnensis præsul Eadnodus in loco famoso qui dicitur Sancte Mariestou construxerat, quamplurimis ditaverunt ornamentorum muneribus.[3]

Aldred builds the monastery of Gloucester.

Aldredus Wigornensis episcopus ecclesiam in civitate Glavorna a fundamentis construxit, et in honore apostolorum principis Petri ædificavit, et postea regis licentia Wlstanum Wigornensem monachum a se ordinatum abbatem constituit ibidem.[4]

Nicholaus papa.

A.D. 1059. Battle of snakes near Tournay.

MLIX. In pago Brachatensi juxta Tornachum multitudines colubrorum altrinsecus congregatæ, prodigioso prælio inter se concurrunt, et multis utrinque occisis, victa pars fugiens in cavo arboris se abscondit; altera pars, vincentium more insequens, cum sibilo circumstrepebat, donec circumvecto ab hominibus igne concrematæ sunt.[5]

A.D. 1060. Aldred archbishop of York.

MLX. Eboracensi archiepiscopo Kinsigio successit Wigornensis episcopus Aldredus. Et Herefordensis præsulatus, qui ei propter suam industriam fuerat commissus, capellano

---

[1] *Siwardus . . . exhalavit*] Hen. Hunt. lib. vi. (Mon. Hist. Brit. p. 760). This is omitted in D.: and the other notices under this year are differently arranged in B.

[2] *Eadwardus . . Lundoniæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1057: placed in MS. B. under A.D. 1056.

[3] *Comes . . . . muneribus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1057, under which year it is placed in MS. B.

[4] *Aldredus . . . ibidem*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1058.

[5] *In . . concrematæ sunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1059.

Eadgydæ reginæ datus est Waltero Lotharingo.[1] A.D. 1060.

Henrico regi Francorum Philippus filius ejus successit.[2] Philip I. king of France.

MLXI. Aldredus Eboracensis archiepiscopus cum Tostio comite Romam ivit, et a Nicholao papa pallium suscepit. A.D. 1061. Aldred at Rome.

Ubi etiam Gysa Wellensis, et Walterus Herefordensis, ab ipso papa episcopi ordinati sunt. Usque ad tempus Johannis successoris istius Gysæ omnes episcopi Wellensis ecclesiæ sedes suas Wellis habuerunt.[3] Walter of Hereford and Gisa of Wells consecrated.

Alexander papa.

MLXII. Wlstanus pontifex Wigornensi ecclesiæ præficitur. Hic, cum esset prior Wigornensis monasterii, consecratus est ab Aldredo Eboracensium archiepiscopo, eo quod Stigando Dorberniæ archiepiscopo officium episcopale tunc a domino apostolico interdictum erat, quia Roberto archiepiscopo vivente archiepiscopatum suscipere præsumpsit; canonica tamen professione archiepiscopo Stigando, non suo ordinatori Aldredo, facta. Insuper et ipse Eboracensis archiepiscopus ejus ordinator, coram rege et optimatibus regni, ipso Stigando factitante propter subsequentium calumpnias, profiteri jussus est, se nullum jus ecclesiasticæ subjectionis super eum velle clamare, nec propter quod ab eo consecratus est, nec quia ante consecrationem ejus monachus factus est.[4] A.D. 1062. Wulfstan consecrated bishop of Worcester. Professes obedience to Canterbury.

MLXIII. Haroldus tunc temporis transiens in Flandriam, tempestate compulsus, venit in Pontivam insulam. Quem captum consul Ponticus Guido Willelmo duci Normanniæ reddidit. Haroldus autem juravit Willelmo se filiam ejus ducturum, et Angliam post mortem Eadwardi ad opus ejus servaturum; sed, cum reversus fuisset in Angliam, perjurii crimen elegit.[5] A.D. 1063. Harold shipwrecked. His oath to William.

---

[1] *Eboracensi . . . . Lotharingo*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1060.

[2] *Henrico . . . successit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1060.

[3] *Aldredus . . . habuerunt*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1061.

[4] *Wlstanus . . . est*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1062.

[5] *Haroldus . . . elegit*] Henr. Hunt. lib. vi. pp. 760, 761; Rob. de Monte; A.D. 1063.

A.D. 1064. A double woman.

MLXIIII. MLXV. In confinio Normanniæ et Britanniæ duplex mulier erat, cui duo erant capita, iiii. brachia et omnia gemina usque ad umbilicum, inferius duo crura et ita omnia singula. Diversos habebat affectus, ut una ridente et edente altera fleret et esuriret; una defuncta supervixit altera. Mirabile spectaculum.[1]

A.D. 1066. Death of Edward and succession of Harold.

MLXVI.[2] Pacificus rex Eadwardus Epiphaniæ Domini vigilia mortem obiit Lundoniæ, et sepultus est apud Westmonasterium. Quo tumulato, subregulus Haroldus Godwini ducis filius, quem rex ante suam decessionem regni successorem elegerat, a totius Angliæ primatibus ad regale culmen electus, eodem die ab Aldredo Eboracensi archiepiscopo in regem est consecratus.[3]

Comet, April 24.

Eodem anno stella cometis non solum in Anglia, sed etiam, ut fertur, per totum mundum visa viii. kalendas Maii, per vii. dies nimio splendore fulgebat.[4]

Harold prepares to repel the invasion of the Normans.

Rex Haroldus cum ingenti classe Vectam adiit insulam. Et quia Normannorum dux Willelmus, Eadwardi regis cognatus, in Angliam cum exercitu venire parabat, tota æstate et autumno adventum illius observabat. Ad hæc etiam pedestrem exercitum locis oportunis circa ripas maris locabat. Adveniente itaque Nativitate Sanctæ Mariæ classicus et pedestris exercitus domum rediit. Quibus gestis, cum classica manu plusquam quingentis magnis navibus Haroldus Haravaghe rex Norreganorum, frater Sancti Olavi regis, in ostio Tinæ fluminis applicuit. Ad quem Tostius comes, ut prius condixerant, sua cum classe venit; et inde cursum moventes, in loco qui Richale dicitur pariter applicuere. Quod ubi regi Haroldo innotuit, versus eos

Harold Hardrada lands at Tynemouth, and is joined by Tostig.

---

[1] *In . . . spectaculum*] Apparently inserted to fill up a vacant space in A., in a different ink and hand. It is from W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 207.

[2] Here Twysden prints the two lines—

"Anno milleno sexageno quoque
"seno
"Anglorum metæ flammas sen-
"sere cometæ."

Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1066. They are not in MSS. A., B., or D.

[3] *Pacificus . . consecratus*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1066.

[4] *Eodem . . . fulgebat*] ibid.

expeditionem propere movit, et Norreganis in loco qui Stanford-brige dicitur occurrens, regem Haroldum et Tostium comitem suum cum majore parte exercitus sui occidit.[1]

A.D. 1066. Victory at Stamford Bridge.

Interea dux Normannorum Willelmus, cum consilium Angliam adeundi petisset, et omnes Normanniæ barones audisset unanimes, gavisus est valde. Quibus ad se iterum consiliandos euntibus, Willelmus filius Osberni dapifer ducis interfuit. Qui gravissimum iter ad Angliam capessendam gentemque fortissimam Anglorum perhibens, contra paucissimos in Angliam ire volentes acerrime litigavit. Quod quidam proceres audientes, valde gavisi, fidem dederunt ei ut quod ipse diceret omnes concederent. Ingressus igitur ante eos coram duce ait, "Paratus sum in hac expeditione cum meis "omnibus devote proficisci." Oportuit ergo omnes Normannorum principes verbum ejus prosequi sicut promiserant ei. Classis ergo maxima ad portum Sancti Walerici est præparata.[2] Cum autem rex Anglorum Haroldus, vir bellis acerrimus,[3] apud Eboracum post occisionem regis Norwagiæ et Thosti fratris sui lætus pranderet, et omnes suos inimicos autumaret fuisse detritos, nunciatum est ei Willelmum comitem gentis Normannicæ, cum innumera multitudine, utpote qui de tota Gallia sibi fortes auxiliaturos conduxerat, in loco qui Pevenesa dicitur classem suam applicuisse, et apud Hastinges castellum construxisse. Rex igitur non segnis advolans versus Lundoniam suum movit exercitum; et licet de tota Anglia fortiores quosque in præfato prælio sciret jam cecidisse, mediamque partem sui exercitus nondum convenisse, quam citius tamen potuit in Suthsaxonia suis hostibus occurrere non formidavit, et novem miliariis ab

William hold a council on the invasion.

Stratagem of William Fitz Osbern.

The expedition sails from S. Valery and lands at Pevensey.

Harold hastens into Sussex.

[1] *Rex . . . . occidit*] Abridged from Florence, A.D. 1066.

[2] *Interea . . præparata*] Robert de Monte, Access. ad Sigeb. p. 725. Slightly abridged from Henry of Huntingdon, lib. vi. pp. 761, 762.

[3] *vir bellis acerrimus*] H. Hunt. p. 762; R. de Monte.

A.D. 1066.
Battle of Hastings.

Hastinga priusquam tertia pars exercitus sui ordinaretur, ii°. idus Octobris sabbato cum eis prælium commisit. Sed quia arto in loco constituti fuerant Angli, de acie multi se subtraxere, et cum eo perpauci constantes corde remansere.[1] Willelmus autem quinque catervas equitum splendide promovit in hostem. Quibus terribiliter dispositis,[2] quidam nomine Tailefer, dudum antequam coirent bellatores, ensibus jactatis ludens coram gente Anglorum, dum in eum omnes stuperent, quendam vexilliferum Anglorum interfecit. Secundo similiter egit. Tertio idem agens et ipse interfectus est. Tunc incipit letifera nubes sagittarum, tonitruum sequitur ictuum, insilit ignita collisio galearum et ensium. Cum ergo rex Haroldus totam gentem suam in una acie strictissime locasset, et quasi castellum inde struxisset, inpenetrabiles erant Normannis. Docuit igitur dux Willelmus gentem suam fugam simulare. Fugientes autem ad quandam foveam magnam dolo protectam devenerunt, ubi multus eorum numerus corruens oppressus est. Dum igitur Angli insequendo persistunt, acies principalis Normannorum mediam catervam Anglorum pertransiit. Quod videntes qui persequebantur, per foveam prædictam redire compulsi, ibidem ex magna parte perierunt.[3]

Story of Taillefer.

Stratagem of the Normans.

The English misled by a feint.

William's instructions to his archers.

Docuit igitur dux Willelmus, ut non in hostem directe sed in aera sagittas sagittarii sursum mittentes hostilem cuneum sagittis cæcarent; quod Anglis magno fuit detrimento. Viginti autem equites strenuissimi fidem suam invicem dederunt, quod Anglorum catervam prorumpentes, signum regium quod vocatur Standart acciperent. Quod dum facerent, plures eorum occisi sunt.

[1] *Cum autem . . remansere*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1066.

[2] *Willelmus . . dispositis*] R. de Monte, p. 725; H. Hunt. p. 762.

[3] *quidam . . . perierunt*] R. de Monte, p. 725; H. Hunt,, p. 763.

A.D. 1066.

Pars autem eorum, via gladiis facta, Standart asportavit.[1]

Capture of the standard.

Interea totus ymber sagittarum cecidit circa regem Haraldum; et ipse in oculo ictus corruit, crepusculi tempore. Irrumpens autem multitudo equitum regem interfecit vulneratum; necnon comites Gyrth et Leouine fratres ejus cum eo, et fere nobiliores totius Angliæ. Et Normannis a Deo victoria conceditur die sabbati in festo Sancti Kalixti papæ.[2]

Fall of Harold, Gyrth, and Leofwin.

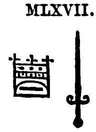
Aldredus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et comites Eadwinus et Morkardus, qui se certamini subtraxere, et clito Eadgarus, quem in regem post Haroldum levare voluerunt, necnon Wlstanus Wigornensis episcopus, et Walterus Herefordensis, et de Lundonia quique nobiliores cum multis aliis, duci Willelmo provincias hostiliter devastanti apud Berchamstede occurrerunt, datisque obsidibus deditionem facientes fidelitatem juravere. Et post in die Nativitatis Domini, feria ii. apud Westmonasterium consecratus est in regem Angliæ dux Normannorum Willelmus;[3]

Proposal to make Edgar king.

Submission of the Witan.

MLXVII.

Coronation of William,



SIDONIUS.

—— tritus cui casside crinis
Ad diadema venit. Rutilum cui Cæsaris ostrum,
Deposito torace datur. Sceptroque replenda
Mucrone est vacuata manus.——[4]

Consecratus autem est ab Aldredo Eboracensi archiepiscopo, quia Stigandus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus tanquam scismaticus ab Alexandro papa suspensus erat. Vacabat enim tunc sedes Lundoniensis.[5]

by archbishop Aldred.

---

[1] *Docuit . . . asportavit*] R. de Monte, p. 725; H. Hunt., p. 763. Here MS. D. resumes, and continues to furnish a text as far as the end of the Abbreviationes.

[2] *Interea . . . Kalixti papæ*] H. Hunt. p. 763. Here MS. C. inserts "Fredericus abbas xiii. ec-"clesiæ Sancti Albani."

[3] *Aldredus . . . . Willelmus*] Abridged from Florence, A.D. 1066.

[4] *tritus . . . manus*] From the Panegyric of Sidonius Apollinaris on Anthemius, carmen ii. vv. 99–102.

[5] *Consecratus . . . Lundoniensis*] Abridged from Florence, but worded

A.D. 1066. Story of Harold's perjury.

Quod autem[1] rex Willelmus regnum adeptus est non subito eventu, aut incerto casu, sed provido Dei judicio contigit. Nam tempore Eadwardi regis orta est gravis dissensio inter ipsum regem Eadwardum et Gowinum comitem Cantiæ, patrem scilicet Haroldi. Gowinus tandem cum rege pacificatus dedit regi obsides Wlnothum filium suum, et Hacun filium Suæni filii sui. Quos rex Edwardus in Normanniam custodiendos Willelmo comiti transmisit. Post mortem vero Godwini, Haroldus petivit a rege quatinus cum licentia ejus transfretaret in Normanniam, fratrem suum et nepotem datos obsides repetiturus. Cui rex ait, "Ad detri-"mentum totius Angliæ transfretabis." Haroldus navem ascendit, et in Pontivum fluvium non prospero cursu perveniens, a domino illius terræ captivatur, et ad Willelmum comitem Normannorum transmittitur. Post aliquot dies, Willelmus comes ait Haroldo, "Rex Anglorum Eadwardus sororius tuus, "dum adhuc esset juvenis nutritus mecum "in Normannia, interposita fide sua polli-"citus est, quod si Angliæ rex foret, et "sine liberis decederet, in me jus hæredi-"tarium regni transferret. Tu ergo, si te "in hoc amminiculaturum mihi spopon-"deris, et castellum apud Douram cum "puteo aquæ ad opus meum feceris, et "sororem tuam uni de principibus meis "dederis in uxorem, filiamque meam Alam "in conjugem te accepturum juraveris, "tunc et modo nepotem tuum, et cum in "Angliam regnaturus venero, fratrem tuum "incolumem recipies." Prolatis itaque sacrosanctis reliquiis juravit Haroldus se cuncta quæ Willelmus comes proposuerat opere completurum. Et sic Haroldus accepto nepote suo reversus in Angliam, cum intra

Going to Normandy, after Godwin's death, to obtain the release of his brother and nephew, he was shipwrecked and sent to duke William.

William proposed that he should aid him in in securing the crown on Edward's death.

Harold swore to do so.

---

by Ralph de Diceto, to whom no doubt the erroneous statement of the vacancy of London is owing.

[1] *Quod autem*] The following passage is an abridgment from Eadmer, Historia Novorum, lib. i., ed. Selden, pp. 4, 5..

paucos dies rex Eadwardus obisset, contempto sacramento, regni diadema suscepit Haroldus. Ad quem dux Normannorum Willelmus cum direxisset nuntium, respondit, "Soror mea quam juxta condictum expetis mortua est. Quod si corpus ejus quale nunc est vult comes habere, mittam, ne judicer sacramentum violasse. Castellum Dofris, et in eo puteum aquæ, licet nesciam cui explevi. Regnum quod necdum fuit meum, quo jure potui dare vel promittere? Si de filia sua quam debui in uxorem, ut asserit, ducere agit; super regnum Angliæ mulierem extraneam inconsultis principibus me nec debere, nec sine grandi injuria posse adducere, noverit." Reversus nuntius responsa retulit domino suo. Quibus ille auditis, iterum ei amica familiaritate mandavit, quatenus aliis omissis servata fidei sponsione saltem filiam suam uxorem duceret, alioquin promissionem successionis regni armis sibi proculdubio sciret se vendicaturum. At ipse nec illud quidem se facere velle, nec hoc formidare respondit.[1]

A.D. 1066. William demanded the performance of the covenant.

Harold's refusal.

Fulco Rechin primus Stephano Blesensi hominagium fecit, et Philippo regi Francorum Landonense castrum, et totum comitatum de Gastineis concessit. Fulco plures duxit uxores; filiam Lancelini de Balgenceio, ex qua orta est comitissa Britanniæ; post mortem filiæ Lancelini, duxit Ermengardim filiam Erkenbaldi Fortis de Borbono; ex qua genuit Gaufridum Martellum. Qua dimissa, ex sorore Amalrici de Monte Forti comitis Ebroicarum, Fulco Rechin genuit Fulconem. Gaufridus Martellus filius Fulconis Rechin, cum patre suo rupes Corbonis obsedit, et fumo cepit. Elizabeth sororem suam, ex matre sua et Willelmo comite Galviniaci ortam, Hugoni de Calvo Monte uxorem dedit, et cum ea Ambaziacum

Account of Fulk Rechin, count of Anjou (A.D. 1060–1109).

[1] *Quod autem . . . respondit*] Eadmer, Hist. Nov. lib. i. pp. 4, 5, ed. Selden.

A.D. 1066. Account of Fulk Rechin.

totum ei concessit. Idem Martellus cum rege Angliæ Willelmo Rufo sæpe conflixit, multaque municipia in Normannia vastavit et succendit. Idem insidiis novercæ suæ apud Candecastrum occisus, adhuc patre suo vivente, sepultus est in ecclesia Sancti Nicholai Andegavis.[1]

A.D. 1067. William goes to Normandy in Lent, leaving Odo and William Fitz Osbern as regents.

Adveniente Quadragesima rex Willelmus petiit Normanniam, ducens Dorobernensem archiepiscopum Stigandum, Glestoniæ abbatem Egelnothum, clitonem Eadgarum, comitem Eawinum, et multos alios de primatibus Angliæ; fratremque suum Odonem Bajocensem episcopum, et Willelmum filium Osberni, quem Herefordiæ comitem constituerat, Angliæ custodes relinquens, castella per loca firmare præcepit.[2]

Battle abbey founded.

Abbatia de Bello construitur a rege Willelmo.[3]

William returns and takes Exeter.

Imminente hieme rex Willelmus de Normannia Angliam rediit, et Anglis importabile tributum imposuit. Deinde in Devoniam hostiliter profectus civitatem Excestram sibi rebellem obsedit et infregit.[4]

A.D. 1068. Pope and antipope.

MLXVIII. Romæ duobus de papatu contendentibus, Alexander, cum suam purgasset innocentiam de symonia, recipitur, Cadalus Parmensis episcopus reprobatur:[5] unde dictum est,

Cadalus in Parma Parmæ fuit arcus et arma,
Cadalus occubuit, Parma ruina fuit.

Coronation of the queen.

Mathildis uxor regis Willelmi consecratur in reginam Anglorum die Pentecostes ab Aldredo Eboracensi archiepiscopo.[6]

Revolt of the North.

MLXIX. Principes Northanhymbrorum Willelmi regis ferocitatem timentes, clitone Eadgaro secum

---

[1] *Fulco Rechin . . . Andegavis*] Abridged from the Gesta Consulum Andegavensium, cap. xi. (D'Achery, iii. 259–262). See Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 334, 335; and p. 135 above.

[2] *Adveniente . . . præcepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1067.

[3] *Abbatia . . . Willelmo*] See R. de Monte, Acc. ad Sigeb. p. 726. H. Hunt. lib. vi. (ed. Savile), fo. 211;

[4] *Imminente . . . infregit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1067.

[5] *Romæ . . . reprobatur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1067. The two verses that follow are not from Sigebert.

[6] *Mathildis . . . archiepiscopo*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1068. MS. D. adds here "Malcholfus rex accepit "Margheretam sororem Eadgari."

assumpto, Scotiam adierunt. Invitaverunt Danos; cum ducentis xl. navibus Angliam infestarunt. Quod audiens Aldredus Eboracensis archiepiscopus præ dolore diem clausit extremum.[1] A.D. 1068. Invasion by the Danes. Aldred dies.

Hinc Normannis, hinc Northanhimbris, hinc Danis Angliam incursantibus, in Anglia fames prævaluit.[2] Famine.

MARIANUS A SCOTIA IN GALLIAS VENIENS, COLONIÆ FACTUS MONACHUS, PRIMO APUD FULDAM, POST APUD MAGUNTIAM INCLUSUS, HUCUSQUE CHRONICA SUA DIGESSIT.[3] Marianus Scotus.

MLXX. Rex Willelmus monasteria totius Angliæ perscrutari, et pecuniam quam ditiores Angli in eis deposuerant auferri, et in ærarium suum jussit deferri.[4] A.D. 1070. The treasures of the English seized.

Concilium magnum in octavis Paschæ Wintoniæ celebratum est, jubente et præsente rege Willelmo, Alexandro papa consentiente, et per suos legatos Hearmenfredum Sedunensem episcopum, et presbiteros cardinales Johannem et Petrum, suam auctoritatem exhibente. Ubi Stigandus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus degradatur tribus ex causis; quia episcopatum Wintoniæ cum archiepiscopatu injuste possidebat, et quia, vivente archiepiscopo Roberto, non solum archiepiscopatum sumpsit, sed etiam ejus pallio quod Cantuariæ remansit, dum injuste pulsus est ab Anglia, in Missarum celebratione usus est, et post a Benedicto, quem Romana ecclesia excommunicavit, eo quod pecuniis sedem apostolicam invasit, pallium suscepit. Nonnullos tam episcopos quam abbates, quos nulla evidenti causa nec concilia nec leges sæculi dampnabant, honoribus suis rex Willelmus privavit, et usque ad finem vitæ custodiæ mancipatos detinuit. In hoc concilio Wlstanus Wigornensis episcopus possessiones Council at Winchester. Stigand degraded. The reasons of his deposition. Other bishops and abbots removed.

---

[1] *Principes . . . extremum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1069.

[2] *Hinc . . prævaluit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1069.

[3] *Marianus . . . digessit*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1061.

[4] *Rex . . . . deferri*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1070.

A.D. 1070. Wulfstan claims the estates of his see from the church of York.

quamplures sui episcopatus ab Aldredo archiepiscopo, dum a Wigornensi ecclesia ad Eboracum transferretur, sua potentia retentas, quæ tunc eo defuncto devenerant in regiam potestatem, viriliter proclamabat, justiciamque inde fieri flagitabat. Sed judicatum est, ut ipsa querela sic remaneret quousque in Eboracensi ecclesia constitueretur archiepiscopus qui pro ea loqueretur.

At Whitsuntide, Thomas receives the archbishopric of York.

Die autem Pentecostes rex apud Windesoram venerando Bajocensi canonico Thomæ Eboracensem archiepiscopatum, et Walkelino suo capellano Wintoniensis ecclesiæ dedit præsulatum, et Stigando capellano suo episcopatum Suthsaxonum,[1] qui mutavit sedem in Cicestram.[2]

Lanfranc, abbot of Caen, made archbishop of Canterbury, Aug. 15;

MLXXI. Post hæc, accito de Normannia Lanfranco Cadomensi abbate, genere Longobardo, viro undecumque doctissimo, omnium liberalium artium, divinarumque simul ac sæcularium litterarum scientia peritissimo, consiliis quoque ac gubernatione rerum mundialium æque prudentissimo, die Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ archiepiscopum constituit Cantuariensem; et in festivitate Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, die Dominica, consecrari fecit Cantuariæ.

consecrated, Aug. 29, by Giso, Walter, Herman, and others.

Consecratus autem est a Gisone Wellensi episcopo, et Waltero Herefordensi, qui ambo Romæ a Nicholao papa ordinati sunt, quando Aldredus Eboracensis archiepiscopus pallium suscepit. Vitabant enim a Stigando, qui tunc archiepiscopatui Dorobernensi præsidebat, ordinari, quia eum noverant non canonice pallium suscepisse. Hermannus etiam episcopus, qui jam præsulatus sedem a Siresburna transtulerat Saresberiam, cum quibusdam aliis ejus interfuit consecrationi.

He consecrates Thomas. Wulfstan renews his claims.

Deinde Lanfrancus Thomam Eboracensem consecravit episcopum. Quo consecrato, reverendi Wlstani Wigornensis episcopi mota est iterum[3] querela; et in concilio in loco qui vocatur

---

[1] *Suthsaxonum*] Subsaxonum, D.

[2] *Concilium . . Cicestram*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1070.

[3] *iterum*] rerum, A.

Pedreda celebrato coram rege et Doroberniæ archiepiscopo, et primatibus totius Angliæ, Dei gratia amminiculante, est terminata. Cunctis siquidem machinamentis non veritate stipatis, quibus Thomas ejusque fautores Wigornensem ecclesiam deprimere, et Eboracensi ecclesiæ subjicere ancillamque facere, modis omnibus satagebant, justo Dei judicio attritis, ac scriptis evidentissimis penitus adnichilatis, non solum vir Dei Wlstanus proclamatas et expetitas possessiones recepit, sed et suam ecclesiam, Deo adjuvante et rege concedente, ea libertate liberam suscepit, qua fundatores ejus rex Aluredus, Eadwardus senior, Athelstanus, Eadmundus, Eadredus, et Eadgarus ipsam liberaverant.[1]

A.D. 1070. The dispute is settled at Pedreda.

✠ Lanfrancus Herewaldum Landaviæ episcopum Cantuariæ consecravit.[2]

Lanfranc consecrates Herewald.

Lanfrancus pro pallio Romam iens, Thomam archiepiscopum Eboracensem, quem ipse, facta sibi de subjectione sua canonica professione, Cantuariæ consecraverat, et Remigium Lincolniensem episcopum comites itineris habuit. Qui Romam perveniens Alexandro papæ præsentatur. Cui papa ad se intranti assurgens, eum ut gressum figeret dulciter hortatus est. Ac deinde subdens, "Honorem," inquit, "exhibuimus tibi, "non quem archiepiscopatui tuo, sed quem "magistro, cujus studio sumus in illis "quæ scimus imbuti, debuimus. Hinc, "quod ad te pertinet, ob reverentiam beati "Petri te exequi par est." Residente igitur illo, Lanfrancus progressus humiliat se ad pedes ejus, sed mox ab eo ad osculum erigitur. Sequenti luce calumpniatus est coram papa memoratus Thomas, cum præfato Remigio, quod neuter illorum jure fuerit

Lanfranc, Thomas, and Remigius go to Rome.

Honours paid to Lanfranc.

Thomas and Remigius claim independence of Lanfranc.

---

[1] *Posthæc . . . liberaverant*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1070. The marginal date here, as in so many other places, seems quite accidental.

[2] *Lanfrancus . . . consecravit*] See above, pp. 138, 171, notes.

A.D. 1071.
Thomas and Remigius are deprived of staff and ring.

promotus ad pontificatum; prior quia sacri canones filios presbiterorum, quos religionis ordo non ornat, a sacrorum ordinum promotione removeant; alter vero, pro eo quod facta conventione illud a Willelmo post rege facto emerit officium, videlicet quod ei in excidium Angliæ properanti multifaria intentione ac multiplicibus impensis deservierat. At illis qua se excusarent probabilem causam non habentibus, redditis baculis et anulis cum cura pontificali, ad petendam misericordiam reversi sunt. Quorum precibus sese Lanfrancus medium injiciens, eos multarum rerum scientia fultos novo regi novis in regni dispositionibus pernecessarios ostendit. Quibus auditis, conversus ad eum papa, "Tu videris," inquit, "pater es patriæ "illius, ac per hoc industria tua consideret "quid expediat. Virgæ pastorales quas red- "diderunt ecce hic sunt, accipe illas atque "dispensa prout utilius Christianitati regio- "nis illius agnoscere poteris." At ille, susceptis illis, ilico in præsentia domini papæ revestivit præfatos viros quemque sua. Deinde in Angliam cum sociis reversus, primas totius regni confirmatus est.[1] Cujus tempore per totam terram religio quamplurimum aucta est in novis monasteriorum ædificiis. Quorum structoribus ipse primum exemplum præbens ecclesiam Christi Cantuariensem, cum omnibus officinis quæ infra murum ipsius curiæ sunt, cum ipso muro ædificavit.[2]

But restored at the request of Lanfranc.

Lanfranc primate of all England.

His buildings.

A.D. 1072.
The refugees blockaded in Ely.

MLXXII.[3] Rex Willelmus, audito quod comites Morgarus, et Siwardus Barn, et Ægeluinus Dunholmensis episcopus latenter in Heliensem insulam confugerant, in orientali insulæ plaga omnem illis exitum obstruxit, et pontem duum miliariorum in occidentali fieri jussit, et omnes excepto Herewardo viro

---

[1] *Lanfrancus . . confirmatus est*] Eadmer, Hist. Nov. lib. i. pp. 6, 7.

[2] *Cujus . . ædificavit*] Abridged from Eadmer, Hist. Nov. i. p. 7.

[3] Here MS. D. inserts "Robertus "Fricensis Flandriam cepit." This is not in MSS. A., B., or C.

strenuissimo, qui cum paucis per paludes evasit, sibi deditionem facere coegit.[1] A.D. 1072. Ely surrendered.

GENERALE CONCILIUM REGNI ANGLORUM DE JURE ET PRIMATU DOROBERNENSIS ECCLESIÆ SUPER EBORACENSEM.[2]

Anno ab Incarnatione Domini nostri Jesu Christi M°.LXX°.II°., pontificatus autem domini Alexandri papæ undecimo, regni vero Willelmi gloriosi regis Anglorum et ducis Normannorum sexto, ex præcepto ejusdem Alexandri papæ, annuente eodem rege, in præsentia ipsius et episcoporum atque abbatum, ventilata est causa de primatu quem Lanfrancus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus super Eboracensem ecclesiam jure suæ ecclesiæ proclamabat, et de ordinationibus quorundam episcoporum, de quibus ad quem specialiter pertinerent certum minime constabat. Council to determine the relation of the sees of Canterbury and York.

✠ Et tandem aliquando diversis diversarum scripturarum auctoritatibus probatum atque ostensum est, quod Eboracensis ecclesia Cantuariensi debeat subjacere, ejusque archiepiscopi ut primatis totius Britanniæ dispositionibus in iis quæ ad Christianam religionem pertinent, in omnibus obedire. York is to be subject to Canterbury as primatial see of all Britain. Subjectionem vero Dunelmensis, hoc est, Lindisfarnensis episcopi, atque omnium regionum a terminis Licifeldensis episcopii, et Humbræ magni fluvii, usque ad extremos Scotiæ fines, et quicquid ex hac parte prædicti fluminis ad parrochiam Eboracensis ecclesiæ jure competit, Cantuariensis metropolitanus Eboracensi archiepiscopo ejusque successoribus inperpetuum obtinere concessit. Durham and Scotland to be subject to York. Ita ut si Cantuariensis archiepiscopus concilium voluerit cogere, ubicumque visum ei fuerit, Eboracensis archiepiscopus sui præsentiam cum omnibus sibi subjectis ad nutum ejus exhibeat, et ejus canonicis dispositionibus The archbishop of York to attend with his suffragans to

[1] *Rex . . . coegit*] See Florence of Worcester, A.D. 1071; the language is slightly altered.

[2] This account of the council of London is taken from William of Malmesbury, Gesta Regum, lib. iii. § 298.

A.D. 1072. attend councils of the archbishop of Canterbury.

obediens existat. Quod autem Eboracensis archiepiscopus professionem Cantuariensi archiepiscopo facere etiam cum sacramento debeat, Lanfrancus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus ex antiqua antecessorum consuetudine ostendit, sed ob amorem regis Thomæ Eboracensi archiepiscopo sacramentum relaxavit, scriptamque tantum professionem recepit, non præjudicans successoribus suis, qui sacramentum cum professione a successoribus Thomæ exigere voluerint. Si archiepiscopus Cantuariensis vitam finierit, Eboracensis archiepiscopus Doroberniam veniet, et eum qui electus fuerit, cum cæteris præfatæ ecclesiæ episcopis, ut primatem proprium jure consecrabit. Quod si archiepiscopus Eboracensis obierit, is qui ei successurus eligitur, accepto a rege archiepiscopatus dono, Cantuariam vel ubi Cantuariensi archiepiscopo placuerit accedet, et ab ipso ordinationem canonico more suscipiet. Huic constitutioni consenserunt præfatus rex, et archiepiscopus Lanfrancus Cantuariensis, et Thomas Eboracensis, et Hubertus sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subdiaconus et præfati Alexandri papæ legatus, et cæteri qui interfuerunt episcopi et abbates. Ventilata est autem hæc causa prius apud Wentanam civitatem in Paschali sollennitate in capella regia quæ sita est in castello: postea in villa regia quæ vocatur Windlesor; ubi et finem accepit in præsentia regis, episcoporum, abbatum diversorum ordinum, qui congregati erant apud curiam in festivitate Pentecostes.[1]

The archbishop of York to profess obedience to Canterbury; to come to Canterbury to consecrate and to be consecrated.

Agreement of the prelates.

Discussion at Winchester and Windsor.

Account of Baldwin V. count of Flanders.

Quintus Baldeuinus Insulanus Flandrensium comes, pater Matildis uxoris regis Anglorum Willelmi, habuit duos filios, Baldewinum et Robertum. Quorum uterque uxorem accepit vivente patre eorum. Nam Baldeuinus primogenitus habuit uxorem comitissam Hainaucensem, ex qua genuit duos filios, Ernulfum et Baldeuinum. Robertus autem

[1] *Anno . . . Pentecostes*] W. Malmesb., G. R. iii. § 298.

accepit conjugem relictam Florentii comitis Frisiæ, quæ unicam ex Florentio habebat filiam. Quam Robertus longe facere volens a paterna hæreditate, dedit eam Philippo regi Francorum, et ita comitatus Frisiæ remansit ei cum matre puellæ, unde cognominatus est Frisio. Decessit autem ante mortem patris sui Baldewini Baldeuinus comes Hainaucensis, et successit Ernulfus filius ejus primogenitus. Tandem hoc anno mortuo quinto Baldeuino comite Flandriæ cum Ernulfus comes Hainaucensis deberet ei succedere, utpote nepos ex primogenito ejus filio, et ad hoc etiam niteretur Philippus rex Francorum veniens in auxilium ejus, et Matildis regina Anglorum mittens ei Willelmum filium Osberni cum armata militum manu, Robertus Frisio* adjuncto exercitu Henrici Romanorum et Alemannorum imperatoris improviso super eos irruens, fugato Philippo rege Francorum, Ernulfum nepotem suum, et Willelmum Osberni comitem Herefordiæ peremit, die Dominico Septuagesimæ: et hac de causa Flandriam usque ad suum obitum possedit.[2]

A.D. 1072. Robert the Frisian.

Ernulf of Hainault.

Baldwin V. survives both his sons.

War of the succession.

Robert victorious.

Death of William Fitz Osbern.

* Cujus filia nupsit Cnutoni regi Danorum, de qua Cnuto genuit Karolum postea Flandrensium comitem.[1]

Post Assumptionem Sanctæ Mariæ, rex Anglorum Willelmus Scotiam profectus est ut eam subjugaret. Cui rex Scotorum Malcolmus in loco qui dicitur Abernitici occurrit, et hominium sibi fecit.[3]

William receives the homage of the king of Scots.

MLXXIII. Rex Anglorum Willelmus civitatem quæ dicitur Cenomannis, et provinciam illam, maxime Anglorum adjutorio, sibi subjugavit.[4]

A.D. 1073. He conquers Maine.

---

[1] *Cujus . . . comitem*] This parenthetical note, entered on the margin of A., is omitted in D.

[2] *Quintus . . . possedit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1072; from the continuation of William of Jumiéges, lib. viii. c. xiv., with the exception of the passage mentioned in the last note.

[3] *Post . . . fecit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1072, who, however, reads "homo suus devenit." The words "hominium sibi fecit" in A. are written over an erasure.

[4] *Rex . . . subjugavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1073.

A.D. 1074. Gregory VII.

MLXXIIII. Gregorius papa vii[us].

Hic cum esset Romanus archidiaconus, vocatus Hiltibrandus, creatus est apostolicus.[1]

His measures against the married clergy.

C Ō

Gregorius papa celebrata synodo symoniacos anathematizavit, uxoratos sacerdotes a Divino removit officio, et laicis Missam eorum audire interdixit; novo exemplo, et, ut multis visum est, inconsiderato præjudicio contra sanctorum patrum sententiam, qui scripserunt quod sacramenta quæ in ecclesia fiunt, baptismus, crisma, Corpus et Sanguis Christi, Spiritu Sancto latenter operante eorundem sacramentorum effectum, seu per bonos, seu per malos, intra Dei ecclesiam dispensentur; tamen quia Spiritus Sanctus mistice illa vivificat, nec bonorum meritis amplificantur, nec peccatis malorum attenuantur. Ex qua re tam grave oritur scandalum, ut nullius hæresis tempore sancta ecclesia graviori scismate discissa sit, his pro justitia, illis contra justitiam agentibus. Porro continentiam paucis tenentibus, aliquibus eam modo causa quæstus ac jactantiæ simulantibus, multis incontinentiam perjurio, aut multipliciori adulterio cumulantibus; ad hæc, hac oportunitate laicis insurgentibus contra sacros ordines, et se ab omni ecclesiastica subjectione excutientibus, laici sacra mysteria temerant, et de his disputant; infantes baptizant, sordido humore aurium pro sacro oleo et crismate utentes, in extremo vitæ viaticum Dominicum, et usitatum ecclesiæ obsequium sepulturæ, a presbiteris conjugatis accipere parvi pendunt, decimas presbiteris deputatas igni cremant; et ut in uno cætera perpendas, laici Corpus Domini a presbiteris conjugatis consecratum sæpe pedibus conculcaverunt, et Sanguinem Domini voluntarie effuderunt.[2]

(Margin: Argument of Sigebert on the subject.)

Rebellion of the earls.

Herefordensis comes Rogerus, filius Willelmi, Estanglorum comiti Radulfo contra præcep-

---

[1] *Gregorius . . . . apostolicus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1073.

[2] *Gregorius . . . . effuderunt*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1074. Sigebert's Epistola adversus laicorum in presbyteros conjugatos calumniam, which may be seen in Martene and Durand, Thesaurus, i. 230.

tum regis Willelmi sororem suam conjugem tradidit, nuptiasque cum plurima multitudine optimatum in Grantebregensi provincia, in loco qui dicitur Ixninga celebrantes, magnam conjurationem plurimis assentientibus contra regem Willelmum ibi fecerunt, comitemque Waltheofum suis insidiis præventum secum conjurare compulerunt. Qui mox ut potuit Lanfrancum Dorobernensem archiepiscopum adiit, pœnitentiamque ab eo pro facto licet non sponte sacramento accepit, ejusque consilio regem Willelmum in Normanniam petiit, eique rem ex ordine gestam pandens, illius misericordiæ ultro se dedit. Herefordensi vero comiti ne trans Sabrinam Radulfo occurreret, restitit Wlstanus Wigornensis episcopus, et Ægelwinus Eoveshamensis abbas cum Ursone vicecomite Wigornæ, et Waltero de Laceio. Odo vero Bajocensis episcopus frater regis, et Gaufridus Constantiensis episcopus, cum exercitu ad Minorem Britanniam Radulfum fugere compulerunt. Rex autem Willelmus, de Normannia reversus, eorum qui in illum conjuraverant quosdam exlegavit, quosdam erutis oculis vel manibus truncatis deturpavit.[1]

A.D. 1074. Marriage at Ixning, and conspiracy. Waltheof sworn to secrecy. He reveals the plot to the king. The revolt put down. Return of the king.

MLXXV. Comites vero Waltheophum et Rogerum sententia judiciali dampnatos artiori custodiæ mancipavit. Sed Walteophum extra civitatem Wintoniam ductum indigne rex decapitari, et in eodem loco terra jussit obrui. Sed processu temporis corpus ejus de terra levatur, et magno cum honore Crulant sepeliendum deportatur. Post hæc rex Willelmus, in Minorem Britanniam transiens, castellum Radulfi comitis, quod Dol dicitur, tam diu obsedit donec Francorum rex Philippus illum inde fugaret.[2]

A.D. 1075. Waltheof beheaded; and buried at Crowland. William besieges Dol.

MLXXVI.[3]
MLXXVII. Robertus Willelmi regis primogenitus, eo quod Normanniam, quam sibi ante adventum ip-

Robert claims Normandy.

---

[1] *Herefordensis . . . deturpavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1074.

[2] *Comites . . . fugaret*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1074, 1075.

[3] *MLXXVI.*] Radulfus comes exivit de Anglia, ins. D.; om. A. B.

A.D. 1077. Robert invades Normandy.

sius in Angliam coram Philippo rege Francorum dederat, possidere non licebat, Franciam adiit, et auxilio Philippi regis in Normannia magnam frequenter prædam agebat, villas comburebat, homines perimebat, et patri suo non parvam molestiam et anxietatem inferebat.[1]

Great frost, A.D. 1078.

Gelu magnum et glacies validissima a kalendis Novembris usque in medio Aprilis.[2]

Dedication of Bec.

MLXXVIII. Ecclesia Becci decimo kalendas Decembris in honore Sanctæ Mariæ dedicata est ab archiepiscopo Cantuariæ Lanfranco; cujus operis ipse post abbatem Herlewinum primum lapidem posuit.[3]

A.D. 1079. William is wounded by his son at Gerberoi.

MLXXIX. Rex Willelmus filio suo Roberto ante castellum Gerberrei, quod rex Philippus præstiterat, dum pugnam intulit, ab ipso vulneratus in brachio a suo dejectus est emissario: sed mox ut illum per vocem cognovit, festinus descendit; ac illum suum caballum ascendere jussit, et sic abire permisit. Ille autem multis suorum occisis, nonnullis que captis, ac filio suo Willelmo cum multis vulnerato, fugam iniit.[4] Maledixit igitur rex Roberto filio suo; quam maledictionem antequam moreretur evidenter perpessus est.[5]

He curses him.

MLXXX. Rex Willelmus duxit exercitum suum in Waliam, et eam sibi subdidit.

A.D. 1081. Odo imprisoned.

MLXXXI. MLXXXII. Odonem episcopum fratrem suum in carcerem posuit postea.[6]

A.D. 1082. War at Rome.

Multis homicidiis inter Henricum regem et Hiltibrandum papam peractis, in nocte Palmarum multi sunt occisi.[7]

---

[1] *Robertus . . . inferebat*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1077. MS. C. adds, "Paulus abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Al-" "bani xiiii."

[2] *Gelu . . . . . Aprilis*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1076.

[3] *Ecclesia . . . posuit*] Rob. de Monte, Accessiones ad Sigebertum, A.D. 1077; from W. Gemmet. lib. vi. c. 9.

[4] *Rex . . . . . iniit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1079.

[5] *Maledixit . . . perpessus est*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1076. The first part of the sentence is from Henry of Huntingdon, fo. 211.

[6] *Rex . . . postea*] R. de Monte, p. 727; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 212.

[7] *Multis . . . . occisi*] Marianus Scotus; Flor. Wig., A.D. 1082.

MLXXXIII. Henricus urbem Romæ infregit et cepit, et Wibertum in sede apostolica constituit. Hiltibrandus vero Beneventum adiit, ubi usque ab obitum suum deguit.[1] A.D. 1083. Flight of Gregory VII.

SC

MLXXXIIII. Obiit Matildis regina, filia Baldewini comitis Flandrensis, uxor Willelmi regis Angliæ.[2] Death of the queen.

MLXXXV.

MLXXXVI.

MLXXXVII. Rex Willelmus, curiam suam in Nativitate Domini tenens Glavornæ, tribus suis capellanis, Mauritio scilicet Lundoniensem, Willelmo Theodfordensem, Roberto Cestrensem dedit præsulatum.[3] A.D. 1087. Bishops appointed.

Idem rex Willelmus misit justiciarios suos per unamquamque scyram, id est, provinciam Angliæ, et inquirere fecit per jusjurandum quot hydæ, id est, jugera uni aratro sufficientia per annum, essent in unaquaque villa, et quot animalia. Fecit etiam inquiri quid unaquæque urbs, castellum, vicus, villa, flumen, palus, silva redderet per annum. Hæc omnia in cartis scripta delata sunt ad regem, et inter thesauros reposita usque hodie servantur.[4] Domesday Survey.

In ebdomada Pentecostes suum filium Henricum apud Westmonasterium armis militaribus rex Willelmus honoravit. Henry knighted. Nec multo post, convocatis tam clero quam baronibus apud Screasberie omnes fidelitatem sibi contra omnes homines jurare a rege coacti sunt.[5] Oath of allegiance taken at Salisbury.

SC

Desiderius, qui et Victor, papa contra Clementem est factus.[6] Victor antipope.

Translatio Sancti Nicholai archipræsulis a Myrrea metropoli Græcorum ad Barum civitatem Apuliæ.[7] Translation of S. Nicolas.

---

[1] *Henricus . . . deguit*] Marianus Scotus; Flor. Wig., A.D. 1083.

[2] *Obiit . . . Angliæ*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1083.

[3] *Rex . . . præsulatum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1083.

[4] *Idem . . . servantur*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1083; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 212.

[5] *In ebdomada . . . coacti sunt*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1086.

[6] *Desiderius . . . factus*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1086.

[7] *Translatio . . . Apuliæ*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1087. MS. B. adds, "Willelmum Bastardum regem "Anglorum Philippus rex Fran"corum derisit, dicens eum jacere

A.D. 1087.
William burns Mantes.

MLXXXVIII. Rex Willelmus, regnum Franciæ devastans, castrum nobile quod vocatur Maante combussit, et ecclesias quæ ibi erant, plebemque multam, et duos anachoritas sanctos igni tradidit; sed in ipso reditu dirus viscerum dolor illum apprehendit. Cum autem diem sibi mortis imminere sensisset, fratrem suum Odonem, et omnes quos in Anglia vel Normannia custodiæ mancipaverat, laxavit.[1]

He prepares for death.

Willelmus omnibus consulibus Normanniæ fortior fuit, omnibus Anglorum regibus potentior, omnibus prædecessoribus suis laude dignior. Erat autem sapiens sed astutus, locuples[2] sed cupidus, gloriosus sed famæ deditus, ad castella solus omnes fatigabat construenda. Si cervum aut aprum quis caperet, oculos ei eruebat, amabat enim feras tanquam pater esset ferarum. Huic Normannia hæreditarie provenerat, Cenomanniam armis adquisierat, Britanniam sibi acclinem fecerat, super Angliam solus regnaverat, Scotiam sibi subjugaverat, Walliamque reverendus in suam acceperat. Terris vicinis terrori inerat. Pacis autem tantus auctor fuerat, quod puella auro onusta regnum Angliæ pertransire posset impune. Willelmus hic mirabilis terram suam sic divisit, Roberto primogenito suo Normanniam; Willelmo secundo filio suo Angliæ monarchiam; Henrico thesauri copiam. Pro quo cum Robertus partem ei Normanniæ vendidisset, thesauro habito, quod ei vendidit iterum abstulit. Rex igitur Willelmus postquam xx. annis, mensibus x. et xxviii. diebus, genti Anglorum præfuit, v. idus Septembris, die Jovis, regnum cum vita reliquit, et Cadomi in ecclesia Sancti Stephani, quam

His character.

His conquests.

His division of his estates.

He is buried at Caen.

"sicut mulierem puerperam. Purgaverat enim ventrem potione. Cui Willelmus respondit, 'Cum 'ad Missam iero C.M. candelas ei 'libabo.'" From W. Malmesb., G. R. iii. § 281. MS. D. inserts "Willelmus rex obiit; successerunt "filii, Willelmus in Angliam, Robertus in Normanniam."

[1] *Rex . . . laxavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1087: the word *anachoritas* is from Henry of Huntingdon; Florence reading *reclusos*.

[2] *locuples*] locuplex, A.

ipse a fundamentis construxerat, sepultus requiescit. Uxor vero sua Matildis abbatiam sanctimonialium ibidem construxit, ubi et ipsa requiescit.[1] *A.D. 1087.*

Willelmus filius regis Willelmi Angliam festinato adiit, ducens secum Wlnothum et Morkarum, quos pater suus laxavit. Sed mox ut Wintoniam venit, eos custodiæ mancipavit.[2] *William Rufus goes to England.*

Sexto kalendas Octobris, die Dominico, in Westmonasterio a Lanfranco Dorobernias archiepiscopo jam dictus Willelmus consecratus est in regem. *He is crowned by Lanfranc, Sept. 26.* Deinde Wintoniam rediens, thesauros patris sui, ut ipse jusserat, per Angliam divisit; ecclesiis in civitatibus, vel villis, per singulas denarios xl. dedit, cruces, textos, scrinia, ac varia ornamenta gemmis et auro redimita per ecclesias digniores, et monasteria dividi jussit. *He disposes of his father's treasures;* Ejus quoque germanus Robertus in Normanniam reversus, thesauros quos invenerat, pro anima patris sui largiter divisit, et Ulfum Haroldi quondam regis filium a custodia laxatum et armis militaribus honoratum, abire permisit.[3] *as does Robert.*

Hoc anno[4] inter primates Angliæ magna est orta discordia. *A.D. 1088.* Pars enim nobiliorum Normannorum favebat regi Willelmo, sed minima. Pars vero altera Roberto comiti, sed maxima, cupiens hunc sibi asciscere in regnum, fratrem vero aut fratri tradere vivum, aut regno privare peremptum. *Division of the lords between William and Robert.* Hujus execrandæ rei principes extiterunt Odo episcopus Bajocensis, qui tunc erat comes Cantuariensis, Robertus etiam frater ejus. Intererat etiam prædicto consilio, cum Roberto nepote suo comite Northymbriæ, Gaufridus episcopus Constantiensis, Willelmus episcopus Dunholmensis. *Robert's advisers.* Episcopus igitur Bajocensis munita

---

[1] *Willelmus . . requiescit*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1087; from Henry of Huntingdon, lib. vii. fo. 212.

[2] *Willelmus . . mancipavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1087.

[3] *Sexto . . permisit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1087.

[4] *Hoc anno*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1088.

A.D. 1088.

Robert invited to England.

Rovecestra misit Normanniam, exhortans comitem Robertum venire in Angliam, nuntians ei regnum paratum et coronam. Missi itaque viri auxiliarii a comite Roberto in Angliam, ab Odone Rovecestram receperunt custodiendam. Quorum primates erant Eustachius junior comes Boloniæ, et Robertus de Belesmo. Quo audito, rex Willelmus vocat quos sibi credit fidos, vadit Lundoniam, belli tractaturus negotia. Congregato igitur quantum poterat Normannorum, sed maxime Anglorum, pedestri et equestri licet mediocri exercitu, tendere disposuit Rovecestriam, sed Tunebrigiam, cui præerat Gilebertus filius Ricardi, contrariam sibi invenit. Qua in biduo expugnata, Gilebertum vulneratum ad deditionem coegit. Audito regis adventu Rovecestriam, adiit Odo castrum fratris sui Roberti Moritunensis comitis, scilicet Pevenesa. Inito itaque salubri consilio, rex patruum suum eousque persequitur, et obsesso ibidem utroque patruo, propter locum munitissimum ad expugnationem indies laborat. Interim circumquaque per Angliam tempestas sævit bellica. Rogerus in castello suo Arundel comitis Roberti operiebatur adventum; Gaufridus episcopus Constantiensis in castello suo Bristoa, cum nepote suo Roberto de Mulbraio, qui Batoniam et ejus provinciam igne succendit; et inde procedens Yvelcestriam obsedit, sed repulsus inde abscessit. Willelmus de Owe Glavornam, Robertus filius Baldeuini de Exacestra Devoniam, Hugo de Grentesmaisnilo Legercestriæ provinciam, Rogerus Bigotus Estangliam deprædati sunt. Bernardus de Novo Mercato, Rogerus de Laccio, Radulfus de Mortuo Mari Wigorniam invadunt. Sed pater reverendus Wlstanus, jam quodammodo alter Moyses parat se, viriliter staturus pro populo et civitate sua, pro imminente periculo fundens precamina, exhortans subditos ne desperent de Deo Qui non pugnat gladio neque hasta. Normanni interim rogant episcopum Wlstanum, ut ab ecclesia ad eos transiret in castellum. Ipse vero pro

William besieges and takes Tunbridge.

Odo holds out at Pevensey;

Roger Montgomery at Arundel;

Geoffrey of Coutances in Somerset.

Worcester defended by Wulfstan.

regis fidelitate petitioni eorum adquievit. A.D. 1088.
Castellani igitur et cives licentia episcopi hostibus trans Sabrinam occurrunt. Quibus inquit, "Ite, filii, ite in pace, ite securi cum "Dei et nostra benedictione. Confidens ego "in Domino spondeo, vobis non hodie nocebit gladius." Alacres ergo omnes unanimiter hostibus occurrunt. Hostes vero contumaciter episcopi spernentes mandata, in terram ipsius posuerunt incendia, unde gravi eos episcopus, a circumstantibus coactus, percussit anathemate. Res miranda, et Dei virtus, et viri bonitas. Nam statim hostes tanta membrorum percutiuntur debilitate, tanta oculorum attenuantur cæcitate, ut vix arma ferre valerent, nec socios nec hostes agnoscere. Cæduntur pedites, capiuntur milites. Cæteris fuga elapsis, regis fideles sine ulla diminutione suorum remeant ad propria, gratias Deo et episcopo referentes.[1]

Speech of Wulfstan.

His victory.

MLXXXIX. Lanfrancus inter alia bona sua viginti quinque maneria ecclesiæ Cantuariensi restituit.[2] Ecclesiam Rofensem ipse instauravit, et in ea episcopum ordinavit Beccensem monachum nomine Hernostum, in cujus consecratione inventus est evangelii versus, "Cito proferte stolam primam," et cætera. Quod cum audisset Lanfrancus, prædixit eum cito moriturum, et sic contigit nondum anno completo. Abbatiam quoque Sancti Albani restituit in primum statum, in qua posuit abbatem Paulum, qui ibi ordinem Becci instituit sicut usque hodie est.[3]

A.D. 1089.

Good works of Lanfranc.

S. Luke, xv. 22.

He restores S. Alban's.

MXC. Willelmus rex Anglorum, regni sui ulcisci paratus injurias quas frater suus Robertus ingesserat, muneribus datis adquisivit sibi castellum Sancti Walerici, et Albamarle, et Ou, et Fiscamnum.[4] Suorum autem in-

A.D. 1090.

William acquires lands in Normandy.

[1] *Hoc anno . . . referentes*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1088.

[2] *Lanfrancus . . . restituit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1089.

[3] *Ecclesiam . . . hodie est*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1089; Vita Lanfranci, cap. xiii. § 34.

[4] *Willelmus . . Fiscamnum*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1090; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 213; Flor. Wig., A.D. 1091.

A.D. 1090. Philip is bribed to desert Robert.

fidelitate cognita, comes Robertus regem Francorum Philippum in Normanniam venire fecit, sed a Willelmo rege non modica pecuniæ data quantitate in Franciam remeavit.[1]

Ivo of Chartres.

YVO CARNOTENSIS EPISCOPUS REGULARUM EXCEPTIONES ECCLESIASTICARUM IN UNUM CORPUS ADUNAVIT[2] HUC USQUE.

A.D. 1091. See of Wells removed to Bath.

MXCI. Johannes Wellensis episcopus, natione Turonicus, sedem præsulatus transtulit Batoniam, regis consensu.[3]

Treaty between William and Robert.

Rex Anglorum Willelmus cum fratre suo Roberto concordiam fecit; eo tamen pacto ut castra illa quæ frater ab eo adquisierat regi remanerent.[4] Hoc etiam inter se statuerunt, si alter sine hærede moreretur, superstiti remaneret defuncti hæreditas. Post hæc simul venerunt in Angliam.[5]

Scotland submits to William.

Deinde in Scotiam contra Malcolmum regem, qui hostiliter Northimbriam invaserat, profecti sunt; sed tandem in provincia Loidis pacificantur ea conditione, ut Willelmo regi, sicut patri suo olim, Malcolmus obediret; et Malcolmo xii. villas, quas in Anglia sub patre suo habuerat, Willelmus redderet, et duodecim marcas auri singulis annis daret.[6]

Schism in the Roman church.

Erant duo, sicut ferebatur, qui dicebantur Romani pontifices, a se invicem discordantes, et ecclesiam Dei inter se divisam trahentes; Urbanus scilicet, qui primum vocatus Odo, fuerat episcopus Ostiensis; et Clemens, qui Wibertus, archiepiscopus Ravennensis. Quæ res per plures annos ecclesiam Angliæ in tantum occupavit, ut ex quo Gregorius qui et Hyltibrandus defunctus fuit, nulli loco

---

[1] *suorum . . . remeavit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1090.

[2] *Yvo . . . adunavit*] See above, p. 23.

[3] *Johannes . . . consensu*] Will. Malmsb. G. R. iv. § 338; G. P. ii. § 90.

[4] *Rex . . . remanerent*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1091; H. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 213.

[5] *Hoc . . . Angliam*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1091.

[6] *Deinde . . . daret*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1091.

papæ usque ad hoc tempus subdi, vel obedire voluerit.[1] A.D. 1091. Schism.

MXCII. Antistes Remigius, qui licentia regis Willelmi senioris episcopalem sedem de Dorcacestra mutaverat Lindicolniæ, constructam in ea ecclesiam pontificali cathedra dignam dedicare volebat. Sed Thomas Eboracensis archiepiscopus illi contradicendo resistebat, affirmans eam in sua parochia esse constructam. At rex Willelmus junior fere totius Angliæ episcopis mandavit, ut in unum convenientes vi. idus Maii ecclesiam dedicarent. Sed biduo ante diem statutum episcopus Remigius migravit e sæculo, et ecclesiæ per hoc remansit dedicatio. His actis, rex Norhimbriam profectus civitatem Carleuil restauravit, quæ a Danis paganis ante cc. annos diruta usque ad id tempus mansit deserta.[2]

A.D. 1092. See of Dorchester removed to Lincoln.

Remigius dies before the dedication of the church.

Carlisle restored.

MXCIII. Rex Willelmus, in regia villa quæ vocatur Alvestan vehementi percussus infirmitate, civitatem Glavornam festinanter adiit, ibique per totam Quadragesimam languosus jacuit. Qui cum se putaret cito moriturum, ut ei sui barones suggesserunt, vitam suam corrigere, ecclesias non amplius vendere, nec ad censum ponere, sed illas regia tueri potestate, rectas leges statuere, Deo promisit. Suadetur ei ut de matre totius regni, ecclesia scilicet Cantuariensi, cogitet, et eam a pristina viduitate et calamitate per institutionem pontificis relevet. Unde Anselmo Beccensi abbati, qui quarto anno oppressionis Anglicanæ ecclesiæ invitatus, immo districta interpellatione ab Hugone Cestrensi comite, multisque aliis Anglorum principibus, qui eum animarum suarum advocatum elegerant, insuper etiam pro communi utilitate coactus, Angliam ingressus est, Dorobernensem archiepiscopatum concessit, et

A.D. 1093. Illness of the king.

His promises of amendment.

He makes Anselm archbishop of Canterbury.

[1] *Erant . . volucrit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1091; Eadmer, Hist. Nov. i. p. 25.

[2] *Antistes . . . deserta*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1092.

A.D. 1093.

cancellario suo Roberto Bloet[1] Lindicolnensem dedit præsulatum.[2]

He directs Anselm to be invested with the estates of his see.

Acta sunt hæc anno præsenti ii. nonas Martii, prima Dominica Quadragesimæ. Præcepit itaque rex ut investiretur Anselmus omnibus ad archiepiscopatum pertinentibus, atque ut civitas Cantuariæ, quam Lanfrancus suo tempore in beneficio a rege tenebat, et abbatia Sancti Albani, quam non solum Lanfrancus, sed et antecessores ejus habuisse noscuntur, in alodium ecclesiæ Christi Cantuariensis, pro redemptione animæ suæ, perpetuo jure transirent.[3]

Anselm consecrated, Dec. 4.

Convenientibus ferme totius Angliæ episcopis, quibus interest Thomas Eboracensis archiepiscopus, Anselmum pridie nonas Decembris consecraverunt antistitem.[4] Verum cum ante ordinandi pontificis examinationem, Walchelinus Wentanus episcopus rogatu Mauritii Lundoniensis episcopi, cujus hoc officium est, ecclesiastico more electionem scriptam legeret, mox in primo versu Thomas Eboracensis graviter offensus, eam non jure factam conquestus est. Nam cum diceretur, "Fratres et coepiscopi mei, vestræ "fraternitati est cognitum quantum tempo"ris est ex quo, accidentibus variis eventi"bus, hæc Dorobernensis ecclesia, totius "Britanniæ metropolitana, sit viduata pas"tore:" subintulit dicens, "Si totius Bri"tanniæ metropolitana, ecclesia Eboracensis, "quæ metropolitana esse scitur, metropoli"tana non est. Et quidem ecclesiam Can"tuariensem primatem totius Britanniæ esse "scimus, non metropolitanam." Quod auditum ratione subnixum esse intellectum est. Tunc mutata scriptura, pro totius Britanniæ metropolitana, totius Britanniæ primas

Complaint of the archbishop of York, on behalf of his see.

Anselm is primate of all Britain.

---

[1] *Bloet*] om. D.

[2] *Rex . . . præsulatum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1093.

[3] *Acta . . . transirent*] Eadmer, Hist. Nov. i. p. 18. MS. C. adds here "Obiit Paulus abbas et restau"rator ecclesiæ Sancti Albani."

[4] *Convenientibus . . . antistitem*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1093.

scriptum est, et omnis controversia conquievit. Itaque sacravit illum ut primatem totius Britanniæ. Cum igitur inter sacrandum pro ritu ecclesiæ textus evangelii super eum ab episcopis apertus tentus, et peracta consecratione fuisset inspectus, hæc in summitate paginæ sententia reperta est, "Vocavit multos, et misit servum suum, et "cœperunt omnes excusare."[1] — A.D. 1093. The *sortes evangelicæ* on the occasion. — S. Luke, xiv. 18.

MXCIIII.[2] Herebertus, qui cognominatur Losenga, ex abbate Ramesiæ, empto præsulatu, Teodfensis ecclesiæ factus est episcopus. Verumtamen erroneum impetum abolevit pœnitentia; Romam namque profectus, symoniacum baculum et anulum deponens, indulgentia clementissimæ sedis iterum recipere meruit. Domum vero reversus sedem episcopalem transportavit ad Norwicum, ibique monachorum congregationem instituit.[3] — A.D. 1094. Herbert Losinga bishop of Thetford: removes to Norwich.

MXCV. Vir venerabilis vitæ Wlstanus episcopus ecclesiæ Wigornensis migravit e sæculo, anno a primo sæculi die certa scripturæ ratione v̄. cc. xix. Cujus transitus hora, suo quem specialiter dilexerat amico Roberto Herefordensi episcopo, in oppido quod Criccelad vocatur in visione apparuit, illique ad se tumulandum Wigornam properare mandavit. Anulum etiam cum quo pontificalem susceperat benedictionem neminem passus est digito extrahere, ne post mortem suos videretur fallere, quibus prædixerat sæpissime, nec illum vita comite se velle perdere, nec etiam sepulturæ suæ die.[4] — A.D. 1095. S. Wulfstan dies. Vision of the bishop of Hereford.

Walterus Albanensis episcopus, Romanæ ecclesiæ legatus, ante Pascha venit in Angliam, pallium pro quo rex Willelmus ad Urbanum papam miserat illi deferens. Quod iiii. idus Junii die Dominica ab eodem Cantuariam super altare delatum ab Anselmo assump- — The pall sent to Anselm: June 10.

---

[1] *Verum . . . excusare*] Eadmer, Hist. Nov. i. p. 21.

[2] MS. D. inserts here, "Hic suscepit Herbertus pontificatum ecclesiæ Norh'."

[3] *Herebertus . . . . instituit*] Abridged from Florence, A.D. 1094.

[4] *Vir . . . die*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1095.

A.D. 1094.

tum est, atque ab omnibus ob reverentiam beati Petri suppliciter deosculatum.[1]

Council of Clermont.

Excommunication of Philip.

Cō Urbanus papa concilium tenuit apud Clarum Montem, Hildebrandi decreta renovat; Philippum regem Francorum, qui vivente uxore sua superduxerat alterius viventis, scilicet Fulconis Andegavensium comitis, uxorem, excommunicat.[2]

Falling stars seen, April 4.

Circa diluculum pridie nonas Aprilis stellæ videntur labi de cœlo. Inter quas cum unam magnam labi quidam in Francia stuperet, notato loco cum aquam ibi fudisset, fumum cum fervoris sono inde exire magis stupuit.[3]

Rebellion of Robert Mowbray and William of Eu.

Northimbrensis comes Robertus de Mulbraio, et Willelmus de Auco, cum multis aliis, regem Willelmum regno vitaque privare, et filium amitæ illius, Stephanum de Albamarno, conati sunt regem constituere. Sed rex congregato exercitu castella ejus obsedit, milites illius cepit; ipse vero a monasterio Sancti Oswini, quo fugerat, a militibus regis captus est, et in custodia positus.

Bamborough surrendered.

Rex igitur non multo post illum ad Babbenberi, castellum scilicet ipsius comitis, duci, et ejus oculos erui jussit, nisi uxor ejus et propinquus ejus Moreal castrum redderent. Qua necessitate compulsi castellum reddiderunt. Comes autem forti custodiæ mancipandus ad Windelesoram est ductus. Moreal vero factæ traditionis causam regi detexit.[4]

A.D. 1096.

Council at Salisbury, Jan. 13.

Punishment of the rebels.

MXCVI. Octavis Epiphaniæ apud Saresbiriam celebrato concilio, Willelmi de Auco in duello victi oculos eruere, et testiculos abscidere, et dapiferum illius Willelmum de Alderi, filium amitæ illius, rex jussit suspendi. Comitem Odonem de Campania prædicti Stephani patrem, et quosdam alios traditionis participes in custodiam posuit.[5]

---

[1] *Walterus . . . . . deosculatum*] Ibid.

[2] *Urbanus . . . . excommunicat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1095.

[3] *Circa . . . stupuit*] Ibid.

[4] *Northimbrensis . . . . detexit*] Abridged from Florence, A.D. 1095.

[5] *Octavis . . posuit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1096.

Urbano, ut dictum est, in Gallia sinodum celebrante, et ad debellandos paganos Jerusalem proficisci Christianos exhortante,[1] occidentales populi dolentes loca sancta a gentibus prophanari, innumerabiles una inspiratione commoti undique concurrunt, firmissima pace interim composita. Judæos vero ad credendum in Christum compellunt, credere nolentes bonis privant, urbibus eliminant.[2] Hortatu siquidem præfati papæ mox in ipsa synodo comes Sancti Egidii Raimundus, et cum eo multi alii cruce Christi insigniti sunt. Hujus Dei exercitus primates extiterunt Podiensis et Ostiensis episcopi, Hugo magnus, Philippi regis Francorum germanus, dux Lothariensis Godefridus, Anselmus de Ribodi Monte, Carnotensis comes Stephanus, Flandrensis comes Robertus, duo germani Godefridi ducis, Boloniensis comes Eustachius et Baldwinus, prædictus comes Raimundus, Beamundus Roberti Wiscardi filius,[3] Normannorum comes Robertus; qui nuntiis in Angliam missis germanum suum regem Willelmum petiit, ut illi pace redintegrata x̄. marcas argenti præstaret, et ab eo Normanniam in vadimonium acciperet. Qui mox petitioni ejus satisfacere gestiens, a majoribus Angliæ non modica pecunia accommodata mense Septembri mare transiit, et v̄i. DCLXVI. illi præstitit, et ab eo Normanniam vadem accepit.[4]

A.D. 1096. Preparations for the first Crusade.

Heroes of the first Crusade.

Robert mortgages Normandy to William.

Anselmus Dorobernïæ archiepiscopus consecravit Wigornensem episcopum Samsonem Lundoniæ, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, xvii. kalendas Julii die Dominica.[5]

Anselm consecrates Samson to Worcester, June 15.

---

[1] *Urbano . . . . exhortante*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1096.

[2] *occidentales . . . . eliminant*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1096.

[3] *Hortatu . . filius*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1096.

[4] *Normannorum . . . . accepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1096. MS. C. adds here "Ricardus de Albeneio "xv^mus abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Al-"bani."

[5] *Anselmus . . Dominica*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1096.

A.D. 1097.
Battles of the first Crusade.

MXCVII. Primum bellum Christianorum fuit ad pontem Pharphar fluminis ix. kalendas Martii. Secundum apud Niceam, quam et ceperunt xiii. kalendas Julii. Ceperunt et Laodiciam. Cum vero essent plusquam ccc. armatorum, tanta eis suppetebat copia, ut aries uno nummo, bos vix xii. nummis venderetur.[1]

March on Antioch.

Cum igitur post vii. ebdomadas et iii. dies inde Antiochiam tenderent, diviso exercitu, circumdederunt unum eorum exercitum ccclx. equitum, et Arabes quorum non erat numerus. Mittitur ergo ad alium exercitum. Bellum igitur geritur horrendum, in quo Christiani vehementer attriti sunt. Quibus jam fugam meditantibus occurrit Robertus dux Normanniæ clamans: "Quo "milites? quo fugitis? Equi eorum sunt "nostris velociores, melius bene mori "quam male evadere. Me sequamini."

Exploit of duke Robert.

Dixerat, et in quendam paganorum regem lanceæ direxit aciem, quæ lignum et æs et corpus æque diffidit; stravitque secundum et tertium. Igitur Tancredus, Boamundus, Ricardus de Principatu, Robertus de Ansa, non segnius indulgent ictibus, cum, ecce, Hugo Magnus et Anselmus de Ribemont cum magna caterva alium prævolantes exercitum, defessos paganos recentes fundunt.

Victory of the Crusaders.

Visis igitur ex insperato tot hostibus, pagani fugæ indulgent, Christicolæ vero victoria potiti sunt licet damnosa, primo die Julii. Deinde venerunt ad Eracheam, inde ad Tharsum, quæ subdita est Baldeuino comiti mirifico; Adene vero et Mamistra Tamcheredo. Dux Normanniæ quandam civitatem Symeoni, Raimundus et Boamundus aliam Petro de Alpibus commiserunt.

Antioch besieged.

Tandem venientes ad pontem ferreum, Antiochiam, quæ caput est Syriæ, obsederunt xii. kalendas Novembris. In Februario, congregato mirabili paganorum exercitu ad pontem ferreum apud castellum Areth, nostri sex acies

[1] *Primum . . venderetur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1097.

in eos direxerunt; sed maxima vis paganorum eos tam acriter invasit, ut paulatim jam cederent. At Boamundus bellorum arbiter, Robertus etiam filius Gerardi signifer, velut leones proruunt inter hostes. Dux igitur Normannorum gladio caput cujusdam magni viri, et dentes, et collum, et humeros usque in pectora diffidit. Dux Godefridus quendam medium secavit. Dum igitur pars terræ cecidisset, partem domini ferebat equus inter paganos. Quo monstro perterriti, simul cuncti fugientes, in iram damnationis abierunt.[1]

A.D. 109
Prowess of Bohemond and Godfrey.

ORTUM, VITAM, PROMOTIONEM ANSELMI BECCENSIS ABBATIS IN ARCHIEPISCOPUM CANTUARIENSEM, QUIDVE QUÆSTIONIS EMERSERIT INTER IPSUM ET REGES ANGLORUM, WILLELMUM SCILICET, ET HENRICUM, EDOCEBUNT SEQUENTIA.[2]

Sketch of the life of Anselm.

Anselmus, genere Longobardus, Augustæ civitatis indigena, patrem Gundulfum, matrem habuit Hermerbergam. Litteras edoctus a puero bonos imbibit mores cum litteris, adolescentioris ætatis laxiores habenas intra puræ conscientiæ secreta reflectens, in hoc studuit firmare propositum, ut ab honesto non reflecteret animum. In humilitate simul et scientia litterarum coævos undequaque transcendens, Alpium juga transcendit, invigilans per triennium liberalibus disciplinis in Gallia. Transiens in Normanniam adhæsit Lanfranco priori Beccensi, scholas

His birth and education.

He comes to France.

---

[1] *Cum igitur . . . abierunt*] Rob. de Monte; abridged from Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. folios 214, 215.

[2] The following life of S. Anselm, although it follows closely the string of the narration given by Eadmer, is not strictly speaking an abridgment of his life of Anselm, or excerpted from the Historia Novorum. Nor does it stand in this relation to what William of Malmesbury and John of Salisbury have written on the subject. It seems to have some claims to the character of an independent composition, but our compiler gives no clue to the authorship. An abridgment of it is found among the lives of the archbishops printed under the name of Ralph de Diceto, from the Arundel MS. 220, in Anglia Sacra, ii. 685–687.

A.D. 1097. Life of Anselm.

He becomes a monk at Bec.

publicas, abbatis Herlewini permissu vel jussu, regenti tunc temporis. Sanam cujus doctrinam attendens, et mundialibus curis ex toto renuncians, habitum monachalem suscepit, annum ætatis agens vicesimum septimum. Quos imitari debuerat claustralibus institutis artatus, bonis operibus jugiter inhærendo cura sollicitiore prævenit, in tantum, ut instructionem desiderare fraternam juxta morem novitiorum fratribus ad hoc deditis videretur superfluum, cum ipsum crederent in tanto conventu merito perfectioribus præferendum. Cum jam in claustro continuum transegisset triennium, Lanfrancus abbas primo Cadomensis effectus, post Dorobernensium consecratus antistes, in prioratu Beccensi successorem reliquit Anselmum. Abbati postmodum Herlewino, fratrum unanimi concurrente consensu, curæ pastoralis in virga successit Anselmus. Postremo rex Anglorum secundus Willelmus, ad extrema fere perductus, sed ad tempus fervore caritatis accensus, anno iiii^to^. post decessum Lanfranci, de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ tractatum cœpit habere cum suis. Consilio quorum, sed maxime procerum, abbatem Anselmum e Normannia celerius evocatum, procuravit in archiepiscopum sullimari. Quem invitum et modis omnibus quoad licuit renitentem, concurrentibus omnium votis, suffraganei Cantuariæ consecrarunt, pridie nonas Decembris, cum ageret annum ætatis suæ sexagesimum. Rex in corpore convalescens, ægrotare cœpit in anima. Nam in propriis facultatibus dispergendis effusior, alienas perscrutari non destitit. Tandem ad sanctuarium Dei decurrens, M. libras argenteorum fiscalibus commodis applicandas ab archiepiscopo petebat instantius causam allegans ut sibi videbatur justissimam, quoniam gratis in promotione sua promptum præbuisset assensum. Archiepiscopus vero trahens ad indifferentiam ante promotionem, vel post, talem ob causam numerare pecuniam, pari sententia

He is made prior:

and abbot.

He is made archbishop:

consecrated Dec. 4, 1093.

Extortion of the king.

feriendum decrevit utrumque. Sed quia regis saccos implere non poterat nisi prius bonam conscientiam evacuasset, elegit potius regis indignationem incurrere quam dispendium famæ, quam periculum animæ, quam confusionem in posterum, quam imprecationem multorum in ecclesia Dei subire. Sed ad officium suum juxta morem ecclesiasticum plenius exequendum, a rege licentiam petiit adeundi papam Urbanum pro pallio. Rex ad Urbani nomen statim vehementer incanduit, nam quia tunc temporis ecclesia Romana laborabat in schismate, Wiberto Ravennate metropolitano per violentiam imperatoris Henrici nimis impudenter intruso, suum erat in regno suo quem vellet papam eligere, nec erat alterius apostolicum etiam nominare. Tractus in causam ob eam causam archiepiscopus læsæ majestatis reus arguitur. Ex adverso steterunt episcopi quidam, archiepiscopo debitam subtrahentes obedientiam, quam etiam, in fraterna caritate nolentes persistere, quotquot erant, excepto Rofensi Gundulfo, sustinuerunt in propriam abjurare perniciem. Inimicitiis igitur archiepiscopo denunciatis, non alia ratione sibi vel suis partam securitatem agnoscere potuit per internuncios, nisi protestaretur in medium quod Urbani papæ non amplecteretur mandatum. Aliquot subinde diebus elapsis Walterus Albanensis episcopus, afferens pallium archiepiscopo, papam Urbanum et regem reconciliavit, quibus tamen insertis conditionibus edisserat pro certo qui novit. Quid autem accepto pallio rursus ad petendam licentiam visitandi papam Urbanum secundo tertiove coegerit archiepiscopum, satis innuit indulta licentia sed non licentiosa. Nam si cœpto desisteret, si propositis evangeliis repromitteret, se nec apostolorum limina visitaturum, nec pro negotio quovis Romanæ sedis audientiam appellaturum, tunc poterat et suis et rebus suorum cum omni tranquillitate prospicere,

A.D. 1097.

Life of Anselm.

Causes of Anselm's resistance.

He applies for leave to visit pope Urban, and so offends the king still more, and is accused of treason.

All the bishops but one desert him.

The bishop of Albano reconciles the king and pope.

Anselm obtains leave to go abroad.

A.D. 1097.
Life of Anselm.

poterat et regni majoribus in omni dominatione præesse: sin autem, poterat transfretare, sed inconsultius et sine spe revertendi recedere. Discedens archiepiscopus a conspectu concilii venit Cantuariam, quid reportaret a curia publice manifestans.

He is searched at Dover on his departure.

Ascensuro navem apud Dovoriam Willelmus de Warewast familiarissimus regis irreverenter accurrit, et pecuniam non in ore saccorum solummodo, sed in ipsius archiepiscopi manicis et clitellis improbus perscrutator perquirens, non invento quod quæsierat, sollicitudinem delusam invenit.

His patience.

Poterat hoc alteri verecundiam latam ingerere, sed nec sic ab archiepiscopo vel verbum amaritudinis, vel signum offensionis, vel notam confusionis potuit extorquere.

His estates seized.

Transfretationem ejus publicæ potestatis apparitores ilico prosequuntur, ecclesiæ bona fiscalibus ratiociniis addicentes, et deducentes in irritum quicquid consilio maturiore statuerat archiepiscopus.

He attends the council of Bari,

Limina visitans apostolorum, ab Urbano papa maximo cum honore receptus est Laterani, cum quo postmodum in Barensi concilio Græcorum a fide catholica dissidentium confutavit errorem.

and a council at Rome on investitures.

Habito Romæ concilio, quo rursus idem papa resedit Urbanus, interfuit, in quo laicos investituras ecclesiarum more pristino conferentes, et eas accipientes a laicis, et taliter post adeptum honorem munus consecrationis impendere præsumentes, a communione fidelium sinodalis auctoritas decrevit extorres.

He stays at Lyons, until he is recalled by Henry I.

A concilio rediens archiepiscopus dum exilium æquanimiter Lugduni subiret, effluxit triennium; prope cujus finem vitæ finem rex Anglorum Willelmus incurrit. Cui frater suus Henricus successit in regno, sed nec in moribus, nec in proposito, nam ilico revocavit archiepiscopum, et liberam rerum suarum amministrationem habere permisit. Cum autem de consilio vacantium ecclesiarum per Angliam ab exilii sui tempore primo tractatus haberetur diffusior,

investituram earum regiam dignitatem contingere regni contendebant majores. In contrarium sentiebat archiepiscopus, concilii supradicti fideliter instituta recensens. Ut autem debitam libertatem ecclesiis conservaret, per duos annos et dimidium gravissimis est affectus injuriis. Tandem ut regis indignationem mitigaret in aliquo, sicut petebatur, consensit ut cum nunciis regis Romam proficisceretur, et regni negotia quæ libertatem ecclesiæ non opprimerent procuraret cum eis. Qui venientes Romam, invenerunt Urbano successisse Pascalem. Qui cum adventum archiepiscopi, nuntiorum etiam regis audisset, intellexisset et causam, nec investituram ecclesiarum, nec quicquam aliud quod Regem cœlorum offenderet Henrico regi concessit. Infecto negotio nuntiis redeuntibus, dum Lugdunensium limites attigissent, Willelmus de Warewast ex parte regis inhibuit archiepiscopo ne rediret in Angliam nisi suum esset propositum ad instituta supradicti concilii non respicere; sed amicam juri consuetudinem antiquitus introductam et utentium approbatam consensu modis omnibus conservare. Sustitit igitur archiepiscopus Lugduni manens, ubi quasi in scola virtutum præsidens magisterio sanctæ conversationis enituit. Bonis itaque suis denuo confiscatis, annus elapsus est et dimidius. Postmodum archiepiscopus a rege rogatus intravit Normanniam. Cum autem Becci rex et archiepiscopus convenissent, sub audientia virorum illustrium tanquam in jure professus est rex, se nichil juris vel sibi vel hæredibus suis in posterum in ecclesiarum investituris vendicaturum, nec in electionibus faciendis aliquid aliud quam solum assensum, sicut sacrorum canonum censura præscribit. Quibus in hunc modum pacificatis, est regressus in Angliam archiepiscopus, ubi dum in causa Dei, dum in causa matris ecclesiæ victoriosissimum reportasset triumphum, in bona quiete consenuit.

A.D. 1097. Life of Anselm.

Dispute on investiture.

Anselm is allowed to go to Rome.

Pope Paschal opposes the king.

Anselm is forbidden to return, unless he will submit.

He stays at Lyons.

He goes to Normandy, and at Bec makes terms with the king.

A.D. 1097.
Extracts from Anselm's correspondence.

Anselm tells Henry I. that he is not bound to follow the rules of Lanfranc.

"Henrico regi Anglorum Anselmus archiepi-
"scopus. In litteris vestris quas nuper
"accepi mandavit michi vestra dignatio
"quod nullum hominem libentius in regno
"vestro velletis habere quam me, si vel-
"lem ita vobiscum esse sicut archiepisco-
"pus Lanfrancus cum patre vestro fuit.
"Ad quod respondeo, quia neque in bap-
"tismo neque in aliqua ordinatione mea
"promisi me servaturum legem vel con-
"suetudinem patris vestri aut Lanfranci
"archiepiscopi, sed legem Dei et omnium
"ordinum quos suscepi. Quapropter si
"vultis me sic esse vobiscum ut possim
"vivere secundum legem Dei et ordinem
"meum, et si me revestitis secundum ean-
"dem legem Dei de omnibus rebus quas
"de archiepiscopatu meo accepistis post-
"quam a vobis discessi, quas si præsens
"essem non deberetis me nolente accipere,
"et hoc michi promittitis, paratus sum
"redire ad vos in Angliam, et servire Deo
"et vobis et omnibus michi commissis,
"secundum officium a Deo michi injunc-
"tum, Ipso adjuvante. Sed quia causa non
"est mea sed Dei michi ab Ipso commen-
"data, timeo diu differre clamorem ad
"Deum facere. Quapropter precor, obsecro,
"ne me cogatis dolentem et invitum cla-
"mare, 'Exurge, Deus, et causam tuam
"'judica.'"[1]

If the king will restore his property he will return.

Pope Paschal to Anselm.

Excommunication of the king's advisers decreed.

"Paschalis papa Anselmo archiepiscopo.
"In concilio quod nuper habuimus, ex com-
"muni fratrum et coepiscoporum sententia
"deliberatum est, regis consiliarios qui
"ad investituræ flagitium ipsum impellunt,
"et eos qui ab eo investiti sunt, ab eccle-
"siæ liminibus repellendos, quia de libera
"facere ancillam conantur. Quam nimirum
"sententiam nos Spiritus Sancti judicio in
"comitem de Mellento et ejus complices

---

[1] *Henrico . . . judica*] See this letter complete among Anselm's Letters, lib. iii. ep. 95.

"promulgavimus, et eandem ipsam in eos "qui sunt investiti a rege, ejusdem Sancti "Spiritus judicio, confirmamus. Regis vero "sententia ea ex causa dilata est, quia "suos ad nos nuntios in præteriti Paschæ "tempore debuit destinare."[1]

A.D. 1097.

Extracts from Anselm's correspondence.

"Henrico regi Anselmus archiepiscopus.

Anselm to Henry I.

"Audio quod vestra excellentia vindictam "exercet super presbiteros Angliæ et forisfacturam exigit ab eis, quod non servaverunt præceptum concilii quod ego "cum vestro favore tenui apud Lundoniam "cum aliis episcopis et religiosis personis. "Quod hactenus inauditum et inusitatum "est in ecclesia Dei de ullo rege vel de "aliquo principe. Non enim pertinet secundum legem Dei hujusmodi culpam "vindicare nisi ad singulos episcopos per "suas parrochias, aut si ipsi episcopi in hoc "negligentes fuerint, ad archiepiscopum "et primatem. Precor igitur vos sicut "karissimum dominum, cujus animam diligo plus quam præsentem vitam corporis "mei, et consulo sicut vere fidelis corpori "et animæ vestræ, ne vos contra ecclesiasticam consuetudinem in tam grave "peccatum mittatis, et, si jam incepistis, "ut omnino desistatis."[2]

It is not the duty of the king to enforce the decrees of the council, but the duty of the bishops.

"Paschalis episcopus Gerardo Eboracensi "archiepiscopo. Sedis apostolicæ benignitas delinquentes filios novit diutius tolerare, ut eorum excessus debita possint "correctione curari. Hoc de te Romana "jamdudum fecit ecclesia, sed tuos adhuc "excessus corrigere contempsisti. Ipse "etiam nosti quia ea spe tuæ promotioni "condescendimus, ut ad resecanda regni "Anglorum contagia fratri nostro Anselmo "Cantuariensi archiepiscopo adjutor et cooperator adesses. Nostræ vero mansuetudinis oblitus, nec eundem fratrem ad-

Paschal II. to Girard, archbishop of York.

He has worn out the pope's patience, and has not helped Anselm.

[1] *Paschalis . . . destinare*] Anselm, Epistt. lib. iii. ep. 171; Eadmer, Hist. Nov. iv. p. 79.

[2] *Henrico . . . . desistatis*] Anselm, Epistt. lib. iii. ep. 109; Eadmer, Hist. Nov. iv. p. 85.

A.D. 1097.
Extracts from Anselm's letters.

He exhorts him to amend.

Excommunication of the king's advisers.

" juvare curasti, nec pro officii tui debito " iniquitati regiæ obviasti, immo fervorem " diceris adhibere. Nos tamen adhuc sedis " apostolicæ mansuetudine sustinemus, eo " nimirum tenore, ut excessus tuos corri- " gas, vitam emendes præteritam, et nobis " sicut dignum est satisfacias. Noveris au- " tem regis consiliarios, comitem videlicet " de Mellento et eos qui ad investituræ " flagitium regem impellunt, in concilio " quod præterita Quadragesima celebravi- " mus, Sancti Spiritus judicio ab ecclesia- " rum liminibus esse repulsos, et in eos " qui investituras acceperunt eandem sen- " tentiam esse firmatam. Quod per te om- " nibus annuntiari præcipimus. Regis vero " sententia ea ex causa dilata est, quia suos " ad nos nuntios in præteriti Paschæ tem- " pore debuit destinare."[1]

Paschal II. to Girard.

He orders him to make his profession of obedience to Anselm.

" Paschalis episcopus Girardo Eboracensi. " Quamquam prave adversum nos, immo " contra matrem tuam sanctam Romanam " ecclesiam te non ignoremus egisse, præ- " sentibus tamen litteris tibi mandamus ut " professionem tuam venerabili fratri nostro " Anselmo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo facere " non negligas. Audivimus enim Thomam " quondam prædecessorem tuum ex hac ea- " dem re contentionem movisse, et cum in " præsentia domini Alexandri secundi papæ " ventilata esset, ex præcepto ejus diffinitione " habita, post varias quæstiones, Lanfranco " prædecessori suo et successoribus suis " eandem professionem fecisse; unde et nos " quod tunc temporis diffinitum est volu- " mus auctore Deo firmum illibatumque " servari."[2]

Paschal II. to Anselm. Absolve the offenders.

" Paschalis papa Anselmo archiepiscopo.
" Eos qui investituras acceperint, aut inves- " titos benedixerint, aut hominia regi fece- " rint, suscipito, et eos absolvito vice nostra,

---

[1] *Paschalis . . . destinare*] Anselm, Epistt. lib. iv. ep. 38.

[2] *Paschalis . . . . servari*] Anselm, Epistt. lib. iii. ep. 131; Eadmer, Hist. Nov. iv. p. 106.

"quos vel ipse benedicas vel a quibus "volueris benedici præcipias."[1] A.D. 1097.

[2] Rex Willelmus dum in nova foresta venaretur, venit ei nuncius a Cenomannia dicens ei familiam suam ibi obsideri. Ilico rex ad mare veniens naves introiit. Cui nautæ, "Cur, regum fortissime, intolerabili tem- "pestate maris alta lacessis, et mortis im- "minens periculum non formidas?" Quibus rex: "De rege fluctibus submerso non "audivi." Ergo mare transiens, spreto periculo, nichil dum viveret egit unde tantam famam haberet. Cenomanniam veniens Helyam consulem turpiter fugavit, et in Angliam iterum transiit.[3]

William Rufus, warned not to embark in a storm, said that he had never heard of a king drowned.

MXCVIII. Obsessa igitur Antiochia, in tantum attenuati sunt Christiani propter omnium rerum penuriam, ut in toto exercitu vix centum boni equi invenirentur; et tamen quamvis ex desperatione multi sese subtraxerint, multi etiam repatriaverint, nono mense obsidionis, iii^tio. nonas Junii capta Antiochia, Christiani a paganis versa vice obsessi tanta fame afflicti sunt, ut vix aliqui ab humanis carnibus abstinerent. Sed eo, fortati a Deo per inventam ipsius lanceam, Andrea apostolo revelante, in ecclesia beati Petri, ipsa lancea eos præcedente, obsessoribus concurrunt, et Cyrbaram principem militiæ aliosque fugantes, multis milibus occisis plenam victoriam habuerunt iiii^to. kalendas Julii. Commissa Antiochia duci Boamundo, Christiani propter discordiam principum in Syriam profecti, expugnatis Marra et Barra, tanta ibi rursum fame affecti sunt, ut corpora Saracenorum jam fœtentia comedere compulsi sint.[4]

A.D. 1098. Sufferings of the crusaders at Antioch.

Discovery of the holy lance.

They are forced to eat human flesh.

---

[1] *Paschalis . . . præcipias*] Anselm, Epistt. lib. iii. ep. 140; Eadmer, Hist. Nov. iv. p. 87; W. Malmesb., G. R. v. § 416.

[2] In MS. D. the following three paragraphs, down to *emanaverunt*, p. 232, line 11, precede instead of following the Life of Anselm.

[3] *Rex . . . . . transiit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1099; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 216.

[4] *Obsessa . . . compulsi sint*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1098: the words *Andrea . . . Petri* are from Florence of Worcester, A.D. 1098.

A.D. 1099.
Foundation of the Cistercian order.

MXCIX. [1]Cœnobium Cisterciense incipitur, principium ordinis dealbati. In Burgundia, in loco qui dicitur Molismus, Robertus abbas condens monasterium viros religiosos ibi congregavit, indicens eis ut secundum regulam beati Benedicti labore manuum suarum viverent. Illis autem nolentibus, recessit ab eis cum xii. monachis, et Cistercium adiens monasterium ibi fundavit. Ex cujus fonte multi rivuli religiositatis postea ut videmus emanaverunt.[2]

History of the crusade.

Christianis Turcos fortiter debellantibus, contigit apud Archas castrum cis Jerusalem viii. mansionibus situm, multos eorum perire, et Anselmum de Ribemont in capite lapide percussum occumbere.[3]

Dearth of food and water.

Exercitus autem Dei in interiora profectus eam subjugaverunt, indicto urbibus tributo, multisque qui se subtraxerant ad eos recurrentibus, tandem pervenerunt Jerusalem, eaque obsessa, cum laborarent pro victus et maxime pro aquæ penuria, omnes ex communi decreto nudis pedibus cotidie orando circuibant urbem. Octavo ergo talis humiliationis die, obsidionis autem xxx^mo^ix^no^. capta est Jerusalem, idus Julii, vi. feria; et in templo Salomonis et in porticu ejus Christiani cum paganis vii°. bello conserto, tanta in eis cæde bachati sunt, ut sanguine occisorum equitarent pæne ad genua equorum. Civitate igitur ordinata et principibus de reditu jam agentibus, ecce Turci occurrerunt cum c̄. equitum et c̄c̄c̄. peditum. Quibus cum occurrisset exercitus Domini non plusquam v̄. equitum et x̄v̄. peditum, Saraceni solo Christianorum impetu territi, omnes projectis armis fugerunt. Et hoc octavo bello iiii^to^. kalendas Augusti cæsa sunt c̄. paganorum. In porta vero

Jerusalem taken.

Frightful slaughter.

Victories of the crusaders.

[1] The following two paragraphs are transposed in D., which Twysden has followed.

[2] *Cœnobium . . . . emanaverunt*] This is from Robert de Monte's edition of Sigebert (ed. D'Achery, p. 732), extracted by him from the Origines Cistercienses; see Mon. Angl. vol. v., pp. 220–226.

[3] *Christianis . . . occumbere*] From the Auctarium Aquicinense of Sigebert; Pertz, vi. 395.

Ascaloniæ ubi bellum fuerat suffocati sunt ad duo milia.[1] A.D. 1099. Battle of Ascalon.

HUCUSQUE SIGISBERTUS GEMBLACENSIS MONACHUS CRONICA SUA DIGESSIT.[2]

MC. Rex Anglorum Willelmus, dum in nova foresta venaretur, in die Sancti Petri ad Vincula a Waltero Tirello sagitta percussus occubuit, et Wintoniæ tumulatur in ecclesia Sancti Petri.[3] A.D. 1100. Death of William Rufus.

Henricus frater regis Willelmi consecratus est rex Anglorum apud Westmustier a Mauricio Lundoniensi episcopo nonis Augusti,[4] cum quo Thomas archiepiscopus Eboracensis coronam capiti regis imposuit.[5] Coronation of Henry I.

Godefridus dux Lothariensium et princeps Jerosolimorum diem clausit extremum.[6] Death of Godfrey of Bouillon.

Henricus rex Anglorum uxorem duxit Mathildem filiam Malcolmi regis Scotorum, et episcopatum Wintoniæ dedit Willelmo Giffard. Rannulfum autem Dunhelmensem episcopum custodiæ mancipavit in turrim Lundoniæ.[7] Marriage of Henry I. Ranulf Flambard imprisoned.

Thomæ Eboracensi archiepiscopo successit Girardus Herefordensis episcopus.[8] Girard archbishop of York.

MCI. Paschalis papa regi Henrico litteris interdixit ecclesiarum investituras aliquibus dare.[9] A.D. 1101. Investitures.

MCII. Henricus rex Robertum de Belesmo expulit ab Anglia.[10] A.D. 1102. Banishment of Robert of Belesme.

---

[1] *Exercitus . . . milia*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1100.

[2] The Chronicles of Sigebert really run on to the year 1111.

[3] *Rex . . . . Petri*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1100. The day was Aug. 2, not the feast of S. Peter ad Vincula; the mention of which is an addition of our compiler.

[4] *Henricus . . . Augusti*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1100.

[5] *cum quo . . . imposuit*] See Will. Malmesb., G. P. lib. iii. § 116. The fact is not mentioned by Florence, but is added in the Chronicles of Peterborough, Walter of Coventry, and others.

[6] *Godefridus . . . extremum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1101.

[7] *Henricus . . . Lundoniæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1100.

[8] *Thomæ . . . episcopus*] Ibid.

[9] *Paschalis . . . dare*] See Eadmer, Hist. Nov. iii. p. 60. MS. D. inserts here "Willelmus junior "obiit, successit Henricus frater "ejus."

[10] *Henricus . . . . Anglia*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1102.

A.D. 1102.
Council at London.

Anselmus archiepiscopus Lundoniæ concilium tenuit, ubi depositi sunt abbates de Persore, de Tavestoc, de Ramesei, de Burc, de Cernel, de Mideltune.[1]

Peace between Robert and Henry.

Robertus dux Normanniæ venit in Angliam, et regis prudentia condonavit regi iii. marcas quas rex debuit ei per annum.[2]

Quarrel of Anselm and Henry about the right of investiture.

Magna discordia orta est inter regem Henricum et Anselmum archiepiscopum, eo quod archiepiscopus nollet consentire, neque consecrare, neque communicare hiis quibus jam rex dederat ecclesias. Unde rex præcepit Girardo Eboracensi archiepiscopo, quatinus consecraret episcopos, quibus rex dederat investituras. Girardus præceptum regis suscepit, sed Willelmus Giffard, quem consecrare debebat, causa justiciæ Girardi sprevit benedictionem. Quare regis judicio eliminatur a regno. Cæteri inconsecrati remanserunt.[3]

A.D. 1103.

MCIII. Reinelmus cancellarius reginæ paulo ante episcopatum Herefordensem regi reddidit, eo quod de manu illius investituram suscepit.[4]

Anselm goes to Rome.

Anselmus archiepiscopus, post multas injurias et contumelias quas passus est, rogatu regis perrexit Romam, sicut ei et regi convenit, habens secum Willelmum Wintoniensem electum, et abbates depositos Ricardum Elyensem et Aldwinum Ramesiensem.[5] Quibus Romam venientibus, contigit Anselmum quædam ibi contra regem eloqui in quibus Ricardum sibi suffragaturum æstimabat. Ricardus vero pro rege agens omnes archiepiscopi calumpnias refellebat. Cujus rei rumor adventum ejus in Angliam præveniens, regis gratiam plenissime ei restauravit.[6]

The abbot of Ely defends the king.

---

1 *Anselmus . . Mideltune*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1102.

2 *Robertus . . . . annum*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1103; H. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 217.

3 *Magna . . . remanserunt*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1103.

4 *Reinelmus . . . suscepit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1103.

5 *Anselmus . . . . Ramesiensem*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1103.

6 *Quibus . . . restauravit*] This is from some source which I have not been able to discover.

MCIIII. Willelmus comes de Moritonio, causa perfidiæ ab Anglia exhæreditatus, in Normanniam discedens, regis Henrici hominibus werram calamitate refertam inflixit.[1] A.D. 1104. The count of Mortain goes to war.

MCV. Filius Henrici imperatoris, a patre aversus, quoscunque potest ab eo avertit, et, sub optentu reipublicæ meliorandæ et restaurandæ ecclesiæ, in eum insurgit.[2] A.D. 1105. Henry IV. attacked by his son.

MCVI. Rex Anglorum Henricus veniens in Normanniam fere omnes principes Normannorum subjugavit, exceptis Roberto de Beleasmo, Willelmo de Moritonio, et paucis aliis.[3] A.D. 1106. Conquest of Normandy.

Rex Anglorum Henricus Beccum venit, ubi ipse et Anselmus archiepiscopus in unum convenerunt, et tandem omnia quæ in diversa traxerant pacem et concordiam invenerunt. Et idem archiepiscopus jussu et rogatu regis Angliam redit.[4] Reconciliation of Anselm.

Congregato exercitu, rex Anglorum Henricus ad quoddam castrum comitis de Moritonio, quod vocatur Tenerchebrai, perrexit et obsedit. Interim venit comes Robertus frater regis super eum cum exercitu suo in vigilia Sancti Michaelis, et cum eo Robertus de Beleasmo et comes Willelmus de Moritonio. Battle of Tenchebrai.
Sed jus et victoria facta est regis. Ibi captus est Robertus comes Normanniæ et comes de Moritonio et Robertus de Stutevilla. Robertus de Beleasmo in fugam versus est, et Willelmus Crispinus captus. His ita gestis rex subegit sibi totam Normanniam et secundum voluntatem suam dictavit.[5] Capture of duke Robert.

Henricus filius imperatoris contra jus naturæ in patrem insurgens, quam indigne eum tractaverit declarat epistola ex ore ipsius patris scripta ad Philippum regem Francorum.[6] Reports from the empire.

---

1 *Willelmus . . . inflixit*] Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 217; R. de Monte.

2 *Filius . . . . insurgit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1105; R. de Monte.

3 *Rex . . . aliis*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1106.

4 *Rex . . . redit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1106.

5 *Congregato . . . . dictavit*] Abridged from Flor. Wig., A.D. 1106.

6 *Henricus . . . Francorum*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1106; R. de Monte.

A.D. 1106. Attempt to seize the emperor at Liege frustrated.

Imperatore Henrico morante Leodi, filius ejus Aquisgrani venit, et volens venire Leodium contra patrem suum, v^ta^. feria Dominicæ Cœnæ, præmisit suos præoccupare pontem apud Winsatum, ne quis sibi venienti obstaret. Sed militibus patris concurrentibus ad exoccupandum pontem, milites filii a ponte repelluntur, aliis eorum captis, aliis in Mosam demersis, aliis occisis; inter quos etiam Bruno comes occisus est. Sic filius contra patrem veniens rediit inglorius.[1]

A.D. 1107. Cologne besieged.

MCVII. Coloniensibus fidem imperatori servantibus, at eorum archiepiscopo filium imperatoris contra patrem suum animante, Colonia obsessa oppugnatur. Sed non expugnatur.

Henry V. emperor.

Interim imperator Leodi moritur, ejusque ei filius Henricus succedit; qui postea duxit Mathildem puellam nobilem vix quinquennem regis Anglorum Henrici filiam.[2]

King Henry returns to England.

Normannia sub regia potestate disposita, duceque Normannorum Roberto et comite Moritonii Willelmo in Angliam sub captione præmissis, ipse ante Pascha in regnum suum reversus est.[3]

Council at London.

II°. kalendas Augusti conventus omnium episcoporum, abbatum et procerum, Lundoniæ in palatio regis factus est, præsente Anselmo archiepiscopo. Ibi annuit rex et statuit, ut ab eo tempore in reliquum nunquam per donationem baculi pastoralis vel anuli quisquam de episcopatu aut abbatia per regem vel quamlibet laicam manum in Anglia investiretur; concedente quoque Anselmo, ut nullus in prælationem electus, pro hominio quod regi faceret, consecratione suscepti honoris privaretur.[4]

Terms of peace between the king and Anselm.

Girard professes obedience to Anselm.

Girardus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, sua manu imposita manui Anselmi, ut ipse volebat, interposita fide sua pollicitus est, se eandem

---

[1] *Imperatore . . inglorius*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1106; R. de Monte.

[2] *Coloniensibus . . . . filiam*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1106; R. de Monte.

[3] *Normannia . . . reversus est*] Eadmer, Hist. Nov. lib. iv. p. 90.

[4] *II° . . privaretur*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1107.

subjectionem et obedientiam ipsi et successoribus ejus in archiepiscopatu exhibiturum, quam Herefordensis ecclesiæ ab eo sacrandus episcopus illi promiserat.[1] A.D. 1107. Submission of York.

Willelmus Wintoniensi, Rogerus Searesbiriensi, Reignelmus Herefordensi, Willelmus Excestrensi, et Urbanus Clamorgatensi ecclesiæ, quæ in Walonia est, electi episcopi, simul Cantuariæ die Dominica iii. idus Augusti ab Anselmo consecrati sunt.[2] Five bishops consecrated at Canterbury.

MCVIII. Thomas eligitur ad archiepiscopatum Eboracensem.[3] A.D. 1108. Thomas II. of York.

Ricardus de Bealmeis Lundoniensis electus consecratur ab Anselmo archiepiscopo, apud Pagaham multis suffraganeorum præsentibus.[4] Richard of London.

Philippo regi Francorum Ludovicus successit.[5] Lewis VI. succeeds.

MCIX. "Anselmus minister ecclesiæ Cantuariensis "Thomæ electo archiepiscopo Eboracensi. A.D. 1109. Letter of Anselm to the elect of York.

"Tibi Thoma in conspectu omnipotentis Dei "ego Anselmus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis et totius Britanniæ primas loquor, "loquens ex parte ipsius Dei. Sacerdotale "officium, quod meo jussu in parrochia "mea per suffraganeum meum suscepisti, "tibi interdico, atque præcipio ne te de "aliqua cura pastorali ullo modo præsumas "intromittere, donec a rebellione quam "contra ecclesiam Cantuariensem incepisti "discedas, et ei subjectionem quam antecessores tui, Thomas videlicet et Girardus "archiepiscopi, ex antiqua antecessorum "consuetudine professi sunt, profitearis. "Quod si in iis quæ cœpisti magis perseverare quam ab eis desistere delegeris, "omnibus episcopis totius Britanniæ sub "perpetuo anathemate interdico, ne tibi "ullus eorum manus ad promotionem pon- He insists that he shall make profession of obedience.

---

1 *Girardus . . . . . promiserat*] Ibid.

2 *Willelmus . . . consecrati sunt*] Ibid.

3 *Thomas . . . Eboracensem*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1108.

4 *Ricardus . . . . præsentibus*] Ibid.

5 *Philippo . . . successit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1109; R. de Monte.

A.D. 1109. He threatens him with excommunication.

"tificatus imponat, vel si ab externis promotus fueris, pro episcopo, vel in aliqua "Christiana communione te suscipiat. Tibi "quoque, Thoma, sub eodem anathemate "ex parte Dei interdico, ut nunquam benedictionem episcopatus Eboracensis suscipias, nisi prius professionem quam antecessores tui Thomas et Gerardus ecclesiæ "Cantuariensi fecerunt facias: si autem episcopatum Eboracensem ex toto dimiseris, "ut officio sacerdotali quod jam suscepisti "utaris, concedo."[1]

Death of Anselm.

Anselmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus migravit ad Dominum. Cujus vitam laudabilem, cujus actus eximios, cujus transitum ab hac luce cœlestem ad patriam crebra miraculorum insignia prosequuntur, et ad opera misericordiæ successores invitant.[2]

Consecration of Thomas II. archbishop of York.

Dominica die quæ fuit v^to. kalendas Julii convenerunt, jubente rege, Ricardus Lundoniensis, Willelmus Wintoniensis, Radulfus Rofensis, Herebertus Norwicensis, Radulfus Cicestrensis, Rannulfus Dunelmensis et Herveus Pangornensis episcopi, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ, pro consecratione Thomæ. Inter solitam ergo examinationem suo loco professionem de subjectione et obedientia sanctæ ecclesiæ Dorobernensi exhibenda, Ricardus episcopus Lundoniensis, qui Thomam erat sacraturus, ab illo exegit. Professio igitur sicut erat sigillata sibi coram omnibus oblata est, fractoque sigillo evoluta et lecta ab eo est ita: "Ego Thomas "Eboracensis consecrandus metropolitanus "profiteor subjectionem et canonicam obedientiam sanctæ Dorobernensi ecclesiæ, "et ejusdem ecclesiæ primati canonice "electo et consecrato, et successoribus suis "canonice intronizatis, salva fidelitate domini mei Henrici regis Anglorum, et "salva obedientia ex parte mea tenenda,

Form of profession of obedience to Canterbury.

---

[1] *Anselmus . . concedo*] Anselm, Epistt. lib. iii. ep. 155; Eadmer, Hist. Nov. iv. p. 102.

[2] *Anselmus . . . invitant*] See p. 223 note 2 above.

"quam Thomas antecessor meus sanctæ "Romanæ ecclesiæ ex parte sua professus "est." Intererat huic officio prior ecclesiæ Dorobernensis Conradus nomine, et ex monachis ejusdem loci quamplurimi, qui pro hoc, ipso quoniam res eos quam maxime respiciebat, illo convenerant. Lectam itaque professionem, cum a Thoma sibi oblatam Ricardus antistes Lundoniensis accepisset, eam nominato priori et fratribus tradidit.[1] A.D. 1109. Conrad prior of Canterbury takes charge of the document.

Rex Henricus abbatiam Helyensem ad episcopalem mutavit sedem, et Herveum ibi præfecit.[2] See of Ely founded.

MCX. Fulco comes Andegavorum[3] filiam Helyæ comitis Cenomagnensium, quam unicam et hæredem reliquerat, accepit uxorem, et comitatum cum illa: sic igitur Andegavia dominationem in populos circumquaque diffusos extendens, dotalitiis incrementis multo felicius terminos dilatavit quam cædibus luctuosis. Ad affinium namque bona hæreditario possidenda sic civiliter aspiravit, ut fœdus iniens cum finitimis, et per sanguinem, iniens etiam et cum sanguine, sic in adquirendo rerum dominio feliciter triumphavit, ut manus immunes conservaret a sanguine. Felix jactura dum maribus sublatis de medio, sexus muliebris in copulum transiret Andegavensium, et beatæ pacis stabilitate perpetua frueretur; Moysi legislatoris instituta recensens, qui, jubente Domino, quinque filiabus Saphaat paternam hæreditatem pro virili portione distribuit, et inter alias tribus in funiculo distributionis numerari decrevit.[4] A.D. 1110. Marriage of Fulk of Anjou. Increase by marriages of the dominions of the house of Anjou.

MCXI. Henricus rex Teutonicus Romam venit, Paschalem papam in custodiam posuit, sed postmodum ad pontem Viæ Salariæ, ubi paschalem festivitatem in campo celebraverunt, A.D. 1111. The pope captured by the emperor.

---

[1] *Dominica . . . tradidit*] Eadmer, Hist. Nov. lib. iv. p. 104.

[2] *Rex . . . præfecit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1109.

[3] *Andegavorum*] Sibillam, placed in the margin in A. Eremburgis was the true name.

[4] *Fulco . . . decrevit*] See above, p. 135, note. The passage is in the Chroniques d'Anjou, i. pp. 335, 336, but is not taken direct from the *Gesta*.

A.D. 1111. The pope surrenders the right of investiture to the emperor.

pacem cum eo fecit.[1] Papa vero post lectum evangelium tradidit ei in oculis omnium principum privilegium de investitura episcopatuum, vel abbatiarum, tam per anulum quam per virgam, scilicet ut regni ejus episcopis vel abbatibus libere electis investituram conferat anuli et virgæ, postea vero consecrentur electi ab episcopis ad quos pertinuerint.

Death of the count of Flanders.

Decessit Robertus consul Flandriæ, cui Baldeuinus filius ejus successit, juvenis omnino strenuus armis.[2]

A.D. 1112. Quarrels of the count of Poictou.

MCXII MCXIII. Willelmus comes Pictaviæ, qui vocatus est facetus, multa sustinuit a filio suo Willelmo.[3]

A.D. 1114. Ralph archbishop of Canterbury.

MCXIIII. Radulfus Rofensis episcopus vi. kalendas Maii ad archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem apud Windlesoram eligitur.[4]

Turstanus regis capellanus ad Eboracensem archiepiscopatum die Assumptionis eligitur Wintoniæ.[5]

A.D. 1115. Ralph receives the pall, and consecrates bishops.

MCXV. Radulfus archiepiscopus ab Anselmo domini papæ legato v°. kalendas Julii pallium suscepit, et ipso die Theophum Wigornensem episcopum apud Cantuariam consecravit, Bernardum quoque reginæ cancellarium Menevensem electum antistitem consecravit apud Westmustier xiii. kalendas Octobris.[6]

A.D. 1116. Thurstan, elect of York, refuses to make his profession to Ralph.

MCXVI. Turstanus Eboracensis electus, cum a Radulfo archiepiscopo moneretur, ut ecclesiæ Cantuariensi faceret quod debebat, et benedictionem suam ecclesiastico more susciperet, respondit benedictionem quidem se libenter suscipere velle, sed professionem quam exigebat nulla ratione facturum. Rex autem Henricus, ubi advertit Turstanum in sua pertinacia stare, aperte protestatus est illum

---

[1] *Henricus . . fecit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1111; the rest of the paragraph is from Robert de Monte, abridged from Sigebert of Gemblours.

[2] *Decessit . . . . armis*] Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 217; Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1111.

[3] *Willelmus . . . Willelmo*] See the Imagines Historiarum, below, under the year 1173.

[4] *Radulfus . . . . eligitur*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1114.

[5] *Turstanus . . . Wintoniæ*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1114.

[6] *Radulfus . . . Octobris*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1115.

aut morem antecessorum suorum, tam in professione facienda, quam et in aliis dignitati ecclesiæ Cantuariensis ex antiquo jure competentibus, executurum, aut episcopatu Eboracensi cum benedictione funditus cariturum.[1] A.D. 1116. Henry defends the rights of Canterbury.

MCXVII.[2] Monasterium Sancti Albani dedicatum est a Roberto Lincolniensi episcopo, præsente rege Henrico.[3] A.D. 1117. Dedication of S. Alban's.

Venit rex Francorum et auxiliarii sui cum exercitu suo in Normanniam; ubi cum una nocte mansissent, formidantes regis Anglorum adventum propere recesserunt.[4] Short invasion of Normandy by the French.

MCXVIII. Regis Francorum et regis Anglorum longa concertatio gravissime regem vexavit utrumque, donec Baldeuinus Flandriæ comes apud Ou letaliter vulneratus est.[5] A.D. 1118. Baldwin of Flanders wounded.

Gelasius papa.[6]

Baldeuino regi Jerusalem primo Baldewinus successit.[7] Baldwin II. king of Jerusalem.

Matildis regina mater imperatricis obiit.[8]

MCXIX. Rex Henricus pugnavit contra regem Francorum: præposuerat[9] quidem rex Francorum aciem procerum, cui præerat Willelmus A.D. 1119. War with France.

---

[1] *Turstanus . . . cariturum*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1116.

[2] *MCXVII.*] MS. C. gives the following account of the dedication of S. Alban's under the year 1116, "Dedicata est ecclesia Sancti Albani v^to kalendas Januarii feria iii^tia ab archiepiscopo Rotomagensi Gaufrido, et Ricardo de Beaumeis Lundoniensi, et Roberto Blohet Lincolniensi, et Rogero Salesberiensi, et Ranulfo Dunelmensi episcopis, præsente rege Henrico, a quo eadem ecclesia dotata est de terra de Bissopescote; et regina Matilde, et multis Anglorum et Normannorum baronibus; Ricardo abbate ejusdem ecclesiæ omnia necessaria procurante et largiter dispensante ad laudem Domini nostri Jesu Christi et beati Albani."

[3] *Monasterium . . . Henrico*] See Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1116; H. Hunt. lib. vii. fo. 217.

[4] *Venit . . . recesserunt*] R. de Monte; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 218.

[5] *Regis . . . . . vulneratus est*] Ibid.; R. de Monte, A.D. 1118.

[6] *Gelasius papa*] "Ordo Templariorum incepit;" a later hand in A.

[7] *Baldeuino . . . successit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1118.

[8] *Matildis . . obiit*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1118.

[9] *præposuerat*] proposuerat, D.

A.D. 1119.

Array of the French.

Array of the Normans.

filius Roberti ducis Normanniæ, fratris Henrici regis. Ipse vero cum maximis viribus in sequenti erat agmine. Rex vero Henricus in prima acie proceres suos constituerat. In secunda, cum propria familia eques residebat. In tertia, filios suos cum summis viribus pedites collocaverat.

Details of the battle.

Igitur acies prima Francorum agmen procerum Normanniæ statim equis depulit et dispersit. Postea vero aciei qua rex Henricus inerat collidens, et ipsa est dispersa. Acies itaque regales ad invicem acerrime pugnaverunt.

King Henry wounded by William Crispin;

Interim Willelmus Crispinus miles magnanimus regis Henrici caput bis gladio percussit. Cumque lorica inpenetrabilis esset, magnitudine tamen ictuum aliquantulum capiti regis inserta est, ut sanguis prorumperet. Rex vero, animi fervore commotus, percussorem suum ita repercussit, ut mole

who is taken.

ictus equitem et equum prosterneret. Qui mox ante regios pedes captus est. Acies vero pedestris mox percussura ex adverso

Victory of Henry.

surrexit. Quod Franci videntes, horrore insperato liquefacti, terga dederunt. Henricus autem rex victor perstitit in campo.[1]

Council at Rheims.

Calixtus papa. Instituit concilium Remis, ad quod missi sunt a rege Henrico quidam episcoporum Angliæ et Normanniæ: Turstanus etiam, electus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, a rege licentiam illuc eundi obtinuit, interposita tamen fide, ut benedictionem episcopalem a papa non reciperet. Qui ad papam veniens, posthabita sponsione, Romanos in causam suam largitatis officio transtulit, et per eos ut a papa consecraretur

Consecration of Thurstan.

impetravit. Episcopi enim Angliæ nondum ad concilium venerant. Quod ut regi innotuit, Turstano omnem locum dominationis suæ interdixit.[2]

---

[1] *Rex . . . campo*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1119; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 218. MS. C. adds in rubric "Obiit Ricardus de Albineio, "abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani "xv^mus."

[2] *Calixtus . . . interdixit*] Flor. Wig., A.D. 1119.

Regni[1] principes Jerosolimitani directis nuntiis Fulconem Andegavensium comitem sollicitaverunt, quatinus loca Dominicæ passionis adiret, filiam regis Baldeuini, quam unicam et hæredem reliquerat, accepturus uxorem. Quibus acquiescens comes filio suo Gaufrido Plantegenest hæreditatem reliquit, Jerosolimam adiit, super solium David regis in Jerusalem collocatus est, Christi crucis inimicos attrivit. Quod igitur incepit, viriliter sui successores[2] suo tempore suppleverunt. Quorum strenuitas ordine successorio gubernacula regni Jerosolimitani nanciscens, et Ydumeorum compescuit ferocitatem, et Babilonem factam rebellem sub ditione redegit, et Alexandriam reddidit tributariam, et in nominis sui celebritate totius populos orientis effecit attonitos.

A.D. 1119. Fulk, count of Anjou, is chosen king of Jerusalem.

Successes of his descendants in Palestine and Egypt.

Baldeuinus comes Flandriæ, per vulnus quod in Normannia recepit, decessit. Cui successit Karolus filius Canuti regis Dacorum.[3]

Charles count of Flanders.

A.D. 1120. Death of the etheling.

Willelmus filius regis submersus est.[4]

MCXX. MCXXI. Rex Henricus duxit Adeliz filiam ducis Lovanniæ, quæ a Radulfo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo consecrata est apud Windlesoram.[5]

A.D. 1121. Henry marries again.

Kalixtus papa Mauricium, quem vocatum Gregorium Henricus imperator papam constituerat, cepit, et monachavit.[6]

The anti-pope taken.

---

[1] *Regni . . . attonitos*] Probably written by Ralph de Diceto himself. It is not from the *Gesta Consulum*. But see Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 336.

[2] *successores*] Baldewinus et Almaricus, ins. D.

[3] *Baldeuinus . . . Dacorum*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1119; H. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 218. MS. C. adds in red "Gaufridus de Gorram, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani xvmus."

[4] *Willelmus . . . est*] A.D. 1120, B. See R. de Monte, A.D. 1120.

[5] *Rex . . . Windlesoram*] See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1121.

[6] *Kalixtus . . . monachavit*] A.D. 1122, B. See Flor. Wig., A.D. 1121.

A.D. 1123. William of Corbeuil, archbishop of Canterbury.

MCXXII. MCXXIII. Radulfo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo Willelmus de Curbuil prior Sanctæ Osidæ successit, apud Glavornam electus in Purificatione Beatæ Virginis. Consecratus autem est apud Cantuariam a Willelmo Wintoniensi episcopo xiiii^{to}. kalendas Martii.[1] Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus laborabat paralysi.

He goes to Rome, and consecrates bishops on his return.

Willelmus archiepiscopus pro petendo pallio Romam ivit. Turstanum Eboracensem archiepiscopum, et Bernardum Menevensem episcopum secum duxit: et in reditu Lincolniensem electum Alexandrum Cantuariæ consecravit xi^{o}. kalendas Augusti. Godefridum vero Batoniensem electum consecravit in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ vii^{o}. kalendas Septembris.[2]

Interview of king Henry with the pope.

C Ō Calixtus papa concilium Remis congregavit; deinde venit in Normanniam loqui cum Henrico rege apud Gisorz; magnus sacerdos cum magno rege.[3]

A.D. 1124. The count of Meulan captured.

MCXXIIII. Galerannus comes de Mellent et Hugo de Munfort capti sunt a Willelmo de Tankarvile camerario regis.[4]

Honorius papa.[5]

Ementulati sunt monetarii.

A.D. 1125. John bishop of Rochester.

MCXXV. Willelmus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis dedit episcopatum Rovecestriæ Johanni archidiacono suo.[6]

John of Crema legate.

Johannes de Crema presbiter cardinalis concilium celebravit Lundoniæ.[7]

Simon made bishop of Worcester.

Symon Wigornensis electus viii^{o}. idus Maii, die videlicet Ascensionis, Wigornæ suscipitur; et postea sabbato ebdomadæ Pentecostes presbiter ordinatur, et in crastino consecra-

---

[1] *Radulfo . . . Martii*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1123.

[2] *Willelmus . . . . Septembris*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1123.

[3] *Calixtus . . . rege*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1123.

[4] *Galerannus . . . regis*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1124; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 219.

[5] *Honorius papa*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1124; "Ementulati . . . "monetarii" is from H. Hunt., fo. 219; om. C.

[6] *Willelmus . . suo*] R. de Monte; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 219.

[7] *Johannes . . . Lundoniæ*] R. de Monte; Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 219.

A.D. 1125.

tur: et postmodum xi°. kalendas Junii denuo Wigornæ suscipitur et intronizatur.[1]

A.D. 1126.

Attempt of Thurstan to crown the king.

MCXXVI. Rex Anglorum Henricus apud Windlesoram Natalem Domini celebravit, ubi cum Turstanus Eboracensis archiepiscopus in æqualitate archiepiscopi Cantuariensis regem vellet coronare, judicio omnium repulsus est, et ad eum coronam regni nichil pertinere una omnium sententia concorditer promulgavit. Lator insuper crucis, quam in regis capella coram se deferri jussit, extra capellam cum cruce ejectus est.[2]

Oaths taken to the empress.

Primates Angliæ regnum juraverunt imperatrici, et primus inter omnes Stephanus comes Boloniæ.[3]

A.D. 1127.

She marries Geoffrey of Anjou.

MCXXVII. Gaufridus Plantegenest comes Andegavorum duxit imperatricem.[4]

Ricardo Lundoniensi episcopo Gilebertus Universalis successit, consecratus a Willelmo archiepiscopo Cantuariensi xi°. kalendas Februarii.[5]

Council at Westminster.

Willelmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus congregavit concilium apud Westmustier. Turstanus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, directis nuntiis ac litteris, rationabili causa ostendit se conventui ipsi interesse non posse.[6]

William of Normandy and Thierry of Alsace fight for Flanders.

Conflictus habitus est inter Willelmum Longam Spatam comitem Flandriæ et Theodoricum de Auseis. Theodoricus autem conversus est in fugam; Willelmus comes, sauciatus in manu, parvo post obiit.[7]

---

[1] *Symon . . . intronizatur*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1125. The date of Simon's inthronization must be fixed on the 21st of June, not on the 22nd of May, for he was consecrated on Trinity Sunday, May 24. For *Junii* we should therefore read *Julii*, with MS. D. The same confusion is found in the MSS. of Florence of Worcester.

[2] *Rex . . . ejectus est*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1126.

[3] *Primates . . . Boloniæ*] See Will. Malmesb., Hist. Nov. i. § 3.

[4] *Gaufridus . . . imperatricem*] See R. de Monte, A.D. 1127.

[5] *Ricardo . . . Februarii*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1128.

[6] *Willelmus . . . posse*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1127.

[7] *Conflictus . . . obiit*] Hen. Hunt., lib. vii. fo. 219; Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1128.

A.D. 1128. MCXXVIII. HUCUSQUE,[1] MAGISTER HUGO DE SANCTO VICTORE CRONICA SUA DIGESSIT.

Henry invades France.

Henricus rex Anglorum in Galliam cum exercitu perhendinavit apud Essparlum octo diebus.[2]

Hugh abbot of S. Augustine's.

Hugo electus abbas Sancti Augustini benedictionem accepit a Willelmo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Cicestram.[3]

A.D. 1129. *Henry of Blois.* MCXXIX. Henricus Glestoniensis abbas factus est episcopus Wintoniæ.[4]

A.D. 1130. *Dedication of Canterbury cathedral.* MCXXX. Ecclesia Sanctæ Trinitatis Cantuariæ a Willelmo archiepiscopo dedicata est præsente Henrico rege.[5]

Innocentius papa.

Antipope. Sc̄ Intrusus est Petrus Leonis, et dictus est Anacletus, qui regem Rogerum Siciliæ consecravit.[6]

Innocent II. goes to France.

Innocentius papa transivit in Franciam: unde "Romam Petrus habet, totum Gregorius "orbem."[7]

A.D. 1131. *Death of the heir of France.* MCXXXI. Philippus filius Ludovici regis Francorum, jam rex factus, dum cornipedem ludens agitaret, obvium suem habuit. Cui cum pedes equi offenderent, cecidit, et fractis cervicibus exspiravit. Et eodem mense sa-

Lewis crowned. Cō cratus est frater ejus Ludovicus in regem ab

MCXXXII. Innocentio papa in concilio Remis habito.[8]

A.D. 1133. MCXXXIII. Nigellus Helyensis, Gaufridus Dunhelmensis, Robertus Herefordensis facti sunt episcopi.[9]

Birth of Henry of Anjou at Le Mans.

Mense Martio natus est Cenomannis Henricus, primogenitus Gaufridi Plantegenest comitis Andegavorum, et Matildis imperatricis.[10] Quod cum rex Henricus audisset, convocatis regni sui principibus, filiam suam et

---

1 *Hucusque*] See above, p. 31.

2 *Henricus . . diebus*] H. Hunt., fo. 219; Rob. de Monte.

3 *Hugo . . . Cicestram*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1127.

4 *Henricus . . . Wintoniæ*] Cont. Flor. Wig., A.D. 1129.

5 *Ecclesia . . . rege*] Cont. Flor., Wig., A.D. 1129.

6 *Intrusus . . . consecravit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1129, 1130.

7 *Innocentius . . . orbem*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1130.

8 *Philippus . . . habito*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1131.

9 *Nigellus . . . episcopi*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1133.

10 *Mense . . . imperatricis*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1133.

hæredes filiæ suæ sibi successuros instituit. Dispositionem suam omnes observaturos astrinxit, sacramento corporaliter præstito. Stephanus filius Alæ sororis suæ primus præstitit sacramentum apud Westmustier.[1] A.D. 1133. Oaths taken to the succession.

MCXXXIIII. Rex Henricus in Normanniam transiens, dedit Ricardo nepoti suo Bajocensem episcopatum: Abriccensem vero Ricardo de Beaufo.[2] A.D. 1134. The king goes to Normandy.

Robertus Curtehosa frater regis obiit.[3] Duke Robert dies.

Gilebertus[4] Universalis obiit.

MCXXXV. Rex Anglorum Henricus cum regnasset annis triginta quinque, quatuor etiam mensibus, decessit apud Sanctum Dionisium in silva Leonum. Et in Anglia sepultus est apud Radingum.[5] A.D. 1135. Death of Henry I.

[6]Nomina castellorum quæ in Normannia ex integro fecit Henricus rex, in margine ipsius provinciæ, hæc sunt: Drincurcis, Novum Mercatum, Vernolium, Nonanticurtis, Bonmulins, Colmiæ Mons, Pons Ursonis. Fecit etiam castrum Sancti Dionisii in Leons, Vallem Rodulii, Turrem Ebroicarum, Turrem Alentiun, Turrem Osteriarum, Turrem Sancti Johannis juxta Montem Sancti Michaelis. The castles which he built in Normandy.

Monasterium Radingarum fecit in Anglia, monasterium canonicorum apud Cirecestre, monasterium de Prato apud Rotomagum, monasterium de Mortuo Mari. His monasteries in England.

Stephanus comes Boloniæ, audita morte regis Henrici avunculi sui, transfretavit in Angliam, et a Willelmo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo consecratus est in regem apud Lundoniam.[7] Stephen crowned at London.

---

[1] *Quod . . Westmustier*] om. B. D. See W. Malmesb. Hist. Nov. i. § 11.

[2] *Rex . . Beaufo*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1134; transiit et, B.

[3] *Robertus . . . obiit*] Ibid.; decessit apud Gloecestre, B.

[4] *Gilebertus*] episcopus Lundoniæ, ins. B.; H. Hunt, fo. 220.

[5] *Rex . . . Radingum*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1135.

[6] The three following paragraphs are in the margin of MS. A. The list of Henry's buildings occurs in B. and D. between the notices of his death and burial. It is from Robert de Monte.

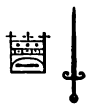
[7] *Stephanus . . . Lundoniam*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1135.

A.D. 1135. Hugh Bigod swears that Henry I. disinherited the empress.

Hugo Bigod, senescallus regis, veniens in Angliam, coram archiepiscopo Cantuariensi sacramento probavit, quod dum rex Henricus ageret in extremis, ortis quibusdam inimicitiis inter ipsum et imperatricem, ipsam exhæredavit, et Stephanum Boloniæ comitem hæredem instituit.[1]

The archbishop of Canterbury crowns Stephen.

Willelmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, nimis credulus verbis senescalli, Stephanum Moritonii comitem consecravit in regem apud Westmustier.[2]



A.D. 1136. The empress takes Argentan and Domfront.

MCXXXVI. Imperatrix castella quædam obtinuit in Normannia post mortem regis, scilicet Argentonium et Danfrunt.[3]

Stephen holds a council at Westminster.

Stephanus rex in Paschalibus apud Westmustier concilium congregavit, fidelitates exegit, regis Henrici thesauris in nullo pepercit, in munerum largitione nimis effusus.[4]

Election of a bishop of London.

Vocati sunt ad concilium Willelmus decanus Lundoniæ, simul et canonici. Cum autem haberetur tractatus de consilio Lundoniensis ecclesiæ tunc vacantis, nec in aliquem possent unanimiter convenire, recesserunt a decano canonicorum multi, citra conscientiam ejus Anselmum abbatem[5] in episcopum eligentes. Canonici vero, quos decanus habebat secum in mensa diebus singulis, appellaverunt, nec regis occurrerunt offensam. Canonici quidem alii, quia quod fecerant tam regi quam toti concilio videbatur iniquum, regis indignationem plurimam meruerunt, quorum aliqui bonis suis spoliati sunt.[6]

Part of the canons elect abbot Anselm. Others appeal.

The king is offended.

He takes Exeter.

Stephanus rex exercitum suum duxit apud Execestriam, quam obsedit et cepit. Baldewinum de Riveres exhæredavit.[7]

---

[1] *Hugo . . . instituit*] Om. B. This seems to be original matter.

[2] *Willelmus . . . Westmustier*] Om. B. See Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1135.

[3] *Imperatrix . . . . Danfrunt*] Om. B. Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1135. MS. B. has here "Audita morte regis "Henrici, comes Andegaviæ et uxor "ejus imperatrix absque ulla diffi-"cultate castella Normanniæ opti-"nuerunt," from Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1135.

[4] *Stephanus . . . effusus*] om. B.

[5] *abbatem*] Sancti Edmundi, A. in margin.

[6] *Vocati . . . sunt*] om. B.

[7] *Stephanus . . . . exhæredavit*]

Willelmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus obiit.[1] A.D. 1136. The archbishop dies.

MCXXXVII. Stephanus rex transiit in Normanniam, et fœdus iniit cum rege Francorum.[2] A.D. 1137. Stephen makes a league with France.

Focariæ[3] quorundam canonicorum qui sæculares dicuntur, raptæ sublimes, ad turrim non sine dedecore gravi pertractæ sunt, et ibidem constrictæ multis diebus. Quæ quidem nec sine ludibrio corporis, nec sine dispendio famæ, nec sine numeratione pecuniæ redierunt ad propria. The canons are obliged to redeem their mistresses.

Galfridus comes Andegavensis ingressus Normanniam regi Stephano trewias dedit, accipiens ab eo ii. marcas argenti singulis annis per tres annos.[4] Truce between Stephen and Geoffrey.

Ludovico Grosso regi Francorum mortuo successit Ludovicus filius ejus, uxorem accipiens Alienor filiam Willelmi ducis Aquitanorum, ex qua genuit duas filias, quas duo filii magni comitis Theobaldi, Henricus scilicet et Theobaldus, acceperunt uxores, primogenitus primogenitam.[5] Marriage of the king of France with Eleanor of Aquitaine.

[6] Willelmo decano Lundoniæ consanguinei sui maxime restiterunt, non quæ Dei sed quæ mundi sunt sapientes. Secum igitur clanculo thesauros asportantes ecclesiæ Lundoniensis, secum etiam suum assumentes electum multa subfarcinatum pecunia, Romæ papam Innocentium invenerunt, et Petrum Leonis scismaticum. Quid in tanto turbine rerum aura marsupii rubiginosi potuisset Contest in the chapter of S. Paul's against the dean. Anselm goes to Rome, and finds a schism.

Stephanus rex Anglorum duxit magnum exercitum in Scotiam, et rex David pacificatus est cum eo; hominium tamen ei non fecit. Deinde Execestriam obsedit et cepit super Baldewinum de Redviers, et Vectam insulam eidem abstulit et eum exulavit. B. from R. de Monte.

[1] *Willelmus . . . . . obiit*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1136.

[2] *Stephanus . . . . Francorum*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1136.

[3] *Focariæ . . . propria*] om. B.; qui sæculares dicuntur, A. over an erasure.

[4] *Galfridus . . . annos*] Comes Andegavensis hostiliter ingressus Normanniam; intercurrentibus tamen nuntiis inter ipsum et regem Stephanum, dedit comes trevias usque ad tres annos, hac conditione ut rex singulis annis daret ei ii. marcas argenti. B. from R. de Monte, A.D. 1137.

[5] *Ludovico . . . . primogenitam*] Obiit Ludovicus senior rex Francorum, et successit filius ejus Ludovicus, qui accepit filiam ducis Aquitanniæ, ex qua duas filias genuit. B. R. de Monte, A.D. 1137.

[6] This paragraph is omitted in B.

A.D. 1137. On his return he is received at S. Paul's. His arbitrary behaviour.

efficere probavit eventus. Nam illis in Angliam revertentibus, electus eorum Anselmus in ecclesia doctoris gentium Pauli sollenni processione receptus est. A clericis exegit obedientias, possessiones omnes ad ecclesiam pertinentes, castellum quoque de Storteford in sua dominatione recepit, et agens potestative licenter a militaribus viris homagia, relevationes, ab hominibus inferioris manus fidelitates extorsit.

A.D. 1138. The Scots defeated at Northallerton.

MCXXXVIII. David rex Scotorum innumerabilem congregavit exercitum tendens in Angliam. Turstanus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, auxilio Northanhymbrorum, ei restitit, fixo Standard apud Alvertune, ubi xii. milia Scotorum occisa sunt.[1]

Ording abbot of S. Edmund's.

[2] Ordingus prior apud Sanctum Edmundum in abbatia successit Anselmo.

The dean's party received favourably at Rome.

[2] Magister Radulfus de Langefort, et Ricardus de Belmeis, fratres et concanonici, clericique domestici, Willelmi decani Lundoniæ, reddituri causas appellationis, tam a domino papa quam ab Ammerico cancellario benigne recepti sunt. In consistorio causa diutius ventilata, suffraganeorum omnium Cantuariensis ecclesiæ testimoniis robur accepit. Turstanus etiam Eboracensis archiepiscopus domino papæ scripsit in hæc verba:

Opinion of Thurstan. He reports against the appointment of Anselm.

"Significavit nobis paternitatis vestræ dilectio de vita et "opinione Anselmi abbatis Sancti Edmundi aliquid inquirere, "et vobis renunciare. Ad quod vobis rescribimus, quod si "vitam et opinionem ejus sequamur, multo tutius est eum ab "abbatia removere, quam in Lundoniensi ecclesia promovere."

The election is annulled as being opposed by the dean.

[2] Cum igitur dominus papa super quæstione proposita longum cum cardinalibus habuisset tractatum, Albericus Hostiensis episcopus quod sequitur pronunciavit in publicum: "Quoniam electio canonicorum Lundoniensium "citra conscientiam et assensum decani facta fuit, cujus

[1] *David . . . . sunt*] David rex Scotorum innumerabilem exercitum promovit in Angliam. Contra quem proceres boreales Angliæ, ammonitione Turstini Eboracensis archiepiscopi restiterunt viriliter fixo Standart, id est, regis insigni, apud Alvertune. Ibi xii. milia Scotorum fama refert occisa, extra eos qui in segetibus et silvis perempti sunt inventi. B., R. de Monte, A.D. 1138.

[2] These paragraphs are omitted in B.

" est officium in eligendo pastore suo de jure primam " vocem habere, nos eam auctoritate beati Petri devo- " camus in irritum." A.D. 1138.

[1] Ricardus de Belmeis, consummata decani sui causa, redit ad propriam suam causam, cujus advocatus sic inchoat; "Postquam Rogerus archidiaconus Middelsexiæ " fati munus implevit, Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus " Ricardo filio fratris sui Walteri de Belmeis archidia- " conatum concessit, licet Ricardus nondum plene pubes " existeret. Willelmus decanus Lundoniæ, filius Adelinæ " sororis memorati pontificis, prædicto Ricardo stallum " assignavit in choro, sedem in capitulo. Paucis diebus " elapsis Willelmus decanus tractatum habens cum peri- " tioribus, et avunculi sui factum in melius reformari " procurans, ad hoc animum inflexit episcopi tam per " se quam per priorem de Chich, ut in Hugonem capel- " lanum episcopi custodiam archidiaconatus ad tempus " usque certum transferret, quousque memoratus Ricar- " dus, tam sibi, tam rebus suis, quam archidiaconatui " potuisset sollicitius providere. Quod capellanus se fac- " turum, et modis omnibus observaturum sine fraude, " propositis Evangeliis repromisit. Tractu temporis, " episcopo Ricardo rebus humanis exempto, Gilebertus " Universalis in episcopatum successit. Advenit etiam " tempus quo Ricardus de Belmeis suffragantibus annis " et meritis exigentibus posset etiam in episcopum sub- " limari. Capellanus Hugo, sæpe conventus ut Ricardo " restitueret archidiaconatum, velut inmemor sacramenti " fideique transgressor, consilium suum in alterius mu- " tavit injuriam. Nam in oculis episcopi Lundoniensis " se videns gratiam invenisse, frivolas semper invenit " occasiunculas. Universali defuncto, sua spes omnis " cum episcopo sepelitur." His in audientia communi propositis, dominus papa litteras direxit episcopis tam Lincolniensi quam Herefordensi. Quibus de causa cog-

Richard of Belmeis claims the archdeaconry of Middlesex.

Whilst quite a boy he was installed by the dean, who was his cousin.

Hugh, the bishop's chaplain, administers the archdeaconry until Richard is of age.

After the death of the bishop, Richard of Belmeis claims the archdeaconry: which Hugh refuses to resign.

Bishop Gilbert supported Hugh.

The pope hears the case.

---

[1] This paragraph is omitted in B.

A.D. 1138. Richard is restored. noscentibus, susceptis Ricardi probationibus, Hugo spoliatus est, Ricardus in integrum restitutus.

Anselm returns to his abbey. [1] Anselmus ab ecclesia Lundoniensi semotus vix in suam abbatiam recipitur, Ordingo repulso.

Henry of Winchester takes charge of the see of London. [1] Dominus papa curam ecclesiæ Lundoniensis Henrico commisit Wintoniensi episcopo cum gratia regis.

Council at Westminster. Albericus Hostiensis episcopus, et sedis apostolicæ legatus, in Angliam veniens, concilium habuit apud Westmustier.

Richard of Belmeis ordained. Henricus Wintoniensis episcopus mandato legati Ricardum de Belmeis ordinavit diaconum in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Theobald elected archbishop. Ipsa die dum ordines celebrarentur, Theobaldus Beccensis abbas ab episcopis electus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Electionem factam in publico recitavit Alexander Lincolniensis episcopus, præsente Jeremia priore Cantuariæ; consecratus est Theobaldus ab ipso legato. He goes to Rome for the pall. Qui Romam proficiscens pallium suscepit ab Innocentio papa in concilio Romæ habito.[2]

The dean of S. Paul's dies. Willelmus decanus Lundoniensis migravit ad Dominum.[3]

A.D. 1139. Stephen's quarrel with the bishops. MCXXXIX. Rex Stephanus Saresberiensem, Lincolniensem episcopos cepit, quoniam ipsi sua castella reddere noluerunt.[4]

Ulgerius[5] Andegavorum episcopus, controversiam habens cum abbatissa Petronilla, super molendino quodam, coram Gau-

---

[1] These paragraphs are omitted in B.

[2] *Albericus . . . habito*] MS. B. reads thus:—Albericus Hostiensis episcopus et sedis apostolicæ legatus concilium tenuit apud Lundonias; in quo Theobaldus, Beccensis abbas, communiter ab episcopis electus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariæ; excluso Jeremia priore Cantuariæ et monachis suis ab ipsorum consortio. Electionem factam in publico recitavit Alexander Lincolniensis episcopus. Consecratus est Theobaldus ab ipso legato, et Romam proficiscens pallium suscepit ab Innocentio papa in concilio Romæ habito.

[3] *Willelmus . . Dominum*] om. B.

[4] *Rex . . . noluerunt*] Rex Stephanus Rogerum Saresberiensem, Alexandrum Lincolniensem ipsius nepotem violenter in curia sua apud Oxenford cepit. R. de Monte, A.D. 1139.

[5] These notes about Ulger are written on the wide margin of A. They seem to be extracted from some unidentified memorial of the great struggle of Ulger with the abbess Petronilla de Chemillé, of Fontevraud. They are not in B. or C.

Rannulfus clericus Helyensis episcopi conjurationem fecit ad Normannos omnes interficiendos.[1]

Habitum est Pisis concilium.[2]

Imperatrix venit in Angliam.[3]

Nigellus Helyensis episcopus expellitur a regno.[4]

Turstano Eboracensi archiepiscopo successit Willelmus.[5]

MCXL. Stephanus rex obsedit Lincolniam.[6] Cum autem die Purificationis rex ad missam cereum suum offerret, confractus est: pixis etiam cecidit

frido Carnotensi episcopo tunc temporis sedis apostolicæ legato per Aquitanniam, contrariam reportavit sententiam. Qui profectus Romam coram Innocentio papa secundo gratiam non invenit. Pluribus annis mansit in curia. Cum autem ab eodem quæreret Innocentius, "Frater, quid exspec-"tas?" respondit, "Mortem "tuam." Innocentio successit Celestinus secundus. Qui cum rursus quæreret ab Ulgerio, "Frater, quid exspectas?" respondit, "Mortem tuam." Celestino successit Lucius secundus. Qui cum rursus quæreret ab Ulgerio, "Frater,

A.D. 1138.

Ulger bishop of Angers appeals to Rome against the abbess Petronilla of Fontevraud. Stories about Ulger.

William archbishop of York.

A.D. 1140.

Stephen besieges Lincoln.

---

[1] *Rannulfus . . . interficiendos*] MS. B. reads: Rannulfus clericus Helyensis episcopi, multos complices habens, conjurationem fecit ad omnes Normannos interficiendos. Qui, scelere tali detecto, fuga sibi consuluit vagus et profugus. Radulfus Burgundio conjurationem detexit. Proditionis rei quidam suspensi sunt, quidam perpetui passi sunt damnationem exilii.

[2] *concilium*] præsidente Innocentio papa secundo tempore Conradi qui dicebatur imperator, in quo Viennensis archiepiscopus degradatus est causa incontinentiæ, add. B.

[3] B. reads thus:—Imperatrix filia regis Henrici et R. comes Gloucestriæ frater ejus transierunt in Angliam et venerunt Arundel ad W. de Albeni. Comes vero relicta ibi imperatrice, cum x. militibus et x. equestribus sagittariis venit Walengeford et inde Gloecestriam. R. de Monte, A.D. 1139.

[4] *Nigellus . . . regno*] H. Hunt., fo. 223; Rob. de Monte.

[5] *Turstano . . . Willelmus*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1140.

[6] MS. B. continues:—a Natali Domini usque ad Purificationem. Sed Rannulfus comes Cestrensis, qui munitiones ejus tenebat, adduxit secum Robertum filium regis Henrici socerum suum et proceres multos ad obsidionem regis dissolvendam. Dum autem rex die Purificationis ad Missam cereum suum manibus episcopi Alexandri offerret, confractus est. Cecidit autem super altare pixis cui Corpus Domini inerat, quod fuit signum ruinæ regi. Post Missam vero rex contra hostes pugnaturus egreditur, et dispositis aciebus pugnatur utrimque. Sed mox regiæ acies in fugam conversæ regem solum in campo reliquerunt. Qui arrepta bipenni accessum ad se præbebat difficilem. Sed tandem captus ducitur ad imperatricem, et in turri de Bristoue ponitur. R. de Monte, A.D. 1140.

A.D. 1140.

super altare cum corpore Christi.

He is captured and imprisoned at Bristol.

Captus est rex, et ductus ad imperatricem, in custodia positus apud Bristoue.

The empress received at London.

Robert de Sigillo bishop.

Imperatrix a Lundoniensibus recipitur in dominam, per quam Robertus de Sigillo factus est Lundoniensis episcopus.[1]

A.D. 1141.

The empress expelled from London.

MCXLI.[2] Imperatrix a Lundoniensibus expulsa turrim obse-

"quid exspectas?" respondit, "Mortem tuam." Et dixit Lucius, "Per Deum non vide-"bis eam." Et remisit eum cum molendino suo.

Verses of bishop Ulger.

Ulgerius scripsit in hæc verba:

"Dum mihi Maurinus super-
"est et bajula pinus
"Est metuenda parum mihi
"pagina plena minarum
"Domni legati semper cla-
"mare parati."

Item,

"Dum mihi Maurinus super-
"est et bajula pinus
"Non me terrificat quic-
"quid dementia dicat
"Domni legati semper cer-
"tare parati."

Rursus idem,

"Si manducassent pariter
"grex et Petronilla
"Non foret hæc pinguis vel
"grex non macrior illa."

Item scripsit Ulgerius de Maurino,

"Quam omnibus æquis dice-
"bat placabilem
"Exceptis si quos in se
"conspexit iniquos."

Item Ulgerius palatium nobile construens, sic ait,

---

[1] B. reads:—Tunc imperatrix a Lundoniensibus et ab omni pœne gente Anglorum suscepta est in dominam, exceptis Kentensibus; sed tandem a Lundoniensibus expulsa est. Postea vero obsedit turrim Wintoniensis episcopi cum avunculo suo rege Scotorum et fratre suo Roberto, sed W. Yprensis et regina cum Lundoniensibus fecerunt illam inde recedere. Captus est igitur Robertus frater imperatricis cum multis, cujus sola captione rex evadere poterat. Sic igitur absolutus est uterque. Captus est comes in die Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis. R. de Monte, A.D. 1141.

[2] B. reads:—R. comes Gloecestriæ transfretavit in Normanniam ducens secum filios comitum et magnatum Angliæ qui imperatrici favebant, comiti Andegaviæ custodiæ commendandos. R. de Monte, A.D. 1142.

dit Wintoniensis episcopi. Regina, Willelmus Yprensis, cum Lundoniensibus, fecerunt imperatricem inde recedere. Captus est comes Robertus frater imperatricis in Exaltatione Sanctæ Crucis. Habita mutua compensatione compeditorum, hinc rex, hinc comes a vinculis absoluti liberi recesserunt.

Rex Stephanus obsedit imperatricem apud Oxeneford.[1]

MCXLII. Celestinus * papa.

Stephanus rex Galfridum de Magnivilla cepit in curia sua. Qui ut liberaretur reddidit turrim Lundoniæ et castella sua.[2]

Lucius * papa pallium misit Henrico Wintoniensi episcopo, cui proposuerat assignare septem episcopos.[3]

"In toto mundo non inve-
"nietur eundo
"Ulla domus talis tam regia
"tam specialis."

* Hic ait Ulgerio, "Frater "quid exspectas?" At ille, "Mortem tuam."

* Hic ait Ulgerio, "Frater "quid exspectas?" At ille, "Mortem tuam." Cui Lucius, "Per Deum non videbis eam." Et remisit eum cum molendino suo.

A.D. 1141.

Earl Robert of Gloucester taken, and exchanged for the king.

The empress besieged at Oxford.

A.D. 1142.

Celestine II.

Geoffrey de Mandeville obliged to surrender his castles.

Lucius II. sent a pall to Henry of Winchester.

MCXLIII. Gaufridus comes Andegavensis receptus Rothomagi turrim obsedit et cepit, et extunc dux Normannorum appellatus est.[4]

Eugenius papa.

A.D. 1143. Geoffrey takes Rouen.

MCXLIIII. Apud Carnotum carri lapidibus, annona, lignis onusti[5] tracti sunt humeris hominum.[6]

A.D. 1144. Labour at Chartres.

MCXLV. Rex Stephanus cepit in curia sua Rannulfum Cestrensem comitem. Postmodum ut liberaretur, dedit obsidem Gile-

A.D. 1145. Stephen takes the earl of Chester.

---

[1] B. continues:— quæ recessit inde per Tamisiam inglaciatam circumamicta vestibus albis, et abiit Walingeford. R. de Monte, A.D. 1142.

[2] *Stephanus . . . sua*] H. Hunt., lib. viii., fo. 225; R. de Monte. Rex Stephanus obsedit Lincolniam, ins. B.

[3] *Lucius . . . episcopos*] om. B.

[4] *Gaufridus . . . appellatus est*] See R. de Monte, A.D. 1143. MS. B. reads:—Gaufridus comes Andegavensis receptus est a civibus Rothomagi; urbis turrim obsedit, quæ tandem alimonia deficiente reddita est ei, et extunc dux Normannorum appellatus est. Redditum est ei castellum de Driencurt, et omnia castella per Normanniam.

[5] *onusti*] rebus etiam aliis, ins. B.

[6] *Apud . . . hominum*] R. de Monte, A.D. 1144.

A.D. 1145. bertum comitem de Clare, filium sororis suæ: sicque postmodum[1] rex Stephanus Lincolniæ coronatur.[2]

A.D. 1146. Eugenius III. visits Paris.

MCXLVI. Eugenius papa Parisius veniens, Girardum Sagiensem episcopum, qui sicut dicebat in volutabro sanguinis sui fuerat consecratus, duci Normanniæ reconciliavit circa Pascha. Postmodum in Letania majore sollenni processione dominus papa receptus est apud Sanctam Genovefam præsente rege Francorum. Clerici domini papæ servientes etiam ibi vulnerati sunt. In ultionem excessus tanti servientium, ecclesiæ subversa sunt ædificia, rege jubente. Canonici regulares positi sunt ibi tractu temporis.

Battle at S. Genevieve.

Comet.

Circa tempus istud cometa diebus multis apparuit in occidente, vicinum aerem spaciis circumquaque diffusis choruscantibus radiis in immensum illuminans.[3]

Election of Peter archbishop of Bourges, without the consent of king Lewis.

Interdict.

Aimericus ecclesiæ Romanæ cancellarius nepotem habuit vocabulo Petrum. Qui suffragiis avunculi sui, citra tamen conscientiam Ludovici regis Francorum, in archiepiscopum Bituricensem electus, a domino papa consecratus est. Quod rex in injuriam regiæ dignitatis factum vehementer indignans, iracundiæ calore succensus est, et propositis publice sacrosanctis reliquiis in præsentia multorum juravit quod prædictus archiepiscopus quoad rex viveret civitatem nunquam intraret Bituricam. Sic per triennium persona regis interdicto subjacuit. In quamcunque civitatem, castellum vel vicum, intrabat celebratio divinorum suspendebatur. Tandem abbate Clarevallensi Bernardo persuadente, cor regis ad hoc est inclinatum ut reciperet archiepiscopum, et pro transgressione perjurii se repromitteret Jerosolimam profecturum. Igitur convocatis regni principibus in Parasceue rex signo sanctæ crucis humerum insignivit, et infiniti cum eo. Per totam Galliam fit descriptio generalis; non sexus, nec ordo, non dignitas quempiam

They are reconciled by S. Bernard.

Lewis prepares for a crusade.

---

[1] *Postmodum . . . . postmodum*] om. B.

[2] *Rex . . . coronatur*] R. de Monte; H. Hunt., fo. 225.

[3] *Eugenius . . illuminans*] om. B.

excusavit quin auxilium regi conferret; cujus iter multis imprecationibus prosequebantur.[1] A.D. 1146.

Suggerius abbas de Sancto Dionisio, deficientibus aliis regni principibus, solus in se regni suscepit custodiam.[2] Suger acts as regent.

Lexoviensis, Attrebatensis, Lingonensis episcopi cum rege Francorum profecti sunt Jerosolimam.[3] Pilgrim bishops.

Milo de Cheverusa vir illustris missus Constantinopolim litteras imperatoris attulit quæ secuntur.[4] Letters from Constantinople.

Rex Francorum profectus est Jerosolimam.

"✠ Manuel in Christo Deo fidelis rex porphirogenitus, celsus, sullimis, et imperator Romanorum, fortis, semper Augustus, ad prænobilissimum regem Franciæ. Manuel Comnenus to Lewis VII.
" Nobilissime rex, delata est imperio meo missa littera tuæ nobilitatis atque sublecta, in qua scripsisti imperio meo quia disposuisti exire in viam Dei, et expetisti imperium meum concessionem viæ transitusque simul et emptionem. Cum audisset igitur imperium meum vestram monitionem, gratam habuit hanc et gavisum est in hujusce auditu. Crede namque, semper cupiebat hujusmodi hominem videre qualis est tua nobilitas, et jungi et colloqui ei; et si est Dei voluntas, et veniat tua nobilitas, in magnam acceptionem erit hoc imperii mei. Ne speret ergo tua nobilitas impedimentum ab imperio meo repperire. Cum magna enim lætitia accepturum est imperium meum tuam nobilitatem, et opportune viam tuam præparaturum et transitum extructurum, et panige- The emperor offers the king a free passage and hearty welcome.

---

[1] *Aimericus . . . prosequebantur*] om. B. This and the following passages I have not been able to identify as taken from any known historian, although they contain little that is not known from other writers. As we approach the compiler's own time we may probably expect an increase of details drawn from his own personal knowledge; but there is nothing in these paragraphs to lead us to regard them as original.

[2] *Suggerius . . custodiam*] om. B. See above, note 1.

[3] *Lexoviensis . . . Jerosolimam*] om. B. MS. C. adds " Obiit Gaufridus de Gorram, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani xvi^{us}."

[4] *Milo*] See above, note 1. Om. B.

A.D. 1146. "riam, id est, conventum rerum venalium. Eroson, id "est vale. Missa ab a Deo salvata civitate, mense "Augusto; indictione ix." [1]

A.D. 1147. Lewis sets out. Council at Rheims.

MCXLVII. Rex Francorum profectus est Jerusalem.

C Ō Eugenius papa Remis concilium congregavit.[2] Canonici regulares positi sunt apud Sanctam Genovevam.[3]

Consecration of Robert de Chesnei, bishop of Lincoln (A.D. 1148).

Robertus de Casnei Legercestrensis archidiaconus, vir simplicitatis et humilitatis magnæ, de communi totius ecclesiæ Lincolniensis assensu, creatus est Lincolniensis episcopus, per manum Theobaldi Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, paucis diebus elapsis post jejunium septimi mensis.[4]

---

[1] The letter of which this is a fragment is printed in full in the Thesaurus of Martene and Durand, i. 399, from a MS. at Noyon; and in Bouquet, xvi. 9. MS. C. inserts, "Radulfus Gubium, abbas Sancti "Albani xvii^{us}." MS. B. inserts, "Conradus imperator et Ludovi-"cus rex Francorum profecti sunt "Jerosolimam, sed nihil egerunt "dignum memoria."

[2] *Eugenius . . . . . congregavit*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1147.

[3] *Canonici . . . . . Genovevam*] Rob. de Monte, A.D. 1146.

[4] *Robertus . . mensis*] Robertus de Casnei fit episcopus Lincolniensis, B.

[1] INCIPIUNT VERSUS NICHOLAI MANIACUTII AD INCORRUPTA PONTIFICUM NOMINA CONSERVANDA, NE VIDELICET DICAMUS ELEUTHERIUS PRO ELEUTHER, ET HYLARIUS PRO ILARUS; ET AD SCIENDUM QUI SINT ANTIQUIORES.

Metrical list of the popes.

Si vis pontifices Romanæ discere sedis,
Carminibus nostris perlectis scire valebis.
Primus papatus Petrus est in sede locatus,
Qui consederunt Linus Cletusque fuerunt.
His Clemens junctus simili fuit ordine functus;
Disputat hinc mundus sit quartus sitve secundus.
Hinc Anacletus præsedit et hinc Evaristus,
Hinc Alexandro successit in ordine Sixtus;
Hos juxta positus Thelesphorus est et Yginus,
Additur Anicius, seu præsul nomine Pius,
Sother et Eleuther, quibus est Victor quoque mixtus,
Quos Zepherinus habet comites, martyrque Calixtus.
Urbanus turbæ Christi prælatus in urbe,
Post hos papatus successit in arce locatus,
Hinc Pontianus, hinc Antheros, hinc Fabianus.
Cornelius, Lucius, Stephanus, Sixtusque secundus,
Hos rutilas juxta, Dionisi, sede venusta;
Felix Romanus, cui jungitur Euticianus.
His comites Gaius seu Marcellinus habentur.
Marcellus necnon Eusebius annumerantur,
Melchiades etiam post quem, Silvester, haberi
Te Dominus papam decrevit in ordine cleri.
Marcus cui Julius succedit Liberiusque,
Felix et Damasus cleri speculumque decusque,
Exule Liberio Felix in sede locatur,
Martyriumque subit, cum Liberius revocatur.
Quare Liberii Damasus successor habetur,
Sicut Jeronimi cronica narrante docetur.
Postea Siricium numeramus Anastasiumque,
Hinc Innocenti te, qui comitaris utrumque:
Post Zozimum vero Bonefacius enumeratur,
Hinc Celestinus cum Syxto consociatur.

[1] *Incipiunt*] The following poem is the work of Nicolaus Maniacutius, a canon of S. John Lateran, who is said to have lived in the pontificate of Alexander III. It is printed by Onuphrius Panvinius in his notes on Platina, p. 207, in the Bollandist Acta Sanctorum, May, vol. v. p.*27; and in the Appendix to the Liber de Antiquis Legibus (Camden Soc. 1845), pp. 186–189, with a continuation down to Clement IV. It is found in the Lambeth MS. only of R. de Diceto; om. B. C. D.

Metrical list of the popes.

Hos autem juxta Leo vir doctissimus extat,
Eloquium cujus quantus fuerit manifestat.
Ylarus hunc et Simplicius Felixque sequuntur,
Post quos Gelasius Anastasiusque leguntur;
Simachus, Ormisda, rutilant præsulque Johannes,
Quos sequitur Felix, Bonefacius atque Johannes,
Agapitum cum Silverio tecumque, Vigili,
Pelagium legimus papali sede potiri.
Hos meriti magni papæ præmitto Johanni.
Papam post istum numero papam Benedictum.
Pelagium Romæ prælatum postea prome.
Hinc tu, Gregori, conformans cuncta decori,
Ecclesiæ Christi sal atque lucerna fuisti.
Post te Blerannum civem lego Sabinianum.
Hinc Bonifacius et Bonifacius annumerentur,
Deusdedit et quintus Bonifacius associentur.
Honorium cum Severiano teque Johannes,
Inter prædictos cœlestes scribimus amnes.
Post hos Theodoro Martinum consociemus,
De quo quod fuerit per Græcos passus habemus.
Additur Eugenius præsul quoque Vitalianus,
Adeodatum cum Dono suscipiamus.
Scribitur hinc Agatho Siculæ regionis alumpnus,
Et copulatur ei prudens Leo papa secundus.
His adjungatur Benedictus sive Johannes,
Et Conon tecum Sergi, sextusque Johannes.
Hinc alio papa gavisa est Roma Johanne
Et te, Sisinni, genito genitore Johanne.
Post Constantinum Gregorius alter habetur,
Tertius his etiam Gregorius associetur.
Hinc Zacharias, Stephanus, Paulusque notentur,
Hinc Constantinus, Stephanus quoque connumerentur
Post Adrianum Leo tertius esse videtur,
Post Stephanum quartum Paschalis præsul habetur.
Eugenius vero papæ subscribitur isti,
Cujus successor tu, Valentine, fuisti,
Gregorius quartus et Sergius et Leo quartus,
Pontificem dictum post quos legimus Benedictum,
Hinc, Nicholae, tuo tua gaudet Roma decore.
Cujus Adrianus post mortem fulsit honore,
Octavi viguit post hos doctrina Johannis,
A quo Marinus perpaucis præfuit annis,
Præsulibus præsul subnectitur his Adrianus,
Et Stephanus quintus, genuit pater hic Adrianus.
Postea Formosum legimus cathedram tenuisse,
Inde Bonefacium papatum promeruisse.

Metrical list of the popes.

Post Stephanum sextum Romanum perlege tandem
Et post Theodorum nonum subnecte Johannem.
Hinc Benedicte pater Leo tecum connumeretur,
De titulo Damasi Christoforus associetur.
Sergius hinc rutilans Anastasio copulatur;
Et Lando vivens modicum super astra levatur.
Omnibus his tandem decimum conjunge Johannem,
Te Leo cum Stephano præcedit papa Johannes,
Cui Leo seu Stephanus succedunt dogmate grandes,
Necnon Marinus et Agapitus atque Johannes.
Præsulibus quintus conjungitur his Benedictus.
Cui Leo jungatur Johannes et Benedictus,
Et Domnus, necnon Bonefacius et Benedictus,
Et quartum decimum post istos scribe Johannem,
Et quintum decimum post istos scribe Johannem,
Et sextum decimum post istos scribe Johannem.
Gregorium quintum prius, et postscribe Johannem,
Post quem Silvester prius et postscribe Johannem;
Huic etiam nonum decimum subscribe Johannem.
Sergius hinc quartus subnectitur et Benedictus,
Restat vicesimus Johannes seu Benedictus,
Hunc nonum decimum depromunt scripta Johannem,
Quod cur eveniat dabit hoc cognoscere carmen,
Quendam Johanni si Mercurium vocitamus,
Istum vicesimum nonum decimum numeramus.
Silvester cum Gregorio Clemensque secundus.

[1] Hic arma undecumque et equos conquisivit, milites adornavit, et, primum basilicam beati Petri præoccupans, raptores oblationum vel extinxit vel effugavit, et prædia omnia et oppida multis temporibus amissa in antiquum jus reformavit. Ita pax, per multorum segnitiem exulans, per unum hominem in patriam rediit. Unde Quirites rapto assueti sanguinarium illum vocabant. Cardinales etiam, cum beatus ille valetudine decumberet, ausu temerario cum ammonebant, ne se in ecclesia beati Petri cum cæteris apostolicis tumulari præciperet, quam tot hominum cædibus fœdasset. Quibus

[1] This apocryphal history of Gregory VI. has been given already, p. 180; and in exactly the same words.

Story of Gregory VI.

ille "Omnia committamus divino examini. "Corpus meum antecessorum more compo-"situm ante januas ecclesiæ sistite. Januæ "seris et repagulis dampnentur. Si Deus "voluerit ut ingrediar, applaudetis mira-"culo; si minus, de cadavere meo facite "quod nostris insederit animis." Cum ille spiritum efflasset extremum, ante portas seris occlusis exanimis præsulis exuvias deportant; sed mox divinitus turbo emissus omnia repagulorum obstacula dirumpens, valvas etiam ipsas vehementi patefactas impetu, ad parietem impulit. Populus astans acclamat in gaudium, pontificis corpus cum patribus celebri veneratione locatur.

List of the popes.

Cum Damaso rutilat Leo post Victorque secundus,
Stephanus hinc nonus necnon decimus Benedictus;
Et succedit eis Nicholaus in ordine mixtus.
Alter Alexander et Gregorius copulantur
Victor et Urbanus cum Paschali comitantur,
Gelasium mundo concessit postea Christus.
Cui decedenti successit papa Calixtus.
Honorius cathedram post omnes hos decoravit,
Hinc Innocenti te papam Roma vocavit.
Post Celestinus cœlesti dogmate functus,
Crismate lætitiæ fit præ consortibus unctus.
Lucius hinc mundi cupiens obsistere morbis
Est raptus tali quia dignus non erat orbis.
Tertius Eugenius qui nunc prælatus habetur
Donec vult vivat demum super astra levetur.
Sunt centum quinque necnon et septuaginta;

Anastasius.
Adrianus.
Alexander.
Lucius.
Urbanus.
Gregorius.
Clemens.
Celestinus.
Innocentius.

A.D. 1147. Archbishop Theobald, at the council of Rheims.

Theobaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Remis venit ad concilium sine licentia regis; quare bonis suis omnibus spoliatus est. Suffraganei sui suspensi sunt a domino papa quia non venerant ad concilium.

Hylarius Cicestrensis episcopus Stephanum regem excusans, audivit a domino papa "Putabamus te filium "creasse Romanæ ecclesiæ, sed creavimus in te sagit- "tam et gladium."[1] A.D. 1147. The pope reproves the bishop of Chichester.

ROBERTUS ABBAS SANCTI MICHAELIS DE MONTE SCRIBIT HUCUSQUE.[2]

RADULFUS LUNDONIENSIS DECANUS IN OPUSCULO SEQUENTI BREVISSIME MULTARUM COMMEMORAT YMAGINES HYSTORIARUM CAPITULATIM.

---

[1] *Theobaldus . . . . . gladium*] om. B.

[2] *Robertus . . . hucusque*] Huc usque Robertus abbas Sancti Michaelis de Monte in Normannia cronica sua digessit, B. This MS. now proceeds immediately with the *Ymagines*, placing the *Capitula* at the end of the work. MS. C. follows the order of the text. MS. D. has the capitula inserted by mistake under the year 1063; see above, p. 193.

CAPITULA YMAGINUM HISTORIARUM.

CAPITULA YMAGINUM HISTORIARUM.

RADULFUS LUNDONIENSIS DECANUS IN OPUSCULO SEQUENTI BREVISSIME MULTARUM COMMEMORAT YMAGINES HISTORIARUM CAPITULATIM.[1]

Ab Incarnatione Domini nostri Jesu Christi quid per annos mille centum quadraginta septem annalibus inserendum decrevit antiquitas explicitum est. Abhinc vero quid Henricus Galfridi Plantegenest comitis Andegavorum et Matildis imperatricis filiæ regis Anglorum Henrici primogenitus, militiæ cingulo donatus, tempore suo memoriale reliquerit, est inserendum. Nec te moveant ad aliquam querelandi materiam supputationes annorum succedaneis gradibus excrescentes, licet non sint conformes eorum excursus; sed recordare quod anni cujusque continentia non semper passibus æquis incedat; sed vel pro singularium raritate, vel pro rerum capacitate gestarum nunc artetur capitulis restrictioribus, nunc effusioribus choruscet suffragiis ad fortuitos casus plenius evehendos, ad statum ecclesiæ roborandum, ad victorias principum declarandas, ad pacem omnium jugiter recolendam, et semper provehendam in melius. The following work begins at the knighting of Henry, son of Geoffrey Plantagenet.

MCXLVIII.[2] Henricus accinctus est militaribus. Abstract of the *Ymagines Historiarum*, A.D. 1148-115.1

Ludovicus rex Francorum et Alienor regina rediere Jerusalem.

MCXLIX. Yemps maxima.

MCL. Eversum est Monasteriolum Geraldi Berlai.[3]

Henricus factus est dux Normanniæ et comes Andegaviæ.

Civitas Andegaviæ quem situm habeat.

Gaufridus Plantegenest sepultus est Cenomannis.

MCLI. Fredericus fit rex Teutonicus.

---

[1] The following *capitula* form a summary of the contents of the Ymagines Historiarum, the chief work of our compiler. In one or two cases they contain names which do not occur in the Ymagines.

[2] Here MS. A. has, in a hand either imitated from, or a little later than, the usual one, "Translatio "Sancti Erkenwaldi episcopi."

[3] *Geraldi Berlai*] The name of the lord of Monstreuil is not given in the Ymagines, but seems here to be taken directly from Robert de Monte, from whom the corresponding paragraph in the Ymagines is abridged.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Celebratum est divortium inter regem Francorum et reginam Alienor.

Henricus relictam regis Francorum Alienor duxit uxorem.

Aquitannia rerum affluit opulentiis.

Obsederunt Franci Novum Mercatum in Normannia, sed infecto negotio redierunt.

A.D. 1152. MCLII.[1] Henricus dux Normannorum, veniens in Angliam, obsedit Malmesbires.

Johannes Papiro cardinalis transiit in Yberniam.

Ricardus de Belmeis consecratus est Cantuariæ a Theobaldo archiepiscopo.

David regi Scottorum successit Melcolmus nepos ejus.

A.D. 1153. MCLIII. Stephanus rex Anglorum et Henricus dux Normannorum concordes effecti sunt.

A.D. 1154. MCLIIII. Ludovicus rex Francorum duxit uxorem filium Adelfunsi regis Hyspaniæ.

Rogerus rex Siciliæ successorem reliquit Willelmum filium suum.

Willelmus Eboracensis archiepiscopus degradatus, restitutus est.

Rogerus Cantuariensis archidiaconus creatus est archiepiscopus Eboracensis.

Henricus dux Normannorum consecratus est rex Anglorum a Theobaldo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.

Thomas archidiaconus Cantuariensis factus est regis cancellarius.

Adrianus papa litteras novo regi direxit.

A.D. 1155. MCLV. Alienor regina peperit filium quem vocavit Henricum.

Fredericus rex Alemannorum ab Adriano papa consecratus est in imperatorem.

Sex castella Wintoniensis episcopi Henrici diruta sunt.

Willelmus Peverel exhæredatus est.

Castellum de Bruge regi redditum est.

A.D. 1156. MCLVI. Rex Henricus transfretans applicuit apud Witsand.

Willelmus rex Siciliæ civitatem Barum evertit.

Alienor regina peperit filiam quam vocavit Matildem.

A.D. 1157. MCLVII. Willelmus rex Siciliæ cepit Sibillam.

Alienor regina peperit filium apud Oxeneford quem vocavit Ricardum.

A.D. 1158. MCLVIII. Henricus rex Anglorum, coronatus apud Wigornam, coronam super altare posuit.

Alienor regina peperit filium quem vocavit Gaufridum.[2]

---

[1] *MCLII.*] Hoc anno natus est Willelmus; ins. A. in a late hand.

[2] *Gaufridum*] "Donatus scripsit "Memoriale Historiarum;" A. in a seventeenth century hand.

Nova moneta in Anglia. Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Thomas regis cancellarius procuravit ut Henricus primogenitus regis Anglorum Margaritam filiam regis Francorum sponsam acciperet.

Ludovicus rex Francorum in ecclesiis cathedralibus per Normanniam sollempni processione receptus est.

Rex Anglorum venit Parisius, receptus[1] in palatio regis.

MCLIX. Rex Anglorum obsedit Tholosam. A.D. 1159.

Post Adrianum papam Alexander papa creatus est.

Exortum est scisma. SC̄

Willelmus Boloniæ comes in reditu Tholosæ obiit.

MCLX. A rege Francorum et Anglorum in Alexandrum papam consensum est. Imperator Octovianum recepit. A.D. 1160.

Regina Francorum in puerperio mortua est.

Ludovicus rex Francorum Alam filiam Theobaldi comitis accepit uxorem.

Inter filium regis Anglorum septennem, et filiam regis Francorum triennem, matrimonium celebratum est.

MCLXI. Ricardus Coventrensis archidiaconus, ex patre Roberto Cestrensi pontifice procreatus, consecratus est ejusdem sedis episcopus. A.D. 1161.

MCLXII. Alienor regina peperit filiam quam vocavit Alienor. A.D. 1162.

Thomas Cantuariensis archidiaconus, et regis cancellarius, electus est in archiepiscopum, Cantuariæ consecratus est a Henrico Wintoniensi episcopo, nomine Lundoniensis ecclesiæ tunc vacantis.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus regium sigillum remisit in Normanniam. DC I.

MCLXIII. Henricus rex in Angliam rediit. A.D. 1163.

Thomas archiepiscopus ad instantissimam regis postulationem invictissimus[2] tandem concessit archidiaconatum Cantuariensem Gaufrido Ridel. DC II.

Clarembaldus abbas electus Sancti Augustini restitit archiepiscopo, rege non contradicente. DC III.

Gilebertus Herefordensis episcopus translatus est ad Lundoniensem ecclesiam.

Henricus de Exexia victus in duello exhæredatus est.

Thuronis concilium celebratum est. CŌ

Thomas archiepiscopus sedit a dextra parte, Rogerus Eboracensis a sinistra.

---

[1] *venit . . . . receptus*] veniens Parisius receptus est, B. D.

[2] *invictissimus*] invitissimus, B.; C. has the reading of the text.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Alexander papa rosam auream, quam gestavit Dominica qua cantatur Lætare Jerusalem, Ludovico regi Francorum transmisit.

Rogerus comes de Clara pro tenemento de Tunebruge Thomæ restitit archiepiscopo. IIII.

Willelmus de Ros inventus est in muneribus subeundis regem agnoscere non archiepiscopum. V.

Thomas archiepiscopus Willelmum de Heinesford excommunicavit, rege non certiorato. VI.

Rex consuetudines quas avitas appellant a domino papa petiit confirmari, sed non optinuit, archiepiscopo resistente. VII.

A.D. 1164. MCLXIIII. Apud Clarendunam ad regni consuetudines observandas coacti sunt episcopi.

Thomas archiepiscopus ab obligatione quam super hoc inierat absolutus est a domino papa. VIII.

Exauctoratos propter flagitium clericos rex dicebat curiæ tradendos ilico puniendos, archiepiscopus contradicebat.[1] IX.

Philippus de Broie, canonicus de Bedeford,[2] propter homicidium pulsus est a regno per biennium. X.

Archiepiscopus inscio rege navem ascendit, propter quod regis incurrit offensam. XI.

Johanne Marescallo deferente querelam adversus archiepiscopum, contrariam reportavit sententiam archiepiscopus. XII.

Thomas archiepiscopus apud Norehamtune adversus episcopos appellavit, et nocte sequente recessit, cum tribus solummodo comitantibus eum, navicula fragili transvectus in Flandriam.

Adversus archiepiscopum directi sunt nuncii quindecim, qui Senonis venerunt ad dominum papam.

A.D. 1165. MCLXV. Regina Francorum peperit filium quem vocavit Philippum.

Alienor regina peperit filiam quam vocavit Johannam.

Reginaldus Coloniensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam.

A.D. 1166. MCLXVI. Quidam pravi dogmatis disseminatores expulsi sunt ab Anglia facie cauteriata.

Thomas archiepiscopus venit Viceliacum die Ascensionis, et observatores consuetudinum quas avitas appellant in Anglia sollempniter excommunicavit.

---

[1] *archiepiscopus contradicebat*] archiepiscopo contradicente, Twysden.

[2] *Bedeforde*] Herefordc, V. l. ap. Twysden.

Regi Anglorum Thomas archiepiscopus scripsit in hæc verba, "Desiderio desideravi." Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Suffraganei Cantuarienses scripserunt archiepiscopo.

Thomas archiepiscopus scripsit Gileberto Lundoniensi episcopo.

Alienor regina peperit filium quem vocavit Johannem.

Alexander papa privilegium indulsit archiepiscopo Thomæ.

Willelmus Papiensis, et Johannes Neapolitanus, audituri causam regis et archiepiscopi, infecto negotio redierunt.

Ludovicus rex Francorum per quatuor annos in expensis providit archiepiscopo Thomæ.

MCLXVII. Matildis filia regis nupsit Henrico duci Saxonico. A.D. 1167.

A Normannis Calvus Mons vicinus Gisorz succensus est; in ultionem rex Francorum combussit Andelei villam archiepiscopi Rothomagensis, et ipsa die rediit in Franciam, amissis in itinere plusquam mille de suis.

MCLXVIII. Alexandro papæ magnates Theutonici regni scripserunt, "Cum clerum plurimum, etc." A.D. 1168.

Alexandro papæ Gilebertus Lundoniensis episcopus, "Mandatum vestrum, pater, etc.

Conanus Britanniæ comes, jure successorio comitatum utrumque Britanniæ recipiens, ex sorore Willelmi regis Scottorum filiam reliquit hæredem.

MCLXIX. Alexander papa regi Anglorum, "Quam paterne," etc. A.D. 1169.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Gileberto Lundoniensi episcopo, "Excessus vestros," etc.

Alienor filia regis Angliæ nupsit Adelfunso regi Castellæ.

Alexander papa regi Angliæ, "Serenitatem tuam," etc.

Inter Angliæ regem et archiepiscopum paci reformandæ multi multociens operas impenderunt. Ad ultimum Vivianus et Gratianus cardinales.

Rex Anglorum et archiepiscopus in qualiquali concordia convenissent, nisi quia rex archiepiscopo signum pacis in osculo dare penitus abnegasset.

MCLXX. Alexander papa Gileberto Lundoniensi episcopo, "Sententiam excommunicationis suscipiens absolveris ab archiepiscopo Rothomagensi." Quod et factum est apud Rothomagum in die Paschæ. A.D. 1170.

Interdictum est Rogero Eboracensi archiepiscopo ne manum apponeret consecrationi regis Anglorum Henrici; similiter et episcopo Lundoniensi.

Henricus filius regis Henrici consecratus est in regem a Rogero archiepiscopo xiiij. kalendas Julii.

Rex et archiepiscopus concordiam inierunt, procurante pacem Rotrodo Rothomagensi archiepiscopo.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Alexander papa Rogero Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et Hugoni Dunolmensi episcopo, "Cum filium suum, etc."

Alexander papa episcopis Angliæ, "Cum karissimus filius, "etc."

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus domino papæ "Adduc-"tus est nobis, etc."

Dum Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus tenderet versus Wdestoc ad videndum novum regem, et hospitaretur apud Suthewrc, obvios habuit nuncios ejus interdicentes ei ne progrederetur.

A.D. 1171. MCLXXI. Die Natalis Domini Thomas archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, sermonem habens ad populum, excommunicavit Nigellum de Sachevilla, et Robertum de Broc.

Quinta die Natalis Domini immolatus est archiepiscopus coram altari Sancti Benedicti.

Hugo Terraconensis archiepiscopus interfectus est cultello.

Missi sunt nuncii regis Anglorum ad dominum papam, qui eum excusarent et ejus innocentiam allegarent.

In Britannia Minori interfectus est Hamo Leonensis episcopus.

Irradiare cœperunt miracula in honorem gloriosi martyris Thomæ.

Lundoniensis episcopus absolutus est a Nivernensi et Beluacensi episcopis, et abbate de Pontine.

Rex pater appulsus est in Angliam.

Domino papæ Willelmus Senonensis archiepiscopus, "Vestro "apostolatui,[1] pater sancte," etc.

Rex pater intravit Yberniam.

Cantuariensis ecclesia cessavit fere per unum annum.

A.D. 1172. MCLXXII. In nocte Natalis Domini auditum est tonitruum.

Rex faciens pacem cum Yberniensibus transfretavit in Angliam, et statim cum festinatione qua potuit transvectus est in Normanniam.

Rotro Rothomagensis archiepiscopus et episcopus Ambianensis, mandato domini papæ, purgationem Lundoniensis episcopi susceperunt.

Postquam rex Anglorum appulsus est in Normanniam, statim accessit ad Albertum et Theodinum cardinales et legatos, absolutionem petens ab eis petiit et impetravit.

Rotro Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Margaritam filiam regis Francorum reginam Angliæ consecravit, et diadema regni capiti filii regis imposuit.

A.D. 1173. MCLXXIII. Adelfunsus rex Aragonum, Reimundus comes Sancti Egidii, Girardus de Vienna, comes de Moriana, venerunt ad curiam regis apud Montem Ferandi.

---

[1] *apostolatui*] appellatui, V. l. ap. Twysden.

Comes Sancti Egidii fecit homagium Henrico patri regis. Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Rex pater regis et filius ab invicem discordes facti sunt.

Lundoniensis episcopus transfretavit, referens has litteras, "Albertus et Theodinus clero Angliæ, inspirante Illo, etc."

Radulfus de Warnavilla regis factus est cancellarius.

Walterus de Constantia factus est sigillifer.

Septies viginti Flandrenses irrumpentes in Normanniam submersi sunt prope Pasceium.

Rex fieri liberas concessit electiones.

Wintoniensis et Elyensis electi in suis intronizantur ecclesiis die Ascensionis.

Ricardus Doverensis prior electus est Cantuariensis archiepiscopus.

Thomas prothomartyr Cantuariorum canonizatus est; ab omnibus decantatum est "Te Deum laudamus."

Ludovicus rex Francorum obsedit Vernolium.

Castellum de Albemarle expugnatum est a rege filio.

Rex pater, æquanimiter ferens omnia, morabatur Rothomagi.

Rex Francorum, audiens regis patris adventum, a Vernolio cum festinatione recessit.

Subversæ sunt a rege patre portæ civitatis Legecestriæ.

Willelmus rex Scotorum, cum pro parte vastasset Angliam, coactus est repatriare.

Comes Legecestriæ captus est apud Sanctum Eadmundum.

Apud Dolensem urbem capti sunt a rege patre quinque viri magnates, et quater viginti milites de familia filii sui.

Nicholaus subdiaconus, a domino papa directus in Angliam, infinitam congregavit pecuniam.

MCLXXIIII. Rex filius Sagiensem urbem invasit. A.D. 1174.

Rex pater, apud urbem Santonicam veniens, tres ibi munitiones[1] sibi subjugavit.

Flandrenses, in auxilium regis filii venientes in Angliam, vastaverunt Norwicum.

Ricardus, Wintoniensis electus, ab Anglis missus est in Normanniam, ut regem patrem suum revocaret ad regnum.

Rex veniens in Angliam eam pro maxima parte sibi rebellantem invenit, et veniens Cantuariam, dum vota persolveret orationum beato Thomæ martyri, a militia sua captus est rex Scotorum. Rex postmodum cum totam pacificasset Angliam, xxxiiii°. die navem ascendit, ducens secum regem Scotorum. Et veniens Rothomagum eam invenit obsessam.

Amaurico regi Jerosolimitano Baldewinus filius ejus successit.

---

[1] *munitiones*] murationes, V. l. ap. Twysden.

S

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Audientes Franci regem patrem adventasse, machinis suis ignem apposuerunt, et infecto negotio recesserunt cum dedecore.

Tussis universum orbem infecit.

Ricardus Cantuariensis electus Romam veniens, archiepiscopus, primas, apostolicæ sedis legatus institutus est.

Alexander papa scripsit Lupo regi Valentiæ pro liberatione Christianorum; et Ricardum Cantuariensem electum consecravit episcopum.

Robertus Cameracensis electus interfectus est.

A.D. 1175. MCLXXV. Willelmus rex Scotiæ, jure belli captus,[1] dedit obsides.

Philippus comes Flandrensis crucem accepit.[2]

Eversa sunt castella per Angliam.

Willelmus de Brausa multos Walensium apud castellum de Bergeveni interfecit.

Hugo cardinalis venit in Angliam.[3]

Philippus comes Flandrensis Walterum de Fontibus, cum Ysabele comprehensum, jussit interfici.

A.D. 1176. MCLXXVI. Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus male tractatus est apud Westmonasterium in concilio quod Hugo Petrileonis habuit, quia legati voluit sedere ad dexteram.

Rex Anglorum, a kalendis Aprilis usque ad novarum frugum abundantiam, decem milibus hominum penuria laborantium invenit necessaria.

Fredericus imperator Mediolanum vastavit.

A.D. 1177. MCLXXVII. Johanna filia regis Angliæ nupsit Willelmo regi Siciliæ.

Manuel imperator Constantinopolitanus a Sultano Yconii domino gravi jactura suorum affectus est.

Jurgium inter reges tam Castellæ quam Navarræ sopitum est judicio curiæ regis Anglorum.

Canonici Walthamenses, qui sæculares appellati sunt, subintroductis regularibus, sunt amoti.

Fredericus imperator, abrenuncians scismati, dextravit Alexandrum papam apud Venetias ad ecclesiam Sancti Marci.

Gaufridus filii regis cancellarius submersus est.

Ventus irruens silvas evertit.

A.D. 1178. MCLXXVIII. Nix maxima.

Valla maxima facta de cespitibus diruta sunt in maritimis vi ventorum.

Willelmus abbas Ramesiensis translatus est ad Cluniacensem.

Castellum Radulfi de Doloribus ad ducem spectat Aquitannicum non ad regem Francorum.

---

[1] *jure belli captus*] om. B.

[2] *Philippus . . . accepit*] om. B.

[3] *Hugo . . . Angliam*] om. C.

Albertus comes de Marchia regi Anglorum suum vendidit comitatum. Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Ricardus de Luci in honorem Sancti Thomæ martyris fundavit abbatiam apud Luenes.

Rex Anglorum, in Angliam veniens, visitavit sepulchrum Sancti Thomæ.

Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam, Sancto Thomæ martyri vota soluturus orationum.

Rex Anglorum Gaufridum filium suum cingulo militari donavit apud Wdestoke.

Fredericus imperator ab Ytalia rediit in Teutonicam.

Saladinus, conflictum habens cum Christianis, lorica rejecta, camelum cursorium ascendit, et fuga sibi consuluit.

Johannes Strumensis[1] scismaticus reconciliatus est.

Fredericus imperator apud Arelas, quartam imperii sui sedem, diadema suscepit die nativitatis Beatæ Virginis.

Alexander papa judicium possessionum a rege terminandum permisit.

MCLXXIX. Rex filius regis per triennium in conflictibus Gallicis perseveravit. A.D. 1179.

Rogerus abbas electus Sancti Augustini anulum, mitram et cirothecas, suscepit apud Thusculanum.

Synodus trecentorum decem episcoporum est habita Romæ.

Agnes filia Ludovici regis Francorum nupsit Alexio Manuelis imperatoris filio.

Ricardus dux Aquitanorum subvertit Taileburg castellum Gaufridi de Rancuna.

Ludovicus rex Francorum, Sancto Thomæ vota soluturus orationum, intravit Angliam, per triduum moram faciens Cantuariæ.

Henricus rex Anglorum instituit tres episcopos, regni totius archijusticiarios.

Septem spicæ[2] pullulaverunt in culmo uno.

Cadvallanus, a curia rediens sub conducto regis, interfectus est.

Ludovicus rex Francorum trigamus ex tertio matrimonio filium procreavit Philippum.[3]

Henricus rex, Henrici regis Angliæ filius, Remis interfuit coronationi Philippi regis Francorum sororii sui.

Anastasius imperator Constantinopolitanus coronam auream et tunicam bracteam misit Clodoveo regi Francorum, ei conferens res regnandi.

---

[1] *Strumensis*] Trumensis, D.

[2] *spicæ*] om. D.

[3] *Ludovicus . . . . Philippum*] Underlined for erasure in A.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Alexander papa Presbytero Johanni Indorum regi litteras misit, et nuncium direxit Philippum medicum.

A.D. 1180. MCLXXX. Willelmus de Magna villa filiam comitis Albemarle duxit uxorem.

Conradus marchio Christianum archiepiscopum Maguntinum conjecit in vinculis in Rupe Sanctæ Christinæ.

Philippus rex Francorum Judæos expulit a regno suo.

Henricus rex Anglorum direxit nuntios regi Francorum Ricardum Winthoniensem episcopum, et Walterum de Con- ✠ stantia[1] regis sigillarium.

Clericorum Lemovicensium bona confiscata sunt, quia Sebrandum Pictavensem decanum elegerant citra conscientiam regis et filii sui.

Philippus rex Francorum Margaritam filiam Baldewini comitis Hainaucensis duxit uxorem apud Truncum, quam unxit in reginam Guido Senonensis archiepiscopus apud Sanctum Dionisium.

Ludovicus rex Francorum sigilli sui potestate privatus est.

Inter Philippum regem Francorum et matrem suam est orta discordia.

Fœdus inierunt Philippus rex Francorum et Henricus rex Anglorum.

Philippus rex Francorum comitem Cabilonensem, et Humbertum de Bello Joco, quoniam ecclesiam Dei persequebantur, exercitu congregato perdomuit.

Ludovicus rex Francorum sepultus est apud abbatiam Barbel quam ædificavit.

Nova moneta formæ rotundæ fabricatur in Anglia.

A.D. 1181. MCLXXXI. Rex Francorum Philippus consilio regis Anglorum se totum supposuit.

Philippus comes Flandrensis et Stephanus de Sacro Cæsaris conspiraverunt adversus regem Francorum Philippum.

Tres filii regis Anglorum præstiterunt succursum.

Humbaldus Hostiensis episcopus papa creatus est, Lucius papa tertius.

A.D. 1182. MCLXXXII. Gaufridus filius regis, Lincolniensis electus, renunciavit electioni.

Henricus rex Anglorum quadraginta duo milia marcarum terræ Jerosolimitanæ distribuit.

Post dies Manuelis imperatoris Andronicus nepos ejus, Constantinopolim veniens, Alexium imperatorem creatum invenit, et ei fidelitatem juravit.

---

[1] Here begins a series of blue crosses, inserted at each mention of Walter of Coutances in the margin of A.

Bona Rogeri Eboracensis archiepiscopi confiscata sunt, dum ageret in extremis. Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Henricus dux Saxonum exhæredatus est.

Ricardus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Walerannum Rofensem electum regalium possessorem instituit, præsente Rannulfo regni justiciario.

MCLXXXIII. Gualterus de Constantiis, Oxenefordensis archidiaconus, electus est in episcopum Lincolniensem; consecratus est Andegavis.[1] A.D. 1183.

Rex filius regis apud Martel in Turonia diem clausit extremum, sepultus autem est Rothomagi.

Magister Gerardus, vocatus Puella, consecratus est Coventrensis episcopus.

Gualterus Lincolniensis episcopus, die Dominica qua cantatur "Gaudete in Domino," sua sollempniter collocatur in sede.

Ricardus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus diem clausit extremum apud Hallinges villam Rofensis episcopi.

Gualterus Lincolniensis episcopus electus est in archiepiscopum Rothomagensem.

Circa dies istos dux Saxonum venit in Angliam cum familia sua.

Baldewinus Wigornensis episcopus electus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem.

Saladinus scripsit domino papæ.

Sisidin rex Egypti scripsit domino papæ.

Eraclius patriarcha Jerosolimitanus venit in Angliam.

Baldewinus rex Jerosolimitanus scripsit patriarchæ Jerosolimitano.

Filia regis Portugalensis nupsit Philippo Flandrensium comiti.

Macemut, inter reges Affricanos maximus, obsedit Sanctum Yreneum.

Apud Veronam, domino papa præsente, Ravennas patriarcha perditionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ cunctis exposuit.

Lucius papa scripsit regi Anglorum pro subventione terræ Jerosolimitanæ.

Philippus Coloniensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam, et coronata civitate sollempni processione receptus est in ecclesia Sancti Pauli.

Fredericus imperator Henrico filio suo primogenito regni diadema fecit imponi prope Maguntiam.

---

[1] *consecratus . . . Andegavis*] om. B. C.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Ordo militum rubeum ensem habentium pro signo confirmatus[1] est.

A.D. 1185. MCLXXXV. Eraclius patriarcha et Rogerus magister domus Hospitalis venerunt in Angliam.

Walterus Rothomagensis electus, cum per annum et eo amplius sedisset in ecclesia Lincolniensi, Rothomagi receptus est.

Regi Anglorum datum est consilium ad salutem animæ suæ, sicut sui dicebant, tutius præesse regno suo quam peregre proficisci.

Reges Francorum et Anglorum per triduum fecerunt moram apud Vallem Rodoli.

Johannes filius regis, cingulo militari donatus apud Windlesores, transiit in Hyberniam.

In Hispania est fluvius Hiberus a quo dicti sunt Hybernienses.[2]

Willelmus rex Scottorum factus est comes Huntendunæ.

Hibernienses transeuntes in Scotiam vocati sunt Scoti.[3]

Dominus papa confirmavit electionem Baldewini Cantuariensis electi.

Monachi Sanctæ Trinitatis et Sancti Augustini se mutuis processionibus visitarunt in Rogationibus.

Herebertus oriundus in Midelsexia, transitum faciens in Sicilia, Consensanus creatus est archiepiscopus, et postmodum obrutus a terræ motu.

Willelmus rex Siculus imperium infestavit Constantinopolitanum, transitum habens per Duratium.

Gilebertus Lexoviensis archidiaconus creatus est episcopus Rofensis.

Andronicus imperator interfectus est.

Cursac Angeli creatus est imperator.

Henricus dux Saxonum rediit in Saxoniam patrimonio contentus.

Pax reformata est inter regem Francorum et comitem Flandrensem apud Albemarle.

Humbertus Mediolanensis archiepiscopus creatus est papa, vocatus Urbanus tertius.

A.D. 1186. MCLXXXVI. Henricus rex Theutonicus duxit uxorem filiam Rogeri primi Siculi regis.

Viennensis archiepiscopus coronavit Fredericum; Aquileiensis patriarcha filium ejus.

Urbanus papa scripsit episcopis Angliæ.

---

[1] *confirmatus*] confirmatum, A.B.

[2] *In Hispania*] See above, p. 10, note.

[3] *Hibernienses*] See above, p. 10.

Reges Francorum et Anglorum convenerunt prope Gisortium. Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Rex Anglorum munitiones Aquitanniæ quibus vellet commisit.

Willelmus de Ver consecratus est Herefordensis episcopus.

Gaufridus dux Britanniæ, filius regis Anglorum, sepultus est Parisius in ecclesia majore.

Margarita soror regis Francorum nupsit Belæ regi Hungariæ.

Hugo Gratianopolitanus genere consecratus est episcopus Lincolniæ.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam. ✠

Radulfus de Vallibus interfectus est a Henrico de Ver.

Guido Jopensis comes consecratus est rex Jerosolimorum.

MCLXXXVII. Baldewinus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis sollempni processione receptus est in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ, die Dominica qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem." A.D. 1187.

Constantia comitissa Britanniæ die Paschæ peperit filium quem vocavit Arturum.

Crux Domini capta est prope Tyberiadem.

Margarita regina Francorum peperit filium quem vocavit Ludovicum.

Albertus cancellarius Romanus creatus est papa, vocatus Gregorius octavus.

Ricardus comes Pictavorum primus inter proceres crucem suscepit.

MCLXXXVIII. Reges Francorum et Anglorum crucem suceperunt. A.D. 1188.

Ricardus Bare Lexoviensis archidiaconus directus est ab Anglorum rege nuntius imperatoribus Romano et Constantinopolitano et regi Hungariæ.

Gaufridus de Liziniaco quendam familiarissimum Ricardi comitis interfecit.

Reddita est Jerusalem Saladino.

Boamundus comes Tripolitanus amens factus est et expiravit.

Fredericus imperator litteras direxit Saladino.

Inter reges Francorum et Anglorum habitum est colloquium prope Bonmulins.

Ricardus Wintoniensis episcopus diem clausit extremum.

MCLXXXIX. Mandato regis Radulfus de Diceto decanus Lundoniæ transfretavit. A.D. 1189.

Fredericus imperator apud Reinesburg[1] iter peregrinationis arripuit.

---

[1] *Reinesburg*] Reineburg, B.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Henricus rex Anglorum diem clausit extremum apud Chinun; sepultus est apud Fontem Ebraldi.

Civitas quæ Silvia vocatur a Christianis in Hispania subjugatur.

Ricardus comes Pictavorum, quia contra patrem suum arma moverat, absolutus est ab archiepiscopis tam Cantuariensi quam Rothomagensi apud Sagium; qui veniens apud Rothomagum a Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo ducatus Normanniæ potestatem accepit per ensem et vexillum. ✠

Transition to the history of Richard.

A patre transeamus ad filium, quem adversa ne frangerent prospera sæpius evexerunt. Ricardus igitur rex Anglorum, ad expiandas atroces injurias quas in patrem commiserat, dum tenderet Jerusalem expertus est multociens in terra labores, in mari pericula. Sed in itinere ne deficeret aurum, a Siculis, a Cypriis et Agarenis, in conflictibus singulis reportavit triumphum. Ut autem rediret ad cor et medelam suis excessibus collatam sentiret, a peregrinatione revertens in carcerem est retrusus, ad redemptionem compulsus est, status interversionem incurrit. In Angliam rediens præter spem suorum fidelium in favore magno tam cleri quam populi diu desideratus advenit. Regno suo per Dei gratiam in brevi pacificato, transiit in Normanniam, et intra paucos dies multos ex suis qui, dum in vinculis teneretur, ad suos hostes transfugerant potenter edomuit, ut a Vernolio quousque dirigatur iter ad Crucem Karoli nullus ei rebellis existat.

Ad coronationem Ricardi regis Anglorum convenerunt quatuor archiepiscopi. Convenit etiam episcoporum multitudo.

Ricardus rex Anglorum Cisterciensibus contulit annuos redditus centum marcarum ad procurandum capitulum.

Habitus est generalis conventus apud Pipewelle pro consilio vacantium ecclesiarum.[1]

Decanus et canonici Lundoniæ lx. marcas, expensarum nomine quas fecerant, receperunt a fisco.

Treverensis archiepiscopus sepultus est apud Sanctum Andream Norhamtonæ.

Obsederunt Aconem Christiani in fine Augusti.

Wintoniensis et Saresbiriensis electi consecrati sunt in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ.

Convenit quod capella de Haketuna[2] per unum sacerdotem amministretur.

Willelmus rex Scottorum regi Anglorum numeravit decem milia marcarum.

---

[1] *Habitus . . . ecclesiarum*] This occurs in D. after the word suspensus est, below, p. 281, l. 11.

[2] *Haketuna*] Hachetuna, B.

Tancredus factus est rex Siciliæ.

MXC. Ricardus Lundoniensis et Willelmus Elyensis electi consecrati sunt apud Lameiam.[1]

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

A.D. 1190.

Baldewinus archiepiscopus, peregre profecturus, vices suas Lundoniensi commisit episcopo.

A peregrinantibus interfecti sunt Judæi.

Apud Aconem sunt tria cimiteria.

Margarita regina Francorum laborans in partu mortua est.

Episcopi facti sunt comites, facti sunt vicecomites.

Hugo Coventrensis episcopus, quia vicecomitatum susceperat, suspensus est.

Clemens papa confirmavit electionem Gaufridi Eboracensis electi.

Quomodo divisus est exercitus apud Aconem; qui duces extra vel intus.

Anserius de Monte Regali moriens detexit proditionem quam fecit tam ipse quam Franci.

Willelmus Elyensis episcopus intra triduum constitutus est Romæ domini papæ legatus, et apud Baionam Angliæ justiciarius.

Rex Francorum iter suum direxit versus Januensem urbem, rex Anglorum versus Marsiliam.

Willelmus Angliæ legatus convocavit episcopos apud Glavornam.

Fredericus imperator submersus est in fluvio qui vocatur Safet.

Ricardus rex Anglorum nuntios domini papæ suscepit in portu Romano.

Baldewinus archiepiscopus, Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus, et Rannulfus quondam Angliæ justiciarius, a sinistra reliquerunt Siciliam, applicuerunt apud Tyrum, invenientes Aconem obsessam.

Tres machinæ, quas Christiani construxerant ad eversionem Acon, ab igne qui Græcus dicitur a Saracenis injecto combustæ sunt. Et sic civitas Acon tunc liberata fuit.

Christiani, panis inedia laborantes, insultum fecerunt in Saracenis die festo Sancti Jacobi.

Reges Francorum et Anglorum appulsi sunt apud Messanam.

Habitum est regionale concilium apud Westmustier. Præsedit Willelmus apostolicæ sedis legatus, Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus sedit ad dexteram.

Tancredus rex Siculus numeravit regi Ricardo primum unciarum auri vigesies mille, secundo totidem uncias.

---

[1] *Lameiam*] Lameiham, B.

Abstract of the Ymagines Historiarum.

Conradus marchio de Monte Ferario Sibillam filiam Amaurici regis, a viro disjunctam, accepit uxorem.

Alienor regina, cum per quatuor dies moram fecisset cum Ricardo rege filio suo, rediit in Angliam,

Inter regnum et sacerdotium orta quæstione in Normannia, consensu partium finis qualisqualis appositus est.

Baldewinus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, agens in extremis, Hubertum Saresbiriensem episcopum testamenti sui constituit executorem.

A.D. 1191. MCXCI. Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus scripsit Lundoniensi episcopo.

Jacinctus, inter diaconos primus, creatus est papa, vocatus Celestinus papa tertius.

Celestinus consecravit Henricum imperatorem.

Civitas Thusculanum a Romanis est diruta.

Robertus, filius senescalli Normanniæ, creatus est Wigornensis episcopus.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, a Sicilia rediens in Angliam, mandato regis inter justiciarios factus est primus. ✠

Reges Francorum et Anglorum navem ascenderunt apud Messanam visitaturi Jerusalem.

Rex Anglorum apud Rodos applicuit, et postmodum apud Cyprum, et Cursac qui se vocabat imperatorem Cypri subjugavit.

Rex Francorum applicuit apud Acon.

Cancellarius interdixit archiepiscopo Rothomagensi ne tenderet Cantuariam. ✠

Rex Anglorum multas naves habens in comitatu applicuit apud Acon.

Gaufridus Eboracensis electus Thuronis consecratus est, qui rediens in Angliam captus est apud Doveram.

Habitum est colloquium apud pontem de Lode. Willelmus Elyensis episcopus, veritus a facie comitis Johannis, locum sibi causabatur suspectum, et exterritus versus Lundoniam iter direxit fugiendo. Rogerus de Planes interfectus est.

Insertum est capitulum de Arvando.

A.D. 1192. MCXCII. Reginaldus Bathoniensis episcopus, nominatus a monachis Cantuariensibus Cantuariensis electus, diem clausit extremum.

Rex Francorum rediens Jerosolimis receptus est Parisius.

Marchio confossus est ab Arsacidis.

Henricus Campaniæ comes Marchionis relictam dux t uxorem.

Caterva Saracenorum capta est.

Rex Anglorum Jopen, quem ceperant Saraceni, recuperavit.

Inter Christianos et Saracenos datæ sunt induciæ. Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Savaricus electus est in episcopum Bathoniensem.

Regem Anglorum dux Austriæ comprehendit apud Wenam.

MCXCIII. Johannes comes Moritonii munitiones multas firmavit in Anglia. A.D. 1193.

Dux Austriæ vendidit regem Anglorum imperatori.

Rex Anglorum retrusus est in loco qui dicitur Trivallis.

Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus electus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem.

Redemptio regis excrevit ad centum milia librarum argenti.

Hugo Cestrensis episcopus spoliatus est apud Doveram.

Celebratum est divortium inter regem Francorum et reginam.

Hubertus Cantuariensis electus sua sollempniter collocatur in sede.

MCXCIIII. Walterus Rothomagensis transfretavit in Alemanniam. A.D. 1194.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus scripsit Radulfo decano Lundoniæ.

Rex solutus est a carcere.

Pactiones initæ sunt plures inter imperatorem et regem.

Confligentibus duce Lovaniæ et comite Hainocense, duci cessit victoria.

De regibus Siciliæ.

Rex Anglorum sollemni processione receptus est Coloniæ.

Rex veniens in Angliam receptus est Lundoniæ coronata civitate.

In octavis Paschæ regni diadema suscepit Wintoniæ, et veniens in Normanniam Vernolium invenit obsessum.

Herebertus Cantuariensis archidiaconus electus est in episcopum Saresbiriensem.

Rex Francorum subvertit castellum quod vocatur Funteines.

Andegavenses castellum quod vocatur Mons Mirabilis subverterunt.

Filius regis Navaræ venit in auxilium regi Anglorum.

Rex Francorum prope Vindocinum veniens recessit exterritus.

Rex Anglorum cepit Taileburg et totam terram comitis Engolismensis.

Absolutus est dux Austriæ, præstito juramento quod stabit mandato domini papæ.

Treugæ datæ sunt inter reges.[1]

Johannes Lugdunensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam.

A rege Francorum Philippo directi sunt nuncii quatuor ad Anglorum regem Ricardum.

---

[1] *reges*] Here MS. C. finishes the *capitula*.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Piscis quidam vocatus vulgo crassus piscis appulsus est apud Edulvesnase.

"Ricardus rex Anglorum fidelibus suis salutem. Noveritis "compositionem factam inter dominum Rothomagensem "archiepiscopum et cives Rothomagi." ✠

Ricardus rex Anglorum decano et canonicis Turonensibus.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniæ. ✠

Philippus rex Francorum bailivis suis salutem.

Rogerus de genere Normannorum primus in Sicilia rex creatus est.

A.D. 1195. MCXCV. Die festo Sancti Stephani dux Austriæ cecidit equo.

Henricus imperator et rex Siciliæ Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo. ✠

Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus legatus creatus est.

Celestinus episcopus servus servorum Dei.

Celestinus episcopus Eboracensi archiepiscopo.

Willelmus Elyensis episcopus Radulfo de Diceto decano Lundoniæ.

Ricardus rex Anglorum Ricardo Lundoniensi episcopo.

Celestinus papa Senonensi archiepiscopo, "Cum in regno."[1]

Celestinus papa, servus servorum Dei, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, "Misericors et miserator."[2]

A.D. 1196. MCXCVI. Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Experti sæpius."[3] ✠

Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo suus ille quondam. ✠

Philippus rex Francorum tres litteras scripsit archiepiscopo Rothomagensi. ✠

Ricardus rex Angliæ episcopo Ebroicensi, "Significamus "vobis."

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Licet nobis." ✠

Item Walterus archiepiscopus Rothomagensis Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Vobis amice."[4] ✠

Circa dies istos aquarum inundatio.

Circa dies istos iniquitatem et contradictionem.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Aggredientibus."[5] ✠

Johannes decanus Rothomagensis electus in episcopum.

---

[1] *Celestinus . . . regno*] om. D. Here there is a change of hand in MS. B.

[2] *Celestinus . . miserator*] om. D.

[3] *Walterus . . . sæpius*] om. D.

[4] *Item . . . amice*] om. D.

[5] *Walterus . . . aggredientibus*] om. D.; iter, ins. B.

Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus decano et capitulo Eboracensi.[1] Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Omnes ecclesiæ conventuales.[2]

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Discretioni vestræ." ✠

M^b^C^o^XC^o^VII^o. De cantore Lincolniensi Waltero.[3] A.D. 1197.

Willelmus Elyensis episcopus dum Romam tenderet.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariam veniens.[3]

Circa dies istos episcopo Cameracensi Johanne defuncto, tres sunt electi, etc.

Celestinus papa Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, "Cum "de agro Domini."

Robertus prior Helyensis electus est abbas ecclesiæ sanctæ Dei genitricis apud Eboracum.

Rex Anglorum Ricardus castellum Sancti Valerici succendit.

Ymbrium infusio triduana per Angliam.

Philippus Dunelmensis electus consecratus est Romæ.

Marchadeus episcopum Belvacensem et Willelmum de Merlou cepit in bello.

"Notum sit universis hoc scriptum visuris quod hoc est "fœdus et conventio inter Ricardum regem Angliæ et Balde- "winum comitem Flandriæ."

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Benedictus Dominus, etc."[3]

Ricardus rex Anglorum archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, prioribus et ceteris, "Cum sacrosancta ecclesia."[3]

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lundoniensi, "Sicut testantur sacra eloquia."[3]

Ab ea die qua Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus mandato regis transfretaturus, etc.

[MCXCVIII.] Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus expulit clericos a Coventreia et induxit monachos.[3] A.D. 1198.

Ab ea die qua Willelmus Helyensis episcopus prope Pictavim in abbatia de Pinu sepultus est.

Celestino papa tertio defuncto, Lotharius diaconus cardinalis papa creatus est.

Innocentius papa tertius Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, "Cum emergentium litigia quæstionum, etc."

Sanguis pluit undatim apud Andeleium.

Galfridus Cestrensis electus Cantuariæ consecratus est.

---

[1] *Hubertus . . . . Eboracensi*] om. D.

[2] *Omnes . . conventuales*] om. D.

[3] Om. D. From this point MS. B. expands into a new chronicle bearing no relation to the Imagines.

Abstract of the Imagines Historiarum.

Othoni nepoti regis Anglorum Ricardi redditum est Aquisgranum; vi^{to}. idus Julii consecratus est in regem.

In Marchia principales defensivæ locorum prope munitionem illam quæ vocatur castellum Matildis, etc.

Comes Flandriæ venit ante villam Sancti Audomari, etc.[1]

Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus tertius defunctus est.

Villa Sancti Audomari reddita fuit comiti Flandriæ.

Ricardus rex Anglorum intravit terram regis Francorum cum exercitu, etc.[2]

Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus decano et capitulo Sancti Pauli Lundoniensis, "Quia vos et ecclesiam vestram "sincere diligimus."

Ricardus rex Anglorum decano et capitulo Sancti Pauli Lundoniensis, "Sciatis quod bonum animum habemus, etc."

Capella Sancti Thomæ martyris diruitur apud Lameheyam.[3]

---

[1] Om. D.

[2] Here the list of capitula in D. ends; as also Twysden.

[3] Here are inserted in MS. A. the following documents, in a hand of the reign of Edward I. The letters contained in the royal missive are printed from the originals in the Fœdera, i. 755; the originals being in the Treasury of Receipt of the Exchequer:—

"Edwardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dominus Hiberniæ et dux Aqui-"taniæ, dilectis sibi in Christo decano et capitulo Sancti Pauli Lundoni-"ensis salutem. Mittimus vobis sub sigillo scaccarii nostri præsentibus "appenso transcripta quarundam litterarum quæ in thesauraria nostra "resident, tenorem qui sequitur continentes;

"A touz qui ceste lettre verrount ou orrount, Florenz counte de Hoillande, Robert de Brus seignur du Val Danaunt, Johan Baillol "seignur de Gaweye, Johan de Hastinges seignur de Bergeveny, Johan "Comyn seignur de Badenoughe, Patrike de Dumbar counte de la "Marche, Johan de Vesci pur son pere, Nichol de Soules, e Willame "de Ros, saluz en Dieu. Come nous entendoms aver dreit en reaume "Descoce, e cel dreit mustrer, chalenger, e averrer, devaunt celui qui "plus de poer e jurisdiccion e reson eust de trier nostre dreit, en "le noble prince sire Edward par la grace de Dieu rey Dengleterre "nous eit enfourmes par bones e suffisauntes resons, que a lui apent e "aver dreit de la soverevne seignorie du dit reaume Descoce e la "conisaunce de oir, trier, e terminer nostre dreit, nous de nostre propre "volente saunz nule manere de force ou destresce voloms, otrioms e "grantoms de receivre dreit devaunt lui, come soverein seignur de la "terre; e voloms ja le meins e prometoms que nous averoms e tendroms "ferm e estable son fet, e que celui emportera le reaume a qui "dreit le durra devaunt lui. En tesmoigne de ceste chose, nous avoms "mis nos seals a cest escrit. Fet e done a Norham le Mardi prochein "apres la Ascension, lan de grace MCC. nonaunte premerein.

"A touz iceaus qui ceste presente lettre verrunt ou orrunt, Florenz "counte de Hoillande, Robert de Brus seignur du Val Danaunt, Johan "Baillol seignur de Galeweye, Johan de Hastinges seignur de Berge-"veny, Johan Comyn seignur de Badenoughe, Patrike de Dumbar counte "de la Marche, Johan de Vesci pur son pere, Nichol de Soules, e Wil-"lame de Ros, saluz en Dieu. Come nous eom otrie e graunte de "nostre bone volente e commun assent, saunz nule destresse, a noble "prince Edward par la grace de Dieu rey Dengleterre, qil come sove-"rein seignur de la terre Descoce puisse oir, trier, e terminer nos "chalenges e nos demaundes que nous entendoms moustrer e averrer "pur nostre dreit, e reaume Descoce e dreit receivre devaunt lui, come "soverein seignur de la terre, prometaunz ja le meins que son fet "averoms ferm e estable, e qil emportera le reaume a qui dreit le "durra devaunt lui; mes pur coe que levaunt dit rey Dengleterre ne "poet teu manere de conisaunce fere ne acomplir saunz jogement, ne "jogement ne deit estre saunz execucion, ne execucion ne poet il fere "duement saunz la possession e seisine de mesme la tere e des chateaus, "nous voloms, otrioms e grauntoms, qil come soverein seignur a par "fere les choses avaunt dites, eit la seisine de la terre e des chateaus "Descoce taunt qe dreit seit fet e parfurni as demaundauns en teu "manere qe avaunt coe qil eit la seisine avaunt dite, face bone seurte "e suffisaunte as demaundaunz e as gardeins e a la commune du reaume "Descoce, a fere la reversion de mesme le reaume e des chateaus ove "tutte la reaute, dignete, seignorie, fraunchises, custumes, dreitures, leys, "usages, e possessions, e tuttes maners de apurtenaunce en mesme le "estat qil estoient quant la seisine lui fu baille e livree a celui qui le "dreit emportera par jogement de la reaute, sauve au rey Dengleterre "le homage de celui qui serra rey, issint qe la reversion seit fete dedens "les deus moins apres le jour qe le dreit serra trie e aferme. E que "des issues de mesme la terre en le meen tens resceues seent sauve-"ment mis en depos e bien gardez, par la main le chaumberlein Des-"coce qore est, e de celui qui serra assigne a lui de part le rey Deng-"leterre e desouus leur seals, sauve renable sustenaunce de la terre e "des chateaus e des ministres du reaume. En tesmoignes de ceste "choses avaunt dites, nous avoms mis nos seals a cest ecrit. Fet e "done a Norham le Mekerdi prechein apres la Ascension, l'an de grace "MCC. nonaunte premereyn.

"Unde vobis mandamus quod eadem faciatis in cronicis vestris ad "perpetuam rei gestæ memoriam annotari. Teste magistro Willelmo de "Marchia, thesaurario nostro, apud Westmonasterium, nono die Julii, "anno regni nostri decimo nono."

YMAGINES HISTORIARUM.

YMAGINES HISTORIARUM.

INCIPIUNT YMAGINES HISTORIARUM QUAS RADULFUS DE DICETO, DECANUS LUNDONIÆ, SUB EA QUA POTUIT BREVITATE REDEGIT IN ORDINEM.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1148.

A.D. 1148. Henry of Anjou knighted at Carlisle (A.D. 1149).

MCXLVIII.[1] Henricus Gaufridi Plantegenest comitis Andegavorum primogenitus cingulo militari donatus est a rege Scotorum David in festo Pentecostes apud Karluil.

Ludovicus rex Francorum et regina Alienor rediere Jerusalem.

A.D. 1149.

MCXLIX. Hyemps maxima.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1149.

Geoffrey of Anjou knighted.

Theobaldus comes Blesensis donavit cingulo militari Gaufridum filium Gaufridi Plantegenest comitis Andegavorum.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1150.

A.D. 1150. Henry becomes duke of Normandy and does homage (A.D. 1151).

MCL. Everso Monasteriolo,[2] quod tribus annis obsessum fuerat, Gaufridus Plantegenest reddidit ducatum Normanniæ Henrico filio suo.

Ludovicus rex Francorum accepit homagium Henrici filii Gaufridi Plantegenest de ducatu Normanniæ et comitatu Andegaviæ.



Description of the city of Angers.

Civitas igitur Andegavensium antiquorum industria montis in edito collocata consistit, in mœnibus vetustissimis gloriam fundatorum recensens; in quadris lapidibus modernorum parcitatem accusans; in tenaciori cemento sabuli condiendi peritiam penitus deperisse prætendens. Pars urbis hominum manu facta munitior

---

[1] The references to authorities, the extracts from which are printed in smaller type, are from this point given in the margin. Unfortunately our author begins with a miscalculation of date; Henry was knighted at Whitsuntide 1149: see Gervase, and Henry of Huntingdon, under that year.

[2] *Monasteriolo*] See above, p. 267, note. The date should be 1151.

A.D. 1150. Description of Angers.

vergit ad nothum; natura loci pars inexpugnabilis respicit ad occasum; quaque latus occidentale vicinatur australi, domus surgit spaciosissima, digna satis in nomen transire palatii, si thalami regio sumptu, regia disciplina, regio moderamine recenter extructi non excrescerent in immensum, hinc ad aquas præterfluas, hinc ad montana vitibus consecrata prospectum habentes. Rursus ut civitas multo capacior milia hominum concurrentia sub una confœderatione concluderet, montem positum in vicino populis ad inhabitandum exposuit. Quorum si fortunam attendimus, felicius incolunt suburbana quam urbem. Quod si devotionem quam erga Deum, erga sacrosanctam ecclesiam ea gens exhibuit, ab antiquo revolvatur attentius, sanctorum memoriæ plurimorum, ibidem in Christo quiescentium, celebres illis habentur in locis. Nec adeo facile quoquam repperies tot domos religiosas et piis deputatas collegiis, et principum liberalitate ditatas, et in regularibus disciplinis informatas attente. Rursus ut opportunitatem loci commoditas aquarum illustret, si de quantula Ligeris remotione queraris, inter medium montium quos memoravimus nobilis fluvius influit Meduana. Qui cum intumuerit instar maris in hyeme, sub æstate rarescit, arenosis angustatus in alveis. Ut autem liberum civibus commeatum offerret, terra, lignis, lapidibus comportatis construi super aquas in habitaculis ergasteria toleravit, sic ex opposito sibi respondentia, sic fere sub æqua contignatione disposita, quod pontem medium ex maxima parte ligneum quasi solidam redigant in plateam, transeuntibus quidem assidue patefactam, sed Phœbo non perviam. In qua quid usus desideret, quid luxus deposcat, abunde repperiet transitus per eam compendiosus.[1]

Famous for its saints,

and religious houses.

The Loire and the Mayenne.

The bridge.

[1] *Civitas . . . compendiosus*] om. D. This account of Angers may or may not be the composition of Ralph de Diceto. It appears, however, among the extracts from his work printed in the Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 336–338, and is not derived from the Gesta Consulum.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1150. Dum Gaufridus Plantegenest comes Andegavorum rediret Parisius a curia regis Francorum, concessit in fata apud Castrum Lidii, sepultus est autem Cenomannis in ecclesia Sancti Juliani. A.D. 1150. Death of count Geoffrey (A.D. 1151).

R. de Monte, A.D. 1151. MCLI. Fredericus nepos Conradi dicti Romani imperatoris fit rex Teutonicus. A.D. 1151. Frederick I. emperor.

Celebratum est divortium inter regem Francorum et reginam Alienor. Divorce of Lewis, and marriage of Eleanor and Henry (A.D. 1152).

Henricus dux Normannorum et comes Andegavorum duxit Alienor relictam regis Francorum, et sic factus est dux Aquitanorum.

Igitur[1] Aquitania, rerum affluens opulentiis multiplicibus, sic orbis occidui partes distinctas antiquitus antecellit, ut inter Galliarum provincias felicior et fecundior tradatur ab hystoriographis. Description of Aquitaine.

JULIUS CÆSAR.

Quæ suos licet agros cultui, suas etiam vites propagationi, sua denique nemorosa venatui noverit optime respondere, nichilominus appellationis originem mutuatur ab aquis, id solum sorte supputans inter delicias numerandum, quod procreat aqua salubrior vel gurgiti remittendum, vel levandum in aera. Garumnæ siquidem decurramus ad ortum, æquoreas properantem ad undas, decurramus etiam ad montes Pyreneos; quicquid itaque fuerit inventum interjacens a fluminibus traxit vocabulum, ab aquarum commoditatibus derivatum. Et cum illis in partibus lubricum linguæ passim omnibus repromittat impunitatem, an sit magis So called from its waters.

HAMONIUS, LIB. III.

Aquitania dicitur eo quod præ cæteris Galliæ provinciis fontibus et torrentibus scaturiat.[2] Quæ a Garumna flumine ad Pyreneos montes extenditur, et obliquo Ligeris cursu qui eam ex parte terminat, pene in orbem cingitur.

---

[1] *Igitur . . . . apponitur*] This is probably the work of the same author as the description of Angers, whether Ralph de Diceto or not: it is not contained in the selection printed in the Chroniques d'Anjou.

[2] *Aquitania . . scaturiat*] Hugo Floriac. (ed. Rottendorff, p. 91). The latter part of the sentence is slightly altered from Cæsar de Bell. Gall. i. 1; Isidore, Origines, lib. xiv. c. 4.

A.D. 1151. Description of Aquitaine and its inhabitants. in fide stabilis an in sermone labilis, morem gentis ignorans poterit ignorare. Quæ cum ad superbiam hostium edomandam instanter institerit, et post belli sudores in bona quiete perstiterit, ilico tota defluit in voluptatem; sic palato deserviens ut in saporibus distinguendis, conficiendis et discernendis privilegio gratiæ singularis effulgeat, sic linguæ satisfaciens, ut in salibus condiendis licet mordacibus plurimum habeat civilitatis annexum. Their cookery of beef. Itaque Pictavienses in vulgarium esu carnium bovinam avidius amplectuntur. Cum vero piper et allium mixtim in mortarium detruduntur, ad condimentum utriusque caro recens nunc succum exigit pomorum silvestrium, nunc a viminibus pampino coætaneis jus deposcit extortum, nunc uvarum liquorem desiderat primitivarum. Cum dies venerit indulgentior, campestria nec fastidiunt, nec nimis appetunt affectuose. How they cook ducks. Sed anathem vel laqueolo comprehensam vel obvolutam reticulo devote requirunt; quam ad ignem lignorum viridium appositam studiose satis tractant delitiose. The sturgeon and lamprey. Laxatis retibus piscium in capturam si lautiora casus obtulerit, quod quidem raro non evenit, nunc extrahitur sturgio regium reservandus in cibum, nunc flumini latenter immersas muræna labitur in insidias. Quæ quamvis alias gustum sui suspectissimum reddat, illis tamen in locis absque delectu personarum et potus hinc ditioribus hinc paupertinis indifferenter mensis apponitur.[2]

MARCIANUS COCUS.

Tota quidem ponatur anas, sed pectore tantum
Et cervice valet, cætera redde coco.[1]

Siege of Neufmarché. Ludovicus rex Francorum, Eustachius filius regis Stephani, Henricus comes Campaniensis, Robertus comes Perticensis, in Normannia castellum Novi Mercati, cum suis auxiliariis obsidentes, dum Henrici ducis adventum ut obsessis succurreret intellexissent, interventu religiosorum datis R de Monte, A.D. 1151.

[1] Inserted in A. and B. in marg. Martialis, B.: the epigram is from Martial, lib. xiii. ep. 52.

[2] *apponitur*] Obiit Radulphus abbas xvii. ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, ins. C.

induciis infecto negotio recesserunt. Dux vero fratrem suum Gaufridum persequens in Andegaviam, ipsum ad petendas coegit inducias.[1] A.D. 1151. Henry overcomes his brother Geoffrey.

Johannes Papiro cardinalis, legatione fungens in Hyberniam, quatuor ibi constituit archiepiscopos, qui dum transitum habuisset per Angliam fidelitatem juravit regi Stephano. Four archbishoprics made in Ireland.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1151. Gaufridus Artur fit episcopus Sancti Asaph.[2]

Regina Matildis, regis Stephani uxor, sepelitur apud Faveresham.[3] Queen Matilda dies.

Pullulante pernitiosa doctrina Henrici hæretici, maxime in Guasconia, suscitavit Dominus spiritum puellæ junioris in illa provincia, ad eandem hæresim confutandam. Per triduum namque in unaquaque septimana jacebat absque voce, sensu, etiam absque flatu, et rediens postmodum ad se, dicebat beatam Mariam orare pro populo Christiano, et beatissimum Petrum docuisse se orthodoxam fidem. Exinde de fide nostra sapienter et catholice disserebat, et præcipue hæresim Henrici convincens, plurimos ab eo seductos ad sinum sanctæ matris ecclesiæ revocabat. A heresy in Gascony refuted by an inspired maiden.

MCLII.[4] Henricus dux Normannorum intravit Angliam in manu valida infra octabas Epiphaniæ, castellum de Malmesburie obsedit, et milites intus obsessos ad deditionem coegit. A.D. 1152. Henry of Anjou comes to England (A.D. 1153).

Ricardus de Belmeis archidiaconus de Midelsexe Lundoniensis electus antistes, consecratus est Cantuariæ a Theobaldo archiepiscopo, omnibus fere episcopis Angliæ præsentibus. Henricus vero Wintoniensis episcopus, dum esset absens, archiepiscopo scripsit in hæc verba; Consecration of Richard, bishop of London (A.D. 1152).

---

[1] *inducias*] Robertus de Gorram abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani xviii., ins. C.

[2] Geoffrey was consecrated Feb. 24, 1152; our author is still a year behind; but he seems to be following the faulty computation of Robert de Monte; the same remark applies to the following paragraph.

[3] *Faveresham*] Fapheresham, B.

[4] MCLII.] The events of this year are confused; Henry's expedition to England took place in January 1153; David of Scotland died May 24, 1153; Eustace in the autumn of the same year; Anastasius became pope July 9, 1153; and S. Bernard died Aug. 20, 1153. On the other hand the consecration of Richard de Belmeis is rightly placed; it took place Sept. 28, 1152; see Gervase, Chron. c. 1370.

A.D. 1152. Assent of Henry of Winchester to the consecration.

"Temporis brevitas, improvisa vocatio, transitus suspecti, "inproba prædonum molestia, medicamenti sollicitudo adhi- "bita, excusabiles paternitati vestræ nos reddunt. Electioni "vero factæ et consecrationi faciendæ benignum ex affectu "præbemus assensum. Quoniam quidem persona et moribus "pollet, et industria viget et scientia floret, credimus quod in "domo Dei plantata, adjutrice divinitate, florebit et faciet "fructum."

Death of David and Eustace (A.D. 1153).

David regi Scotorum successit Melcomus nepos ejus. R. de Monte, A.D. 1152.

Eustachius filius regis Stephani sepelitur apud Faveresham.

Anastasius papa.

Bernardus Clarevallensis abbas migravit ad Dominum.

A.D. 1153. Birth of William son of Henry of Anjou.

MCLIII.[1] Alienor duci Normanniæ peperit Willelmum.[2]

Terms of pacification between Stephen and Henry.

[3] Evenit quod minime credebatur, dissensio regni non dirimetur in gladio. Partibus evocatis hinc et inde transactio celebrata est. Diligentia intervenit archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, et auctoritas plurimum operata est. Wintoniensis episcopi profuit sollicitudo. Coepiscoporum assensus non defuit, defuit procerum et consilium et consensus; et ut nostri majores videantur a legibus aliquid accepisse novi aliquid sumpserunt a legibus. Ducem siquidem Normannorum rex in filium arrogavit; ei et in eum jus suum transtulit et potestatem; sibi quoad vixerit regiæ dignitatis solam ymaginem reservavit. Et si propheticum illud attenderis, "jam se induit genitore,"[4] jam ducem arrogavit in filium. In participem regni et postmodum successorem universi ducem recipient. In rege ducem, in duce

---

[1] *MCLIII.*] The chronology now becomes sounder. William, the eldest son of Henry II., was born August 17, 1153; and the pacification described in the passage that follows took place, according to Robert de Monte, on the 6th of November. Our author has no doubt been hitherto misled by that writer, who also recovers the true computation in 1154.

[2] *Willelmum*] Henricus Eboracensis archiepiscopus obiit, ins. Twysden, from MSS. Henry Murdac died Oct. 14, 1153.

[3] This very curious passage, whoever may have written it, is partly worded from the prophecy of Merlin. Cf. M. Paris, ed. Luard, ii. 191.

[4] See Geoff. Mon. lib. vii. c. 3.

regem singuli venerabuntur. Et ut regem Stephanum nunc regem intelligas, antiqua regni privilegia restaurare proponit. Regalia passim a proceribus usurpata recipiet, munitiones suis fundatæ temporibus diruentur, quarum numerus usque ad undecies centum quindecim excrevit. Ut autem ad minora recurras, prædiis assignabit colonos, insularios ædificiis, nemoribus saltuarios, feris ditabit indagines, ovibus decorabit montana, pascua replebit armentis. Clerus nunc demum dominabitur, pacis tranquillitatem indicet; muneribus sordidis non gravabitur; ab extraordinariis vacationem habebit. Defensivæ locorum seu vicecomites locis statuentur statutis. Non in votum exercendæ cupiditatis abibunt. Non quemquam ex odio persequentur. Non gratificabuntur amicis; non indulgentiis crimina sullevabunt; suum cuique reservabunt ex integro. Metu pœnarum nonnullos afficient; præmiorum exhortatione plurimos excitabunt. Fures terrebuntur in furca: prædones sententia capitali plectentur. Milites caligati gladios suos in usum vomeris ligonisque convertent. A castris ad aratra, a tentoriis ad ergasteria Flandrensium plurimi revocabuntur, et quas nostratibus operas indixerunt dominis suis ex necessitate persolvent. Quid multis? ab excubiis fatigati a communi læticia respirabunt. Innocens et quieta rusticitas ocio relevabitur. Negotiatores commerciorum vicissitudo locupletabit. Forma publica percussa eadem in regno celebris erit ubique moneta.

A.D. 1153. Reforms agreed on by Stephen and Henry.

Privileges of the clergy.

Restoration of sheriffs.

Expulsion of Flemings.

Progress of commerce; and new coinage.

MCLIIII. Ludovicus rex Francorum duxit uxorem filiam Adelfunsi regis Hispaniæ; caput regni hujus regis civitas est Toletum. Quem quia principatur regulis Aragonum et Galiciæ, imperatorem Hispaniarum appellant.

A.D. 1154. Lewis VII. marries a Spanish princess.

Rogerus rex Siciliæ successorem reliquit Willelmum filium suum, qui duxit filiam Garsiæ regis Navarrorum.

Roger Wiscard dies.

[1] Willelmus quondam Eboracensis archiepiscopus, de-

[1] The following instances of deposition and restoration of bishops, promised above, p. 33, are taken from the Panormia of Ivo, Prologus, p. 5 (ed. 1647).

A.D. 1154. William archbishop of York restored.

Examples of the restoration of bishops who had been deprived.

positus ab Eugenio papa, restitutus est per Anastasium. Plures hoc modo restitutos fuisse declarant exempla. Johannes Crisostomus a duabus sinodis fuit judicatus, sed iterum fuit restitutus. Marcellus episcopus Anchiræ Galatiæ depositus fuit et iterum restitutus. Asclepius dijudicatus a sinodo ecclesiam suam postea recepit.

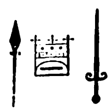
YVO CARNOTENSIS EPISCOPUS.

Lucianus episcopus Adrianopolites, dampnatus a papa Julio, ecclesiam suam recepit. Cirillus Jerosolimitanus episcopus depositus fuit, postea reconciliatus est. Policromium pontificem Syxtus papa dampnavit, et iterum ipse eum reconciliavit. Innocentius papa Fortunatum [1] dampnavit episcopum, sed ipse eum postea ecclesiæ suæ restituit. Misentium [2] episcopum, a Felice papa dampnatum, Gelasius papa ecclesiæ suæ restituit. Leontius, dum esset presbiter, depositus fuit, sed postea in Antiochena ecclesia patriarcha extitit. Gregorius IIII^tus^ papa Theodosium, quem Eugenius ejus antecessor presbiterii honore privaverat, ecclesiæ Signinæ consecravit episcopum. Ibas episcopus dijudicatus fuit, sed iterum ecclesiæ suæ restitutus est. Rothadum episcopum Suessionis ecclesiæ condempnatum, et Sophrenum Placentinum episcopum merito reprobatum, Nicholaus papa ambos reconciliavit. Johannes papa VIII^us^ Photinum [3] neophitum,[4] a papa Nicholao depositum, in patriarchatu Constantinopolitano restituit. Formosum Portuensem episcopum, quem Johannes papa VIII^us^ deposuerat, Marinus successor Johannis restituit. Arnulfum Remensem archiepiscopum Hugo Chapet rex Francorum degradari fecit, quem Marinus papa ecclesiæ Remensi restituit. Aimarum Viennensem archiepiscopum, quem Innocentius secundus in Pisano concilio deposuerat, Adrianus papa restituit.

Roger consecrated archbishop of York, Oct. 10.

Rogerus Cantuariensis archidiaconus die festo Sancti Paulini [5] in Eboracensem archiepiscopum consecratus est a Theobaldo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmonasterium; sed professionem non fecit.

Death of Stephen, Oct. 25.



Rex Stephanus viii°. kalendas Novembris obiit, et sepultus est apud Faveresham, quod monasterium ipse a fundamentis ædificaverat. Quo audito, dux Normannorum Henricus venit

---

[1] *Fortunatum*] Photinum, Ivo.
[2] *Misentium*] Misenum, Ivo.
[3] *Photinum*] Photium, Ivo.
[4] *neophitum*] neophotinum, B.
[5] *die festo Sancti Paulini*] electus, B.

Barbefluvium, et ibidem per unum mensem ventum expectavit, et vii°. idus Decembris in Angliam veniens, xiiii°. kalendas Januarii, die Dominica ante Nativitatem Domini, apud Westmonasterium ab omnibus electus et in regem unctus est a Theobaldo archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, præsente archiepiscopo Eboraci et aliis episcopis[1] Angliæ. Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus manum non apposuit.[2]

A.D. 1154. Henry II. lands Dec. 7, and is crowned Dec. 19.

Ailred. Riev., cc. 350, 351.

Pedigree of Henry II. traced to Noah.

Hic est Henricus secundus rex Anglorum cujus mater Matildis imperatrix, cujus mater Matildis regina Anglorum, cujus mater Margarita regina Scotorum, cujus pater Eadwardus, cujus pater Eadmundus Ferreum-latus, cujus pater Ædelred, cujus pater Eadgarus Pacificus, cujus pater Eadmundus, cujus pater Eadwardus senior, cujus pater nobilis Aluredus, qui fuit filius Eadwlfi regis, qui fuit filius regis Egbrichti, cujus pater Alcmundus, cujus pater Effa, cujus pater Eppa, cujus pater Ingels, cujus frater fuit famosissimus rex Ine nomine, quorum pater Keonred qui fuit filius Ceowald, qui fuit Cutha, qui fuit Cuthwinum, qui fuit Chelulin, qui fuit Cheuric, qui fuit Creoda, qui fuit Ceordic, qui fuit Elesa, qui fuit Ecla, qui fuit Genuis. Iste fuit caput gentis suæ, a quo et tota illa gens nomen accepit. Hujus pater fuit Wig, cujus pater fuit Frewine, cujus pater Freodegar, cujus pater Brand, cujus pater Bealdaes, cujus pater Woden, qui fuit Frederewald, qui fuit Freolof, qui fuit Frederewlf, qui fuit Fringoldwlf, qui fuit Geta, qui fuit Geatwa, qui fuit Beu, qui fuit Sceldwa, qui fuit Heremod, qui fuit Itermod, qui fuit Bathka, qui fuit Wala, qui fuit Beadwid, qui fuit Sem, cujus pater Noe.[3]

---

[1] *episcopis*] Robert de Monte gives the names of the bishops, Richard of London, Henry of Winchester, Robert of Lincoln, Walter of Chester, Gilbert of Hereford, Robert of Bath, John of Worcester, Robert of Exeter, Hilary of Chichester, Joccelin of Salisbury, Walter of Rochester, Nigel of Ely, William of Norwich, Hugh of Durham, and Adalulf of Carlisle. Besides these there were present Hugh archbishop of Rouen, the bishops Philip of Bayeux, Arnulf of Lisieux, Herbert of Avranches; and count Theoderic of Flanders.

[2] *Rex . . . apposuit*] See Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 338.

[3] This pedigree is from Ailred of Rievaux "de genealogia regum Anglorum," ap. Twysden, cc. 350, 351. It occurs at folio 18 of the Ripley MS. with the heading "Annus ab Incarnatione Domini millesimus centesimus quinquagesimus quartus effluebat quando Henricus Galfridi Plantegenest comitis Andegavorum primogeni-

A.D. 1154. Thomas archdeacon of Canterbury made chancellor.

Thomas Cantuariensis archidiaconus, Beverlaci præpositus, canonicus in diversis per Angliam ascriptus ecclesiis, regis factus est cancellarius.

Ludovicus rex Francorum orationis causa perrexit ad Sanctum Jacobum. R. de Monte, A.D. 1154.

Adrianus papa.

[1] "Adrianus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, karissimo in "Christo filio illustri Anglorum[2] regi, salutem et apostolicam "benedictionem.

Bull of pope Adrian VI. authorizing the conquest of Ireland.

"Laudabiliter satis et fructuose de glorioso nomine propa-"gando in terris et æternæ felicitatis præmio cumulando in "cœlis, tua magnificentia cogitat; dum ad dilatandos ecclesiæ "terminos, ad declarandam indoctis et rudibus populis Chris-"tianæ fidei veritatem, et vitiorum plantaria de agro Domi-"nico extirpanda, sicut catholicus princeps, intendis, et ad id "convenientius exequendum consilium apostolicæ sedis exigis "et favorem. In quo facto quanto altiori consilio et majori "discretione procedis, tanto in eo feliciorem progressum te "præstante Domino confidimus habiturum, eo quod ad bonum "exitum semper et finem soleant attingere[3] quæ de ardore "fidei et religionis amore principium acceperunt. Sane Hi-"berniam et omnes insulas quibus Sol justiciæ Christus illuxit, "et quæ documenta fidei Christianæ receperunt, ad jus beati "Petri et sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, quod tua etiam no-"bilitas recognoscit, non est dubium pertinere. Unde tanto "in eis libentius plantationem fidelem et germen Deo gratum "inserimus, quanto id a nobis interno examine districtius "prospicimus exigendum.

"Significasti siquidem nobis, fili in Christo karissime, te "Hiberniæ insulam, ad subdendum illum populum legibus, et "vitiorum plantaria inde extirpanda, velle intrare, et de sin-"gulis domibus annuam unius denarii beato Petro velle sol-"vere pensionem, et jura ecclesiarum illius terræ illibata et "integra conservare. Nos itaque pium et laudabile deside-

"tus in regem Anglorum conse-"cratus est, cujus mater," &c. It is also in the MS. Tiberius A. 9. In the Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 339, it is given with the passage *Henricus . . . Aquitanorum*, above, p. 293; and all the misreadings of the text are there repeated.

[1] Possibly this copy of the bull *Laudabiliter* may have been taken from Giraldus Cambrensis, Expugnatio Hiberniæ, ii. 5; which must have been published whilst our author was writing. But it is quite as likely that it was in common circulation at the time. See Gir. Camb. Opp. i. 62, v. 317.

[2] *Anglorum*] Angliæ, B.

[3] *attingere*] pertingere, B.

"rium tuum favore congruo prosequentes, et petitioni tuæ "benignum impendentes assensum, gratum et acceptum ha- "bemus, ut pro dilatandis ecclesiæ terminis, pro vitiorum "restringendo decursu, pro corrigendis moribus et virtutibus "inserendis, pro Christianæ religionis augmento insulam illam "ingrediaris, et quæ ad honorem Dei et salutem illius terræ "spectaverint exequaris, et illius terræ populus honorifice te "recipiat, et sicut dominum veneretur, jure nimirum eccle- "siarum illibato et integro permanente, et salva beato Petro "et sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ de singulis domibus annua "unius denarii pensione. A.D. 1154. The bull *Laudabiliter.*

"Si ergo quod concepisti animo effectu duxeris prosequente "complendum, stude gentem illam bonis moribus informare, "et agas, tam per te quam per illos quos ad hoc fide, verbo, "et vita idoneos esse perspexeris, ut decoretur ibi ecclesia, "plantetur et crescat fidei Christianæ religio, et quæ ad "honorem Dei et salutem pertinent animarum taliter ordi- "nentur, ut et a Deo sempiternæ mercedis cumulum consequi "merearis, et in terris gloriosum nomen valeas in sæculis "optinere."

R. de Monte, A.D. 1155. MCLV. Natus est Lundoniæ pridie kalendas Martii feria ii[da] filius Henrico regi Anglorum ex regina Alienor, et vocatus est Henricus; quem Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus baptizavit. A.D. 1155. Henry, son of Henry II., born, Feb. 28.

Robertus decanus Saresberiensis, Exoniensium electus antistes, consecratus est a Theobaldo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Robert bishop of Exeter consecrated.

Fredericus rex Alemannorum ab Adriano papa consecratus est in imperatorem in ecclesia beati Petri. Frederick I. crowned.

Henricus Wintoniensis episcopus absque licentia regis recessit ab Anglia; ideoque sex castella ejus diruta sunt. Henry of Blois leaves England.

Willelmus Peverel de Notingeham,[1] causa veneficii quod fuerat propinatum Rannulfo comiti Cestriæ, exhæredatus est. William Peverel loses his lands.

Turris Gloecestriæ, castellum de Bruges et Wigemore, quæ Hugo de Mortuomari contra regem firmaverat, regi reddita sunt. Hugh Mortimer's castles taken.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1156. MCLVI. Rex Henricus transfretans apud Dovram applicuit apud Widzand;[2] ad quem venit Rothomagi Theodoricus Flandrensis comes, et comitissa Sibilla regis amita. A.D. 1156. Henry II. in Normandy.

Willelmus rex Siciliæ civitatem Barum[3] funditus evertit,

---

[1] *Notingeham*] Nothyngehan, D.
[2] *Widzand*] Witsand, D.
[3] *Barum*] Baarum, B.

A.D. 1156. Victories of William I. in Sicily. Græcos superavit, civitates et castella quæ perdiderat in jus proprium revocavit, cum Adriano papa fecit pacem, concedendo ei consecrationes episcoporum regni sui. R. de Monte, A.D. 1156.

In pago Parisiacensi monasterio Argentoilo capa Salvatoris, sicut dicitur, inventa est.

Henricus rex Anglorum cepit castellum Mirebellum et Chinonem longa obsidione, Losdunum vero redditum est ei.

Matilda born. Regina Alienor peperit filiam regi Anglorum, quam vocavit Mathildem.

A.D. 1157. MCLVII. Willelmus rex Siciliæ cepit Sibillam civitatem sitam inter Affricam et Babilonem. R. de Monte, A.D. 1157.

Birth of Richard. Regina Alienor peperit filium apud Oxeneford, quem vocavit Ricardum.

The northern counties recovered. Henricus rex Anglorum transfretavit in Angliam, et Melchomus rex Scotorum reddidit ei civitatem Karluil, castrum Baenburg, Novum Castrum super Tinam, et comitatum Lodonensem.

Terricus comes Flandrensis et Sibilla comitissa perrexerunt Jerusalem.

A.D. 1158. Henry crowned at Worcester. MCLVIII. Henricus rex Anglorum coronatus apud Wigornam, post celebrationem divinorum coronam super altare posuit, nec ulterius coronatus est.[1] R. de Monte, A.D. 1158.

Geoffrey born. Regina Alienor peperit filium Gaufridum.[2]

Nova moneta in Anglia.

Thomas goes to Paris. Thomas regis cancellarius in apparatu magno venit Parisius, Margaritam filiam regis Francorum accepturus uxorem Henrico filio regis Anglorum.

Henry seizes Nantes. Gaufrido fratre regis Anglorum mortuo, rex statim transfretans recepit Nannetem.

Visit of Lewis VII. to Mont S. Michel. Ludovicus rex Francorum, ut apud Sanctum Michaelem in Normannia vota solveret orationis, transitum habuit per Normanniam; in ecclesiis cathedralibus cum sollenni processione receptus; honoratus a singulis et multis oneratus muneribus.

Henry goes to Paris. Rex Anglorum iterum invitatus a rege Francorum venit Parisius, receptus in palatio regis; rege Francorum

---

[1] *coronatus est*] voluit coronari, B.

[2] This paragraph is placed after *palatio regis*, below, in MS. B.

A.D. 1158.

et regina in claustro canonicorum beatæ Virginis hospitantibus.[1]

R. de Monte, A.D. 1159.

A.D. 1159. Henry II. makes his expedition to Toulouse.

MCLIX. Rex Anglorum Henricus duxit exercitum versus Tolosam, et cepit castella fortia vicina ejus, rege Franciæ commorante interim jugiter in Tolosa, et ob reverentiam præsentiæ ipsius, dictus est rex Angliæ ipsam civitatem Tolosam non assiluisse. Rex enim Francorum ob gratiam comitis Sancti Egidii, cujus sororem Constantiam comes uxorem duxerat, et jam ex ea liberos susceperat, a Tolosa non recedebat: unde duo reges inimici facti sunt.

He spares the city.

Adrianus papa obiit. Scisma de electione duorum paparum.

Schism in the papacy.

Alexander papa.

Guillelmus comes Boloniæ, filius regis Stephani, et novissimus hæres ipsius, cui rex totam hæreditatem patris sui in Anglia et in Normannia concessit, in reditu Tolosæ obiit.

William of Boulogne dies.

A.D. 1160. Alexander III. accepted as pope by Henry and Lewis.

MCLX. A rege Franciæ et a rege Angliæ in Alexandrum papam consensum est. Imperator vero Alemanniæ cum clero suo recepit Octovianum, et missis ad reges Francorum et Anglorum nuntiis, ut eundem papam reciperent petiit, nec impetravit.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1160.

Maria abbatissa de Rumesie, filia regis Stephani, nupsit comiti Matheo, ex quo sustulit duas filias.

Marriage of the abbess of Romsey.

Regina Francorum, filia Athelfunsi imperatoris Hispaniarum, de partu filiæ mortua est, incolumi filia.

Death of the queen of France,

Rex vero Ludovicus non observato tempore luctus, infra quintum decimum diem, Alam filiam comitis Theobaldi duxit uxorem, quam Samson Remensis archiepiscopus ungere noluit in reginam, quia sororem ejusdem Alæ propter consanguinitatem separaverat a Philippo fratre memorati regis.

and speedy marriage of the king.

Henricus rex Angliæ Margaritam filiam regis Francorum, quam apud se habebat in custodia, Henrico filio suo desponsari fecit, et castellum de Gisorz diu desidera-

Betrothal of Henry and Margaret.

---

[1] *rege Francorum . . . hospitantibus*] om. B.

A.D. 1160. Origin of the quarrel between Henry II. and Lewis VII.

tum, et jam ante ex condicto duorum regum custodiæ militum Templi usque ad diem illarum nuptiarum commissum, optinuit. Quod quia præpropere, ut dicunt, factum est, rex Franciæ et fratres uxoris ejus indignati, regi Angliæ inimici facti sunt, et adversari cœperunt. Ad dedecus itaque regis Angliæ, rex Franciæ et comes Theobaldus cum auxiliariis suis Calvum Montem situm inter Blesim et Ambazium firmaverunt. Rex autem Angliæ cum suis festinus adveniens rege Francorum et comite Theobaldo fugatis castrum obsedit, et intra paucos dies ad deditionem coegit: capti sunt autem intus quinquaginta quinque milites Theobaldi. Celebratum est autem matrimonium inter filium regis Anglorum septennem et filiam regis Francorum triennem, auctoritate scilicet Henrici Pisani et Willelmi Papiensis, presbyterorum cardinalium, et apostolicæ sedis legatorum. Hoc autem factum est apud Novum Burgum iiii^to nonas Novembris.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1160.

Chaumont taken by Henry.

A.D. 1161. Consecration of Bartholomew bishop of Exeter.

MCLXI. Theobaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus,[1] dum adhuc viveret, dederat in mandatis quatinus Bartholomeum Exoniensem electum[2] Cantuariæ consecraret Walterus Rofensis episcopus. Et licet morte mandatoris finitum fuisset mandatum, tamen quia Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus laborabat paralysi, Henricus etiam Winthoniensis episcopus, vicarius Lundoniensis ecclesiæ, morabatur apud Cluniacum, tunc temporis Rofensis episcopus memoratum consecravit episcopum.[3]

Absence of the bishops of London and Winchester.

---

[1] *archiepiscopus*] obiit qui, ins. B.

[2] *electum*] et Ricardum Cestrensem electum, ins. B.

[3] *Henricus . . . episcopum*] Rofensis episcopus memoratos consecravit episcopos, B. The passage is written in MS. A. over an erasure, so that the reading of B. may represent the original writing. But the hand in A. is the same throughout. This is the first important variation in the two MSS. that occurs in the Ymagines; and it may be thus accounted for, on the evidence of Gervase the Canterbury Historian, ap. Twysden, col. 1381. The bishops elect of Chester and Exeter were waiting for consecration when archbishop Theobald fell into his last illness. The bishop of

Ricardus[1] Coventrensis archidiaconus, ex patre Roberto Cestrensi pontifice, consecratus est ejusdem sedis episcopus ab archiepiscopo Theobaldo. A.D. 1161. Consecration of Richard bishop of Chester.

YVO CARNOTENSIS EPISCOPUS.[2]

Non igitur vel a sacris ordinibus, vel a parochialibus curis, vel ab ecclesiis cathedralibus, vel etiam ab ipso papatu, filii sacerdotum, si probabilis vitæ fuerint, sunt arcendi. Felix itaque tertius, natione Romanus, ex patre Felice presbitero, summus pontifex fuit. Item Agapitus natione Romanus, ex patre Gordiano presbitero, summus pontifex fuit. Gelasius natione Affer, ex patre Valerio episcopo, summus pontifex fuit. Silverius natione Campanus, ex patre Ormisda Romano episcopo, summus pontifex fuit. Deusdedit natione Romanus, ex patre Stephano subdiacono, summus pontifex fuit. Theodorus natione Græcus, ex patre Theodoro episcopo, summus pontifex fuit. Precedents for consecrating the sons of priests.

Nicholaus natione Anglicus, ex patre presbitero, summus pontifex fuit, vocatus Adrianus papa quartus. Adrian IV. was a priest's son.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1162. MCLXII. Ludovicus rex Francorum, et Henricus rex Angliæ, copiis armatorum undique congregatis, cum jam campestre prælium inter eos imminere putaretur, prope Fretevallem amici facti sunt. A.D. 1162. Reconciliation of Henry and Lewis.

Chester was consecrated in the presence of the archbishop, who was carried into the chapel to witness the ceremony, by Walter bishop of Rochester. Theobald died a few days after, and then Bartholomew of Exeter, whose consecration had been put off until he had done homage to the king, was consecrated by the same bishop. The writer of MS. B. apparently supposed both prelates to have been consecrated after Theobald's death; the writer of A., however, knew better, but supposed that the ceremony performed in Theobald's presence was celebrated by the archbishop himself. The omission of the name of Henry of Winchester in MS. B. was perhaps caused by the need of economising space.

[1] *Ricardus . . . itaque*] Nec te moveat quod Ricardus Peccatum Cestrensis episcopus consecratus filius carnalis fuerit Roberti quondam ejusdem sedis episcopi, cum subjectis abundemus exemplis. Et ut de nostris temporibus taceamus, sicut legitur in gestis Romanorum pontificum Felix, &c., B. The last words are a direct quotation from Ivo, p. 4.

[2] *Yvo Carnotensis episcopus*] See above, p. 33. The extract is from the Prologue to the Panormia (ed. 1647), p. 4.

A.D. 1162. Birth of Eleanor. Anglorum regina filiam peperit apud Rothomagum,[1] cui nomen suum imposuit et vocavit Alienor. R. de Monte, A.D. 1161.

Death of Richard bishop of London. Ricardus secundus Lundoniensis episcopus obiit iiii^to. nonas Maii.

Fealty sworn to the younger Henry. Episcopi, abbates totius Angliæ mandato regis fidelitatem juraverunt Henrico primogenito filio suo. Thomas autem cancellarius primus omnium ei fecit homagium, salva fide regis quamdiu viveret et regno præesse vellet.[2]

Attempt to heal the schism. Fredericus imperator Romanus, Ludovicus rex Francorum prope Crisopolim convenerunt, ut ecclesiæ Romanæ scisma sedarent, et quis esset præferendus decernerent.[3]

Thomas elected archbishop of Canterbury. Clero totius provinciæ Cantuariorum generaliter Lundoniæ convocato, præsente Henrico filio regis et regni justiciariis, Thomas Cantuariensis archidiaconus et regis cancellarius, nemine reclamante, sollenniter electus est in archiepiscopum. Electionem factam sine aliqua contradictione recitavit Henricus Win-

[1] *Rothomagum*] Domnifrontem, Rob. de Monte.

[2] *Thomas . . . . vellet*] om. B. Here MS. C. adds in the margin: "*Concordia inter ecclesiam beati* "*Albani et ecclesiam Lincolniensem.* Sopita est discordia et "amicabili fine terminata inter "ecclesiam beati Albani et eccle- "siam Lincolniensem, Roberto "de Chenei episcopo Lincolniensi "agente et Roberto de Gorram "abbate Sancti Albani defen- "dente, in præsentia Henrici se- "cundi filii Matildis imperatricis "regis Angliæ, et archiepiscopo- "rum Thomæ Cantuariensis, et "Rogeri Eboracensis, et episcopo- "rum Henrici Wintoniensis, Wil- "lelmi Norwicensis, Jocelini Sa- "lesberiensis, Bartholomei Exoni- "ensis, Hylarii Cicestrensis, Hu- "gonis Dunelmensis, Ricardi Co- "ventrensis, Gileberti Hereforden- "sis, Godefridi de Sancto Asaph; "et comitum Roberti Leicestrensis "senioris, Hugonis Bigot Norfolciæ, "Willelmi de Arundel; et proce- "rum Ricardi de Luci, Ricardi de "Humaz, H. filii Geroldi; et ab- "batum Laurentii Westmonasteri- "ensis, Willelmi Ramesiensis, Gre- "gorii Malmesberiensis, Reginaldi "Persorensis, Clementis Eboracen- "sis; et archidiaconorum Gaufridi "Cantuariensis et Ricardi Picta- "vensis; apud Westmonasterium, "octavo idus Martii, feria sexta "proxima eo anno ante Dominicam "Dominicæ Passionis." The date belongs to the year 1163.

[3] *decernerent*] ut quis paparum præferendus esset decernerent. Rex Francorum super hoc præstitit sacramentum, sed pœnitens absolutus est ab Alexandro papa, ins. B.

toniensis episcopus apud Westmustier in refectorio monachorum iiii[a]. feria ante Pentecosten. Electus autem sabbato Pentecostes ordinatus est in presbiterum in ecclesia Cantuariensi a Waltero Rofensi episcopo, in ordinationibus et in dedicationibus faciendis ecclesiæ Cantuariensis vicario. Sequenti die Dominica, consecratus est a Henrico Wintoniensi episcopo vice Lundoniensis ecclesiæ tunc vacantis; quod ad jus suum spectare dicebat Rofensis episcopus, sed non optinuit.

A.D. 1162. He is ordained; and consecrated by the bishop of Winchester.

Nuntiis ad dominum papam directis, quem ad Gallias descendentem Willelmus de Monte Pessulano tanquam ligium dominum suum receperat honorifice, celeri relatione perlatum est, quod suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ sibi pastorem elegerant, qui concurrentibus omnium votis jam a propria sinodo fuerat consecratus. Acceptum fuit verbum istud in auribus domini papæ. Litteris igitur episcoporum, litteris etiam prioris et conventus Sanctæ Trinitatis, litteris quoque regis in medium recitatis, sub audientia cardinalium in consistorio postulatione facta, facilis et jocundus juxta petitionem ab omnibus datur assensus.

The pope approves of the election and consecration.

Pallium itaque cum ea gravitate, cum ea remoratione, cum ea sollennitate qua consueverant, nuntiis est commissum, quod Thomas archiepiscopus in sede Dorobernensi, conditionibus solitis involutus et sacramento constrictus, ab altari majore suscepit. Postquam autem induit vestes summis sacerdotibus Domino disponente collatas, habitum sic mutavit ut mutaret et animum. Nam curiæ curis interesse non approbans, ut eximeretur a curia, vacans orationi, superintendens ecclesiæ suæ negotiis, nuntium in Normanniam regi direxit, renuntians cancellariæ, sigillum resignans. Quod altius in cor regis ascendit, in se solum causam resignationis

Johanne thesaurario Eboracensi, Adam abbate Eveshamensi, Johanne Salesberiensi, Jordano Cicestrensi, Simone monacho Cantuariensi.

Magistrum Arnulfum.

He sends the pall to Thomas. Thomas receives the pall and resigns the chancellorship.

I.

A.D. 1162. Henry's wish to have an archbishop for his chancellor.

tam subitæ retorquentis. Audierat namque quod Maguntinus archiepiscopus in Theutonica sub rege, quod Coloniensis archiepiscopus in Italia sub imperatore, nomen sibi vendicent archicancellarii. [1] Nec promiscuis actibus æstimant turbari rerum officia, si gestant in dextera baculum pastoralem, et ad expediendas regni vel imperii necessitates et pacem ecclesiæ procurandam propensius accinguntur, dummodo cancellarius curiæ sinistro lateri sigillum allateret nunc regis, nunc imperatoris.[2]

A.D. 1163. Henry lands in England, Jan. 25.

MCLXIII. Henricus rex Angliæ finibus Normannorum, Britonum, Cenomannensium, Andegavorum, Turonensium, et Aquitanorum ad voluntatem suam dispositis, in Angliam rediens, apud Hamonis portum applicuit viij°. kalendas Februarii, plurimum Walensibus imprecans, et Johanni Marescallo, qui nunquam regem Angliam intraturum, juxta pseudo-prophetarum archana, satis imprudenter asseveraverant.

Thomas meets him.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, obviam regi veniens, receptus est in osculum, sed non in plenitudinem gratiæ, sicut vultus statim aversus omnibus qui convenerant patenter ostendit.

Thomas has to resign the archdeaconry.

Thomas, ex archidiacono Cantuariensi sumptus ad archiepiscopatum, ad instantissimam regis postu- IIa.
lationem diutius distulit archidiaconatum transferre. Transtulit tandem sicut rex petiit, sed gratiam regis ad tempus subtractam, ut videbatur, sibi postmodum redintegratam non ad plenum agnovit.

Clarembald abbot of S. Augustine's prays to be consecrated without profession of obedience.

Clarembaldus, abbas electus Sancti Augustini, benedictionem ab archiepiscopo Thoma quærebat accipere, sed in ecclesia propria,[3] sed sine professione, sed spe cujusvis in posterum subjectionis prorsus adempta. III.
Cum autem rex se verbis hujusmodi non opposuerit, partibus antiquitatis in finibus stare

[1] *Nec*] Qui nec, B.

[2] *imperatoris*] qui dicitur prothonotarius, add. A. in a later hand; and so copied in C. and D.; om. B.

[3] *propria*] om. C.

persuadens, et eas omnibus modis quibus ratio [1] fieri potuisset inducens, alteram inclinatior videbatur in partem. A.D. 1163.

Actum est de consilio Lundoniensis ecclesiæ, qualiter autem res processerit docebunt sequentia. Actum est autem pridie nonas Martii.[2] Business of the translation of Gilbert Foliot.

"Alexander papa capitulo Lundoniensi.

"Ex litteris karissimi in Christo filii nostri Henrici illus-"tris Anglorum regis, et venerabilis fratris nostri Thomæ "Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, atque ex relatione dilecti filii "nostri Radulfi ecclesiæ vestræ archidiaconi [3] accepimus, "quod idem rex desiderat plurimum et requirit, quod vene-"rabilis frater noster; herefordensis episcopus ad vestram "ecclesiam transferatur, ut in eadem ecclesia curam gerat et "sollicitudinem pastoralem. Hac utique causa et necessi-"tate nobis ab eodem rege proposita, quod Lundoniensis "civitas regalis sedes sit, et ipse rex diuturniorem ibidem "consueverit et longiorem moram habere, et ibi frequen-"tes baronum ac procerum de toto regno soleant esse con-"ventus. Quanto autem prædicta regia civitas inter alias "regni civitates magis est nobilis et famosa, tanto ecclesiam "ipsam ab honestiori, et tam in divino quam in humano "jure prudentiori, præfatus rex regi desiderat et postulat "gubernari. Nam cum ipse memorato fratri nostro consilium "de animæ suæ salute commiserit, eum, cum sibi necesse est, "desiderat habere præsentem. Unde nos ei tanquam karis-"simo filio nostro per omnia et in omnibus in quibus secun-"dum Deum possumus deferre volentes, et ejusdem fratris "nostri episcopi religionem, honestatem et litteraturam dili-"gentius attendentes, voto et proposito ipsius regis in hac "parte, si tamen vos eundem episcopum unanimiter postula-"veritis, duximus annuendum." [4] Letter of Alexander III. approving of the translation of Gilbert from Hereford to London.

Translatio Herefordensis [5] in Lundoniensem iiii^to^. kalendas Maii celebrata est, et in sede sua Lundoniensis episcopus juxta desiderium totius capituli sollenniter introductus est. He is translated April 28.

---

[1] *ratio*] id, B.

[2] *Actum . . . Martii*] om. B.

[3] Probably Ralph de Diceto himself.

[4] This letter is not contained in the great collections of letters of Gilbert Foliot or of Becket; but it closely resembles the letter of the pope directed to Gilbert Foliot himself on the same occasion, which is dated at Paris, March 19, 1163; Epp. G. Foliot, ed. Giles, ep. 146.

[5] *Herefordensis*] episcopi, ins, B.

A.D. 1163. Combat of Robert de Montfort and Henry of Essex.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1163.

Robertus de Muntforde cum Henrico de Essex certamine singulari congrediens victoriam reportavit.[1] Henricus autem notam infamiæ simul et exhæredationis jacturam incurrens, indulgentia principis habitum monachalem suscepit apud Radingum.

Council at Tours, May 21.

Alexander papa concilium congregavit Turonis in ecclesia Sancti Mauritii xij^mo. kalendas Junii. Ad cujus vocationem, per Theodinum sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subdiaconum factam, permissu regis Anglorum venerunt archiepiscopi, venerunt episcopi, venerunt abbates et priores. Infirmitas tres episcopos excusavit, scilicet Wintoniensem, Lincolniensem, et Batoniensem. C Ō Thomas autem Cantuariensis archiepiscopus cum suffraganeis suis sedit ad dexteram in concilio. Cum ✠ Dunelmensi, quem unicum habet suffraganeum, Eboracensis archiepiscopus sedere jussus est ad sinistram.

English archbishops and bishops present.

Alexander III. explains to Lewis VII. the custom of the golden rose.

"Alexander papa Ludovico regi Francorum.[2]

"Ex antiqua Romanorum pontificum institutione noscitur "processisse, quod Media Quadragesima, ea Dominica qua "cantatur *Lætare Jerusalem*, consueverunt ipsi florem aureum "non gratia temporalis delectionis propriis manibus annua "semper revolutione gestare. Flos namque Christum regem "exprimit ac designat, Qui de Seipso loquitur dicens, 'Ego "'flos campi, et lilium convallium.' Aurum vero regem "merito dicitur denotare. Rubor autem, quo aurum coloratum "est et suffusum, Redemptoris significat passionem, de Quo "legitur, 'Quis est iste qui venit de Edom tinctus vestibus "de Bosra?' Et iterum: 'Quare rubrum est indumentum "'Tuum, et vestimenta Tua sicut calcantium in torculari?' "Odor hujus floris resurrectionem et gloriam Ejus præfigurat. "Hæc sunt, fili karissime, quæ in isto flore noveris figurari. "Petimus autem, et totis affectibus exoptamus,[3] ut Ille flos "aureus Qui omnes reges et principes antecedit, immo per "Quem reges regnant, et prudentes decernunt justitiam, ter- "renum tibi regnum diuturno tempore Sua ineffabili pietate

Cant. ii. 1.

Isa. lxiii. 1, 2.

---

[1] The court at which the trial was held, was at Windsor, on the 31st of March. See the account of Richard de Anesty, in Sir F. Palgrave's Rise and Progress of the English Commonwealth, vol. ii. p. xxiii.

[2] See Bouquet, xv. 794; Mansi, Concilia, xxi. 1031.

[3] *exoptamus*] optamus, B.

A.D. 1163.

" conservet, et æternum in illa felici retributione justorum " misericorditer[1] largiatur."

Dispute of archbishop Thomas with the earl of Hertford about Tunbridge, July 22.

[2] Comes de Clara Rogerus a Thoma Cantuariensi archiepiscopo vocatus xi°. kalendas Augusti apud Westmustier[3] ad homagium sibi faciendum de castello Tunebruge,[4] et de pertinentibus ad castellum, archiepiscopo duriorem opposuit adversarium, respondens totum illud feodum in servitio militari et publicis pensionibus persolvendis regem potius attendisse quam archiepiscopum. IIIIa.

Homage of the Scottish and Welsh princes at Woodstock, July 1.

Malcolmus rex Scottorum, Resus[5] australium princeps Wallensium, Audoenus aquilonarium, et quique majores de Cambria, fecerunt homagium regi Anglorum et Henrico filio suo kalendis Julii apud Wdestoke.[6]

Inquest into the tenure of William de Ros.

Inquisitio generalis est facta per Angliam, cui quis in servitio sæculari de jure teneretur obnoxius. Inventum est autem in Cantia, procurantibus justiciariis, quod Willelmus de Ros in munere quolibet subeundo regem deberet agnoscere, non[7] archiepiscopum: sic odium personæ redundavit in dampnum ecclesiæ.[8] Va.

John of Poictiers consecrated.

Johannes,[9] thesaurarius Eboracensis, consecratus a domino papa Pictavensis episcopus in concilio Turonensi, professionem fecit archiepiscopo Burdegalensi.

Quarrel of Thomas with William of Eynesford.

Thomas archiepiscopus vacantem ecclesiam Ainefordiæ contulit in Laurentium: Willelmus villæ dominus, sibi vendicans jus patronatus in eadem ecclesia, Laurentium expulit; archiepiscopus eum excommunicavit.[10]

---

[1] *misericorditer*] misericordia, B.

[2] This and the following paragraphs are transposed in B.

[3] *xi°. . . Westmustier*] om. B.

[4] *Tunebruge*] respondit totum illud feodum in publicis pensionibus persolvendis et in servitio militari regem potius attendisse quam archiepiscopum, B.

[5] *Resus*] Catur, ins. B.

[6] *Wdestoke*] Wodestoke, D.

[7] *non*] Thomam, ins. Twysden.

[8] *sic . . . ecclesiæ*] om. B.

[9] *Johannes . . . Burdegalensi*] om. B. John aux Blanchesmains, John of Poictiers, a native of Kent, afterwards archbishop of Lyons, and a correspondent of our author, see above, p. 5.

[10] *Thomas . . . . excommunicavit*] Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Willelmum de Einefordia parrochianum suum sacrilegii reum a liminibus sanctæ matris ecclesiæ sequestravit et præcepit ab omnibus evitari, B.

A.D. 1163. Henry is offended at the excommunication of one of his tenants in chief.

Quod quia minime certiorato rege fecisset, maximam regis indignationem incurrit. Asserit namque VI[a]. rex juxta dignitatem regni, quod nullus capitaneorum, nullus militans regi, nullus minister regis, nullus scilicet, ut vulgariter loquar, de rege tenens in capite, castellum, villam, vel prædium, citra conscientiam regis est excommunicandus ab aliquo, ne, si super hoc rex certioratus non fuerit, ignorantia lapsus communicet excommunicato, capitaneum suum venientem ad se vel invitans ad osculum, vel recipiens in consilium.

Roger of Worcester consecrated, Aug. 26.

Rogerus Wigornensis[1] electus consecratus est a Thoma Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Cantuariam vij°. kalendas Septembris.

Embassy from Henry to the pope.

Rex Angliæ nuntios ad dominum papam, confinia scismaticorum in Gallia declinantem, direxit, VII[a]. Arnulfum[2] scilicet Luxoviensem episcopum, et Ricardum Pictavensem archidiaconum.[3] Qui sævitiam maris et fluctuum intra spacium trium mensium experti sexies, dum ad regni consuetudines auctoritate summi pontificis roborandas plurimum elaborassent, nec in aliquo profuissent, in ultimo reditu suo regis animum adversus plurimos magis ac magis exasperatum mitigare non potuerunt.

A.D. 1164. Council of Clarendon, Jan. 25.

Constitutions. Conduct of Thomas.

MCLXIIII. Ex mandato regis, convenientibus episcopis et proceribus apud Clarenduno viii. kalendas Februarii, post immensos tractatus, rex tandem VIII[a]. ad hoc animos prælatorum inflexit, ut regni consuetudines archiepiscoporum et episcoporum auctoritate firmarentur et scriptis. Quod Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, dum ad cognitionem summi pontificis pertulisset, ab obligatione quam inierat absolutionem petiit et impetravit.

---

[1] Roger son of earl Robert of Gloucester, and cousin of the king.

[2] The famous Arnulf of Lisieux.

[3] Richard of Ilchester, archdeacon of Poictiers, afterwards bishop of Winchester.

A.D. 1164. Henry's policy of punishing criminal clergymen.

Rex Anglorum volens in singulis, ut dicebat, maleficia debita cum severitate punire, et ordinis dignitatem ad iniquum trahi compendium incongruum esse considerans, clericos a suis justiciariis in publico flagitio deprehensos episcopo loci reddendos decreverat, ut quos episcopus inveniret obnoxios, præsente justiciario regis exauctoraret, et post curiæ traderet puniendos. In contrarium sentiebant episcopi; quos enim exauctorarent a manu laicali contendebant protegere, alioquin bis judicaretur in idipsum. Huic controversiæ præstitit occasionem Philippus de Broc, canonicus de Bedeford, qui, tractus in causam propter homicidium, in justiciarium regis verbum protulit contumeliosum. Quod cum coram archiepiscopo negare non posset, præbendæ suæ multatus est beneficio, pulsus est a regno per biennium.

IXa.

Philip de Broc and his punishment.

Thomas attempts to leave England.

Archiepiscopus Romam profecturus apud Romenel, inscio rege, navem ascendit, vento contrario rejectus in Angliam; in quo plurimum regis offensam incurrit.

Xa.

Quarrel of John the Marshal.

[1] Tractus in causam, Johanne Marescallo regi deferente querelam, pro quodam manerio archiepiscopatus, quod a multis temporibus, ut dicebatur, inconcusse possederat archiepiscopus; tandem post longas fatigationes in quibusdam articulis contrariam reportavit sententiam, et regi judicatum solvi sufficientissime[2] cavit, in quingentis libris habita taxatione.

XIa.

Archbishop Thomas tried at Northampton, Oct. 13.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, super actu quem egerat in cancellaria tractus in causam, præsentiam suam exhibuit apud Northamtunam[3] iii°. idus Octobris. Convenerunt illuc episcopi, comites, barones totius regni, mandato regis urgente. Rogerus Ebora-

---

[1] B. prefixes the word "Archiepi-"scopus."

[2] *sufficientissime*] om. B.

[3] *Northamtunam*] Ralph de Diceto was an eyewitness of the transactions at this council. See Will. Fitz Stephen, Vita S. Thom. Cant., ed. Giles, i. 227.

A.D. 1164. Oct. 13. Council of Northampton.

Charges against Thomas.

censis archiepiscopus vocatus advenit. Et quoniam episcopatuum, abbatiarum tempore suo vacantium bona de jure cancellariæ suæ fuerant deputata custodiæ, quoniam regis ulterior familiaritas penes cancellarium excreverat, eo usque ut castellaniam de Eya, et castellaniam de Bercamstede pluribus annis libere possedisset et disposuisset pro velle, perceptorum summam in ratiocinium venire consentaneum juri pluribus videbatur, et a capite rationem reddendam ordinarium reputabant; licet ante consecrationem suam archiepiscopus ab Henrico filio et hærede regis, et a justiciario regni, liber et absolutus ab omni ratiocinio fuisset assignatus episcopis. Cum autem absolutionem factam hoc modo de voluntate regis et mandato probari non posset, adversus episcopos ne eum injuste condempnarent judicio appellavit, et ab eis itidem appellatus est. Sed proceres licet adversus eos processerit appellatio, et sub anathemate prohibiti sunt in patrem et judicem suum ferre sententiam, nichilominus tamen in eum, nec confessum, nec convictum, sed privilegium ecclesiæ protestantem et suum, sententiam intorserunt; sic archiepiscopus in artissimo positus, multis affectus injuriis, et obprobriis lacessitus, et episcoporum destitutus consilio, crucem quam manu tenebat in altum erigens discessit a curia. Nocte sequenti, villam latenter egrediens,* ab aspectibus hominum diebus se subtrahens et noctibus iter peragens, post dies aliquot ad portum Sandicum pervenit, navicula fragili transvectus in Flandriam.

XIIa.

He leaves the court in anger.

He goes to Flanders.

*Cum tribus, Roberto de Cava, Escaiman, Rogero de Brai.

Envoys sent to the pope at Sens.

Domino papæ directi sunt a rege nuncii post archiepiscopum, Senonis[1] in consistorio sic loquentes: "Inter Thomam "archiepiscopum et regem Anglo-

Eboracensis archiepiscopus, Lundoniensis episcopus, Cicestrensis episcopus,

---

[1] *Senonis*] om. B.

A.D. 1164. Speech of the king's envoys, against archbishop Thomas, before the pope at Sens.

" rum controversia versabatur. De " utriusque voluntate dies præfigi- " tur, ut in ea, justicia mediante, " illorum controversia terminetur. " Ad eandem diem ex præcepto " regio archiepiscopi, episcopi, et " cæteri ecclesiarum prælati con- " vocantur, ut quanto generalior " esset concilii celebratio, tanto " manifestior fieret fraudis et ma- " litiæ denudatio. Constituta die catholici principis " aspectui se præsentavit regni turbator et ecclesiæ. " Qui de suorum meritorum qualitate non securus, Domi- " nicæ crucis armat se signaculo, tanquam ad tyranni " præsentiam accessurus. Nec tamen regia majestas " modo offenditur, sed causæ suæ judicium episcoporum " fidei committit, ut sic ab omni suspectione liberetur. " Restabat ut episcopi causam judicio terminarent, ut " sic dissidentes in gratiam fœderarent, et dissensionis " eorum materiam sepelirent. At obviat adversarius " et objicit, quoniam ipsum coram rege stare judicio " esset apostolicæ sedis et dignitatis diminutio; ac " si nesciat quod etsi in illo judicio aliquantulum " ecclesiæ dignitati derogaretur, dissimulandum erat " pro tempore ut pax ecclesiæ redderetur. Objicit " iterum patris sibi nomen ascribens, quod arrogan- " tiam videtur redolere, quod filii in patris dampna- " tionem minime debuerant convenire; sed necessarium " erat ut patris superbiam filiorum humilitas temperaret, " ne post patrem in filiis patris odium parentaret."

Wigornensis episcopus, Exoniensis episcopus, Lexoviensis episcopus, Sagiensis episcopus, Pictavensis archidiaconus, Walthamensis decanus, Johannes Oxenefordensis, Johannes Cymin, comes de Arundel, R. de Sancto Walerico, Henricus camerarius, Hugo de Gundevilla.[1]

The king demands the mission of two judges from the pope.

Datum est in mandatis a rege nuntiis suis quatinus a latere domini papæ mitti duos in Angliam postularent, qui causam non ecclesiasticam inter regem et archiepiscopum Northamtunæ ventilatam, et si quam

[1] MS. D. omits the names of the envoys. MS. B. reads " Nuncii a " rege directi sunt domino papæ " post archiepiscopum et contra " archiepiscopum in consistorio " habuerunt hæc verba," &c.

A.D. 1164. aliam de novo contigisset emergere, remoto appellationis obstaculo, præsente rege, præsente archiepiscopo, terminarent.

The proceedings are stayed by the archbishop's absence.

Cum autem nuncii regis prævenissent archiepiscopum Senonis, de cujus adventu nichil certi fuerat auditum in curia; quod petebatur ab eis juri consentaneum et rationi minime videbatur. Nam cum præsens non esset archiepiscopus, in ejus injuriam quicquam statuere, nec canonicum videbatur, nec ordinarium.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in domini papæ præsentia constitutus, sic exorsus est;[1]

Address of the archbishop to the pope.

"Ad audientiam tuam, pater sanctissime, confugio, "ut qui ecclesiæ libertatem tanto tui discrimine rede- "misti, eam vel solam, vel maximam meæ persecu- "tionis causam attendas, quod exemplo tuo usus sum. "Dolui enim statum ecclesiæ labefactari paululum, et "jura ejus in avaritiam principum dissipari, et occur- "rendum credidi morbo venienti. Et quo plus illi "domino meo, cui post Deum cætera debeo, me scie- "bam obligatum, eo tutius iniquis ejus instigationibus "arbitrabar resistendum, donec obtinuerunt illi, et sere- "nitatem ejus obfuscaverunt michi. Exinde, ut moris "est apud principes, criminationes et calumpnias in- "jecerunt in occasionem persecutionis meæ, et ego eici "malui quam subscribere. Accessit enim his malis, "quod vocatus sum ut coram rege tanquam laicus "satisfacerem, et unde michi resistendi suffragia spe- "raveram sum destitutus. Animadverti dominos et "confratres nostros episcopos istos[3] pro aulicorum arbi- "trio in me paratos animadvertere. Ita cunctis in- "cursantibus fere suffocatus ad tuæ pietatis audientiam,

---

[1] This effusion, here given as a speech, is given by Hoveden, i. 205, as a letter; it is much abridged in the text. See Epp. S. Thomæ, ed. Giles, iii. 3.

[2] Here MS. B. has in a fifteenth century hand, in the margin, the story of the holy oil "quando ego "Thomas . . . . . cum ampulla." S. T. C., ii. 246.

[3] *istos*] erased in B.

"quæ nec in extremis negligit, respiravi; sub qua "demonstraturus asto, me nec ibi fuisse judicandum, "nec ab illis. Nam quid aliud hoc esset, patres, nisi "vestra jura vobis subtrahere? quid aliud quam spiri-"tualia temporalibus submittere? Semel natum hoc "exemplum esset ad multa. Ideoque credidi firmius "resistendum, quod affectus proclivior nocendi nasce-"retur, si prius debilitatem agnoscerent. At inquient, "'Reddenda erant Cæsari quæ Cæsaris erant.' Sed "etsi in pluribus obtemperandum regi, in illis[1] tamen "obtemperandum non est quibus efficitur ne rex sit. "Non essent illa Cæsaris sed tyranni, in quibus etsi "non pro me, pro seipsis ei resisterent. Numquid "eorum persecutionem merui, pro quibus tantis occur-"sibus me opposueram? Obtinuissem si voluissent "illi; sed male caput agit si a membris destituitur, "quinetiam si oculi linguam contra caput assumant. "Si bene prævidissent in se perniciem machinabantur, "et episcoporum usi sunt principes auxilio in eorum "servitutem. Quæ hæc tanti odii causa fuerat, ut pro "me extinguendo se ipsos extinguerent? Ita dum spi-"ritualia pro temporalibus negligunt, deficiunt in utris-"que. Quid quod, etiam me reclamante et audientiam "istam appellante, patrem suum in judicio dampnare "ausi sunt? Condescende igitur, pater sanctissime, "in fugam meam et persecutionem, et me aliquando "magnum fuisse reminiscere tempore tuo, et propter "te injuriis lacessitum. Utere rigore tuo, coherce illos "quorum instinctu nomen hujus persecutionis obrepsit. "Nec domino regi horum aliquid imputetur, qui hujus "machinationis potius est minister quam repertor."

A.D. 1164. Address of archbishop Thomas to the pope.

R. de Monte, A.D. 1165.

MCLXV. Regina Francorum peperit filium quem vocavit Philippum.

Regina Alienor peperit filiam quam vocavit Johannam.[2]

A.D. 1165. Birth of Philip of France, and Johanna.

---

[1] *illis*] his, B.

[2] *Regina . . . Johannam*] om. B. Here MS. C. inserts, "Hoc eodem "anno, indictione xiii[a] concurrenti-"bus quatuor, anno communi, "Godefridus episcopus de Sancto

A.D. 1165. Alexander III. returns to Italy. Alexander papa rediens in Ytaliam Romæ recipitur, et inde transiit Beneventum. R. de Monte, A.D. 1165

Visit of Reginald of Cologne to negotiate the marriage of Matilda. Rege morante apud Westmustier, Reginaldus Coloniensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam, accepturus uxorem Henrico duci Saxoniæ[1] Matildem primogenitam filiam regis. Cui cum magnates regni sollenniter occurrissent, Robertus comes Legecestriæ justiciarius regis illum archiscismaticum in osculum non recepit. He is treated as a schismatic. Eversa sunt passim altaria super quæ Missam illi celebrarunt scismatici.

A.D. 1166. Council at Oxford against the heretics. MCLXVI. Quidam pravi dogmatis[2] disseminatores tracti sunt in judicium apud Oxenefordiam, præsente rege, præsentibus et episcopis. Quos a fide nostra devios, et in examine superatos, facies cauteriata notabiles cunctis exposuit expulsos a regno.

Henry goes abroad. Rex Angliæ transfretavit circa initium Quadragesimæ.

Thomas at Vezelai excommunicates his enemies. Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum per dies plurimos moram fecisset apud Pontiniacum, transiens inde venit Viceliacum repente, et die Ascensionis, videntibus populis qui ad diem festum convenerant, ascendens in pulpitum, consuetudinum quas in regno Anglorum avitas appellant observatores, et defensores, et instigatores, accensis candelis excommunicavit; scilicet Ricardum de Luci, Ricardum Pictavensem archidiaconum, Jocelinum de Bailul, Alanum de Novilla, et plures alios. Illi autem et absentes, et non vocati, et indefensi, sicut dicebant, missis ad archiepiscopum nuntiis, appellarunt et intraverunt ecclesiam. They are absolved. Qui postmodum, mandato cardinalium Johannis Neapolitani[3] et Willelmi Papiensis absoluti sunt a Godefrido episcopo Sancti Asavi. Alanum vero Lundoniensis absolvit

" Asaph in basilica Sancti Albani, " ad majus altare, præsente abbate " Roberto et toto conventu in Cœna " Domini crisma confecit, et oleum " sanctum, et cætera quæque epi- " scopalia quæ ad diem ipsum per- " tinere videbantur, fultus virtute " privilegiorum loci, sollempni per- " egit officio."

[1] *Saxoniæ*] Saxonico, B.

[2] *dogmatis*] docmatis, A.

[3] *Johannis Neapolitani*] Henrici Pisani, B., and so C. corrects in the margin.

episcopus, præstito sacramento quod in eundo Jerusalem transiret per dominum papam, et staret ejus mandato. A.D. 1166.

Ricardo Pictavensi archidiacono, quærenti consilium ab amico, sic rescriptum est inter cætera ;[1]

Advice given to Richard of Ilchester, as to the respect to be shown to the archbishop's excommunication.

" Si tactus inconsulto calore Thomas Cantuariensis archiepi-" scopus, præter principis voluntatem,[2] præter conscientiam " suffraganeorum a regno exierit, veniens contra sacramentum, " ut dicitis, revera perjurium incurrisset, ni summi pontificis " in hoc sibi patrocinaretur auctoritas, et extortum ab archi-" episcopo sacramentum devocasset in irritum. A regno qui-" dem exiit, sed ea, quam de communi suffraganeorum et con-" ventus Cantuariensis assensu in consecratione acceperat, se " potestate non exuit. Nec enim incorporalia locis tantum " coartantur discretis, nec regione aliqua circumscribitur quod " personæ cohæret. Ad tempus itaque cessit possessionibus, " sed nec ad tempus juri renunciavit. Omnes igitur intra " suam provinciam constitutos, prout ratio flagitaverit, potest " vocare, potest suspendere, potest excommunicare; videte an " vos ut suum possit corripere parochianum. Episcopatus " Batoniæ vos matris excepit ab alvo, ibi usque ad virum " perfectum totam decurristis ætatem, ibidem possessionibus " adeptis canonice episcopo loci debitam exolvistis obedientiam. " Impositum capiti jugum nondum excussistis ab humeris. " Si præter aliorum fortunam honore duplici decoratum vos " in suo sinu collocavit ecclesia Pictavorum, nichil detrimenti " accessit Cantuariensi ecclesiæ, sed honoris quamplurimum. " Nec enim ejus momenti est archidiaconatus vel thesauraria, " ut quem eximat a jurisdictione alterius, dummodo alibi " habeat domicilium, habeat et possessiones suo nomine titu-" latas. Secundum leges dignitas episcopalis vel patriciatus " filium liberat a patria potestate. Secundum canones episco-" pale culmen alium eximit a jurisdictione alterius coepiscopi, " nisi alter fuerit metropolitanus. Cum igitur Cantuariensem " de jure vestrum intelligam metropolitanum, si vos non " timuit indiscrete ligare, vos timeatis ligari pronuntiatione " injusta. Non quidem nisi reum ligat sententia; veruntamen " ecclesiasticæ disciplinæ contemptorem illaqueat. Sed " dicitis, ' In nullo deliqui. Ad vocationem archiepiscopi venire " ' non supersedi; mandatum ipsius in aliquo non præterii. " ' Quod in me statuit contra ordinem, ex ordine et regulari

[1] Possibly by our author himself. | [2] *præter principis voluntatem*] om. B.

A.D. 1166.

On the force of the archbishop's excommunication.

" 'jure me nequaquam involvit.' Videte ne contra juris formam vobis jus dicere videamini. Cavete ne, si alias legis auxilium implorare velitis, vobis opponatur in jure, Frustra legem invocat qui legem impugnat. Si reprehenditis pastoris judicium, in legem profecto committitis. Erubescit quidem lex filios patrum castigatores statuere. Rursus si contenditis trahi ad culpam archiepiscopi, quod in vos absentem, non vocatum, non contumacem, sententiam præcipitaverit, cum non essetis in culpa; licet aliud delictum non præcesserit, incurritis ex ipsa reprehensione delictum, quodque prius omni vacuum erat a culpa, e vestigio fit in ipsa reclamatione culpabile. Restat igitur, amice karissime, multo esse consultius amplecti sententiam cum humilitate, quam assumere tumorem superbiæ ad perniciem plurimorum. Malo enim exemplo populus semper ad pejora proclivior facilius incitatur ad pœnam, quam bonæ conversationis odore pertrahi valeat ad coronam."

Letter of archbishop Thomas to the king.

" Regi Anglorum Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus.[1]

" Desiderio desideravi videre faciem vestram, et loqui vobiscum. Multum quidem propter me, sed maxime propter vos, ut visa facie mea reduceretis ad memoriam servitia quæ dum essem in obsequio vestro exhibui vobis devote juxta animi mei conscientiam, sic me Deus adjuvet in examine ultimo, quando omnes astabunt ante tribunal ipsius recepturi prout gesserunt in corpore sive bonum sive malum, et ut moveremini pietate super me quem oportet mendicando vivere inter alienos, licet tamen Dei gratia cum habundantia victualia habeamus. Estque nobis consolatio multa quod dicit apostolus, 'Omnes qui pie volunt vivere in 'Christo persecutionem patientur'; et propheta, 'Non vidi 'justum derelictum, nec semen ejus quærentem panem.'

The archbishop defines his own duties to the king.

Propter vos tribus ex causis, tum quia dominus meus estis, tum quia rex meus, tum quia filius meus[2] spiritualis. Eo quod dominus, debeo et offero vobis consilium meum, quod tamen debet episcopus, secundum honorem Dei et sanctæ ecclesiæ domino. Eo quod rex, teneor vobis ad reverentiam et commonitionem. Eo quod filius, officii ratione ad castigationem et cohortationem.[3] Inunguntur reges tribus in locis, in capite, in pectore, in brachiis. Quod significat gloriam,

---

[1] This letter is No. 179 in Dr. Giles's edition of the letters of S. Thomas. It is given also by Hoveden, i. 233.

[2] *meus*] om. B.

[3] *cohortationem*] Ten lines of the letter as given by Hoveden are here omitted.

" sanctitatem[1] et fortitudinem. Qui antiquis temporibus jus-" tificationes Dei non observabant, et prævaricati sunt mandata " Ejus, his sublata est gloria, scientia, fortitudo, et eorum " generationi, exemplo Pharaonis, Saulis, Salomonis, Nabugo-" donosor, aliorumque quamplurium. Qui vero post delictum " humiliaverunt se Domino, his Dei gratia accessit cum omnibus " supradictis habundantius, perfectius, sicut David, Ezechiæ, " aliisque quamplurimis.[2] Audiat itaque, si placet, dominus " meus consilium fidelis sui, commonitionem episcopi sui, " castigationem patris sui, ne cum scismaticis de cætero ha-" beat aliquam familiaritatem vel communionem, nec cum eis " aliquid contrahat. Notum est enim toti fere mundo quam " devote, quam honorifice dominum papam receperitis, quantum " ecclesiam Romanam foveritis et honoraveritis, quantumque " etiam dominus papa et ecclesia Romana personam vestram " dilexerint, honoraverint atque in quibuscunque potuerint " secundum Deum vos exaudierint.[3] Memorque sitis profes-" sionis quam fecistis et posuistis scriptam super altare apud " Westmonasterium, de servanda ecclesiæ Dei libertate, quando " consecratus fuistis et unctus in regem. Ecclesiam itaque " Cantuariensem, a qua promotionem et consecrationem ac-" cepistis, in eum statum restituatis et dignitatem, in quibus " fuit temporibus prædecessorum vestrorum et nostrorum. " Alioquin pro certo sciatis quia divinam severitatem et ul-" tionem sentietis."

A.D. 1166. Examples of royal humiliation.

He begs the king to remember his coronation charter.

" Thomæ[4] Cantuariensi archiepiscopo venerabili patri et do-" mino, suffraganei ejusdem ecclesiæ episcopi, et personæ per " eorundem dioeceses locis variis constitutæ, debitam subjec-" tionem et obedientiam. Quæ vestro, pater, in longinquo " discessu inopinata rei ipsius novitate turbata sunt, vestra " sperabamus humilitate et prudentia, in pacis pristinæ sere-" nitatem co-operante gratia revocari. Erat quidem nobis " solatio, quod post discessum vestrum ad id fama pervenit " divulgante, vos scilicet in transmarinis agentem nil altum " sapere, vos in dominum nostrum regem aut regnum ejus " nulla machinatione insurgere, sed sponte susceptum pau-" pertatis onus cum modestia sustinere, lectioni et orationi

Letter of the suffragans of Canterbury to the archbishop.

[1] *sanctitatem*] scientiam, Hoveden.

[2] *quamplurimis*] A passage of 26 lines omitted.

[3] *exaudierint*] From this point the letter, as here given, is a mere abstract.

[4] See this letter in Hoveden, i. 262; Epp. Gilb. Foliot, ed. Giles, S. T. C., vi. 185. It was probably conveyed by Ralph de Diceto himself.

A.D. 1166.

Letter of the suffragans of Canterbury expostulating with the archbishop.

" insistere, præteritorumque jacturam temporum jejuniis, vigiliis lacrimisque redimere, et spiritualibus occupatum studiis ad perfectum beatis virtutum incrementis ascendere. Ad pacis bona reformanda vos studiis hujusmodi gaudebamus insistere. E quibus spes erat vos in cor domini nostri regis hanc posse gratiam desuper evocare, ut vobis iram regia pietate remitteret, et illatas in decessu, et ex discessu vestro injurias ad cor de cætero non revocaret. Erat amicis vestris et benivolis ad ipsum aliquis, dum hæc de vobis audirentur, accessus, et ob reconciliandum pro vobis supplicantes benigne sustinuit. Jam vero quorundam relatione didicimus, quod ad memoriam anxie revocamus, vos scilicet in eum comminatorium emisisse, quo salutationem omittitis, quo non ad obtentum gratiæ consilium precesve porrigitis, quo non amicum quid sentitis aut scribitis, sed intentatis minis interdictum aut præscisionis elogium in eum jam dicendum fore proponitis multa severitate. Quod si quam dure dictum est tam fuerit severe completum, quæ turbata sunt non jam speramus ad pacem redigi, sed in perhenne quoddam odium et inexorabile pertimescimus inflammari.[1]

They remind him of the king's kindness to him.

" Insedit alte cunctorum mentibus, quam benignus dominus rex vobis exstiterit. In quam vos gloriam ab exili provexerit, et in familiarem gratiam tam lata vos mente susceperit, ut dominationis suæ loca quæ ab boreali oceano Pirenæum usque porrecta sunt, adeo potestati vestræ cuncta subjecerit, ut in his solum hos beatos reputaret opinio, qui in vestris poterant oculis complacere. Et ne vestram gloriam mobilitas mundana posset concutere, vos in eis quæ Dei sunt voluit immobiliter radicare. Et dissuadente matre sua, et regno reclamante, ecclesia Dei quoad licuit suspirante et ingemiscente, vos in eam qua potiti estis dignitatem modis omnibus studuit sullimare, sperans se de cætero regnare feliciter, et ope vestra et consilio summa securitate gaudere.[2]

They appeal against his sentence.

Ne vero in dominum regem, et regnum ejus, ne in nos, et commissas nobis ecclesias et parochias, in domini papæ dampnum sanctæque Romanæ ecclesiæ dedecus et detrimentum, nostræque confusionis augmentum manum vestram temptetis extendere, remedium appellationis nobis opponimus; et qui contra metum gravaminum in facie ecclesiæ viva jamdudum voce ad dominum papam appellavimus, iterato jam nunc ad ipsum scripto etiam appellamus,

---

[1] *inflammari*] Eighteen lines omitted; cf. Hoveden, i. 263.

[2] *gaudere*] Two pages of remonstrance omitted; Hoveden, i. 264, 265.

"et appellationis terminum diem Ascensionis Dominicæ assig- "namus; quanta quidem possumus devotione supplicantes, ut "inito salubriori consilio vestris ac nostris laboribus expensis- "que parcatis, causamque vestram in hoc ut remedium habere "queat, ponere studeatis. Valere vos optamus in Domino, "pater."

A.D. 1166. They fix the day of appeal.

"Thomas[1] Cantuariensis ecclesiæ humilis minister G. Lun- "doniensi episcopo, quod semel hoc iterum, sic transire per "bona temporalia, ut non amittat æterna. Mirandum et "vehementer stupendum, virum prudentem, sacris litteris "eruditum, præsertim religionem habitu præferentem, adeo "manifeste, ne dicam, irreverenter et timore Dei postposito, "adversari veritatem, justitiæ resistere, et ad omne fas nefas- "que confundendum, statum sanctæ ecclesiæ, quam Ipse fun- "davit Altissimus, velle evertere.[2] Quid enim aliud est primo "recognoscere debitam nobis subjectionem et subjectioni co- "hærentem obedientiam promittere, demum ne obedire debeas "ad appellationem convolare? 'Numquid apud me sunt est "'et non,' dicit apostolus? sed neque apud apostoli deberent "esse discipulum.[3] Sperasne te habiturum defensorem ad non "obediendum, illum, qui vindicandi omnem inobedientiam et "officium accepit et præceptum? Male est sapere de eo et "ipsum graviter offendere. Poterant te retardare ab hujus- "modi præsumptione quas jam passus es prima et secunda "repulsio: viva vox quippe tua Senonis primum, et deinde "tuæ litteræ ad persuadendum compositæ expertæ sunt, quam "firmiter stet, quam sit vicarius Petri, quem non precibus, "non donis, non comminationibus vel promissis movere po- "tuisti. Sed tertio attentandus est ut Domini sui exemplo "tertia a temptatione[4] triumphum reportet.[5] Quis pater videt "filium aberrare et tacet? Quis virga non percutit ne gla- "dium incurrat? Desperat pater de filio quem comminatione "non corripit vel flagello. Absit autem ut tecum sentiamus, "dominum nostrum impatientem correptionis ad extermina- "tionem apostasiæ lapsurum. Non enim Patris cœlestis plan-

Letter of the archbishop to the bishop of London in answer.

2 Cor. i. 17.

S. Matt. xv. 13.

---

[1] This letter, which is an answer to the last, is given by Hoveden, i. 256.

[2] After *evertere* thirteen lines are omitted; see Hoveden, i. 257. Amongst these occurs probably a mention of our author, "Sed de "litteris tuis quas per archidiaco- "num tuum destinatas accepi, talia "collegi; neque enim de spinis "uvas aut ficus de tribulis colligere "potui."

[3] *discipulum*] Eleven lines omitted.

[4] *a temptatione*] attemptatione, B.

[5] *reportet*] Nineteen lines omitted. Hoveden, i. 258.

A.D. 1166. Letter of Thomas to Gilbert Foliot.

"tatio eradicabitur. Navem concutit sævissima tempestas, "clavum teneo et ad somnum me vocas? Congeris et statuis "ante oculos nostros beneficia nobis a domino nostro rege "collata, et de exili commemoras me ad summa provectum. "Ut autem his aliquantisper respondeam, in insipientia mea "tamen; de quo exili putas? si tempus quo me ministerio "suo præstituit[1] respicias, archidiaconatus Cantuariensis, præ-"positura Beverlaci, plurimæ ecclesiæ, præbendæ nonnullæ, "alia etiam non pauca quæ nominis mei erant possessio tunc "temporis, adeo tenuem ut dicis quantum ad ea quæ mundi "sunt contradicunt me fuisse. Quod si ad generis mei radi-"cem et progenitores meos intenderis, cives quidem fuerunt "Lundonienses, in medio concivium suorum habitantes sine "querela, nec omnino infimi. Sed ut aliquando mundi tene-"bris semotis judicemur a lumine veritatis, quid gloriosius "nasci de mediocribus vel etiam de infimis, an de mundi "magnatibus et honoratis, cum dicat apostolus, 'Inhonestiora "'membra nostri corporis abundantiori circumdamus honore?' 1 Cor. xii. 23.
"'Stemmata quid faciunt?' ait gentilis poeta. Quid habet Juv. viii. 1.
"dicere Christianus episcopus et religiosus? Sed fortassis de "exiguitatis meæ memoria notam confusionis mihi obicere "voluisti.[2] Potuit autem fieri aliquas personas ecclesiasticas "ad eandem promotionem ut solet aspirantes suspirasse cum "se sentirent ab ea quam conceperant spe decidere, qui et "hodie fortassis in ultionem sui casus præsentis dissensionis "auctores sunt et consiliarii. Sed væ illi per quem scanda-"lum venit.[3] S. Matt. xviii. 7. Illud quod dicis, dominum regem paratum esse "ad satisfaciendum, quo sensu intelligis? Illos, quorum se "Deus dicit Patrem et Judicem, orphanos, viduas, pupillos, "innocentes, et omnino hujus quæ nos movet controversiæ "ignaros, vides proscribi, et taces? Clericos exterminari, et "non reclamas? Alios bonis suis spoliari et contumeliis affici, "et non contradicis? servientes meos in vincula conici et "teneri, et obmutescis? Matris tuæ Cantuariensis ecclesiæ "bona diripi, et non resistis? Me patrem tuum gladios cer-"vici meæ jamjam imminentes vix evasisse, et non doles? "sed quod deterius est, cum persecutoribus meis et etiam in "me, et Dei et ecclesiæ ipsius, et hoc non in occulto, stare "non erubescis? Estne hoc satisfacere, perpetrata mala non "corrigere et malis deteriora de die in diem adicere? Sed "fortassis illud in contrarium intelligis, ut sit satisfacere,

He gives an account of his promotion and origin.

Strong remonstrance against supineness.

---

[1] *præstituit*] præfecit, B.

[2] *voluisti*] Twenty-four lines omitted. Hoveden, i. 259.

[3] *venit*] Eleven lines omitted. Hoveden, i. 260.

A.D. 1166.

" voluntati eorum deservire, secundum illud, 'Inebriabo sagittas " 'meas eorum sanguine.' Sed dicis mihi, 'Pater mi, de qui- " 'bus me calumpniaris absolvo me paucis. Tunicæ meæ timeo.' " Verum est, fili mi, et nimis verum quod respondes, et ideo " gladium non habes. Quod enim scribis ipsum paratum stare " judicio regni sui, quasi condigna satisfactio sit hæc;—quis " est in terra vel etiam in cœlo qui de divina dispositione " præsumat judicare? Humana judicentur, divina penitus " inconcussa relinquantur. Quanto melius, frater mi, illi salu- " brius, tibi securius, intimares ei et persuadere modis omnibus " elaborares, voluntatem Dei, de conservanda pace ecclesiæ suæ, " de non appetendis his quæ concessa non sunt ejus amminis- " trationi, de honorandis sacerdotibus Dei, nec qui sunt at- " tendat, sed cujus servi sunt.[1] Sciat ergo et intelligat te " intimante dominus meus rex, quia qui dominatur in regno " hominum, sed et angelorum, duas sub se potestates ordina- " vit, principes et sacerdotes, unam terrenam, alteram spiri- " tualem; unam ministrantem, alteram præminentem; unam " cui potentiam concessit, alteram cui reverentiam exhiberi " voluit. Qui vero his vel illis de jure suo subtrahit, Dei " ordinationi resistit.[2] Nec præsumat dominus noster rex " judices suos velle judicare. Terrenis enim potestatibus non " sunt commissæ claves regni cœlorum, sed sacerdotio.[3] Illud " etiam te suggerente commemoretur domino nostro, dignum " memoria et imitatione, quod in ecclesiastica hystoria legi- " mus de Constantino imperatore. Cui cum oblatæ fuissent " scriptæ accusationes contra episcopos, accusationis quidem " libellos accepit, et accusatos convocans in eorum aspectu " eosdem incidit, dicens, 'Vos dii estis a vero Deo constituti, " 'ite et inter vos causas vestras disponite, quia dignum non " 'est ut nos homines judicemus deos.' O magnum imperato- " rem, O discrete regnantem in terra, quæ aliena sunt non " usurpantem, et regnum æternum in cœlo promerentem! " Studeat itaque dominus noster rex tantum, tam discretum, " tam felicem imitari principem, cujus et memoria laudabilis " frequentatur in terris, et vita perpetua et gloriosa habetur " in cœlis."[4]

He rejects all false pleas.

Theory of the sacerdotal and secular power.

Rom. xiii. 2.

Example of Constantine recommended to the king.

Ruffinus, x. 2.

Alienor regina peperit filium quem vocavit Johannem.

Birth of John.

---

[1] *sunt*] Six lines omitted.
[2] *resistit*] Seven lines omitted.
[3] *sacerdotio*] Four lines omitted.
[4] *cœlis*] Eighteen lines omitted. Hoveden, i. 262.

A.D. 1166.

Letter of archbishop Thomas to his suffragans.

"Thomas archiepiscopus suffraganeis suis.[1]

"Fraternitatis vestræ scriptum, quod tamen de prudentiæ "vestræ communi consilio non facile credimus emanasse, nu- "per ex insperato suscepimus, cujus continentia plus videtur "habere mordacitatis quam solatii, et utinam magis esset "emissum de pietatis studio, de caritatis affectu, quam de "obedientia voluntatis. Caritas enim non quærit quæ sua "sunt, sed quæ Jesu Christi. Erat quippe de jure officii ves- "tri, si veritatem habet evangelium, quod quidem habet, si "recte agitis ejus officium, si fideliter ejus negotium geritis "cujus repræsentatis figuram, magis eum timere qui potest "corpus et animam mittere in gehennam, quam qui potest S. Matt. x. 28. "corpus occidere, magis obedire Deo quam hominibus, patri "quam domino, ejus exemplo qui factus est Patri obediens "usque ad mortem.[2] Unum vobis dico, ut salva pace vestra "loquar, multo tempore silui expectans si forte inspiraret "vobis Dominus ut resumeretis vires, qui conversi estis re- "trorsum in die belli, si forte saltem aliquis ex omnibus "vobis ascenderet ex adverso, opponeret se murum pro domo "Israel, simularet saltem inire certamen contra eos qui non "cessant cotidie exprobrare agmini Dei. Expectavi, non est "qui ascendat. Sustinui, non est qui se opponat.[3] Judicet "ergo Deus inter me et vos, et requirat ecclesiæ confusionem "de manibus vestris, quam, velit nolit mundus, necesse est "firmiter stare in verbo Domini in quo fundata est, donec "veniat hora ejus ut transeat de hoc mundo ad Patrem.[4] Ut "itaque veniamus ad rem. Dicite fratres, exciditne a me- "moria vestra quid ageretur mecum et cum ecclesia Dei "dum adhuc essem in Anglia, quid in exitu meo, quid post "exitum, quid etiam agatur diebus istis, quid maxime apud "Norhamtunam, cum iterum judicaretur Christus in persona "mea ante tribunal præsidis, cum artaretur Cantuariensis ob "injurias sibi et ecclesiæ Dei passim illatas et sine delectu "Romanam appellare audientiam?[5] Quis umquam vidit, audi- "vit Cantuariensem judicari, condemnari, cogi ad fidejussio- "nem in curia regis a suis præcipue suffraganeis?[6] Si nobis "recedentibus et in discessu nostro turbata sunt prout dicitis "omnia, sibi imputet qui causam dedit, qui hoc procuravit.

His patience.

He reminds them of the circumstances of the case.

---

[1] See Epistt. S. Thomæ, ed. Giles, iii. 170.

[2] *mortem*] Twelve lines omitted.

[3] *opponat*] About a page and a half of Dr. Giles's edition are omitted here.

[4] *Patrem*] Eight lines omitted.

[5] *audientiam*] Three lines omitted.

[6] *suffraganeis*] A page omitted.

"Facientis proculdubio culpa hæc est, non recedentis, perse- A.D. 1166.
"quentis, non declinantis injurias.[1] Nobis adhuc de more ex- Measures taken
"pectantibus in curia si forte nobis aliquid opponeretur, ad against him
"nostros accessum est officiales. Interdictum est eis, ne in by the king.
"aliquo nobis sub temporalibus obedirent, ne nobis vel nostris
"quicquam ministraretur ab ipsis citra mandatum regis et
"conscientiam.[2] Proscripti et ipsi clerici cum laicis, viri cum
"mulieribus, mulieres cum infantibus in cunabulis. Addicta Confiscation
"sunt fisco bona ecclesiæ, patrimonium Crucifixi; pars pecuniæ of the goods of the
"conversa est in usus regios, pars in usus episcopi Lundoni- church.
"ensi.[3] Quod si ita est, exigimus ab eo, præcipientes ei in
"virtute obedientiæ, quatinus infra xl. dies post istarum sus-
"ceptionem litterarum, quicquid inde tulit vel in usus ecclesiæ
"suæ conversum est, remota omni occasione et dilatione, infra
"tempus prænominatum in integrum nobis restituat.[4] Nolite
"fratres, nolite jura regni et ecclesiæ confundere. Discretæ
"quidem sunt potestates istæ, quarum una vim et potestatem
"sortitur ex alia. Legite scripturas et invenietis quot et qui Awful
"periere reges, qui nisi sunt sibi sacerdotale officium usur- example of kings who
"pare. Provideat ergo discretio vestra, ne ob istam pressura have usurped the
"divina vos atterat injuriam, quam si venerit non fugietis de priestly
"facili.[5] Consulite conscientias vestras, advertite formam elec- office.
"tionis, consensum omnium ad quos spectabat electio, assen-
"sum principis per filium suum, et per eos qui ad hoc missi
"sunt cum omnibus regni primatibus. Si aliquis eorum con-
"tradixit, si reclamavit vel in aliquo, loquatur qui novit, dicat
"qui conscius est. Si vero turbatus inde fuerit aliquis, non
"dicat pro sua molestia toti regno et ecclesiæ factam fuisse
"injuriam. Litteras quoque domini regis et omnium vestrum
"diligentius attendite, postulantes nobis cum multa instantia
"pallium et obtinuisse.[6] Appellatis ut dicitis. Numquid hac Argument
"appellatione potestis suspendere auctoritatem nostram, ne in on the
"vos aut ecclesias vestras severitatis disciplinam exerceamus, appeal.
"si delicti enormitas hoc exigit? Advertite diligentius si hæc
"sit legitima appellatio, et quæ sit hujus appellationis forma.
"Scimus quod omnis appellans aut suo nomine appellat, aut
"alieno: si suo, aut gravamine quod ei infertur vel quod
"timet sibi inferri. Certum tenemus quod nullum gravamen
"vobis, Deo gratias, adhuc a nobis illatum est, unde debeatis
"ad appellationis confugere remedium; nec credimus vos ad

[1] *injurias*] Seven lines omitted.

[2] *conscientiam*] Six lines omitted.

[3] Here the letter as given by Giles, changes to a direct address to Foliot; S. T. C., iii. 175.

[4] *restituat*] About a page omitted

[5] *facili*] Fifteen lines omitted.

[6] *obtinuisse*] Nearly six pages omitted.

A.D. 1166.

Argument on the appeal of the suffragans.

" præsens habere causam adversum nos aliquam, quæ specia-
" liter vestra sit. Si contra metum gravaminum, ne quid de
" cætero statuam in vos vel ecclesias vestras, videte si sit iste
" metus qui debeat venire in homines constantissimos, si hæc
" sit appellatio quæ debeat suspendere omnem auctoritatem
" et potestatem nostram quam habemus in vos et ecclesias
" vestras.[1] Si alieno appellastis nomine; aut domini regis, aut
" alterius. Si non alterius, domini regis. Si domini regis,
" certe nosse debuerat discretio vestra quoniam introductæ sunt
" appellationes ad propulsandam injuriam, non ad inferendam,
" ad sullevandos oppressos, non amplius opprimendos.[2] Præ-
" terea discretionem vestram latere non credimus, quoniam non
" solent audiri appellantes, nisi quorum interest, aut quibus
" mandatum est, aut qui negotium gerunt alienum. Interest-
" ne vestra ut non coherceantur delinquentes adversus eccle-
" siam? Absit. Immo certe contrarium. Si vero qui subvertit
" ecclesiæ libertates, qui bona ipsius invadit et occupat ac in
" suos convertit usus, in sui defensionem minime super hoc
" auditur appellans, multo minus et pro eo appellantes. Ergo
" nec domino regi suffragatur appellatio a vobis pro ipso edita,
" nec videtur prodesse pro ipso emissa; unde sicut in hoc casu
" appellare non potest nec mandare, sic nec vos super hoc
" mandatum ab ipso suscipere.[3] Non tamen hoc ideo dicimus
" quod quicquam circa personam domini regis, vel terram
" suam, circa personas et ecclesias vestras, unquam inordinate
" fecerimus, vel per Dei misericordiam facturi sumus: crede-
" bamus siquidem si recte intelligitis, si cupitis utiliter ecclesiæ
" subvenire, de nimis ordinata et longa patientia magis a
" vobis culpari, quam de severitatis mora commendari. Mora
" enim trahit ad se periculum, quia nimis ordinata patientia
" plus habet remissionis quam commendationis, plus vitii
" quam virtutis; et inde est quod breviter vobis dicimus et
" affirmamus constanter, dominum nostrum regem nullatenus
" injuste fore gravatum, si adversus eum, a domino papa et a
" nobis ipsis legitime litteris et nunciis sæpissime conventum,
" satisfacere cum posset nolentem, severitatis censura pro-
" cesserit."[4]

Danger of delay.

---

[1] *vestras*] Four lines omitted; S. T. C., iii. 184.

[2] *opprimendos*] Thirty-six lines omitted.

[3] *suscipere*] Here the letter ends in MSS. B. and D. Thirty-five lines of Giles's text are omitted here.

[4] *processerit*] About three more pages of Dr. Giles's text are omitted. MS. C. adds " Obiit " Robertus abbas ecclesiæ Sancti " Albani xviii^us." MS. B. inserts the letter given under 1167 below, " Alexander papa," &c. See p. 330, note 1.

A.D. 1166. Ralph of Fougeres conspires against Henry.

Radulfus Filigeriarum[1] dominus principes Armoricorum ex maxima parte suam traxit in partem, regem Anglorum inquietaturus. Sed cum ipse Radulfus viribus esset longe inferior, et confœderati sibi, regis videntes exercitum, solum metu tabescerent, cum a Francis etiam ipse consilium et auxilium expetisset et expectasset sicut promiserant, nec in aliquo subvenissent, coactus est ad deditionem; turris ejus subversa est, milites intus capti. Quæ congregaverat, exercitui regis in direptionem cesserunt.

Mission of William of Pavia and John of Naples.

Willelmus Papiensis, Johannes Neapolitanus cardinales a latere summi pontificis destinati, regem et archiepiscopum convocaverunt apud Munmirail; XIII[a]. et licet archiepiscopus eos in partem regis inclinatiores sensisset, rem tamen in judicium ea ratione deduci concessit, illis publice residentibus, ut secundum ordinem ecclesiasticum, tam sibi quam suis prius fieret ablatorum in integrum restitutio. Nec enim spoliatus subire judicium voluit, nec cogi potuit aliqua ratione. Quod cum illi nec vellent nec possent, infecto negotio redierunt ad curiam.

Failure of the mission.

Lewis lodges Thomas at S. Colombe's at Sens.

Ludovicus rex Francorum venit Pontiniacum, et ne quid in Anglia fieret in perniciem ordinis Cisterciensis, Thomam archiepiscopum, cui jam per biennium Pontiniacenses omnem exhibuerant humanitatem, Senonis secum deduxit, et in expendiis sufficientiam apud Sanctam Columbam invenit per iiii. annos.

A collection for Palestine.

Collectam Jerosolimitanorum usibus destinandam truncus in singulis deputatus ecclesiis adacta sera conclusit, præstito per Angliam publice sacramento, denarios quatuor a singulis marcatis emungens.

A.D. 1167. Robert bishop of Lincoln dies, Jan. 26.

MCLXVII. Robertus episcopus Lincolniensis, vir humilitatis magnæ, migravit ad Dominum vii. kalendas Februarii.

---

[1] *Filigeriarum*] Felgeriarum, B., D Felgenarum, Twysden. The order of the following paragraphs in B. is this· (1) Willelmus Papiensis; (2) Ludovicus rex; (3) Collectam; (4) Radulfus. The last is inserted in the margin of A. and C.

A.D. 1167.

Privilege of the church of Canterbury.

"Alexander papa Thomæ Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.[1]

"Prædecessorum nostrorum felicis recordationis Pascalis et "Eugenii Romanorum pontificum vestigiis inhærentes, tam "tibi quam tuis legitimis successoribus, Cantuariensis ecclesiæ "primatum ita plenum concedimus, sicut a Lanfranco et An-"selmo aliisque ipsorum prædecessoribus constat fuisse pos-"sessum. Quicquid etiam dignitatis seu potestatis eidem "sanctæ Cantuariensi seu Dorobernensi ecclesiæ pertinere cog-"noscitur, præsentis scripti pagina confirmamus; sicut a "temporibus beati Augustini prædecessores tuos habuisse "apostolicæ sedis auctoritate constat."

Marriage of Henry of Saxony and Matilda.

Matildis filia regis nupsit Henrico duci Saxonico. Comes de Arundel, comes de Struguil, illi præbuerunt ducatum, et alii plures.[2]

Chaumont burnt.

Lewis burns Andeli.

Rex Francorum et rex Anglorum facti sunt discordes. A Normannis Calvus Mons vicinus Gisorz succensus est. Multi milites, multi cives ibi capti sunt. In ultionem hujus facti rex Francorum villam campestrem Rothomagensis archiepiscopi, scilicet Andeli, combussit, et ipsa die rediit in Franciam, amissis in itinere plusquam mille de suis. In Pertico postmodum multi

---

[1] This letter is given more fully in MS. B. and placed after the long letter of Thomas to the suffragans above; beginning thus, "Frater in "Christo karissime Thoma Cantuariensis archiepiscope, de fratrum nostrorum consilio tuis justis "petitionibus debita benignitate "duximus annuendum atque prædecessorum &c.," as in the text. It is, however, even thus only an abridgment of the letter which is printed entire in Wilkins' Concilia, i. 446, from the Register A. of Christ Church, Canterbury. There the date is given, April 8, 1167, in the eighth year of Alexander III.; indiction 14: but Dr. Jaffé remarks that the chronological marks are corrupt, and refers it to 1166, possibly out of deference for the text of Twysden, who here follows MS. B. But the corruption is not in the chronological marks, but in the names of the witnesses, and the letter may be referred to 1167 as well as to 1166.

[2] Here MS. C. inserts "Simon "abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani "xix^us. Hoc anno, die Ascensionis "Domini, xi°. kalendas Junii, in "capitulo Sancti Albani, præsente "Roberto comite Leicestriæ totius "Angliæ justitiario et assensum "regis Henrici senioris præbente, "unanimi omnium qui aderant con-"sensu et consona voluntate, elec-"tus est dominus Symon monachus "ejusdem monasterii in abbatem "ipsius ecclesiæ, et ab episcopo "Lundoniensi Gilleberto, profes-"sione prius sanctæ Romanæ ec-"clesiæ facta, eadem die Ascensio-"nis in ecclesia beati Albani, ante "majus altare solempniter bene-"dictus."

milites Francorum capti sunt a Normannis; tandem duo reges pacificati sunt. Ricardus siquidem filius regis Anglorum, dux Aquitaniæ, filiam regis Francorum accepit in sponsam. A.D. 1167. Betrothal of Richard to the daughter of Lewis.

Comes Patricius in Aquitania, princeps militiæ regis Anglorum, lancea confossus obiit. Patrick earl of Salisbury killed.

MCLXVIII. Alexandro papæ scriptum est in hæc verba.[1] A.D. 1168.

"Cum clerum plurimum et principes imperator ad concilium "suum in sollennitate Pentecostes adunasset, sabbato et ii^a. "feria tractatum est de pace et concordia inter vos et eum "reformanda. Ad hæc superveniens Coloniensis electus in "medio omnium protestatus est; 'Domine imperator, consilia "'quæ adversus papam Alexandrum huc usque captastis ad "'destitutionem ejus nichil tibi profuerunt, nichil ei nocue-"'runt. Sed si consilio meo adquieveritis, in promptu erit "'et Alexandri dejectio et papæ nostri Pascalis exaltatio; si "'vos scilicet Alexandri obedientiam et eo decedente cujus-"'que de parte ejus electi abjuraveritis.' Placuit imperatori "forma consilii: tunc ait Magdaburgensis; 'Si dominus Co-"'loniensis primus omnium abjuraverit Alexandrum, et jura-"'verit quod ordinationem suam et consecrationem a Pascali "'recipiet, de secreto animi sui certiores nos reddet.' Ad-"quievit imperator. Cumque Coloniensis ita primo jurare "jussus detrectaret, vehementer accensus imperator ait; 'En "'apparet quod tanquam proditor et traditor operatus sis "'adversus me et animam meam. En apparet quod sanum "'consilium michi dedit Maguntinus, defuncto Octoviano, "'dicens, quod cum me Dominus eo mortuo a periculo maximo "'liberasset, caverem michi ne me iterum periculo consimili "'involverem; unde tibi missis mandatis scripsi, ne me in-"'consulto de substituendi pontificis electione quicquam trac-"'tares; tu vero clam me auctoritate tua istum elegisti.' "Tandem Coloniensis primus et absolute juravit in supradic-"tam formam; postmodum imperator obedientiam vestram, et "cujusque de parte vestra electi abjuravit."

Account of a council held in Germany.

The archbishop of Cologne advises the emperor but fears to abjure the pope,

Abjuration of the emperor and his court.

"Alexandro papa G. Lundoniensis episcopus.[2]

"Mandatum vestrum, pater in Christo karissime, debita vene-"ratione suscipientes, ilico filium vestrum dominumque nos- Letter of Gilbert Foliot to the pope.

[1] This is an abridgment of the letter given in full among the letters of S. Thomas, ed. Giles, S. T. C., iv. 264; "Alexandro papæ quidam 'amicus suus." Part of it is separately printed in S. T. C., ii. 263–266.

[2] This is a mere abridgment of the letter No. 174, of Gilbert Foliot, S. T. C., v. 238.

A.D. 1168. Letter of Gilbert Foliot to the pope.

" trum karissimum, illustrem regem Anglorum adivimus, et " juxta vestri formam mandati diligenter et intente conveni- " mus. Ipse vero correptionem vestram cum multa gratiarum " actione suscipiens, multa animi temperantia multaque mo- " destia consequenter respondit ad singula: in primis asserens " mentem suam a vobis se nullatenus avertisse, nec id unquam " propositi mente concepisse, quin dum vos sibi patrem rebus " ipsis cognoverit, vos ut patrem diligat, et sanctam Romanam " ecclesiam ut matrem veneretur et foveat, et sacris jussionibus " vestris, salva sibi sua regnique sui dignitate, humiliter ob- " temperet et obediat. Verum in appellationibus, ex antiqua " regni sui institutione, id sibi vendicat honoris et oneris ut " ob civilem causam nullus clericorum regni sui, ejusdem " regni fines exeat, nisi an ipsius auctoritate et mandato jus " suum optinere queat prius experiendo cognoscat. Quod si " non optinuerit, ad excellentiam vestram ipso in nullo recla- " mante cum volet quilibet appellabit."[1]

Excommunication of Alan Neville.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus excommunicavit Alanum de Nuvile, quia Willelmum capellanum archiepiscopi tenebat in vinculis.[2]

Condition of Brittany.

Ex quo reges in Minore Britannia desierunt præesse, duo comites in eisdem locis principari cœperunt. Sed quoniam "omnis potestas impatiens" semper "consortis "erit," sese variis sæpe dissensionibus afflixerunt. Conanus tandem jure successorio nactus comitatum utrumque, dum in fata concederet, ex sorore regis Scottorum filiam reliquit hæredem. Quam rex Anglorum filio suo Gaufrido uxorem accipiens, et in pace passim per Britanniam statuenda studiosus existens, clerum terræ illius sibi conciliavit et populum.

Lucan, Phars. i. 92.

Conan leaves a daughter, whom Henry marries to his son Geoffrey.

A.D. 1169. The pope to the king.

MCLXIX. "Alexander papa regi Anglorum.[3]

"Quam paterne et benigne regiam sæpius excellentiam con- " venerimus, et per litteras et nuntios frequentius exortati

---

[1] *appellabit*] MS. B. continues " in quo si juri vel honori vestro " præjudicatur in aliquo, id se to- " tius ecclesiæ regni sui consilio " correcturum in proximo juvante " Domino pollicetur."

[2] *Thomas . . . vinculis*] om. B.

[3] See Epistt. S. Thomæ, ed. Giles, S. T. C., iv. 130: about half the letter is here given. The date is " Beneventi, xi. kalendas Junii." See Jaffé, Regesta Pontificum, p. 716, who places the letter in 1168; the pope was at Benevento in June in both 1168 and 1169.

A.D. 1169.

"fuerimus, ut venerabilem fratrem nostrum Thomam Cantuariensem archiepiscopum tibi reconciliare deberes, ac sibi ac suis ecclesias cum cæteris ablatis restituere, sullimitatis tuæ prudentia nequaquam ignorat, cum id fere toti Christianitati publicum et manifestum existat. Unde quoniam in hoc hucusque proficere mimine potuimus, nec animi tui motum blandis et lenibus emollire, tristes et dolentes efficimur, et nos spe et fiducia nostra frustrari dolemus, præsertim cum te sicut karissimum filium in Domino diligamus, cui in hoc grave periculum imminere videmus. Duritiam itaque tuam sicut hactenus contra justitiam et salutem nostram non duximus ulterius supportandam, nec præfato archiepiscopo os de cætero aliqua ratione claudemus, quin officii sui debitum libere consequatur, et suam et ecclesiæ suæ sibi commissæ injuriam ecclesiasticæ severitatis gladio ulciscatur."

He has borne too long with the king's persecution of Thomas,

and will no longer restrain the archbishop from issuing ecclesiastical censures.

Gilebertus Lundoniensis episcopus, ad sententiam archiepiscopi declinandam, circa initium Quadragesimæ convocato clero et populo in ecclesia Sancti Pauli,[1] Romanæ sedis audientiam appellavit. Verum Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, super hoc minime certioratus, ipsum in die Palmarum apud Claramvallem sollenniter excommunicavit.

Bishop Gilbert of London solemnly appeals, but is excommunicated,

"Thomas[2] Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, G. Lundoniensi episcopo, utinam vero fratri, declinare a malo et facere bonum. Excessus vestros dum licuit supportavimus; et utinam mansuetudo patientiæ nostræ, quæ nobis supra modum dampnosa extitit, in totius ecclesiæ perniciem non redundet. Sed quia patientia nostra semper abusi estis, neque dominum papam neque nos in verbo salutis vestræ voluistis audire, sed obduratio vestra semper in deteriora excrevit, vos, urgente necessitate officii, et ratione juris persuadente, ex justis et manifestis causis anathematis sententia percellentes excommunicavimus, et a Corpore Christi, quod est ecclesia, donec condigne satisfaciatis, amputavimus. Præcipimus ergo in virtute obedientiæ, in periculo salutis, dignitatis et ordinis, quatinus, prout ecclesiæ forma præscribit, ab omnium fidelium communione abstineatis, ne vestra participatio Dominicum gregem contaminet ad ruinam, qui vestra doctrina erudiendus et exemplis reformandus erat ad vitam."

Letter of the archbishop to the bishop of London,

ordering him to abstain from the communion of the faithful.

[1] *Pauli*] Lundoniæ, ins. B.

[2] See Epistt. S. Thomæ, ed. Giles, S. T. C., iii. 293. The whole letter is here given.

A.D. 1169.

Letter of the archbishop to the clergy of London,

"Thomas[1] Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, decano, archidiacono, et clero Lundoniensis ecclesiæ salutem, et a communione excommunicatorum fideliter abstinere. Vestram non debet latere prudentiam quod fere totus Latinus orbis agnovit, quam inique sumpta oportunitate ex causa scismatis generalis G. Lundoniensis episcopus frater noster, utinam verus, in causa ecclesiæ versatus sit, et pacem ejus studuerit perturbare. Supportavimus eum in multa patientia, qua ille semper abutens jugis inobedientiæ crimen multiplicatis excessibus incorrigibiliter cumulavit. Nos ergo, quibus ultra dissimulare non licuit, cum urgente necessitate officii, et ratione juris persuadente, publice excommunicavimus, et vobis præcipimus in virtute obedientiæ, et in periculo ordinis et salutis, ut a communione ejus, sicut Christi fideles decet, prorsus abstineatis."

announcing the sentence against the bishop.

The bishop respects the sentence.

Lundoniensis episcopus, licet secundum quorundam consilium tutus esset appellationis munimine, quam ante latam sententiam excommunicationis interposuerat, usus saniori consilio mandatum archiepiscopi patienter sustinuit, et abstinuit ab ingressu ecclesiæ.

Marriage of Eleanor to king Alfonso.

Alienor, filia regis Angliæ, nupsit Adelfunso regi Castellæ.

Letter of the pope to Henry II.

"Alexander papa regi Angliæ.[2]

"Serenitatem tuam per apostolica scripta rogamus, monemus, et exhortamur in Domino, necnon et in remissionem tibi peccatorum, ex parte Dei omnipotentis et beati Petri apostolorum principis et nostra injungimus, ut Thomam archiepiscopum pro Deo et ecclesia Sua, et honore tuo, necnon et totius regni tui, in gratiam et amorem tuum, omni indignatione et rancore deposito, clementer recipias; et Deum in hac parte vincere, ac tuam vinci voluntatem, sustineas, ut idem Deus et Dominus noster Jesus Christus, Qui Se in illo a te susceptum fuisse proculdubio reputabit, Eodem dicente, 'Qui vos recipit, Me recipit; et qui vos 'spernit, Me spernit:' regnum terrenum per tempora longiora tibi tranquillum conservet, et dies diuturniores cum desiderata jocunditate concedat. Ut autem spem et fiduciam,

S. Matt. x. 40. S. Luke, x. 16.

[1] See Epistt. S. Thomæ, ed. Giles, S. T. C., iii. 298: about half the letter is here given; the portion omitted contains the names of the excommunicated persons.

[2] See Epistt. S. Thomæ, ed. Giles, S. T. C., iv. 121: only the conclusion of the letter is given; it is dated "Beneventi, vi°. idus Maii."

" quam de te percepimus, plenius comprobemus, dilectos " filios nostros Gratianum et Vivianum ad regiæ sullimitatis " præsentiam duximus destinandos, per quos excellentiæ tuæ " voluntatem nostram viva voce latius intimamus, magnificen- " tiam tuam rogantes, attentius monentes, quatinus eosdem " pro ecclesia Dei reverentia, et honore beati Petri et nostro, " benigne sicut decet recipias."

A.D. 1169. Mission of Gratian and Vivian.

Inter Angliæ regem et archiepiscopum paci reformandæ multi multam multotiens operam impenderunt. Ad ultimum missos fuisse duos a latere summi pontificis superioribus litteris accepistis. Et qui nec meritis præcedentibus nec offensis, intra viscera materna conclusos, Jacob dilexit, et Esau reprobavit, ipse Deus sic instituit animos Viviani et Gratiani, ut a primordio legationis injunctæ statim alter regem, statim alter archiepiscopum, modis omnibus fovere proponeret; et quorum erat potestas æqualis, eosdem varius disjungebat affectus, nec finis potuit invenisse concordes qui ab initio vota conceperant tam diversa. Sed sicut penes regem Gratianus gratiam non invenit, sic nec penes archiepiscopum aliqua vivit in memoria Vivianus. Cum igitur tractaturi de pace, se conspectui regio præsentassent apud Bajocas in Normannia, postque tractatus immensos pax esse in januis crederetur ab omnibus, litteras illis direxit Willelmus Senonensis archiepiscopus, in quibus continebatur, ne sine conscientia ipsius, sicut in mandatis a domino papa susceperant, in reconciliatione facienda procederent. Sic infecto negotio duo legati summi pontificis a regis curia recesserunt.

Account of the mission of Gratian and Vivian.

They take opposite sides.

William archbishop of Sens stops the negotiation.

Circa festum Sancti Michaelis Lundoniensis episcopus transfretavit, suam domino papæ præsentiam exhibiturus, et causas reddituros appellationis.

The bishop of London sets out for Rome.

In octavis Sancti Martini habitum est colloquium inter regem Francorum et regem Angliæ proxime Parisius, ubi præsens fuit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, sed se regis Anglorum minime conspectui præsentavit. Cumque diu tractatum esset de pace facienda inter regem et archiepiscopum, quoniam ad hoc qui conve-

Conference at Montmartre, Nov. 18.

A.D. 1169.

Failure of the negotiation for peace between Henry and Thomas.

nerant videbantur inniti, ne prætextu regiæ dignitatis libertas ecclesiæ deperiret, novo genere obligationis sic novam confœderationem involvere contendebant, ut simul et debita Deo reverentia impenderetur in omnibus, et jus regium nichilominus conservaretur illæsum; cum constet pro certo, quod in observatione regiæ dignitatis libertas aut dignitas ecclesiastica non gravetur. Siquidem dignitas ecclesiastica[1] regiam provehit potius quam adimit dignitatem, et regalis dignitas ecclesiasticam potius conservare quam tollere consuevit libertatem. Etenim quasi quibusdam sibi invicem complexibus dignitas ecclesiastica et regalis concurrunt, cum nec reges salutem sine ecclesia, nec ecclesia pacem sine protectione regia consequatur. Consilio itaque regis Francorum, episcoporum et procerum, archiepiscopus petitionem suam redactam in scedula regi Anglorum porrexit, continentem hæc verba:

Proposals of the archbishop to the king.

"Hoc petimus a domino nostro rege juxta mandatum et "consilium domini papæ, quatinus pro amore Dei et domini "papæ, et honore sanctæ ecclesiæ, ac salute sua et hæredum "suorum, recipiat nos in gratiam suam, et concedat nobis et "omnibus qui nobiscum et pro nobis exierunt de regno suo, "pacem suam et plenam securitatem de se et suis sine malo "ingenio, et reddat nobis ecclesiam Cantuariensem in ea "plenitudine et libertate in qua eam melius habuimus post-"quam facti sumus archiepiscopus, et possessiones omnes quas "habuimus, ad tenendum et habendum ita libere, et quiete, "et honorifice, sicut ecclesia et nos eas liberius et honorifi-"centius tenuimus et habuimus postquam promoti sumus in "archiepiscopum; et similiter nostris; et omnes ecclesias, ea "præbendas ad archiepiscopum pertinentes, qua vacaverunt "postquam exivimus de terra, ut faciamus de eis sicut de "nostris prout nobis placuerit, similiter habere permittat."[2]

Henry's objections.

Duobus articulis plenum non præbuit assensum rex Angliæ. Nec enim nomine restitutionis, cum archiepiscopum non expulerit, juxta dignitatem regni quic-

[1] *non . . . ecclesiastica*] om. B.

[2] See the letter of Vivian to the pope, S. T. C., iv. 220: where the petition is given in very nearly the same words.

A.D. 1169.

Henry offers to satisfy the archbishop before the peers or scholars of France.

quam debebat exolvere, nec bonorum vacantium possessiones quas jam dederat certis personis in irritum devocare. Sed ut legibus alligatum se principem profiteretur in medium, coram rege Francorum paratus erat archiepiscopo per omnia satisfacere, vel si contendere decrevisset, judicium in palatio Parisiensi subire, proceribus Galliæ residentibus, aut Gallicana ecclesia partes suas interponente, seu scolaribus diversarum provinciarum æqua lance negotium examinantibus. Et ita rex Angliæ, qui prius odium in se plurimorum conflaverat, in hoc verbo plurium favorem adeptus est.

Failure of the negotiation.

Itaque rex Anglorum et archiepiscopus in XIIIIa. qualiquali concordia convenissent, nisi quia rex archiepiscopo dare signum pacis in osculo penitus abnegasset et abjurasset, omnem aliam securitatem arbitratu boni viri paratus offerre, paratus præstare.

A.D. 1170.

Henry receives the submission of Brittany.

He returns to England in Lent.

MLXX. In Natali Domini rex tenuit curiam suam apud Nannetensem urbem, præsentibus episcopis et baronibus totius Britanniæ, ubi fidelitatem sibi et filio suo Gaufrido communiter juraverunt. Sequenti Quadragesima rediens in Angliam, multis suorum subita maris tempestate periclitatis, ipse magno divinæ pietatis munere evasit incolumis.

Journey of Gilbert Foliot to Milan.

Lundoniensis episcopus dum Romam tenderet, sibi per totam Burgundiam insidias præparari multorum certa didicit relatione. Qua de causa per viam multo longiorem et difficiliorem iter arripuit, transitum habens per Rupem Amatoris, per Sanctum Willelmum, per Montem Pessulanum, per Sanctum Egidium, et post transcensis Alpibus veniens ad Sanctum Ambrosium, litteras domini papæ suscepit.

Letter of the pope to Gilbert Foliot.

> " Alexander papa G. Lundoniensi episcopo.
>
> " Rotomagensi archiepiscopo et Exoniensi episcopo dedi-
> " mus in mandatis, ut te recepto juramento, quod nostro
> " super his pro quibus in te sententia lata est debeas parere
> " mandato, nostra vice absolvant, ita quidem, ut pro eo quod
> " excommunicatus fueras, nullum ordinis, aut officii, seu dig-

A.D. 1170.

" nitatis periculum, neque aliquam infamiæ notam debeas sus-
" tinere.[1]

Absolution of the bishop of London.

Lundoniensis episcopus ad absolutionem aspirans, et rediens cum festinatione, sollenniter absolutus est apud Rotomagum in die Paschæ.

The bishops come to London in June.

Circa idus Julii, Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, et omnes suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ vocati a rege, venerunt Lundoniam, quibus dominus papa litteras direxit continentes hæc verba:[2]

Letter of the pope forbidding them to crown the king's son in the absence of the archbishop.

" Alexander papa, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et universis
" Angliæ episcopis. Illius dignitatis et majoritatis ecclesiam
" Cantuariensem ab antiquo fuisse audivimus, ut reges Angliæ
" ab ejusdem archiepiscopis inungi consueverint, et in pro-
" motionis suæ principio coronari. Proinde siquidem est
" quod nos tum officii nostri debito, tum consideratione venera-
" bilis fratris nostri Thomæ ejusdem sedis archiepiscopi, viri
" siquidem religiosi, honesti et discreti, ecclesiæ jam dictæ jura
" et dignitates antiquas illibatas et integras conservare volen-
" tes, universitati vestræ auctoritate apostolica penitus inhibe-
" mus, ne quisquam vestrum novo regi coronando, si forte hic
" casus emerserit, absque memorati archiepiscopi vel succes-
" sorum suorum, et ecclesiæ Cantuariensis conniventia, contra
" antiquam ejus consuetudinem et dignitatem, manum appo-
" nere, qualibet occasione præsumat, aut id aliquatenus at-
" temptare."

Coronation of the younger Henry (June 14).

Xiiij° kalendas Julii, Henricus, primogenitus filius Henrici regis Angliæ, consecratus est in regem apud Westmonasterium a Rogero Eboracensi archiepiscopo.

The king goes abroad.

Rex post coronationem filii transfretavit.

Conference at Montmirail.

Habitum est colloquium apud Munmirail inter regem et archiepiscopum, ubi præsens fuit rex Francorum, et Bernardus de Corilo, prior etiam de Monte Dei. Post multa cum perventum est ad osculum, quia dixit archiepiscopus, "In honore Dei vos osculor," ab osculo

---

[1] See S. T. C., iv. 93; only a small portion of the letter is given: it is dated "Beneventi ii°. idus "Februarii."

[2] See S. T. C., iv. 45; where the date is given, "Laterani, nonis "Aprilis." The pope was, however, at Veroli on that day in 1170.

quasi conditionaliter involuto recessit rex. Nam sicut nostri majores formulas juris suspectissimas habebant in jure, sic rex semper in verbis archiepiscopi, conscientiam habentis purissimam quasdam, clausulas causabatur, scilicet nunc, salvo ordine meo, nunc, salvo honore Dei, nunc, salva fide Dei. A.D. 1170. Misgivings of the king.

Item apud Fractam Vallem rex Francorum, Willelmus Senonensis archiepiscopus et episcopus Nivernensis venerunt. Cum autem rex et archiepiscopus secessissent in partem, bisque descendissent, et bis ascendissent, bis stapham rex tenuit archiepiscopo.[1] Conference at Freteval.

Item apud Ambazium, singulis ad simplicem intellectum reductis, rex et archiepiscopus concordiam inierunt, procurante pacem Rotrodo Rothomagensi metropolitano. Conference at Amboise.

[2] "Henricus rex Angliæ, filio suo Henrico regi Angliæ salutem. Sciatis quod Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus pacem mecum fecit ad voluntatem meam. Et ideo præcipio, ut ipse et sui pacem habeant, et faciatis habere ei et suis, qui pro eo exierunt de Anglia, omnes res suas bene, et in pace, et honorifice, sicut habuerunt tribus mensibus antequam exiret ab Anglia. Et faciatis venire coram vobis de melioribus et antiquioribus militibus de honore de Saltwode, et eorum sacramento faciatis recognosci quid ibi habetur de feodo archiepiscopatus Cantuariensis, et quod recognitum fuerit esse de feodo ejus ipsi archiepiscopo habere faciatis. Teste Rotrodo archiepiscopo Rotomagensi apud Chinun." Henry announces to his son that he has made peace with the archbishop, who is to have his rights.

Hac igitur securitate archiepiscopus rediens in Angliam, kalendis Decembris appulsus est apud Sandicum[3] portum. Thomas returns Dec. 1.

Archiepiscopus, statim ut appulsus est, misit Eboracensi archiepiscopo apud Doveram litteras domini papæ hæc verba continentes:[4]

"Alexander papa, R. Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et H. Dunelmensi episcopo. Cum filium suum rex vester coronari voluerit, contempto Thoma Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ad Letter of the pope to the archbishop of York.

---

[1] *archiepiscopo*] archiepiscopi, B.

[2] See S. T. C., iv. 300.

[3] *Sandicum*] Sandwicum, D.

[4] See S. T. C., iv. 50, 51: only a small part of the letter is given here. It is dated "Ferentini, xvi°. kalendas Octobres."

A.D. 1170.

Letter of the pope to the archbishop of York.

" cujus officium de antiquo jure noscitur pertinere, per ma-" num tuam, frater archiepiscope, in aliena provincia diadema " regni ei fecit imponi. In coronatione autem illius, nulla ex " more de conservanda ecclesiæ libertate cautio est præstita, " vel, sicut aiunt, exacta. Sed potius juramento asseritur " confirmatum, ut regni consuetudines quas avitas dicunt, sub " quibus dignitas periclitatur ecclesiæ, illibatæ debeant omni " tempore conservari. In quo etsi multum prænominati " regis vehementia nos conturbat, amplius tamen de vestra et " aliorum coepiscoporum vestrorum possumus infirmitate mo-" veri, qui, quod dolentes dicimus, facti sicut arietes non " habentes cornua, abiistis absque fortitudine ante faciem sub-" sequentis. Etsi enim licere forte hoc tibi, frater archiepi-" scope, in propria provincia potuisset, quomodo tamen in " aliena provincia, et illius præcipue qui exulare pro justitia, " et fere solus exire voluit, et dare gloriam Deo, tibi licuerit, " nec de ratione possumus, nec de sanctorum patrum consti-" tutionibus invenire. Unde quia, juxta verbum prophetæ, " factum est in vobis perversum quid ultra omnes alias pro-" vincias in usurpationibus suis, et, post tam iniquas consue-" tudines juramento firmatas, non adjecistis resumere scutum " fidei, ut staretis pro domo Domini in die prælii, sed posu-" istis corpus vestrum in terram, ut per vos fieret via trans-" eunti, ne, si diutius tacuerimus, una vobiscum in die judicii " dampnationis sententia involvamur, auctoritate sacrosanctæ " Romanæ ecclesiæ, cui auctore Deo ministramus, ab omni " officio episcopalis vos suspendimus dignitatis."

He suspends him from his episcopal dignity.

Rursus Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus misit litteras domini papæ G. Lundoniensi et Jocelino Salesburiensi episcopis, auram prosperam expectantibus apud Douram, cum Rogero Eboracensi archiepiscopo, continentes hæc verba:[1]

Letter of the pope to the bishops.

" Alexander papa, venerabilibus fratribus, Lundoniensi, Sales-" buriensi, Exoniensi, Cestrensi, Rofensi, de Sancto Asaph, " Landavensi,[2] episcopis. Cum karissimus filius noster Henri-" cus, rex vester, filium suum coronari voluerit, et hoc de " antiquo jure ad Cantuariensem noscatur archiepiscopum per-" tinere, vos jam dicti fratris nostri auctoritate et reverentia " quam sibi et ecclesiæ suæ debetis postposita, ad coronatio-" nem illius favorem et ministerium præbuistis, nulla de con-

[1] See S. T. C., iv. 81: only part of the letter is given: the date is the same as the last.

[2] *Asaph Landavensi*] Asap Ladavensi, A.

"servanda ecclesiæ libertate præstita, vel etiam exacta, sicut "dicitur, cautione; quinimmo sustinuistis potius, ut juramen- "tum ab illo de conservandis consuetudinibus præstaretur. "Nec tamen hoc ideo dicimus, quia, dum adhuc essemus in "Francia, in multis eundem regem liberalem senserimus ac "devotum, sed ob hoc non debemus omittere quin tantis nos "transgressionibus, et pro gloria Dei, et pro salute ipsius et "vestra, zelo rectitudinis opponamus. Nunc igitur quia sæcu- "larium hominum culpæ nullos magis quam desides prælatos "negligentesque respiciunt, qui multam sæpe nutriunt pesti- "lentiam dum necessariam adhibere negligunt medicinam, et "post expectationem diutinam nullo dolore contra vos ipsos, "nullo fervore contra iniquas illas usurpationes insurgitis; nos "de commissa nobis a Domino potestate, de auctoritate apo- "stolicæ sedis, cui licet immeriti Deo disponente servimus, ab "omni episcopali vos suspendimus dignitate. Illos autem "vestrum, Lundoniensem videlicet et Salesburiensem episcopos, "qui pro impetrata apud nos gratia juxta spem nostram ad "reconciliationem magis laborare debuerant, et a jam dicti "archiepiscopi gravamine abstinere, si præfatæ coronationi "favoris sui ministerium præbuerunt, in sententiam anathe- "matis revocamus."

A.D. 1170. The pope reproves the bishops for their conduct, and excommunicates the bishops of London and Salisbury.

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus postquam intravit Angliam scripsit domino papæ litteras, in quibus inter alia hæc continebantur verba:[1]

The archbishop writes to the pope an account of his landing in England.

"Adductus est nobiscum ex mandato domini regis Johannes "decanus Salesberiensis. Qui cum videret Reginaldum de "Warenna, et Gervasium de Corenelle vicecomitem scilicet in "Cantia, et Rannulfum de Broc, et armatos plures accelerantes "ad navigium nostrum, ut adventantibus vim inferrent, timens "ne, si quid nobis aut nostris mali inferretur, in domini regis "redundaret infamiam, obviam processit armatis, denuntians "eis ex parte domini regis ne nos aut nostros læderent; quia "hoc esset ipsum regem cum quo pacem feceramus notam "proditionis incurrere. Postquam autem ad ecclesiam nostram "cum magna devotione cleri et populi suscepti pervenimus, "incontinenti nos officiales regis adierunt, denuntiantes ex "parte ipsius, ut suspensos episcopos et excommunicatos ab- "solveremus, quia quod contra eos factum fuerat in regis "redundabat injuriam, et in eversionem consuetudinum regni, "promittentes episcopos provinciæ nostræ post absolutionem

[1] See the letter of the archbishop to the pope, of which this is a portion, in Giles's S. T. C., iii. pp. 81–87.

A.D. 1170. Conduct of the bishops to Thomas at his landing.

"venturos esse ad nos, et juri se salvo honore regni libenter
"parituros. Quibus respondimus, quod si Lundoniensis et
"Salesberiensis episcopi jurarent coram nobis in forma ecclesiæ
"se mandato nostro parituros, nos pro pace ecclesiæ, et reve-
"rentia domini regis absolveremus eosdem. Quod cum epi-
"scopis referretur, responderunt, juramentum hujusmodi, nisi
"ex voluntate regis, non debere præstari."

Election to English sees made abroad.

Evocavit rex senas personas vacantium ecclesiarum in Anglia, ut consilio eorum contra consuetudinem regni, fratribus suis absentibus, in altero regno electiones fierent episcoporum.

Thomas is forbidden to visit the young king at Woodstock, Dec. 18.

Dum Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus tenderet ad videndam faciem novi regis, qui tunc temporis morabatur apud Wdestoc, honorifice receptus est a Lundoniensibus, et, cum esset hospitatus apud Suthiwerc xv°. kalendas Januarii, venerunt ad eum nuntii novi regis, interdicentes ex parte ipsius regis ne progrederetur ad videndum regem, sed ad suam reverteretur ecclesiam. Functi sunt officio legationis hujusce Jocelinus castellanus, frater reginæ Alissæ, Thomas de Turnebu, Hugo de Gondevilla. Revertens itaque Cantuariam, ibidem Natalitios dies celebrare disposuit, concurrentibus undique clericis diversorum locorum quos diversa trahebant negotia.

The archbishop preaches on Christmas day, and excommunicates two enemies.

MCLXXI. [1] Die Natalis Domini Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus sermonem habiturus ad populum ascendit in pulpitum. Sermone completo, orationibus consuetis, scilicet pro domino papa, pro rege, pro pace populique salute fusis ad Dominum, Nigellum de Sachevilla, violentum incubatorem ecclesiæ de Herges, et vicarium ejusdem ecclesiæ, Robertum quoque de Broc, qui equum quemdam ipsius archiepiscopi victualia deferentem ad dedecus et ignominiam ejus decurtaverat, candelis accensis sollenniter excommunicavit.

---

[1] Our author's account of the martyrdom contains some verbal resemblances to the narrative of William Fitz Stephen, who may have been his informant, but not so many as to make it probable that he had used the work of that writer on the subject.

[1] Quinta die Natalis Domini, circiter horam vespertinam, dum archiepiscopus cum clericis suis resideret in thalamo, Willelmus de Traci, Reginaldus filius Ursi, Hugo de Morevilla, Ricardus Brito, de Normannia venientes, tanquam furia invecti, subito thalamum irruperunt, denunciantes ex parte regis moram in Normannia facientis, ut episcopos Angliæ suspensos officio restitueret, excommunicatos absolveret. Quibus respondit, non esse judicis inferioris ut superioris sententiam solvat, et quod nulli hominum liceat infirmare quod apostolica sedes decreverit; attamen si Lundoniensis et Salesberiensis episcopi suo mandato se parituros juramento firmarent, eos pro pace ecclesiæ et reverentia domini regis absolveret. Illi ira incandescentes et scelus nefarium, quod in mente conceperant, ad effectum perducere properantes, cum impetu recesserunt. Archiepiscopus vero, monentibus clericis suis, et hora diei vespertina urgente, majorem intravit ecclesiam, vesperos decantaturus. Quatuor itaque nefandi satellites supradicti, interim militaribus armis induti, e vestigio subsecuti sunt archiepiscopum. Qui cum venissent ad ecclesiam, ostia ipsius ecclesiæ, sicut præceperat archiepiscopus, invenerunt aperta. "Neque enim," ait, "ecclesiam Dei quæ cunctis universaliter debet esse refugium, turbato ordine commutabimus in castellum." Turbis undique confluentibus, prædicti quatuor ecclesiam irreverenter ingressi cœperunt clamare, "Ubi est proditor regis? ubi est proditor regis? ubi est archiepiscopus?" Cum autem archiepiscopus nomen audisset archiepiscopi, a tertio gradu presbiterii vel quarto, quem jam conscenderat, eis obviam regressus est, dicens, "Si quæritis archiepiscopum, ecce me in promptu habetis." Quibus acerrima proponentibus, ait, "Ego mori paratus sum, vitæ præferens assertionem justitiæ, libertatem ecclesiæ. Rogo tamen ut mei non sint

A.D. 1170. Dec. 29. Four knights from Normandy arrive at Canterbury, and insist that Thomas shall absolve the bishops.

He refuses.

They enter the church looking for him.

He goes to meet them.

[1] This part of the narrative is printed separately by Dr. Giles, S. T. C., i. 375; from the Museum MS. Additional, 11,506, fo. 66, where it occurs in a modern hand; down to "sanguine," below, p. 345, line 9.

A.D. 117[0]. Dec. 29. His dying words.

"obnoxii pœnæ, sicut nec fuerunt incitatores causæ." Dum autem nefandi satellites strictis insurgerent gladiis, ait, "Deo et beatæ Mariæ, et sanctis hujus ecclesiæ "patronis, et beato Dionisio commendo me ipsum, et "ecclesiæ causam."

He is murdered.

Immolatus itaque coram altari letale vulnus excepit, ea corporis parte quam olei sacri perfusio specialius Domino consecraverat, et qui pro libertate cleri tociens caput exposuit et oculos erexit ad cœlum, inclinato capite percussus occubuit.[1]

His goods plundered.

Robertus de Broc et sui complices archiepiscopi supellectilem,[2] clericorum vestes et ministrorum, officinarum etiam utensilia, diripuerunt. Equos omnes, quos in stabulo reppererunt dominico, datos in rapinam celeriter abduxerunt. Corpus autem archiepiscopi, quod a dextris altaris Sancti Benedicti decubuerat in pavimento, ante majus altare sub ipso diei crepusculo deportatum est. Ubi quod ad notitiam cubicularii solius devenerat, astantibus venit in lucem. Licet enim archiepiscopus habitum monachalem, quem a tempore multo satis occulte susceperat, canonicali habitu suppressisset, carnem attritam cilicio femoralibus cilicinis edomare curabat. Et ut breviter aliqua complectamur quæ divinitus ordinata concurrerant, quoniam archiepiscopus ob tuendam ecclesiæ libertatem labores, exilium, propinquorum proscriptionem, mortem etiam sustinere decreverat, ut negotium tale suo Marte discurreret, die Martis recessit a curia regis apud Norehamtun, ut superius diximus. Die Martis transfretavit, exilium subiturus in Gallia. Consilio domini papæ revertens in Angliam die Martis appulsus est. Die Martis occubuit manibus impiorum confossus.[3] Sequenti die Mercurii summo mane no-

He had worn a monastic habit secretly.

His special Tuesdays.

[1] The verses inserted by Twysden in the margin, from MS. C.,

Annus millenus centenus septuagenus
Primus erat primas quo ruit ense Thomas,

are not in MSS. A. B. or D.

[2] *Broc . . supellectilem*] quem ut diximus in die Natalis sollenniter excommunicaverat archiepiscopus, universam thalami supellectilem asportarunt, B.

[3] *confossus*] Die Martis translatus est; add. Twysden from MSS.

fandus rumor increbuit, quod nefandi carnifices archiepiscopi corpus abstrahere a sacro loco condixerant, et canibus decerpendum vel avibus extra muros proicere. Abbas itaque de Boxeleia, prior et conventus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, prudentum consilio statuerunt, ut id maturiori traderent sepulturæ; quod nec aquis abluendum aliquibus videbatur, præsertim cum longa satis abstinentia fuerit clarificatum, abstersum cilicio, proprio purificatum in sanguine.

A.D. 1170. Dec. 30. Burial of the body.

Hugo Terraconensis archiepiscopus, proferens contumeliæ verbum in quendam mediæ manus hominem, interfectus est cultello.

The archbishop of Tarragona murdered.

Rex Anglorum tunc temporis in Normannia morabatur apud Argentomum, cum ad ejus notitiam rumor infaustus quibusdam perferentibus penetravit; qui statim in primis nefandi sermonis initiis ad omnia lamentationum et miseriarum genera conversus, regiam prorsus majestatem quasi cilicio et cinere commutavit, Omnipotentem Deum testem vocans in animam suam, quod opus nefarium nec sua voluntate nec conscientia commissum est, nec artificio perquisitum, nisi forte in hoc delictum sit, quod adhuc minus diligere credebatur archiepiscopum. Super hoc quoque se judicio ecclesiæ prorsus exposuit, et humiliter suscepturum se quicquid in eo fuerit statutum salubriter repromisit.

A.D. 1171. Henry receives the news of the murder.

He offers to stand his trial.

Missi[1] sunt nuncii a domino rege summo pontifici, qui regem excusarent et ejus innocentiam allegarent, quos nec dominus papa videre, nec ad osculum nec ad pedes voluit admittere. Nuncios qui secundo venerunt aliqui cardinalium receperunt, sed verbo tantum. Diu ergo in amaritudine suorum spirituum conturbati, his qui eos fidelius diligebant omnimodo supplicarunt, ut eorum interventu domi-

Embassies sent to the pope to defend the king.

---

[1] *Missi*] The following passage is taken chiefly from a letter of Richard of Ilchester to Gilbert Foliot, S. T. C., vi. 260, 261; and partly from the letter of the royal envoys to the king, which is given in full by Hoveden, ii. 25; Benedict, i. 20; S. T. C., vi. 198; from which also Richard of Ilchester drew part of his information.

A.D. 1171. The king's excommunication is imminent.

nus papa saltem aliquibus illorum audientiam indulgeret, sed minime profecerunt. Instante igitur quinta feria ante Pascha, in qua de consuetudine Romanæ ecclesiæ solet dominus papa publice vel absolvere vel excommunicare, quibusdam silentiariis domini papæ perferentibus, ad aures nunciorum pervenit, quod eadem die immutabiliter dominus papa decreverat in regem Angliæ nominatim, et in totam terram suam cismarinam et transmarinam de communi fratrum consilio interdicti ferre sententiam, et ea quæ lata fuerant in archiepiscopum Eboracensem, ea etiam quæ fuerant promulgata in Lundoniensem et Salesburiensem episcopos confirmare. Sic in artissimo positi nuntii regis, quibusdam cardinalibus intercedentibus, significaverunt domino papæ, se accepisse in mandatis a domino rege, quod jurarent in præsentia ejus, regem staturum mandato suo, et hoc etiam juraturum in propria persona legatis suis præsentibus, scilicet Alberto cardinali tituli Sancti Laurentii in Lucina, et Theodino cardinali tituli Sancti Vitalis, quos dominus papa missurus erat in Normanniam. Sicut ergo nuntii regis petierunt, sic et juraverunt et interdicti declinaverunt sententiam. Nuntii vero archiepiscopi Eboracensis, et episcoporum Lundoniensis et Saresburiensis juraverunt, quod domini sui starent mandato domini papæ, et hoc jurarent. Eadem tamen die generaliter excommunicavit dominus papa sceleratissimos interfectores Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et omnes qui consilium, vel auxilium, vel assensum præbuerunt, et omnes qui eos in terra sua aut reciperent aut foverent. Illi nihilominus in provincia Northanhymbrorum moram fecerunt per annum apud Graresburc.[1]

Terms of submission proposed.

Mission of two legates.

Message of the excommunicated bishops.

The murderers at Knaresborough.

The bishop of Leon killed.

In Minori Britannia Hamo Leonensis episcopus, per Guidomarum filium fratris sui Guidomari interfectus est. R. de Monte, A.D. 1171.

William Trincavel killed.

Willelmus Trencheveil interfectus est in ecclesia Sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ apud Bedercum.

Miracles of Thomas.

Circa Pascha Dominus Jesus Christus, qui in sanctis suis semper est et ubique mirabilis, gloriosissimi martyris sui Thomæ Cantuariensis archiepiscopi vitam laudabilem, et insuperabilem in morte constantiam, crebris

[1] *Graresburc*] So MSS. A. B. C. D., for Gnaresburc.

A.D. 1171.

cœpit irradiare miraculis, ut qui pro tuenda libertate periclitantis ecclesiæ suam et suorum proscriptionem tot annis sustinuit, dignum cognoscatur ab omnibus reportasse triumphum.[1]

Absolution of Gilbert Foliot at Gisors.

Circa initium Augusti Lundoniensis episcopus a sententia excommunicationis, in quam ipsum dominus papa quia novi regis interfuit coronationi revocaverat, a Nivernensi episcopo, a Belvacensi episcopo,[2] et ab abbate de Pontinne absolutus est. Hoc autem factum est prope Gisortium apud Calvum Montem; nondum tamen episcopali restitutus fuit officio.

The king lands, August 6, and visits the bishop of Winchester, who dies Aug. 8.

Octavo idus Augusti rex pater regis appulsus est in Angliam, qui visitavit in transitu Henricum Wintoniensem episcopum in extremis agentem; qui eum pro morte gloriosi martyris increpavit durissime. Ob quam mortem ipsum multa prædixit adversa passurum. Episcopus itaque senex et plenus dierum vi^to^. idus Augusti migravit ad Dominum.[3]

Letter of the archbishop of Sens to the pope against the king.

"[4] Domino papæ Willelmus Senonensis archiepiscopus. Vestro "apostolatui, pater sancte, data est omnis potestas in cœlo et "in terra. Gladius anceps in manibus vestris super gentes et "super regna. Videte, domine, et considerate quem vindemia- "verunt ita. Ecclesia siquidem Cantuariensis, immo ecclesia "generalis, sanguine rorantes lacrimas et amaritudine asper- "sas a finibus terræ in conspectu tuo effundit, etenim posita "est quasi signum ad sagittam, facta est obprobrium vicinis "suis, et qui vident eam movent capita sua super ipsam, "dicentes, 'Ubi est Deus eorum?' Ipsa autem gemens et con- "versa retrorsum clamat in auribus Domini exercituum: "'Vindica, Domine, sanguinem servi tui, et martyris Cantua- "'riensis archiepiscopi, qui occisus est, immo pro libertate "'ecclesiæ crucifixus.' Verbum, pater sancte, horrendum, "facinus prodigiosum, enorme flagitium factum est in diebus "nostris; quod quicunque audierit tinniant ambæ aures ejus. "Proinde sicut omnis ecclesia sanctorum astruit, ipsum facit

---

[1] *triumphum*] Here MS. D. has the bull of canonization, *Redolet*, given below, p. 369.

[2] *a Belvacensi episcopo*] om. B.

[3] *Dominum*] "Obiit Henricus hoc "anno, qui factus fuit episcopus "A.D. MCXXIX., sicut superius ap- "paret, et sic sedit xlii. annos." B. in marg.

[4] The following is a portion of the letter given in full by Hoveden, ii. 18; Benedict, i. 17; S. T. C., iv. 163.

A.D. 1171.

Letter of the archbishop of Sens to the pope.

" martyrem causa pariter et pœna, et dolor passionis illatæ. " Causa est rigor ecclesiasticæ censuræ, quia pro lege Dei sui " certavit usque ad mortem. Vestra igitur interest, pater " clementissime, remedium adhibere præteritis, et providen- " tiam futuris. Quis enim locus tutus est si rabies tyrannica " sancta sanctorum cruentat, et ad columpnas ecclesiæ vicarios " dilacerat? Insurgant ergo ecclesiasticæ leges, armentur " jura cœlestia. Introeat in conspectu vestro ultio sanguinis " gloriosi qui de Anglia clamat. Clamabit siquidem non " solum terra, sed et cœlum. Sic vestro consulite dolori, ut " honestati pariter vestræ et saluti ecclesiæ consulatis."

Henry goes to Ireland, Oct. 16.

Rex pater regis, navibus undique congregatis, intravit Hyberniam xv°. kalendas Novembris. Lismorensis episcopus et apostolicæ sedis legatus, archiepiscopi et episcopi receperunt eum in regem et in dominum, et fidelitatem ei juraverunt. Regulus de Limelie,[1] regulus de Chore, regulus ille qui dicebatur Monoculus, fecerunt ei homagium. Rodericus autem regulus de Connat, quia regio quam inhabitabat inaccessibilis est paludibus nimiis interjacentibus, in quibus nec vada commoda, nec pervii pontes,[2] nec navigatio tuta est, supersedit occurrere.

Submission of all the princes save the king of Connaught.

Purgation and absolution of the archbishop of York, at Aumâle, Dec. 6.

Rotro Rotomagensis archiepiscopus[3] et episcopus Ambianensis susceperant in mandatis a domino papa, quod congruo loco et tempore diem præfinirent Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et ejus purgationem susciperent. Eboracensis itaque pluribus secum assumptis, in festo Sancti Nicholai apud Albamarle, sacramento præstito purgavit innocentiam suam, quod ante coronationem novi regis, ut supra diximus, litteras prohibitionis a domino papa transmissas, nequaquam susceperat, et quod regi patri de regni consuetudinibus observandis, quas avitas vocant, se non obligaverat, et quod mortem gloriosissimi martyris Thomæ quondam Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, neque verbo, neque scripto, neque facto scienter procuraverat; et sic est ad officii sui plenitudinem restitutus.

---

[1] *Limelie*] Limelic, B.
[2] *pontes*] potentes, C.
[3] *archiepiscopus*] itaque, B.

Cantuariensis ecclesia post necem gloriosissimi martyris continuis diu perstitit in lamentis. Et quia cum gladiis virum justum persequendo carnifices ab ingressu ecclesiæ gressus illicitos minime cohibuerant, ipsum etiam pavimentum ecclesiæ, plebis undique concurrentis pulverulentis gressibus et lutosis, debuit contraxisse squalorem, et quoniam justum sanguinem effundendo Deo reverentiam non exhibuerant, suspensa est celebratio divinorum. Et quoniam percusso pastore dispersæ sunt oves, detractis ab altaribus ornamentis, nudatis parietibus, circumquaque tota loci facies induerat solitudinem, et quia communis lætitia cleri et populi crebris versa est in gemitibus, sonitum campanarum qui ad psallendum horis invitabat statutis oportuit intermitti. Anno igitur integro minus novem diebus illa nobilis et excellens ecclesia cessans a divinis, archiepiscopo suo, quem per crebra miraculorum insignia glorificatum jam noverat, ad terrorem carnificum lugubres exsolvit exequias. Ad vocationem itaque matris suæ Dorobernensis ecclesiæ suffraganei convenerunt in festo beati Thomæ apostoli, ut ecclesiam longa suspensione consternatam, juxta mandatum summi pontificis in statum pristinum reformarent; illius Judæ Machabæi laudabilia sequentes vestigia, qui manibus impiorum prophanatum in terra sanctuarium Dei cum hymnis et laudibus expiavit, faciem templi coronis aureis et cultibus preciosis exornans; et, quoniam mirificavit Dominus sanctum suum, facta est Cantuariæ lætitia magna in clero gloriam victoriosissimi martyris attendente. E diverso etiam factus est populorum concursus clamantium, et dicentium, "Vindica, Domine, sanguinem "qui effusus est." Bartholomæus Exoniensis episcopus juxta petitionem Cantuariorum Missam sollennem celebraturus, et sermonem habiturus ad populum, ut diebus exactis in doloribus lætitiæ celebris solamen opponeret, sic exorsus est, "Secundum multitudinem dolorum "meorum consolationes lætificaverunt animam meam."

A.D. 1171. The church of Canterbury closed after the martyrdom for a year all but nine days.

It is reopened, Dec. 21.

Sermon of the bishop of Exeter.

Ps. xciv. 19.

A.D. 1172.

Thunder at Christmas.

MCLXXII. In nocte Natalis Domini tonitruum in Ybernia, tonitruum in Anglia, tonitruum in omni regno Francorum auditum est generale subitum et horribile, portendens aliquid magnum, novum et inusitatum.

The young king is urged to rebel against his father.

Dum rex moram faceret in Hibernia, Hugo de Sainte More et Radulfus de Faie avunculus reginæ Alienor, consilio sicut dicitur ejusdem reginæ, regis filii regis animum a patre suo cœperunt avertere, suggerentes incongruum videri quibuslibet regem esse, et dominationem regno debitam non exercere.

Sickness in the king's army.

Recentium esus carnium et haustus aquæ, tam insolitus quam incognitus, plures de regis exercitu panis inedia laborantes fluxu ventris afflixit in Hybernia.[1]

The king out of reach.

Ab ingressu regis in Hyberniam xx. continuis ebdomadibus de regno suo, vel de aliqua parte dominationis suæ quæ tam longe lateque diffunditur, ad ipsum rumor aliquis minime penetravit, nec etiam quia ventus adversabatur potuit penetrare.

Measures taken for the subjugation and civilization of Ireland.

Cum autem intellexissent Hybernienses, in quantum circa pacem statuendam et conservandam regis Angliæ tota versaretur intentio, qui nec indulgentiis crimina sullevabat, nec in mortem alicujus præcipitabat sententiam, sub edicto vocati convenerunt ad ipsum, rogantes quæ ad pacem sunt. Et quoniam inter eos publica potestas constituta non fuerat, quæ metu pœnarum impunitatem minime repromitteret, cum patres suos mutuis cædibus interfectos sæpissime doluissent, ut in virtute regis pax fieret in diebus suis, ei et in eum jus suum transtulerunt et potestatem. Archiepiscopi et episcopi plebis sibi commissæ plurimum et in plurimis attendentes errorem, sed in his maxime quæ circa matrimonium a majoribus definita noscuntur, quæ An-

The bishops accept English customs.

---

[1] *Ybernia*] "Hugo Dunelmensis "episcopus veniens ad Sanctum "Albanum dedicavit capellam beati "Cutberti in honorem istius con-"fessoris et beati Johannis Bap-"tistæ, xvi°. kalendas Novembris," ins. C.

glia recipit et observat, se firmiter amplexuros, et inviolabiliter executuros promittunt. Et ut in singulis observatio similis regnum colligaret utrumque, passim omnes unanimi voluntate, communi assensu, pari desiderio, regis imperio se subiciunt. Omnibus igitur hoc ordine consummatis in concilio habito apud Lismor, urbes et castella quæ rex in suam redegerat potestatem fideli deputavit custodiæ. Et quoniam ipsum varia trahebant negotia, die Paschæ sub ipso diei crepusculo navem ascendit, et in crastino appulsus est in Waliam prope Sanctum David. Inde progressus recto itinere, nec declinans ad dextram, nec ad sinistram, sed incedens tanquam duplomate venit ad Porcestre, ubi navem ascendens Angliam salutavit a limine, sicque felici navigatione transvectus intravit Normanniam. Quod cum ad regis Francorum notitiam pervenisset, vociferans ait, "Rex Angliæ modo in Hybernia, modo in Anglia, modo "in Normannia, volare potius judicandus est quam vel "equum vel navem conscendere."

A.D. 1172. A council at Lismore, in which Henry appoints officers for Ireland.

He returns to England; lands at S. David's, and embarks at Porchester for Normandy.

Rotro Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et episcopus Ambianensis, in mandatis susceperant a domino papa, quatinus congruo loco et tempore Lundoniensis episcopi purgationem susciperent. Ab ipsis igitur Lundoniensis episcopus evocatus, viris religiosis pluribus secum adjunctis, juravit quod mortem Thomæ gloriosi martyris neque facto, neque verbo, neque scripto procuravit scienter. Suo itaque restitutus officio apud Albemarle kalendis Maii ad suam cum gaudio remeavit ecclesiam.

Absolution of bishop Gilbert Foliot.

He returns to his church.

Postquam rex Anglorum appulsus est in Normanniam, statim cum festinatione accessit ad dominum Albertum et Theodinum cardinales et apostolicæ sedis legatos ad partes illas a domino papa transmissos. Post longos tandem et inmensos tractatus, primo habitos apud Saviniacum, post apud Abrincas, in præsentia legatorum juravit dominus rex mortem gloriosissimi martyris Thomæ nec voluntate sua nec conscientia perpetratam fuisse, nec suo artificio perquisitam. Sed quoniam

Henry II. visits the legates, and at Avranches swears his innocence of the murder.

A.D. 1172. Oaths of the king taken at Avranches.

malefactores ex verbis quæ iracundiæ calore succensus minus caute protulerat, occasionem sumpserant virum sanctum interficiendi, cum omni humilitate petiit absolutionem ab eis, petiit et impetravit. In facie igitur ecclesiæ sollenniter absolutus, juxta voluntatem et mandatum cardinalium promisit, quod ab instanti festo Pentecostes usque in annum tantam pecuniam daret, unde ad arbitrium fratrum Templi cc. milites ad defensionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ per annum perquirerentur. Promisit etiam quod licebit appellationes libere fieri, et quod consuetudines quæ suis temporibus contra libertatem ecclesiæ fuerant introductæ, revocabuntur in irritum, et quod possessiones Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, quæ post egressum sanctæ recordationis archiepiscopi fuerant ei ablatæ, restituerentur in integrum. Et quod clericis et laicis utriusque sexus, qui pro archiepiscopo Thoma de regno exierant, cum pace regis libere redire licebit, et bona sua recipere. Et hoc totum promittere et facere, ex parte domini papæ regi injunctum est in remissionem omnium peccatorum suorum. Rex filius regis idem quod pater suus juraverat et promiserat, juravit et promisit.[1]

In August the young king comes to England, and, with his wife, is crowned at Winchester, August 21.

Sequenti Augusto rex filius regis et uxor ejus Margarita filia regis Francorum appulsi sunt in Angliam, habentes in itinere comites Rotrodum Rotomagensem archiepiscopum, Egidium Ebroicensem episcopum, et Gaufridum præpositum Carnotensem. Archiepiscopus itaque memoratus xii. kalendas Septembris apud Wintoniam Margaritam reginam Angliæ consecravit, et diadema regni capiti filii regis imposuit, ministrantibus sibi episcopo Ebroicensi, et aliquibus suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ. Juxta petitionem et voluntatem regis Francorum, interdictum fuerant Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Lundoniensi et Salesburiensi episcopis, ne coronationi

[1] *Postquam . . . . . promisit*] Printed by Dr. Giles, S. T. C., i. 377, from MS. Add. 11,506.

vel interessent, vel eam impedire quaqua ratione præsumerent. A.D. 1172.

Kalendis Septembris convocato clero apud Winlesores, actum est de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, sed quibusdam causis intervenientibus negotium illud suspensum est. Sept. 1. Clerical council at Windsor.

MCLXXIII. Henricus rex Angliæ Johanni filio suo cognomento Sine Terra, vix bene septenni, filiam primogenitam Humberti comitis de Moriana, quam ex relicta Henrici Saxonici ducis sustulerat, sponsam accepit. Et quia spes masculinæ prolis nulla supererat, quatuor castella comitis, quæ vel natura loci vel artificio manuum munitiora reputabantur, juxta voluntatem regis deputata sunt custodiæ. A.D. 1173. Henry betroths John to the heiress of Maurienne.

[1] Adelfunsus [2] rex Aragonum, Reimundus comes Sancti Egidii, Girardus comes Viennensis, Humbertus comes de Moriana, tanquam ex condicto convenerunt ad curiam regis Angliæ apud Montem Ferandum in Arvernia ii°. idus Februarii. Fuit et ibi Henricus rex filius regis Henrici. Procerum, equitum, civium, quos varia trahebant negotia, multitudo numerosa non defuit; ubi gazæ multiplices, et ab antiquis congestæ temporibus sumptibus regiis, affluentia expensarum, donariorum multiplicitate, possent exinaniri, ni thesaurorum acervus quos Anglia destinaverat excresceret in immensum. Prædictis itaque viris illustribus partes suas interponentibus, comes Sancti Egidii fecit homagium regi Anglorum Henrico patri regis Henrici, salva fide Ludovici regis Francorum. Sibi suisque prospicere volens in futurum hæredibus, comitatum Tolosanum ex hoc et deinceps Aquitanico duci, in servitio militari multisque aliis præstationibus in scripto redactis, obnoxium futurum esse sacramento firmavit. Sed quia Ricardus dux Aquitaniæ, cui facturus erat homagium Feb. 12. Meeting of princes at Montferrand in Auvergne. The count of Toulouse does homage to Henry.

[1] "Quomodo comes Sancti Egidii fecit homagium suum regi Anglorum." B. in marg.

[2] *Adelfunsus*] Adelfulsus, D.

A.D. 1173. Homage to Richard delayed. comes Sancti Egidii, tunc temporis præsens non erat, usque ad octavas Pentecostes negotii complementum dilationem accepit.

Death of the bishop of Norwich. Willelmus Norewicensis episcopus, vir religiosus et humilis, xvii°. kalendas Februarias obiit.

Degradation of Clarembald, abbot of S. Augustine's. [1] Clarembaldus abbas electus Sancti Augustini, quia bona monasterii dissipaverat, quia male vivendo subditis delinquendi dabat exemplum, quia proletarius testimonio multitudinis comprobatus est, mandato domini papæ ab Exoniensi et Wigornensi episcopis degradatus est.

March 2. Meeting of the bishops at Lambeth. VIto nonas Martii suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, ut de archiepiscopi electione tractarent, sub edicto vocati venerunt Lamehedam, et quoniam Lanfrancus, Anselmus, Theobaldus, in ea sede tam late floruerant, id idem fortunæ loci quodammodo deputantes, in Rogerum Beccensem abbatem, si non unanimiter saltem voce tenus concorditer, convenerunt. Proposal to elect the abbot of Bec to the archbishopric. Orta est tunc primum controversia quis electionem pronuntiaret in publico; suffraganeis hoc ad jus episcopi Lundoniensis ab antiquo pertinere dicentibus, Cantuariensibus e contrario monachis asserentibus priorem suum hac in re potius præferendum. Pro bono itaque pacis, ne quid in absentia regis oriretur discidii, salvo jure partium, Ricardus Pictavensis archidiaconus electionem in omnium auditorio recitavit. The abbot refuses to accept it. Abbas electus, hoc intelligens, in Normannia coram rege, in præsentia cardinalium Alberti et Theodini, electioni factæ sicut prædiximus penitus contradixit.[2] Hoc eum fecisse religionis obtentu suspicabantur nonnulli; ab aliis dicebatur quod spiritus pusillanimitate contractus se imparem oneri tanto protestatus sit.

---

[1] "Qualiter abbas Sancti Augus-"tini degradatus fuit." B. in marg.

[2] "Quomodo abbas Beccensis re-"nunciavit electioni de se factæ ad "archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ." B. in marg.; MS. A. has a picture of a broken pastoral staff in the margin.

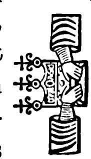
A.D. 1173.

Henry, the king's son, leaves his father, March 23.

[1] Henricus rex filius regis, abiens in consilio impiorum, animum suum avertit a patre; et ab Argentomo noctu recedens, domesticis patris sui qui ei necessaria ministrabant ignorantibus, ad socerum suum Ludovicum regem Francorum, transitu habito per Mauritaniam, castrum scilicet comitis Perticensis, secessit x^{mo}. kalendas Aprilis. Ipsa nocte pater suus dormiens apud Alentium, cum subito expergefactus transfugium filii cognovisset, paucissimis secum assumptis equum ascendit, et transitum habens per marchiam suam, et castellorum custodes præmuniens, equis sæpe mutatis, sub ipso diei crepusculo venit Gisortium, quod filio suo regi Ludovicus rex Francorum cum filia sua Margarita nomine dotis contulerat.

Richard and Geoffrey follow their brother.

Ricardus dux Aquitaniæ, Gaufridus dux Britanniæ, juniores filii regis, consilio matris suæ reginæ, scilicet Alienor, sicut dicitur, fratrem potius elegerunt sequi quam patrem.



General conspiracy.

Fiunt undique conjurationes, fiunt rapinæ, fiunt incendia. Et ut a tempore sumamus auspicium, eo tempore sumpsit arma filius contra patrem, quo quibuslibet locis ob reverentiam Dominicæ passionis arma Christiani deponunt.

Instances of filial rebellion.

Dissensio talis exitu felici claudi non potest, quoniam si liber Judicum, si liber Regum, si liber Ysaiæ prophetæ diligentius evolvatur, in exterminio filiorum insurgentium in parentes a parricidio poteris quoslibet absterrere.[2]

Libros lege, scripturis invigila, consule prudentiores, et paucula, quæ sub brevitate succincta perstringere procurabimus, ante oculos habe.[3]

Judges, xi. 1–3.

Jephthah the Gileadite.

JUDICUM.

Jepte Galadites vir fortissimus et filius meretricis habuit filios, qui postquam creverant, ejecerunt a se patrem dicentes, "Non "potest is hæres esse quoniam de "adultera matre natus est." Qui fugiens a facie filiorum

[1] "Qualiter a rege patre rex filius "regis recesserit." Rubric in B.

[2] *absterrere*] MS. D. omits all that follows as far as "Ad vocatio-"nem," p. 366, l. 15.

[3] The following illustrations of

A.D. 1173. Jephthah. congregavit inopes et latrocinantes et fecit salutem in Israel. Filiorum itaque memoria periit, ut nec eorum teneantur vel nomina.[1]

Absalom. Absalon, filius regis David, misit exploratores ad universas tribus Israel, dicens, "Statim ut au- "dieritis clangorem buccinæ dicite, "Regnabit Absalon in Ebron." David rex fugiens egressus est pedibus suis, et universa domus ejus de Jerusalem. Factumque est prælium in saltu Effraim, et cæsus est ibi populus Israel qui adhærebat Absalon ab exercitu David. Accidit autem ut occurreret Absalon servis David sedens mulo. Cumque ingressus ejus[2] fuisset mulus subter condensam quercum, adhæsit caput ejus quercui, et illo suspenso inter cœlum et terram mulus cui insederat pertransivit. Tulit Joab tres lanceas in manu sua, et infixit eas in corde Absalon. 2 Samuel, xv. 10. REGUM II. xviii. 6. xviii. 9–14.

Adrammelech and Sharezer. Sennacherib rex Assiriorum, reversus a Jerusalem quam obsederat, mansit in Ninive. Cumque adoraret in templo, Adramelech et Asarasar filii ejus percusserunt eum gladio, fugeruntque in terram Armeniorum. Quibus in exilio morientibus, Esseradon frater eorum regnavit in loco patris sui. Isaiah, xxxvii. 38. YSAIAS PROPHETA.

Si gentilium spatiosa volumina diligens lector diligenter attenderit, orientalium facta recensens, filios in parentes, parentes in filios sæpius insurrexisse reperiet.

Story of Ninus. [3]Primus omnium Ninus rex Assiriorum veterem gentilium morem imperii nova cupiditate mutavit. Hic primus intulit Justin, i. c. 1.

---

filial disobedience are given in different order in the MSS. The stories of Semiramis and Bubaris are inserted on an additional leaf in MS. A., although in the same hand as the text, and may have been intended for insertion after the word reperiet, as Twysden has printed them. MS. C. inserts them after the story of Constantine, p. 361 below. MS. B. inserts the story of Nebuchadnezzar after that of Sennacherib; then gives the preface "Si gentilium, &c.," and then an abridged account of Semiramis and Bubaris.

[1] This story of Jephthah is a curious mis-statement: it was by his brethren, not by his sons, that he was banished from home.

[2] *ejus*] om. B.

[3] From Justin, lib. i. cc. 1, 2. Thus abridged in B. "Semiramis

A.D. 1173.

Evilmerodach imprisoned by Nebuchadnezzar.

Dicunt Judæi Nabugodenosor Evilmerodag filium suum misisse in carcerem, et eum ibi cum rege Judææ Joachim in vita patris sui[1] fuisse. Mortuo patre cum non auderet regnum suscipere, dicens, "Pater "meus quando vult moritur et resurgit," consilio Joachim trecentas aves de diversis partibus mundi exquisivit, et corpus patris effossum in minutias discerpsit, et unicuique partem alligavit. Dixit enim Joachim, "Cum "hæ aves simul convenerint reviviscet pater tuus."

TROGUS POMPEIUS.

His treatment of his father's body.

Justin, i. c. 1.

Empire of Ninus.

bella finitimis, et rudes adhuc ad resistendum populos terminos usque Libiæ perdomuit. Hujus magnitudinem quæsitæ dominationis Ninus continua possessione firmavit. Domitis igitur proximis, cum accessione virium fortior transiret ad alios, et proxima quæque victoria sequentis fieret instrumentum, totius populos orientis subegit. Ninus moriens impuberem filium Niniam et Semiramidem reliquit uxorem. Semiramis impuberi filio nec ausa fuit imperium tradere, nec ipsa palam tractare, sed simulat se pro Nini conjuge filium, pro femina puerum. Nam et utrique statura mediocris, et vox pariter gracilis, et lineamentorum qualitas matri filioque consimilis. Igitur brachia, crura, virilis vestis, caput thiara tegit: sic primis initiis sexum mentita puer esse credita fuit. Magnas deinde res gessit, amplitudine quarum ubi superatam putat invidiam, quæ sit quemve se simulasset fatetur; nec hoc illi regni dignitatem ademit, sed admirationem auxit, quod mulier non feminas modo virtute, sed viros etiam anteiret. Semiramis Babiloniam condidit, Ethiopiam subjugavit, bellum Indis intulit. Ad postremum cum filii sui concubitum expetisset, ab eodem interficitur. Post cujus mortem filius ejus Ninia paterno contentus imperio studia belli deposuit. Et veluti sexum cum matre mutasset, a viris raro visus in feminarum turba consenuit. Ejus exemplum posteri sui secuti responsa

Semiramis.

Justin, i. c. 2.

TROGUS POMPEIUS, LIBRO i.

Ninias kills his mother.

"Assiriorum regina, postquam con-"didit Babiloniam, postquam suo "Ethiopiam adjecit imperio, filii sui "Niniæ petens concubitum ab eo-"dem interfecta est."

[1] *In vita patris sui*] Vivente patre suo, B. A part of this story is given by S. Jerome, Comm. in Isaiam, lib. v. c. 14, Opp. iv. 178. As here given it seems to be taken, although not in the same words, from Peter Comestor, Historia Scholastica, on Daniel, c. 5.

A.D. 1173.

The sons of Artaxerxes king of the Persians.

Artaxerxi regi Persarum ex pelicibus centum quindecim fuerunt filii, sed tres tantum justo matrimonio suscepti,[1] Darius, Aralratus et Ochus. Ex his Darium contra morem Persarum, apud quos rex non nisi morte mutatur, per indulgentiam pater regem vivus fecit, nichil æstimans quod in filium contulisset, sinceriusque gaudium ex procreatione capturus[2] si insignia suæ majestatis vivus in filio conspexisset: acceptis insigniis regni Darius Astasiam uxorem patris sui fœdere nuptiali jungendam sibi dari, sicut et regnum, postulavit a patre. Quod pater primo se facturum dixerat; mox pœnitentia ductus, ut honeste negaret quod temere promiserat, solis eam sacerdotio præfecit, quo perpetua illi ab omnibus viris pudicitia imperabatur. Hinc exacerbatus Darius, facta cum quinquaginta ex fratribus suis conjuratione in patrem, dum insidias parat, deprehensus cum fratribus pœnas parricidii diis paternæ majestatis cultoribus dedit. Conjuges quoque omnium cum liberis interfectæ sunt.[3]

Justin, x. c. 1.

Idem, libro x.

Justin, x. c. 2.

---

gentibus per internuncios dabant. Sic Assirii tenuerunt imperium mille trecentis annis.

Story of Bubaris and Amyntas.

Bubaris cum Amincta rege Macedonum congressurus depositis hostilibus animis in affinitatis jura succedit, filiam Aminctæ regis uxorem accipiens. Aminctas ergo, insignis industria cunctisque virtutibus imperatoris instructus, ex Euridice tres filios sustulit, Alexandrum, Perdicam, et Philippum Alexandri Macedonis patrem. Aminctas insidiis Euridicis uxoris, quæ, nuptias suas Bubari genero suo pacta, regem occidendum et regnum adultero tradendum susceperat, circumseptus, Alexandro regnum tradidit primogenito filiorum. Nec multo post, Alexander insidiis Euridicis matris appetitus occubuit. Perdica quoque frater ejus insidiarum pari fraude decipitur. Indignum prorsus libidinis causa liberos a matre vita privatos, quam suorum contemplatio scelerum liberorum suppliciis vendicaverat.[4]

Justin, vii. c. 3.

Trogus Pomp. libro vii.

Justin, vii. c. 4.

Justin, vii. c. 5.

---

[1] *suscepti*] procreati, Twysden.

[2] *nichil . . . capturus*] magnum æstimans, B.

[3] *interfectæ sunt*] Justin, lib. x. cc. 1, 2. "Posthæc Artaxerxes ex "dolore morbo contracto decedit, "rex quam pater felicior." Add. Twysden, from Justin; om. A. B.

[4] *Bubaris . . . . vendicaverat*] From Justin, lib. vii. cc. 3, 4, 5. Thus abridged in B. "Euridice "regina Macedonum, filiæ pelex,

Justin, xxxviii. c. 2. Cum senex Metridates rex Ponti a Pharnace filio suo teneretur obsessus, morique compelleretur, venenum hausit; sed infusa pestis visceribus nichil ei nocere potuit. Puer namque sæpe tutorum passus insidias, exquisitis se stagnaverat remediis ut etiam volens perire veneno non posset. A.D. 1173. Pharnaces and Mithridates. Idem, libro xxxvii.

Justin, xxxix. c. 5. Alexander rex Ægyptiorum cum suam matrem Cleopatram occultatis insidiis interfecisset, in ultionem tanti facinoris a civibus suis regno expellitur. Alexander and Cleopatra. Idem, libro xxxix.

Justin, xli. c. 6. Eucratides rex Bractianorum cum Indiam in potestatem redegisset, a filio quem sibi socium regni fecerat interficitur. Qui non dissimulato parricidio, velut hostem non patrem interfecisset, per sanguinem ejus currum egit, et corpus abici jussit. Eucratides, king of Bactria. Idem, libro xli.

Justin, xlii. cc. 4, 5. Orodes rex Parthorum triginta filios ex pelicibus habens, cum multæ pelices, ex quibus generata tanta juventus erat, pro suis quæque animum regis obsidebat, fatum Parthiæ efficit, in qua dum quasi sollemne est reges parricidas haberi, ut sceleratissimus omnium Fraates nomine rex statueretur. Itaque statim quasi nollet mori patrem interficit, fratres quoque triginta trucidat. Sed nec in filiis cessant parricidia, nam cum infestos sibi optimates videret, ne esset qui nominari rex posset, adultum filium interfici jubet. Orodes, king of Parthia. Idem, l. xlii.

Parricidia quæ prænotavimus perpetrata sunt ante incarnationem Domini, et a Trogo Pompeio litteris commendata.[1]

Josephus, Antt. Jud., xiii. c. 19. Aristobolus, impatiens materni dominii, matrem cum filiis minoribus vinculavit in carcere; nec tamen regnavit Aristobolus nisi per annum, eo quod matrem fame peremerat in vinculis.[2] Aristobulus

---

" ut generum suum Bubarim sulli-
" maret in regnum, Alexandrum
" regem magni patruum Alexandri,
" quem marito suo scilicet Amintæ
" regi pepererat, interfecit."

[1] *Parricidia . . . . commendata*] Inserted in the margin in B.

[2] *Aristobolus . . . vinculis*] om. B.

A.D. 1173. Herod and Alexander.

[1]Herodes rex Judæorum Alexandrum filium suum secum Romam traxit, et veneni sibi parati reum apud Augustum Cæsarem postulavit. Qui patri reconciliatus, dum iterum ipsi propinasset venenum, occisus est a patre.

Josephus, libro xvii. Antiquitatum.

Josephus, Antt. Jud., xvi. cc. 7, 17.

Examples since the Incarnation.

Si vis scire post passionem Christi quoto anno ab incarnatione Domini patres adversos filios insurrexerint, vel filii adversus parentes, notatum in sequentibus poteris invenire.

Hormisdas and Chosroes.

DXCI. Hormisda rex Persarum gladii potestatem exercens in subditos, et metu pœnarum ab illicitis revocare contendens, a Persis captus et excæcatus est. Cosdroe filius suus hoste quovis infestior et ad cæcitatem paternam oculos non reflectens, dum nimis aspiraret ad regnum non timuit incurrere parricidium. Excusatior filius inter parricidas si priusquam populus patris oculos eruisset ipse simul cum oculis vitam ademisset et patri.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 591.

Gregorius Turonensis archiepiscopus.

Chosroes and Syrois.

DCXXII. Syrois filius secundi Cosdroæ regis Persarum avum suum Hormisdam regem excæcatum a Persis, interfectum a filio, semper ante oculos habens, patrem suum Cosdroem interfecit; in nece patris avo suo non dubitans exequias celebrare.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 629.

Regino abbas Prumensis.

Quid actum sit apud orientales dignum culleo parricidali supra posuimus. Quid autem actum sit Romæ

---

[1] The following illustrations occur in different order in B., which, after the word *vinculis*, proceeds, "Quid "actum sit Romæ nondum ad fidem "Christi conversæ docebunt se-"quentia. Nero, &c. . . . . con-"sumpta est," as above. "Quid "actum sit apud Persas inter nota-"bilia computandum post incarna-"tionem Domini execrabilibus ubi-"que parricidiis annectendum se-"quens pagina declarabit; Hor-"misda . . . patri," as above. "Si "vis scire quoto anno ab Incarna-"tione Domini patres adversus "filios insurrexerint vel filii ad-"versus parentes, docebunt sequen-"tia; . . . Syrois . . . celebrare," as above.

dum adhuc gentilitatis involveretur errore breviter adjungamus. A.D. 1173. Examples from Roman history.

Nero persequens Christianos etiam matrem occidit, et ut ei pœna vel remissior meritis infligeretur interfecit seipsum, et adhuc in ultionem matris omnis in eo familia Cæsaris Augusti consumpta est. Nero and his mother.

Eusebius, libro ii., capitulo vicesimo quinto.

Si fidei Christianæ cultores suos Roma, suos Constantinopolis imperatores, enumeraverit, et ipsorum fortunas investigaverit diligenter, inmoderata dominandi libido ad dejectionem paternam filios animasse, filios orbem sæpius concussisse docebitur. Examples at Constantinople.

DCCXCI. Constantinus imperator Constantinopolitanus, ex quo sponsalia contraxit cum filia Karoli magni regis Francorum et imperatoris Romani, statim elatus affinitatis novæ prætextu matrem suam Yrenen expulit ab imperio. Quæ post triennium resumptis viribus filium cepit et excæcavit.[1] Constantine and Irene.

Windichindus Saxonicus.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 801. DCCCI. Romani qui ab imperatore Constantinopolitano jamdiu animo desciverant, nunc accepta occasionis opportunitate, quia mulier, excæcato imperatore Constantino filio suo, eis imperabat, uno omnium consensu Karolo regi imperatorias laudes acclamant, eumque per manum Leonis papæ coronant Cæsarem, et Augustum appellant.[2] Election of Charles the Great

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 792. DCCXCII. Pipinus[3] Karoli magni imperatoris Romani filius naturalis gibboque deformis, vana spe regni a majoribus terræ illectus, contra patrem suum conjurationem fecit; Pipin son of Charles.

---

[1] *Constantinus . . . . excæcavit*] Constantinus imperator Constantinopolitanus, ultimus hujus nominis, matrem suam Yrenem imperatricem imperio privat. Yrene imperatrix super erepto sibi imperio fœmineo dolore abusa, Constantinum filium suum oculis et imperio privat, et sola annis tribus imperat, B. This is an extract from Sigebert of Gembloars, A.D. 791, 798.

[2] *Romani . . . appellant*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 801.

[3] *Pipinus, &c.*] See Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 792.

A.D. 1173. qui consilio detecto tonsoratur et monachus efficitur. Sociorum ejus alii decollantur, alii suspenduntur.

The children of Lewis the Pious.

DCCCXXXIII. Ludovicus Pius imperator Romanus, filius Karoli Magni, Karolo Calvo filio suo, quem ex Judith filia Welfonis sustulerat, Alemanniam, et maximam partem regni, coram filiis suis ex Ermingardi sublatis, Lothario scilicet et Ludovico et Pipino, concessit; unde tres indignati sunt et insurrexerunt in patrem, et eum bello captum in carcere detruserunt. Quod facinus, fraterno inter se discidio et bello apud Fontaniacum habito, postmodum expiarunt.[1] Mar. Scot., A.D. 829, 841.

The kingdom of Germany and the empire ruled by elected sovereigns.

Lotarius imperator Romanus, nepos Karoli Magni, patrem suum Ludovicum imperatorem carcerali custodiæ mancipavit. Quod ne videatur aliquibus inpunitum mansisse, dum Lotarius liberos non sustulerit, post Karolum Calvum fratrem suum juniorem de rege Francorum creatum imperatorem, barbaries incomposita Baioariorum, tam regnum Germaniæ, tam regnum Longobardorum quam etiam ipsum imperium, non ordine successorio semper, sed electione communi frequentius et optinet, et optinuit.[2]

Punishment of Charles, son of Lewis the German.

DCCCLXXIII. Karolus junior, Ludovici Germanorum regis filius, a dæmonio graviter in præsentia patris et optimatum ejus vexatur, et in ipsa vexatione confitetur hoc ideo sibi contigisse quia contra patrem suum conspirationem facere moliebatur.[3] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 873.

Punishment of Ludolf, son of Otto I.

DCCCCLII. Luidulfus, Ottonis Romani imperatoris filius, instinctu Conradi ducis contra patrem suum rebellavit, Reinesburc cepit, et multas alias urbes, et principes a patre avertit. Rex illum intra Maguntiam conclusum obsidet. Luidulfo ad gratiam patris reducto, Conradus dux Dei et imperatoris transfuga ad Hungaros se contulit,[4] et ibi mortuus est. Luidulfus sine spe regni mansit, nullum relinquens hæredem. Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 952, 955.

---

[1] *Ludovicus . . . expiarunt*] See above, pp. 134, 135.

[2] *Lotarius . . . . optinuit*] om. B.

[3] *Karolus . . . moliebatur*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 873.

[4] *Luidulfus . . . contulit*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 952, 955.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 1106.

Punishment of the emperor Henry VI.

MCVI. Henricus, filius Henrici imperatoris Romani, consurgens in patrem venit Aquisgranum, imperatore morante apud Leodium, et in quinta feria Dominicæ Cœnæ præmisit suos præoccupare pontem apud Winsatum, ne quis sibi venienti obstaret. Sed militibus patris concurrentibus ad exoccupandum pontem, milites filii a ponte repelluntur; aliis eorum captis, aliis in Mosam mersis, aliis occisis: sicque filius contra patrem veniens rediit inglorius. Qui licet patri succederet, in hujus facti vindictam sine liberis decessit.[1]

Marianus Scotus.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 944.

Punishment of Stephen and Constantine.

DCCCC. Stephanus et Constantinus imperatores Constantinopolitani, ægre ferentes se juxta patris severitatem a juvenili levitate cohercceri, dispositis in palatio insidiis, patrem suum imperatorem, Romanum nomine, de palatii solio deponunt, et tonso ei capite ad vicinam insulam ad philosophandum transmittunt.[2]

Item Windichindus.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 945.

DCCCCL. Ipsi vero post patris depulsionem a Constantino filio Leonis imperatoris, tonsis capitibus, ad idem monasterium ad quod patrem suum transmiserant et ipsi ad philosophandum transmittuntur cum monachis.[3]

Cases in Western History.

Si quid in partibus occidentis, vel in regnis, vel in comitiis, veneranda patrum memoria culleo dignum parricidali perpetratum agnoverit, illud ad filiorum terrorem ne facinus in patres excogitent, nos sub occidente positi ponamus ad ultimum: ponamus etiam qui parentes adversus filios insurrexerint.

Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 563.

Case of Chlothar I.

DLXIII. Lotharius rex Francorum, filius Clodovei primi regis in Francia Christiani, Crannium filium suum contra se diu rebellantem, et cum patri resistere non posset in Minorem Britanniam fugientem, prosecutus est. Conobrum itaque ducem Britonum auxiliarium filii

Gregorius Turonensis archiepiscopus.

[1] *Henricus . . . decessit*] See above, p. 236.

[2] *Stephanus . . . . transmittunt*] From Sigebert of Gemblours, A.D. 944; see above, p. 147.

[3] *Ipsi . . . . . monachis*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 945; see above, p. 147.

A.D. 1173. Lotarius rex peremit. Crannium vero captum cum uxore et filiabus igne consumi fecit.[1]

Karloman. DCCCLXXII. Karolum Calvum regem Francorum domestica calamitas in filiis suis afflixit. Siquidem Karlomannum, in clericatu usque ad diaconatus officium provectum, ipse pater cepit et excæcavit, pro eo quod ad apostasiam conversus, et omni genere nocendi regnum perturbans, alter quidem Julianus effectus erat.[2] Item Wincichindus. Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 872.

Constantia, queen of France. MXXXVII. Constancia mater Henrici regis Francorum, novercalibus incitata machinamentis, filium suum regem a regno Francorum expellere modis omnibus attemptavit.[3] Magister Hugo de S. Victore.

Sigismund, king of Burgundy. DCCC. Rex Burgundiæ Sigismundus, qui monasterium Agaunensium construxerat, filium suum Sigericum peremit, malo novercæ illius consilio usus. Qui competenti pœnitentia se addicens, et martyribus Agaunensibus se totum devovens, quod dignus fuerit venia testatur crebra post mortem ejus multis concessa sanitatum gratia, et per eum febricitantibus indulta curatio.[4] Item Gregorius. Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 800.

Levigild, king of the Visigoths. DLXXXIX. Levigildus rex Wisigothorum filium suum Herminigildum hostili persequens animo, eum[5] dampnavit exilio. Et quoniam Arrianæ communioni participare noluit, nocte sancta Paschæ in carcere securi occidit. Item Gregorius. Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 589.

Alchfrith, son of Oswy. Alfridus Oswii regis Northanimbrorum filius insurrexit in patrem. Sed cum viribus esset inferior, et a regno patrem expellere nullo conamine potuisset, Pendam regem Merciorum, Oswaldi regis et martyris interfectorem, suam Historia Britonum, nono capitulo, ante finem libri.

---

[1] This story is abridged from Gregory of Tours, Hist. Franc., iv. c. 20: see also Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 562; Gesta Regum Francorum, cap. 28; and p. 98, above.

[2] *Karolum . . . . . erat*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 872; see above, p. 138.

[3] *Constancia . . . . attemptavit*] See above, p. 183.

[4] *Rex . . . . . curatio*] Sigeb. Gembl., A.D. 515; from the Gesta Regum Francorum, c. 34; abridged from Gregory of Tours, iii. 5.

[5] *cum*] om. B.

traxit in partem. Penda vero cum xxx. ducibus xxx. secum legiones habentibus interfectus est ab Oswio.[1] A.D. 1173.

Flor. Wig., A.D. 855. DCCCLI. Ethelwlfus rex Anglorum, pater Aluredi magni regis in Anglia, Roma rediens, ubi vota orationum persolverat, a filiis suis Ethelbaldo et Ethelredo repulsus est: sed post multas inquietationes regno inter patrem et filios partito pacificati sunt. Duobus itaque filiis Ethelwlfi sine liberis decedentibus, Aluredus, qui cum patre steterat, totius regni suscepit gubernacula.[2] Ethelwulf and his sons.

Marianus Scotus.

Flor. Wig., A.D. 1077, 1079. MLXXIX. Robertus Curtahosa, primogenitus filius regis Willelmi Bastard, eo quod Normanniam, quam sibi ante adventum ipsius in Anglia coram Philippo rege Francorum dederat, possidere non licebat, Franciam adiit, et auxilio Philippi regis in Normannia magnam frequenter prædam agebat. Pater ergo pugnam cum filio iniit ante castellum Gerberai, qui a filio vulneratus in brachio, et ab equo dejectus, filio maledixit. Quam maledictionem filius in carcere moriens, et nullum hæredem relinquens, evidenter incurrit.[3] Robert of Normandy.

Sigisbertus.

MX. Fulco Nerra comes Andegavensium, Jerosolimam proficiscens, Gaufrido Martello filio suo comitatum usque ad reditum custodiendum commisit. Filius itaque proceres, equites, cives, et populum animavit in patrem. Votis orationum completis pater rediens est repulsus a filio. Fit discursus per patriam, cædibus et rapinis insistitur. Pater in angustia positus castella, villas, et prædia suis fautoribus se daturum spopondit. Et ut totum reciperet, totum quod filius possidebat, fere totum distribuit. Quod in suum revocare dominium, sibi postmodum vel adhuc alicui successorum suorum non licuit. Filius tandem patri reconciliatus patri successit. Fulk Nerra, count of Anjou.

Item Sigisbertus.

---

[1] *Alfridus . . . Oswio*] Abridged from Geoffrey of Monmouth, xii. c. 11–13.

[2] *Ethelwlfus . . gubernacula*] See Florence of Worcester, A.D. 855.

[3] *Robertus . . incurrit*] Although referred to Sigebert in the marginal rubric, the passage is from the Abbreviationes, above, p. 210, slightly altered.

A.D. 1173. Sed parricidii quod excogitaverat pœnas luens, sine liberis decessit.[1]

Story of William, count of Poictou.

MCXII. Willelmus comes Pictavensium uxori suæ pelicem superinduxit vocatam Amalbergim.[2] Willelmus comitis primogenitus, matris injurias ulcisci proponens, insurrexit in patrem. Inter quos lite protracta diutius dampnosum Aquitania transegit septennium. Tandem filius jure belli captus a patre recipitur in concordiam; sed cum lex humana filios erubescat patrum castigatores statuere, quia patrem indigne tractaverat, in sepulchro patrum suorum filius sepeliri non meruit, sed peregre proficiscens apud Sanctum Jacobum in Galicia diem clausit extremum.[3]

Robertus abbas.

Bishop Gilbert of London goes to Normandy.

Ad vocationem regis patris Gilebertus Lundoniensis episcopus in Normanniam transfretavit. Rex[4] itaque cum cardinalibus, cum episcopo, cum domesticis et familiaribus suis, de consilio vacantium ecclesiarum in Anglia compendiosum habens tractatum, Lundoniensem cum festinatione remisit, litteras deferentem continentes hæc verba;

Letter of the legates Albert and Theodinus.

"Albertus et Theodinus presbiteri cardinales, et apostolicæ " sedis legati, dilectis in Christo fratribus, clericis et mona- " chis vacantium ecclesiarum in Anglia, oculos habere semper " ad Dominum. Inspirante Illo a Quo bona cuncta procedunt, " inductus est dominus rex, ut ecclesiæ vestræ secundum " Deum celeriter ordinentur. Mandamus itaque vobis ut, " remotis contentionibus et diversis partium studiis, cum " bonarum et religiosarum consilio personarum, de personis

---

[1] *Fulco . . . decessit*] This passage is an amplification of that part of the Angevin history given above under A.D. 1010, pp. 161 sq. It is inserted in the Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 333, with a note stating that in the MS. used for that work, it is inserted under the year 1173; a sufficient proof in itself that these Angevin memorials are drawn from the work of Ralph de Diceto, whoever may have been the original writer.

[2] *Amalbergim*] Amalbergun, B.

[3] *Willelmus . . . extremum*] This paragraph is probably the work of R. de Diceto himself, drawn from the contemporary Chronicle of Ordericus Vitalis and the Gesta Ludovici VII.

[4] *Rex*] Here MS. D. resumes.

"quæ a sacris canonibus nullatenus respuantur, electiones "facere maturetis, et taliter in tam necessario negotio procedatis, ut et Deus in omnibus honoretur, et saluti animarum "vestrarum ac paci regni utiliter videatur esse provisum. "Nos sane, in procinctu itineris constituti, brevi pagina caritatem vestram ad id quod expedit duximus commonendam; "vos intendite ut per privatam commotionem aut gratiam "alicujus ecclesiastica utilitas non debeat impediri."[1] A.D. 1173. The vacant churches are to be filled up by election.

Radulfus de Warnevilla Rotomagensis sacrista, thesaurarius Eboracensis, constitutus est Angliæ cancellarius. Qui modum vivendi parum a privato dissimilem, quem prius semper habuerat, non immutavit, malens Waltero de Constanciis canonico Rothomagensi[2] vices in curia regis committere, quam circa latus principis militantes, expensis profusioribus, lautioribus mensis, ad sui gloriam nominis propagandam per dies singulos invitare. Ralph of Warneville made chancellor, Walter of Coutances vice-chancellor.

Septies viginti Flandrenses, irruptione facta prope Pasceium, beneficio pontis intraverunt Normanniam; clangor[3] lituorum, populi clamor, armatorum discursus, e vestigio locum repleverunt eundem. Et sic Normanni viriliter resistentes eos quantocius cogitare de reditu coegerunt. Sed pons, quo transitum prius habuerant, a muliercula quadam effractus, in subsidium aquas opposuit profundissimas. Quibus involuti Flandrenses universi submersi sunt. Quod audiens Ludovicus rex Francorum ait, "Pro Normannis elementa decertant. "Nam alio tempore cum intrassem Normanniam, pars "exercitus mei quamplurima pro aquæ penuria periit: nunc nimiam possumus habundantiam aquarum "causari." A body of Flemings invade Normandy. They are drowned in the retreat.

[4] Ad instantiam cardinalium Alberti et Theodini, Henricus rex pater regis in Anglicana ecclesia fieri liberas electiones et permisit et scripsit. Proinde va- Elections to vacant churches.

---

[1] This letter does not appear in the Becket correspondence.

[2] *Waltero . . . . Rothomagensi*] alii, B.; written over an erasure in A.

[3] *clangor*] vel stridor, interl., A.; stridor, B.

[4] "De libera electione facienda in "ecclesiis vacantibus." B. in marg.

A.D. 1173. Election of bishops to Winchester, Ely, Lincoln, Bath, Hereford, and Chichester.

cantium ecclesiarum conveniente clero, sub paucorum interstitio dierum, Ricardus Pictavensis archidiaconus ad Wintoniensem, Gaufridus Cantuariensis archidiaconus ad Helyensem, Gaufridus Lincolniensis archidiaconus ad Lincolniensem, Reginaldus Saresbiriensis archidiaconus ad Batoniensem, Robertus Oxenefordensis archidiaconus ad Herefordensem; ad Cicestrensem ecclesiam Johannes ejusdem loci decanus electus est apud Westmonasterium, præsente justiciario regis et assensum præbente.

The elect of Winchester and Ely inthroned, May 17.

Wintoniensis, Helyensis, electi sexto decimo kalendas Junii, die scilicet Ascensionis, in jam addictis sibi sollenniter intronizantur ecclesiis, seque possessionibus ecclesiasticis inmiscentes, homagia, fidelitates episcopo debitas, a laicis sibi subditis et exegerunt et receperunt, non tamen ab omnibus.

The king orders the election of an archbishop.

Litteræ [1] regis patris, litteræ cardinalium, directæ sunt in Angliam pridie nonas Julii, plurimum exortantes, ut de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ communiter ageretur. Suffraganeis igitur super hoc conferentibus, Odo prior Sanctæ Trinitatis, et sanior pars conventus inauditum quiddam de novo cœperunt constanter as-

---

[1] *Litteræ*] MSS. B. and D. read as follows :—
"II° nonas Junii, litteræ regis patris, litteræ cardinalium, directæ sunt "in Angliam plurimum exhortantes ut de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ "communiter ageretur. Suffraganeis igitur super hoc conferentibus, "monachi Cantuarienses commune bonum sicut dicebatur impedire vo- "lentes, inauditum quiddam et intolerabile de novo cœperunt constanter "asserere, quod et de suo collegio surrogandus esset antistes, licet hoc in "ea sede nullis contigisset temporibus, et quod esset ab ipsis in publico "nominandus. Semotis itaque duobus a multitudine monachorum, Odone "scilicet priore Cantuariæ et Ricardo priore Dourensis cœnobii, cum eos "monachi suffraganeis præsentassent, ad sui prioris electionem obrepere "molientes, Gilbertus Lundoniensis episcopus, consurgens in medium, de "communi consilio fratrum ait, 'Nos Ricardum priorem eligimus,' quem "manibus comprehendens incepit alta voce 'Te Deum laudamus' multi- "tudinem clericorum confluentium eandem animavit in vocem. Monachi "videntes suam intentionem elusam accurrerunt confusi. Expletis, &c.," as in the text. MS. C. agrees with the text.

A.D. 1173.

serere, quod et de suo collegio subrogandus esset antistes, et quod esset ab ipsis in publico nominandus. Et quia regis patris intererat plurimum diebus illis electionem concorditer celebrari, semotis duobus a multitudine monachorum, Odone scilicet priore Cantuariensi, Ricardo priore Dovorensi, cum eos monachi præsentassent episcopis, ad sui prioris electionem unanimiter aspirantes, Gilebertus Lundoniensis episcopus consurgens in medium, cum prius ad laudem Odonis prioris plurima congessisset, de communi consilio coepiscoporum aliam declinavit in partem, dicens, "Nos Ricardum priorem eligimus;" quem manibus comprehendens incepit alta voce, "Te Deum laudamus;" multitudinem clericorum undique confluentium eandem animavit in vocem. Expletis ergo sollennibus quæ in applausu fiunt hujusmodi, Cantuariensis electus, sicut omnes prius electi fidelitatem regis juraverant, sic et ipse juravit salvo ordine suo; nulla prorsus de regni consuetudinibus observandis habita mentione. Hæc acta sunt apud Westmonasterium, in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ, præsente justiciario regis et assensum præbente.

Odo prior of Christchurch, and Richard prior of Dover, are named.

How Richard was elected.

Hugo de Gornai,[1] tam pater quam filius, et quater xx. milites cum eis, non tam inimicorum virtute quam insidiis intercepti, capti sunt a rege filio. Castrum succensum est; burgenses ad redemptionem compulsi.

Hugh de Gornai captured by the young king.

Ipsa die qua de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ pertractatum est, apices summi pontificis in communi audientia recitati sunt, continentes hæc verba:[2]

"Alexander[3] papa, venerabilibus fratribus, archiepiscopis, "episcopis, et dilectis filiis aliis ecclesiarum prælatis, et uni- "verso clero et populo per Angliam constituto, salutem, et "apostolicam benedictionem. Redolet Anglia fragrantia et "virtute signorum quæ per merita illius sancti et reverendi

Letter of the pope for the canonization of Thomas Becket, March 13.

---

[1] *Gornai*] Gurnai, D.

[2] MS. D. repeats the bull although it had been inserted above at p. 347.

[3] See Epistt. S. Thomæ Cant. (ed. Giles), S. T. C. iv. 75.

A.D. 1173. March 13. Bull for the canonization of S. Thomas.

"viri Thomæ, quondam Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, omnipo-"tens Dominus operatur, et universa ubique lætatur Christiana "religio, pro eo quod Ille Qui est mirabilis et gloriosus in "Sanctis Sanctum Suum post mortem glorificavit. Cujus vita "laudabilis multa fulsit gloria meritorum, et tandem martyrio "consummata est certaminis gloriosi. Quamvis autem dubitare "de sanctitate ejus non possit, qui ejus vitam et laudabilem "conversationem attendit, et gloriosam considerat passionem, "voluit, tamen Salvator et Redemptor noster ejus sanctitatis "insignia magnificis[1] irradiare miraculis, ut qui pro Christo "insuperabilis virtutis constantia necessitates et pericula per-"tulit, sui laboris et certaminis in æterna beatitudine cog-"noscatur ab omnibus percepisse triumphum. Nos, auditis "innumeris et magnis miraculis quæ jugiter per illius merita "universitas narrat fidelium, et super his, non sine magno "gaudio, per dilectos fratres nostros Albertum tituli Sancti "Laurentii in Lucina, et Theodinum Sancti Vitalis presbiteros "cardinales, et apostolicæ sedis legatos, qui eadem miracula "tanto perspicacius didicerunt, quanto amplius loco sunt vicini, "præcipue certiores effecti, et plurium aliarum testimonio "personarum fidem sicut debuimus adhibentes, prædictum "archiepiscopum sollenniter in ecclesia, magno ibidem cleri-"corum et laicorum collegio præsente, in capite jejunii de-"liberato fratrum nostrorum consilio canonizavimus, ipsumque "decrevimus Sanctorum cathalogo adscribendum. Universi-"tatem itaque vestram monemus, et auctoritate qua fungimur "districte præcipimus, ut natalem prædicti gloriosi martyris "die passionis ejus sollenniter sub annis singulis celebretis, "et apud eum votivis orationibus satagatis veniam peccatorum "promereri, ut qui pro Christo in vita exilium, et in morte "virtutis constantia passionis martyrium pertulit, fidelium "jugi supplicatione pulsatus pro nobis apud Deum intercedat. "Datum Signiæ, iij. idus Martii."

Rejoicing on the occasion.

Apicibus vix bene perlectis, ad laudem ipsius martyris, et certaminis gloriosi triumphum, omnes quotquot convenerant levaverunt vocem in sullime, dicentes, "Te Deum laudamus." Et quoniam suffraganei debitam patri reverentiam ei, aut exuli, aut ab exilio revertenti, aut etiam[2] reverso, non exhibuerant, ut suum omnibus publice confiterentur errorem, injustitiam, et iniquitatem, ab ore unius episcopi omnium episcoporum est

---

[1] *magnificis*] post mortem suam, ins. Twysden.

[2] *etiam*] jam, ins. B.

expressa confessio, quod in oratione laudibus annexa satis evidenter apparuit, cujus fuit hic tenor; "Adesto, "Domine, supplicationibus nostris, ut qui ex iniquitate "nostra reos nos esse cognoscimus, beati Thomæ mar- "tyris tui atque pontificis intercessione liberemur."

A.D. 1173. Collect for the service in honour of Thomas.

Maria soror sancti Thomæ martyris, mandato regis patris et contemplatione fratris, facta est abbatissa Berchingensis,

His sister Mary abbess of Barking.

Robertus comes Legecestriæ, mutuam accipiens undequaque pecuniam, et verba pacis habens, venit Lundoniam, transfretandi licentiam a justiciariis impetravit; similiter et Willelmus camerarius de Tancarvilla petiit transfretandi licentiam. Uterque, sacramento corporaliter præstito, regis patris fidelitatem juravit; sed subito trans mare currentes, cœlum ilico mutaverunt et animum. Nam cum audissent quæ fiebant in terra, cœperunt et ipsi de transfugio cogitare. Johannes siquidem comes de Soeneis,[1] Hugo comes Cestrensis, Robertus comes de Mellent, Jocelinus Crispin, Gilebertus de Tiveleres,[2] Robertus de Monte Forti, Willelmus Patricius, Hasculfus de Sancto Hylario, Radulfus dominus Fulgeriarum,[3] et plures mediæ manus homines, quos ex justis et probabilibus causis rex pater exhæredaverat, regis filii cesserunt in partem, non quia causam ejus justiorem attenderent, sed quia rex pater, regiæ titulos dignitatis ampliare procurans, superborum et sullimium colla calcaret, castella patriæ suspecta vel everteret vel in suam redigeret potestatem; bonorum occupatores quæ suam ad mensam quasi ad fiscum ab antiquo pertinere noscuntur, patrimonio proprio contentos esse debere constanter assereret, et etiam cogeret; proditionis reos dampnaret exilio; raptores sententia capitali puniret, fures terreret in furca; pauperum oppressores pecuniæ jactura mulctaret.

The earl of Leicester and the chamberlain of Tankerville go abroad and join the conspiracy against Henry.

Other lords join the party of the young king.

Political reasons for their enmity to Henry.

---

[1] *Johannis . . . . Soeneis*] John count of Alençon: the Sonnois is a little territory in the north of Maine, the original possession of the house of Belesme.

[2] *Tiveleres*] Tuileres, B.

[3] *Fulgeriarum*] Felgeriarum, B.

A.D. 1173. June 8. The consecrations at Canterbury prevented by the letters of the young king.

VI[to]. idus Junii Cantuariensis electus, occurrentibus episcopis electis, clero, populo, apud Cantuariam sollenni processione receptus est. Actum est ipsa die de consecrationibus faciendis in crastino; sed litteræ regis filii regis, episcopis quibusdam et priori transmissæ, fuerunt impedimento. In quibus continebatur quod citra conscientiam et assensum ejus, in regno cujus diadema susceperat, electiones, consecrationes, intronizationes fieri non debebant; quod quia factum fuerat jam ex parte sub præsentia cardinalium Alberti et Theodini, qui cum licentia regis patris et gratia, quem principem Christianissimum et dixerunt et scripserunt, a Normannia jam recesserant, appellaverat, et adhuc per epistolam appellabat. Sic intermissis consecrationibus quique redierunt ad propria.

Lewis VII. besieges Verneuil.

Ludovicus rex Francorum ad Normanniam penitus devastandam innumerabilem congregavit exercitum octavis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Auxiliariis undique concurrentibus, primo impetu statuit delere Vernolium. Fixis circumquaque tentoriis, quanam ex parte primos experiretur conatus, missis exploratoribus, cœpit inquirere. Reportatum est, castrum inaccessibile, utpote fossatis circumdatum, cinctum muris, propugnaculis obfirmatum, viris bellicosis ebulliens, radiantibus armis refertum, victualibus multis abundans, et nisi longa obsidio fame coarctaverit multitudinem intus obsessam, Franci poterant inani labore consumi, vel atteri prorsus irreparabili jactura. Ad sumptus igitur exercitui providendos, relatio necessaria domicilio cujusque transmittitur. Per totam Galliam fit descriptio generalis. Nullus immunitate gaudebat. A sedente in solio usque ad laborantem in mola vel in prostibulo dormientem, manum extendere jubebantur regii exactores. Non sexus, non ordo, non dignitas a muneribus sordidis vacationem habebat. Persona fortunæ injuria miserabilis, si vel agellulum possideret vel asinum, urgebatur conferre. Hujuscemodi passim imprecabantur expeditioni, qui, ut exercitui necessaria ministrarent, distrahere patrimonia cogebantur.

The means by which he raised supplies throughout France.

Rex filius Philippum Flandrensem comitem, Mathæum fratrem suum comitem Boloniensem, multis et magnis promissionibus emollitos, instigatione regis Francorum suam traxit in partem. Qui quantocius multitudinem armatorum sub edicto vocantes, primoribus Flandriæ renitentibus, intraverunt cum eo Normanniam in superbia magna. Castellum itaque de Albamarle, quod sine quorundam ignominia dici non potest, est celeriter expugnatum. Willelmus comes dominus ejusdem castri, comes Symon, et alii plures capti sunt intus, et ad redemptionem compulsi. Qui duo proditionem ab aliis non a suis factam captionis suæ traxerunt in culpam. Castello juxta voluntatem comitis custodiæ deputato obsederunt Driuencurt, castrum munitissimum et militibus electis commissum. Sed quoniam ubi caput languidum est membra robusta suum non possunt exercere vigorem, expugnatum est et ipsum armis eisdem, assultu consimili, eo infortunio quo et castellum de Albemarle, et similiter custodiæ deputatum. Cum inde progrederentur versus castrum Arches, Boloniensis comes in festo Sancti Jacobi a quodam marchione vulneratur ad mortem. Quod divino judicio factum esse pro certo cognoscimus. Nam quia propositis et tactis sacrosanctis reliquiis, inter quas et manus Sancti Jacobi præsentialiter habebatur, quinquennio jam transacto in festo Sancti Jacobi fidelitatem patris regis juraverat, et, sicut modo apparuit, in omnium oculis dejeraverat, in ultionem tanti sceleris, in die festo Sancti Jacobi letali vulnere percussus est. Philippus comes de reditu festino sollicitus, cum victoria simul et cum gaudio remeasset ad propria, nisi quia proditionis nota suos denigraret successus, et nisi quia mors fratris, quæ imminebat, dubios belli eventus sibi repromitteret in futurum. Rediit itaque per comitatum Aucensem, quem rex filius potestati suæ jam totum subjecerat.

A.D. 1173. The young king makes a league with the counts of Flanders and Boulogne.

Aumâle taken.

Driencourt taken.

The count of Boulogne mortally wounded, July 25.

The count of Flanders retires by Eu.

Rex pater eo tempore morabatur Rothomagi, ut populo videbatur, æquo animo ferens quæ fiebant in terra; frequentius solito venatui totus indulgens, veni-

Henry II. was at Rouen.

A.D. 1173.

He is deserted by many of his early friends.

entibus ad se vultum hylaritatis prætendens, aliquid extorquere volentibus patienter respondens. Hi quos ab annis puerilibus enutrierat, hi quos donaverat cingulo militari, hi quos domesticos prius habuerat et in consiliis familiarissimos, cotidie dilabebantur ab eo, credentes ejus dejectionem futuram in brevi, filii dominationem arbitrantes procedere juxta regis Francorum et principum voluntatem. Qui ut causam ejus foverent attentius eum cum tanta sollicitudine,[1] cum tantis expensis, cum tanto discrimine promovere curabant, se sua suosque contemplatione ipsius diversis generibus mortium, rapinis, deprædationibus, et incendiis incunctanter exponere minime dubitantes.

He collects forces against Lewis.

Ut audivit rex pater Philippum Flandrensium comitem a Normannia recessisse, quantum potuit subito congregavit exercitum, ut, si regem Francorum intra fines Normanniæ repperisset, prælium iniret cum illo.

July 15.

Brave resistance of Verneuil.

Obsesso Vernolio idibus Julii, an lignis, an lapidibus undique comportatis Franci fossatum repleverint, et redegerint in planitiem, noli quærere. Ne quæras etiam an ad subvertendum castrum erexerint machinas muris altis etiam altiores, an impetus faciendo resistentes attriverint, an fundis Balearibus lapides jaciendo dejecerint propugnacula. Nam quotiens parati ad pugnam Franci muros appropinquare condixerant, a Normannis gravi semper affecti jactura repellebantur.

Famine within the walls.

Intra septa Vernolii burgum quoddam, a divitibus mixtim et pauperibus inhabitatum, alto clausum muro, certis distinctum limitibus, proprio designatum vocabulo, Burgum videlicet Reginæ, quoniam a tempore obsidionis pauperum et debilium intus fuerat multitudo conclusa, fame cœpit periclitari. Quod cum ad regis Francorum notitiam pervenisset, Burgi portas sibi petiit aperiri,

Truce for three days.

lege proposita, quod si quis intra triduum proximum subveniret Burgo conclusis, quod impossibile judicabat, ab omni læsione servarentur indempnes. Hoc observan-

---

[1] *sollicitudine*] solitudine, A. C.

dum legitime Robertus comes frater regis Francorum, Henricus comes de Campania, Theodbaldus comes Blesensis, nomine regis Francorum, sacramento firmarunt. A.D. 1173.

Henricus rex Angliæ secum habens Rotomagensem archiepiscopum, episcopos plures, comitem Willelmum de Mannavilla, Ricardum comitem de Estriguil, qui nuper ab Ybernia venerat, proceres plurimos, multitudinem armatorum tam equitum quam peditum, quos ab urbibus et castellis salva ipsorum custodia jam evocaverat, impiger advolat ad succurrendum Burgo conclusis, et ipsa die qua datæ fuerunt induciæ, ipsa die qua rex Francorum receptus est intra Burgum, marchionum catervis, Brebantinorum cohortibus faciem suam præcedentibus, figit tentoria loco castris idoneo, sed ab exercitu Francorum aliquantisper remoto, scilicet apud Conchas. In crastino dispositis aciebus, et quæ ad pugnam necessaria videbantur ex ordine pertractatis, nuntios dirigit in mandatis habentes verbis pacificis dicere regi Francorum, quatinus a Normannia cum indempnitate suorum recederet, alioquin visitaret eum ipsa die sed in manu robusta. Quod audiens rex Francorum, cum sciret regem Angliæ fortissimum esse et amaro animo, veluti si ursa raptis catulis in saltu sæviat, fuga suis, nec dicam sibi, consulere potius quam pugnare decrevit, et sic veritus a facie regis Angliæ conventionis oblitus quam inierat cum Burgensibus, et inmemor sacramenti, Burgum succendit, spolia diripit, captivos abducit,[1] et equum velociorem ascendens, intra Galliam[2] se cum festinatione recepit. Impedimenta Francorum Normannis supervenientibus et obsessis data sunt in prædam. Quæ esculenti et poculenti causa fuerant, ad exercitum Francorum, sive plaustris, sive quadrigis, sive bigis, sive summariis comportata, Brebantinis et marchionibus in direptionem cesserunt v^to[3] idus Augusti.

Henry advances to the relief of Verneuil.

Preparations for battle.

Flight of Lewis.

His camp occupied by the Normans, August 9.

---

[1] *abducit*] abduxit, B.

[2] *Galliam*] Celticam, interl., B.

[3] *v^o*] vi^o., B.

A.D. 1173. July 3. Leicester besieged.

Obsessa est Legecestria v°. nonas Julii. Sumptibus, expensis, laboribus, in obsidione consumptis, commodum inde proveniens non satis æqua lance respondit; fortuito casu pro maxima parte civitate combusta, cives tractaverunt de pace. Marcis itaque trecentis a civibus numeratis et regis thesauro appensis, data est eis licentia recedendi et abeundi quo vellent, compositis sarcinis, dummodo vel in urbibus, vel in castellis, vel in villis regiis habitandi locum assumerent. Illis abeuntibus, subversæ sunt portæ civitatis, pars murorum destructa. Militibus castello conclusis datæ induciæ usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis. Et sic soluta est obsidio v^{to}. kalendas Augusti.

The town taken.

The castle holds out, and the siege breaks up, July 28.

The king of Scots collects a force,

Rex Scottorum Willelmus quæ in provincia Northanhimbrorum avo suo regi David fuerant donata, tradita, cartis confirmata, quæ etiam fuerant ab ipso tempore longo possessa, repetens a rege patre sed repulsam inveniens, congregavit exercitum, habens multitudinem infinitam Galwalensium, agilem, nudam, calvitie multa notabilem, sinistrum latus munientem cultellis, armatis quibuslibet formidandis, jaculis jaciendis et dirigendis in longinquum manum habentem aptissimam, lanceam longam cum ad bellum progreditur erigentem pro signo. Per fines itaque Hugonis episcopi Dunolmensis securum transitum habens, rex Scotiæ cœpit Angliam depopulari, succendere villas, innumerabilem congregare prædam, captivas abducere mulierculas, a prægnantium uteris infantes semivivos abstrahere. Ad propulsandam ergo tantam et talem injuriam, Angliæ magnates, arma cum ea qua fieri potuit acceleratione sumentes, regem Scotiæ subito fugam arripere coegerunt et intra Scotiam se recipere. Qui sequentes ejus vestigia totum Loheneis vastaverunt incendio; quicquid repertum est extra muros datum est Anglis in direptionem. Et sic ad petitionem regis Scottorum, datis induciis usque ad festum Sancti Hylarii, magnates Angliæ cum victoria redierunt.

crosses the frontier and invades England.

The English repulse him and pursue him into Lothian, but make a truce until January, 1174.

A.D. 1173. The earl of Leicester lands at Walton in Suffolk, Sept. 29.

Robertus comes Legecestriæ, consumpta pecunia quam ab Anglia secum asportaverat, reversurus in Angliam, et per Flandriam transitum habens, cum uxore, cum supellectile, venit apud Witsant, ubi tam Normannorum quam Flandrensium, tam equitum quam peditum, plurima comitante caterva, navem ascendit, et velis in altum expassis appulsus est in Suthfolc apud Walentonam[1] iii^tio kalendas Octobris. Qui, navibus cum festinatione remissis, ad expugnandum castrum in supercilio montis constructum diebus iiii^or laboravit, et licet comitem Hugonem Bigod et quotquot poterat congregare cum machinis in auxilium habuisset, excelsæ turri muris fundatæ fortissimis nocere non potuit. Inde progrediens, post aliquot dies, iii^tio scilicet idus Octobris castellum de Hagenet invasit, cepit, succendit, xxx^ta fere milites intus captos ad redemptionem coegit. Regrediens ad Framelingeham,[2] cum mora ejus onerosa Hugoni Bigot domino castri videretur, sed uxori ipsius Hugonis plurimum odiosa, necessitate compulsus ad Legecestriam visitandam animum direxit et gressum; subitum igitur iter arripiens, proposuit a læva relinquere burgum Sancti Æadmundi. Quod exercitum regis patris, qui tunc temporis ad patriam reservandam[3] inibi morabatur, latere non potuit. Stipatus milite multo comes, et paratus ad pugnam, in tribus milibus Flandrensium armatorum, quos viæ participes tunc habebat, confidebat non minimum. Verum si milites regis militibus comitis conferantur, regalium numerus militiam comitis excedet in quadruplum. Si vero capita capitibus sub æqua dinumeratione respondeant, si armatorum hinc inde copiam tam equestrem quam pedestrem æqua lance quis colligat, multo plures erant cum comite quam qui steterant ex adverso. Inito ergo certamine et ictibus ictuum multiplicitate repulsis,

He takes Hagenet, Oct. 13.

He proceeds towards Leicester,

and meets the king's forces.

Battle.

[1] *Walentonam*] Waletonam, B.

[2] *Framelingcham*] Framingeham, B.; Framelingham, C.

[3] *reservandam*] conservandam, B.; reservandam is written over an erasure in A.

A.D. 1173. Oct. 17. Defeat of the earl of Leicester.

post varios belli eventus comes, comitissa, quotquot Normannorum et Francorum cum eis venerant, capiuntur, xvi^to kalendas Novembris.[1] Flandrensium pars major occiditur, pars quædam submergitur, minima pars ad vincula subeunda pertrahitur. Hugo de Castello capitur, et Walterus de Wahelle.

The king marches to Dol.

Rege patre moram faciente Rotomagi, nuntiatum est, electam regis filii regis militiam apud Dolensem urbem a Brebantinis suis circumclusam. Qui statim equi dorsum insiliens, et eum calcaribus urgens, prima nocte apud Tenerchebrai paululum dormiendo quievit. Sequenti mane in Britanniam veniens, scilicet ad Dol, militiam filii per dies aliquot repugnantem insimul comprehendit. Inimicorum suorum multitudo permaxima, priusquam veniret, a Brebantinis fuerat interempta. Captus est ibi comes Cestrensis, Radulfus dominus Fulgeriarum,[2] Radulfus de Haia, Willelmus Patricius, Hasculfus de Sancto Hylario, et cum istis fere quater viginti milites.

The earl of Chester is captured.

The elect of Canterbury goes to the pope.

Cantuariensis[3] electus, habens in comitatu Batoniensem electum, Romam profectus est.

An army raised to humble Hugh Bigod.

Congregatus est infinitus exercitus apud Colecestriam, apud Sanctum Eadmundum, apud Gipeswic, ad superbiam Hugonis comitis reprimendam. Qui cum posset, sicut plurimis videbatur, expugnari de facili, quia Flandrensium multitudo quæ ad eum confluxerat, si fuisset in castello conclusa, pro penuria victualium deperisset, proh pudor, Angliæ magnates interventu pecuniæ, sicut dicitur, datis et acceptis induciis usque ad octavas Pentecostes securum xiiii. milibus Flandrensium armatorum per Essexiam, per Cantiam, invenerunt conductum, et naves ad transfretandum paratas apud Douram.

He purchases a truce and dismisses his Flemings.

Mission of Nicolas to collect money.

Nicholaus Romanæ ecclesiæ subdiaconus, a domino papa transmissus, ab archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus,

[1] *Novembris*] Decembris, B.

[2] *Fulgeriarum*] Felgeriarum, B.

[3] *Cantuariensis*] Here MS. D. resumes.

abbatissis, prioribus, archimandritis, plurimam collegit pecuniam in usus ecclesiæ laborantis in scismate convertendam. A.D. 1173.

MCLXXIV. Rex filius regis comitem Theobaldum, comitem Perticensem, comitem de Soeneis, et cum eis milites fere quingentos habens in comitatu, Sagiensem urbem invasit, sed, civibus etiam sine principe, etiam sine duce, viriliter resistentibus, nichil profecit. A.D. 1174. The young king fails to capture Séez.

Rogerus de Mulbrai,[1] regis patris a fidelitate recedens, in Axiholme castellum ab antiquo constructum sed tunc temporis dirutum, reædificavit. Multitudo Lincolniensium, in eam insulam transvecta navigio, castellum obsedit, constabularium cepit, milites intus inclusos, pro aquæ penuria laborantes, ad deditionem coegit tertio nonas Maii. Rursus castellum intra dies paucissimos subversum est. Roger Mowbray fortifies Axholm against the king, but is forced to surrender, May 5.

Rex pater, dubitans ne vel rex filius, vel quilibet alii marchiæ vicinantes, intra suos fines irrumperent et Normanniam devastarent, eam domesticis familiaribus, et fidelibus suis lateri suo jugiter prius adhærentibus, custodiendam commisit. Ipse vero, duobus solummodo secum assumptis, scilicet Aluuredo de Vavaci, Gaufrido Esturmi, qua fide sui stare cum eo proposuerant experiri proponens, ingressus Cenomanniam ii°. kalendas Maii, Cenomannicis undique confluentibus, et ad suum per omnia paratis obsequium, si vel bellum ingrueret, vel aliud immineret discrimen, vel etiam mortis instaret periculum. Transiens ergo per patriam, multis militum stipatus catervis, animos suorum in se corroborans, de finibus terræ muniendis et defendendis proceres terræ illius satis exhortans, cum attigisset Andegaviæ fines, universos remisit, duos quos prænominavimus habens in comitatu. Andegavenses celerius et celebrius Cenomannicis occurrerunt regi, multo enim devotius, multo alacrius, multo instantius ad omnia The king enters Maine, April 30. The Angevins submit to him.

---

[1] *Mulbrai*] Munbrai, Twysden.

A.D. 1174.

He keeps Whitsuntide at Poictiers.

quæ rex proponeret, se suo submiserunt arbitrio. Omnibus inibi pro voluntate completis, diem Pentecostes Pictavis celebravit: ubi cum audisset Ricardi filii sui militiam urbem Santonicam occupasse, sumptis secum Pictaviensibus, ad eam liberandam cucurrit. Milites illi,[1] nec Deo nec ecclesiæ sanctæ reverentiam exhibentes, majorem ecclesiam cum facibus et laternis ingressi sunt, et ipsam in castellum subito redigentes, armis et victualibus impleverunt. Cum autem rex citius quam milites credidissent urbem appropinquasset, et in tribus eam munitionibus nimis confidere satis edoctus fuisset, ad invadendum totus incubuit. Præsidium itaque primum, quod in ingressu civitatis fuerat ab antiquo constructum, subjugavit inprimis. Inde[2] progrediens aggressus est fortuna consimili capitellum; præsidium majus sed præsidio primo multo antiquius. Ad ultimum accessit ad majorem ecclesiam, militibus multis et armatis refertam, oppressam a sagittariis, a lenocinantibus conculcatam. Accessit illud, attendens quod in religionem divinam committitur in omnium fertur injuriam.[3] Accessit, inquam, non ut ecclesiam impugnaret, non ut violaret, non ut contaminaret, sed potius ut eam emundaret a sordibus. Extraxit ab ecclesia violatores ecclesiæ. Extraxit, nam frustra legem invocat qui legem impugnat. Capti sunt intus tam in hac scilicet munitione quam in duabus aliis milites circiter lx^ta^, sagittarii circiter cccc. Præscius eorum quæ fiebant in Flandria, cogitabat de reditu. Sex viris illustribus Aquitaniam defendendam et conservandam commisit. In confinio Nannetensium et Andegavensium præsidium quoddam vocatum Ancenis opere sumptuoso construxit, ubi quid faber lignarius et sciret et posset manifestum fecit. Andegaviam, Cenomanniam, et maxime castellum Ancenis, Mauritio de Creun tradidit custodiendum. Veniens in Normanniam quos marchiæ suæ præfecerat,

He takes Saintes.

He drags the rebels from the great church.

Anjou and Maine entrusted to Maurice de Creun.

---

[1] *illi*] filii, B.

[2] *Inde*] Deinde, Twysden.

[3] *Accessit . . . injuriam*] om. B.

et quos constituerat custodes castrorum, sub edicto vocavit apud Bonam Villam. A.D. 1174.

Philippus comes Flandrensium, præsente Ludovico rege, præsentibus regni Francorum majoribus, juraverat tactis sacrosanctis reliquiis, quod infra xv. dies post instans festum Sancti Johannis intraret Angliam in valida manu, et eam regis filii regis subiceret potestati. Hac fiducia tractus rex filius ii^{do} idus Julii venit apud Guitsandum,[1] Radulfum de la Haie cum militia multa transmissurus in Angliam. Flandrensis comes cccxviii., non dicam expeditos vernaculos, sed milites probatissimos, et a Flandrensium multitudine selectos, ad transfretandum præmisit. Qui postquam appulsi sunt in Angliam apud Airewellam xviii^{vo} kalendas Junii, sociis eorum pro maxima parte periclitatis, ilico comitem Hugonem secum assumentes, invaserunt Norwicum, ceperunt, prædati sunt, infinitam inde pecuniam asportarunt, multos abduxerunt captivos, et ad redemptionem gravissimam coegerunt xiiii^{o}. kalendas Julii.

Philip of Flanders swears that he will invade England in July.

The Flemings land, May 15, and capture Norwich, June 18.

Justiciarii regis, videntes mala quæ fiebant in terra, cum multos nuntios transmisissent nec quicquam certi de reditu regis patris in Angliam suscepissent, ad ultimum necessitate compulsi de communi consilio transmiserunt Ricardum Wintoniensem electum, quem pro certo sciebant cæteris multo familiarius, multo ardentius, multo instantius locuturum cum rege, gentis suæ dampna, necessitates, pericula fidelius expositurum, procerum simultates, civium instabilitatem, acclamationem vulgi, frequenter in deteriora proclivem, cupidam novorum, ad motus quoslibet reprimendos difficilem, securius ostensurum. Electus itaque, celeri navigatione transvectus, invenit regem apud Bonam Villam, generale colloquium cum Normannis habentem in festo Sancti Johannis.

Richard elect of Winchester sent by the justices to inform the king of the state of affairs.

He finds him at Bonneville, June 24.

Normanni, Wintoniensis electi adventum intelligentes et causam, dixerunt, "Cum Angli tot emiserint nuntios

Saying of the Normans.

---

[1] *Guitsandum*] Guitsande, B.

A.D. 1174. "et istum nunc dirigunt, quid amplius aliud trans-"missuri sunt ad regem revocandum in Angliam, nisi "turrim Lundoniæ?"

Henry prepares to visit England. Rex nuntium talem cum debita veneratione suscipiens, quantam fidem verbis ejus habuerit probavit eventus. Nam ipsa die de limitibus patriæ muniendis et conservandis, de custodia castellorum cum familiaribus suis pertractans, se cum tota domo sua præparavit ad reditum, reginam Alienor, reginam Margaritam, filium et filiam, Johannem et Johannam, et uxores filiorum suorum, intra paucos dies secum adducens. The earl of Chester sent to Barfleur. Comitem quoque Cestrensem, Legecestrensem comitissam, et alios plures quos habebat in vinculis, ante faciem suam præmisit apud Barbefle, ubi, plurimis[1] navibus religatis, plurima turba morabatur regis transfretationem expectans. Brebantinorum marchionum innumera manus cum armis et impedimentis transfretavit apud Ostreham.[2] The king embarks, July 8. Cum autem rex festinasset ad portum, octavo idus Junii,[3] avulsis a littore navibus, summo mane navem ascendit. Velis igitur in altum expassis, visæ sunt undæ multo intensius intumescere. Ventus enim ad horam increscens et remissus ad horam transitum ea die nautis reddebat suspectum. Quorum facies regi visa suppressior aliquid innuit dubitationis subesse. Sed cum rex ventum ex directo venire, navem cursum in Angliam via recta dirigere, flatus creberrimos vehementer ingravescere didicisset, erectis in cœlum His prayer. luminibus palam omnibus ait, "Si quæ ad pacem sunt "cleri et populi habeam in proposito, si pacem in ad-"ventu meo reformandam Rex cœlorum disposuit, tunc "pro Sua misericordia portum michi indulgeat salutis. "Si autem fuerit aversus et regnum in virga visitare "decreverit, nunquam michi datum sit vel fines regio-"nis attingere." Orationem ejus auditam sui satis præsumere potuerunt, quoniam ipsa die qua navem

---

[1] *plurimis*] pluribus, B.

[2] *Ostreham*] Ostream, C.

[3] *Junii*] Clearly a mistake for *Julii*; see Ben. Pet. i. 72.

ascenderat, hora diei vesperascente, cum indempnitate rerum apud Hamonis Portum appulsus est. Extunc utens tenui dieta, pane scilicet et aqua, rerum curam disponendarum omittens, abstinens a civitatum ingressu quousque vota orationum apud Thomam martyrem gloriosum cum devotione persolveret, interjacens itaque spatium cum acceleratione pertransiit. Cum autem appropinquasset Cantuariam, equo desiliens et regiam prorsus majestatem sequestrans, nudus pedes, faciem peregrinantis, faciem pœnitentis, faciem supplicantis assumens, iiii^to. idus Junii, vi^ta feria, pervenit ad majorem ecclesiam. Inde cum affluentia lacrimarum, cum gemitibus et suspiriis, petiit martyris gloriosi sepulcrum. Ubi toto corpore prostratus manibus expassis diutius in oratione permansit. Interim, ore Lundoniensis episcopi sermonem habentis ad populum, rex publice protestatus est, Deum testem vocans in animam suam, quod mortem archiepiscopi nec mandavit, nec voluit, nec artificio perquisivit. Sed quoniam interfectores ex verbis suis, non satis circumspecte prolatis, occasionem sumpsissent, ab episcopis qui præsentes tunc aderant absolutionem petebat, et carnem suam disciplinæ supponens virgis cæsus est, a singulis viris religiosis, quorum multitudo convenerat, ternos ictus vel etiam quinos excipiens. Surgens ab oratione, vestibus resumptis quas prius exuerat, muneribus pretiosis pretiosissimum martyrem honoravit, assignans insuper annuos redditus xl. librarum ad luminaria jugiter circa martyrem in venerationem martyris concinnanda. Sic reliquum diei, totam quoque noctem sequentem in amaritudine animæ suæ transegit, deditus orationi, vigiliis deditus, jejunium usque in tertium diem continuans. Et quia spiritus contribulatus, cor contritum et humiliatum acceptissimum Deo sacrificium est, cum totiens ad exemplum regis David clamando repetierit, "Peccavi Domino, peccavi Domino," audire meruit a propheta, "Dominus quoque transtulit peccatum tuum." Quin martyrem sibi placabilem jam reddiderit, quin

A.D. 1174. He lands at Southampton.

He does penance at Canterbury, July 12.

He disavows any share in the murder of the archbishop.

He fasts until the third day.

2 Sam. xii. 13.

A.D. 1174. peccatum ejus translatum possimus prædicare securi, non est qui dubitet. Nam ipsa die sabbati, qua indulgentiam sibi dari postulabat a martyre, sepulchrum martyris frequenter deosculans, tradidit Deus Willelmum regem Scottorum in manus suas, custodiæ mancipatum apud Richemunt,[1] ut adimpleretur illud propheticum "Dabitur maxillis ejus frænum quod in "Armorico sinu fabricabitur,"[2] sinum vocans Armoricum castellum de Richemunt,[1] ab Armoricis principibus et nunc et ab antiquis temporibus hæreditario jure possessum. Ipsa etiam die sabbati rex filius, navibus quas congregaverat ad transfretandum in Angliam dissipatis, cœpit redire in Galliam.

The capture of the king of Scots, a token of divine forgiveness.

The king goes to London.

Votis orationum cum tanta devotione completis, rex pater regrediens aliquantulam fecit moram Lundoniis, regni majores illuc sibi repperiens occurrisse. Inde progrediens in manu valida xiiii°. kalendas Augusti venit ad Huntendoniam, et castellum ab viii°. idus Maii satis viriliter obsessum et longa diutius obsidione circumquaque vallatum, in deditionem accepit xiii°. kalendas Augusti. Milites comitis Leircestriæ, dominum suum a vinculis quibus gravissime premebatur eruere cupientes, munitionem Leircestriæ et de Muntsorel et de Grobi potestati regiæ submiserunt xi°. kalendas Augusti.

Takes Huntingdon on the 20th of July.

Leicester, Mountsorel, and Groby surrendered, July 22.

Sieges of Tutbury and Malzeard;

Resus princeps Waliæ cum multitudine Walensium obsedit Stutesberiam.[3] Proceres Northanhymbrorum, ducem habentes Lincolniensem electum filium regis, Malesart, castellum scilicet Rogeri de Molbrai, viribus subjugarunt. Cum autem rex turmis militum undique confluentibus apud Sanctum Eadmundum maximum congregasset exercitum, de communi consilio duo castella Hugonis Bigot comitis de Norfolce, Framingeham scilicet et Bungeie, simul obsidere decrevit. Comes

Framlingham and Bungay.

---

[1] *Richemunt*] Richemund, B.

[2] *Dabitur . . fabricabitur*] Part of Merlin's prophecy; Geoff. Mon., vii. 3.

[3] *Stutesberiam*] Stutesburiam, B.

vero quingentos secum milites habens et multitudinem armatorum, quia viribus erat longe inferior, et aliquem sibi posse succurrere desperabat, habito tractatu cum illa paucitate suorum quæ secum remanserat, omnes quidem fere sui jam ab eo recesserant, necessitate compulsus, datis obsidibus, milibus marcarum appensis, pacem regis emeruit; viii° kalendas Augusti homagium regi fecit, fidelitatem juravit, et rursus in suam ligantiam rediit. Multitudo Flandrensium quam Philippus comes venturus in Angliam sicut disposuerat, sicut tactis sacrosanctis reliquiis regi Francorum constanter promiserat, ante faciem suam præmisit, præstito sacramento quod amplius Angliæ fines cum hostili manu non ingrederetur, cum licentia regis repatriavit. Militia regis filii regis, cui præerat Radulfus de la Haie, libera cum armis et impedimentis recessit. Nuncii missi sunt a Roberto comite de Ferires et a Rogero de Molbrai, quorum castella tunc obsidebantur, scilicet Estutesberie et Tresc, requirentes pacem.

A.D. 1174. Earl Hugh Bigod submits and does homage, July 25.

Departure of the Flemings.

Tutbury and Thirsk surrendered.

Willelmus comes Glocestriæ et Ricardus comes de Clare gener ejus, de quibus habebatur suspicio, quod in partem adversam declinare proponerent, occurrerunt regi, suo per omnia parituri mandato. Sic igitur in articulo temporis, per intercessionem sanctissimi Thomæ martyris, rex pater, per omnia regni sui confinia potentissimus, vii° idus Augusti navem ascendit apud Porcestre, ducens secum regem Scottorum, comitem Leircestrensem, comitem Cestrensem, Hugonem de Castello, quos habebat in vinculis. Et prospera navigatione transvectus iii°[1] idus Augusti venit Rothomagum, quam invenit obsessam.

The earls of Gloucester and Clare join the king.

The king embarks, Aug. 7, and arrives at Rouen, Aug. 11.

Amaurico[2] regi Jerosolimitano Baldewinus filius suus, adhuc in puerili ætate constitutus, et corpore plurimum extenuatus, successit.[3]

Baldwin III. king of Jerusalem.

---

[1] *iii°*] iiii°, Twysden.

[2] *Amaurico*] Amauricio, B.

[3] *successit*] Here MS. D. breaks off, omitting all that follows down to Cantuariensis electus, p. 387, line 33, below.

A.D. 1174.

The king of France, with the young Henry and the count of Flanders, besieges Rouen, July 22.

Ludovicus rex Francorum, Henricus rex filius, Philippus comes Flandrensis, viribus undequaque collectis innumerabilem congregarunt exercitum. Et a sinistro Sequanam relinquentes, a parte septemtrionali Rotomagum obsederunt xi° kalendas Augusti, id habentes in animo, ut quod anno præterito transgressio sacramenti denigraverat apud Vernolium dum obsideretur a Francis, quod nota proditionis obfuscaverat apud Driencurt dum a Flandrensibus obsideretur, totum illud subacta Rotomagus coloraret. Normanni, respectu multitudinis quæ supervenerat pauci, viriliter restiterunt, et propugnaculis innixi murorum, hostes deforis agmine facto muris appropinquantes et confidentes in machinis, modo quadratis lapidibus, modo sudibus præacutis, modo longissimis trabibus, in præcipitium ruere coegerunt; sed ne requies ulla daretur obsessis, et ut vires suas distinctius et animosius experirentur, nunc vicaria successione Flandrenses cedebant, Francis properantibus ad certamen; nunc respirantibus Francis acriores insurgebant Flandrenses, omni nisu murum cupientes subfodere. In tali concertatione gens utraque dampno semper affecta non illud suo sed suorum principum infortunio deputabat, qui præter rationabilem causam alienos irrumpere fines ausu temerario præsumebant. Normanni cum regis patris tunc in Anglia triumphantis causari possent absentiam, in subsidium principis fidem, justiciam, veritatem sibi principes elegerunt, sub quibus certum expectantes triumphum, nec minis adversantium, nec ullo perturbari potuerunt incursu; crebras invasiones, congressus acerrimos constantissime superantes. Augebatur cotidie numerus Normannorum victualibus abundantium. E contrario plures fame periclitantes per dies singulos ab exercitu dilabebantur. Diebus multis in discrimine multo decursis, dum rex Francorum regem patrem in manu valida Rotomagum adventasse certis relationibus didicisset, versus est in stuporem,

Valiant resistance.

Pressure of the siege.

Sentiment of the combatants.

Consternation at Henry's arrival.

et metuens ne, sicut fama jam increbruerat, rex pater limites Francorum irrumpens obsideret Parisius, quomodo solveretur obsidio salvis corporibus tractavit cum suis. Itaque, de communi consilio tam Franci quam Flandrenses ignem machinis apponentes, avulsis tentoriis, mapalia succendentes et pergulas, non sine detrimento famæ, xix° kalendas Septembris recesserunt ab urbe, minis, jactationibus, sacramentis de diruenda Rotomago tam incaute totiens interpositis suspensis ad tempus. Extremam partem castrorum marchiones impugnantes instanter arma plurima necnon et impedimenta diripuerunt in prædam.

A.D. 1174. The besiegers burn their engines and depart, Aug. 14.

Theodoricus Ausesiensis,[1] hæredibus aliis deficientibus, hæres ipse nactus comitatum Flandrensem, occiso Willelmo comite Flandrensium Longa-spata consobrino suo, ex comitissa sua Sibilla amita regis Henrici secundi[2] Anglorum genuit filium vocabulo Petrum. Qui post dies patris cum,[3] ad ecclesiam Cameracensem regendam electus, annis pluribus præfuisset eidem, et redditus percepisset, metuens ne, si Philippus comes frater suus sine liberis degens a Normannis confossus occumberet, hæreditas transferretur ad exteros, ab inermi militia transiit ad armatam, et cingulo militari donatus, donativum antecessoribus suis a Normannia debitum, scilicet aut mortem aut vulnus, tempestive recepit. Nam sicut Baldewinus comes Flandrensium quondam interfectus est a Normannis, et sicut Matheus comes Boloniensium, ipsius Petri frater, anno præterito letale vulnus excepit apud castellum Arches, sic et ipse Petrus in obsidione Rotomagi gravissime vulneratus cum Philippo fratre suo recessit exterritus.

Peter, brother of the count of Flanders, bishop elect of Cambray, became a knight and was wounded at the siege of Rouen.

Cantuariensis electus, dum Romam tenderet, scismaticorum insidias declinare proposuit. Sub hisdem diebus universus orbis infectus ex aeris nebulosa corrup-

The archbishop elect goes to Rome.

[1] *Ausesiensis*] "primum Methensis ecclesiæ archidiaconus, post," ns. B. Thierri of Alsace, count of Flanders, 1128–1168.

[2] *secundi*] Interlined in A. and B.

[3] *patris cum*] patris patrissare non cessans cum, B.

A.D. 1174. Prevalence of coughs. The elect spends Christmas 1173 at Piacenza; embarks, Jan. 14, at Genoa, lands at Civita Vecchia, visits Rome, and finds the pope at Anagni.

tione stomacho catarrum[1] causante generalem tussim, ad singulorum perniciem, ad mortem etiam plurimorum inmissam vehementer expavit. Diebus itaque Natalitiis Placentiæ celebratis, quia transitus sibi per Tusciam plurimum haberetur suspectus, Januensem divertit ad urbem, ubi navem ascendens xix° kalendas Februarii maris sævitiam, fluctuum elationem, procellarum fragores, piratarum incursus frequenter expavit. Novem ergo diebus in tali voluptate decursis, appulsus est apud Civitatulam Veterem, scilicet Centum Cellis. Inde sub paucorum interstitio dierum Romam visitans, et fines ejus pertransiens, papam petiit Alexandrum, tunc temporis residentem Anagniæ. Nuncios quoque regis filii regis, qui causam appellationis, quam ipse per suas Cantuariæ litteras interposuerat, venerant prosecuturi, sibi plurimum adversantes invenit in curia. Qui cum a regno Francorum originem traxerint, ibique rerum ac fortunarum suarum summam constituerint, et in Ludovici regis Francorum et ecclesiæ Gallicanæ patrocinio spem sui negotii reposuerint, concinnabant dolos, acuebant linguas, ad convitia convolabant, adversus electiones factas in Anglia citra conscientiam et consensum regis filii regis, proponebant quamplura, ad infamandas electorum personas totis viribus inhiabant. Demum cujus esset præferendus assensus in jam factis electionibus vel in posterum faciendis, an regis patris an regis filii, diutius actitatum est, et in consistorio ventilatum, et, sicut ex eventu apparuit, æqua lance terminatum in fine. Verum ne criminum concinnatores aera verberasse viderentur in vanum, et commentitiis fraudibus minimum profuisse, Cantuariensis electus suam purgavit innocentiam, quod pro electione sua nec ante electionem nec post aliquid dederat vel promiserat; quod etiam sacramentum regiæ fidelitatis præstiterat non simpliciter, sed apposita scilicet illa sollemni clau-

The agents of the young king and of Lewis VII. try to prevent his consecration.

He proves his innocence of the charge of simony.

[1] *catarrum*] catatrum, B.; corrected in A. and C.

sula quam apponunt episcopi de consuetudine, "salvo "ordine suo." Rursus quoniam de origine sua fuerat intersertus tractatus prolixior, viri plures discreti, quorum multitudo stabat cum ipso Cantuariensi electo, propositis evangeliis juraverunt, quod in electione ipsius vel ante electionem non audierant ipsum nisi de legitimo matrimonio conceptum et editum. His itaque peractis iiii^to. nonas Aprilis ejus electio confirmata est. Cum autem Cantuariensis hoc modo se purgaverit, aliquam infamiæ notam sustinere non debet, cum Damasus papa, Symacus papa, Pelagius papa, Leo papa, Alexander papa, Syxtus papa, criminibus variis impetiti, suam purgaverint innocentiam, et post in ecclesia Dei columpnæ perstiterint firmiores, fundatæ supra firmam Petram.[1]

A.D. 1174. He brings evidence to prove his legitimacy.

His election is confirmed, April 2.

---

[1] *Petram*] MS. B. proceeds as follows; and as the substituted matter is written over an erasure in MS. A., and, although in the same hand as the rest, is wanting in order and cohesion, there can be little doubt that B. here represents what the author originally wrote. He must have been persuaded to make the alteration before the S. Alban's copy was made, as MS. C. exactly follows A.; MS. D. omits the oath and the following matter down to recedens a curia, below, p. 391, line 5.

"De cetero si Cantuarienses virum tantum de suo collegio sumptum et "in archipræsulem promotum suis annalibus inserant, illud etiam non "omittant inserere, quod imminentis sub articulo consecrationis, habitu "monachali rejecto, summo pontifici præsentatus sit, et indutus tunica "linea consecratus sit in episcopum vii^o. idus Aprilis. Non itaque cucullatus, non singularis, non tristis, non sua vel aliena lugens peccata, "positus est super candelabrum ut luceat coram hominibus; sed ad solatium cleri de clero assumptus est, ad ecclesiasticæ libertatis speciale subsidium, ad omnium regimen, ad munimen, ad tutamen Anglorum, cum "in unam eandemque personam, intra paucos dies tria concurrerint, "archiepiscopus, primas, apostolicæ sedis legatus.

"Amodo si Cantuarienses ad consequentiam traxerint aliquem de suo "corpore metropolitana surrogandum in sede, de consilio est ut prius vel "habitum canonicalem assumant vel indumenta saltem ad tempus cum "monachis ordinis dealbati commutent. In nigræ quidem rejectionem "cucullæ dominus papa solum forsitan colorem damnavit, non professionem monachicam faciendam in posterum reprehendit, non singularitatem servandam in claustro culpavit, non tristitiam pro peccatis habendam "inhibuit, sed nigredinis septies perhorrenda multotiens subitum forte "terrorem incussit." This most important variation is not noted by Twysden.

A.D. 1174.

Letter of Alexander III. to the king of Valencia.

"Alexander pontifex magnæ et almæ Romæ, glorioso Valen-
"tiæ regi Lupo, cœlestis Creatoris notitiam et beneplacitum
"Ei servitium exhibere. Cum omnes unum Deum Patrem
"habeamus in cœlis, Ipsum solum totis visceribus colere, tota
"debes virtute diligere, Qui tantam tibi super Sarracenorum
"gentes et regna contulit potestatem. Cum autem omnes
"liberos natura creasset, nullus conditione naturæ fuit subditus
"servituti."[1]

Position of the new archbishop of Canterbury.

Positus est Cantuariensis archiepiscopus super candelabrum ut luceat coram hominibus, et ad solatium cleri de clero assumptus est ad ecclesiasticæ libertatis speciale subsidium, ad omnium regimen, ad munimen, ad tutamen Anglorum, cum in unam eandemque personam intra paucos dies tria concurrerint, archiepiscopus, primas, apostolicæ sedis legatus.

Letter of the pope to him.

"Alexander papa Ricardo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Intuitu
"caritatis et ea consideratione quia te quamquam immeriti in
"episcopum propriis manibus consecravimus, et tibi plenitu-
"dinem contulimus potestatis, de fratrum nostrorum consilio
"tuis justis petitionibus benignitate debita duximus annuen-
"dum, atque prædecessorum nostrorum piæ memoriæ Paschalis
"et Eugenii Romanorum pontificum vestigiis inhærentes, tam
"tibi quam tuis legitimis successoribus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ
"primatum ita plenum concedimus, sicut a Lanfranco et An-
"selmo aliisque ipsorum prædecessoribus quondam Cantuarien-
"sibus archiepiscopis fuisse possessum constat."[2]

Juramentum.[3]

Oath of true witness.

Registro, lib. vi., cap. xxx.

Ego juro per Patrem et Filium et Spiritum Sanctum me pro nullius favore personæ, neque commodo aliquo interveniente, testari, sed hoc quod in quæstionem venit scio, et per memet ipsum cognovi.

---

[1] *Alexander . . . servituti*] om. B. This letter seems to be known only by its finding place here; see Jaffé, Regesta Pontificum, p. 760: Lupus was the name commonly given to the Saracen kings of Valencia. It is important to observe that another letter to him, also written over an erasure, occurs below, p. 429.

[2] *Alexander . . . constat*] om. B.

[3] This form of oath is omitted in B. and D.; but it is inserted in the latter MS. further on, see p. 407, below.

A.D. 1174. The new archbishop embarks at Astura, May 26, lands at Genoa, and crosses the Alps.

Antiquorum innovatio privilegiorum, et intuitu sanctissimi Thomæ martyris novorum facilis impetratio, Dorobernensem archiepiscopum ad reditum properare, pluribus causis concurrentibus, suaserunt. Qui cum licentia domini papæ cum gratia cardinalium recedens a curia, vii° kalendas Julii apud Sturam in Romania trierem ascendit, et post aliquot dies appulsus est Januæ. Juga quoque montium cum prosperitate transcendens, intra valles Morianæ in ecclesia Sancti Johannis, et in vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Batoniensem electum consecravit; archiepiscopo Tarentasiæ præsente, manum etiam apponente; accepta prius purgatione Batoniensis electi, quod mortem beati Thomæ neque verbo, neque facto, neque scripto procuravit scienter. Alii juraverunt quod, sicut opinabantur, conceptus fuit priusquam Jocelinus pater suus ad gradum sacerdotii promoveretur.

He consecrates the bishop of Bath, at S. Jean de Maurienne, June 23.

He proceeds through Burgundy, Gaul, and Normandy to Barfleur, where he meets the king on his way to Rouen.

Archiepiscopus, Batoniensi comitatus episcopo, Burgundiæ promontoria, campestria Galliæ, Neustriæ littora,[1] cum aliqua remoratione transcendit, pertransiit, attigit, et propositum habens in Angliam transfretandi petiit Barbari-fluctus portum, ubi rex pater regis a nave descendens, et ad obsessam Rotomagum liberandam, ad superbiam hostium elidendam et dexteræ Dei virtute penitus prosternendam, toto mentis ardore festinans, eum in hospitio visitavit. Archiepiscopus, celeri navigatione transvectus, tendens Lundonias, a magnatibus Angliæ, quorum inibi multitudo convenerat, receptus est honorifice iii° nonas[2] Septembris. Sed quia se prosperis soleant inmiscere frequenter adversa, cum suæ cursum peregrinationis feliciter consummasset, sub ipso reditu suo Cantuariensis ecclesia subito, proh dolor! conflagravit incendio nonis Septembris. Vacantium ecclesiarum principales personæ quosque sibi pastores elegerant sub edicto vocantur.

He reaches London, Sept. 3.

Canterbury cathedral burnt, Sept. 5.

---

[1] *littora*] littoria, B. C.

[2] *iii°*] iiii°, Twysden.

A.D. 1174. The bishop elect of Ely proves his innocence of the murder of Thomas, and his chastity.

Et quoniam adversus Elyensem electum nuntii regis filii regis coram summo pontifice plurima proposuerant, in quo sua gravari videbatur opinio apud bonos et graves viros, in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ de Westmonasterio, in communi audientia suam purgavit innocentiam, quod mortem archiepiscopi Thomæ, neque verbo, neque facto, neque scripto procuravit scienter, et quod in sacris ordinibus constitutus, nec aliquam duxit, nec ductam cognovit. Omnibus itaque fere confirmatis electionibus kalendis Octobris, suffraganei suo communiter occurrerunt archiepiscopo iii°[1] nonas Octobris apud Cantuariam. Qui, sua sollenniter constitutus in sede, ipsa die generale proposuit electis edictum in hæc verba: "Hodie abstinebitis, et cras Deo volente consecrabimini." Hora congrua consecrationis instante, R. Wintoniensis, R. Elyensis archidiaconi, cum officiales episcoporum dicantur, ad suum spectare contendebant officium electiones factas in ecclesiis, quarum dispositio sibi fuerat pro parte commissa, dum in partem sollicitudinis sint admissi, præsentare metropolitano, sollemnem illam postulationem receptam in scriptis publice recitare. Walterus Wintoniensis, Salomon Elyensis, priores in contrarium sentiebant. Quam[2] enim in ecclesiis cathedralibus, ubi canonici divinis mancipantur obsequiis, decani sibi vendicant dignitatem, hanc si monachorum conventus in episcopali sede præmineat, sibi jure possunt vendicare priores. Sed ut omnis in posterum amputetur occasio litigandi, de interlocutoria metropolitani sententia, de suffraganeorum assensu, de conniventia cleri, Wintoniensis, Elyensis electi, ad priorum suorum præsentationem recepti, ad priorum suorum postulationem episcopi consecrati sunt ij°. nonas Octobris, et cum ipsis eadem die Herefordensis, Cicestrensis electi pariter consecrati sunt.

The bishops meet at Canterbury.

Claim of the archdeacons to present the bishops elect for consecration.

The archbishop's decision in favour of the priors.

Consecration of four bishops, Oct. 6.

Gaufridus Lincolniensis electus, quia nec dominus papa nec archiepiscopus suam confirmaverant electio-

[1] *iii° nonas*] iiii° nonas, Twysden. | [2] *Quam*] Quid, C.

nem, transfretavit viii° idus Octobris, juxta consilium patris sui regis, Romanam ecclesiam vel in propria persona visitaturus, vel ad ipsam nuntios transmissurus.

A.D. 1174. Geoffrey, elect of Lincoln, goes abroad, Oct. 8.

Robertus, super cujus manum comes incumbebat Philippus, thesaurarius Turonensis, Flandriæ cancellarius, præpositus in ecclesiis ascriptus diversis per Flandriam, tandem Atrebatensis, ad ultimum Cameracensis electus, ut obsequium Ludovico regi Francorum præstaret, adversus regem Anglorum Philippum comitem ad perniciem multam Flandrensium instigavit, filios regis Anglorum animavit in patrem. Qui ut mala quæ fecerat etiam in vita reciperet, mandato Jacobi de Avennis interfectus est apud Edenen prope Valentinianas iii° nonas Octobris. Qui vitam pro certo miserabili morte finiens a vilissimis est detruncatus latrunculis.[1]

Robert, elect of Cambray, the great mischief-maker, is killed near Valenciennes, Oct. 5.

Franci sumptibus tædiosis affecti, Flandrenses a suorum interemptione deterriti, damna suis illata conferebant adinvicem. Et tam isti quam illi se suaque penitus inutili labore consumi videntes, a Normannorum infestatione propositum revocarunt, a limitum incursione pedem cohibentes et manum. Et ut suæ tranquillitati prospicerent, filios regis Anglorum ad gratiam patris reducere summopere studuerunt: filios sane quos si paternam maledictionem, odium cleri, populorum inprecationem incurrisse contendas, ætatis beneficio merentur absolvi, si postquam ad viriles annos pervenerint, pœnitentia jugis, satisfactio digna, patri debitus honor exhibitus cum devotione, præterita commissa diluerit.[2]

The French and Flemings try to reconcile king Henry and his sons.

The writer hopes that their future conduct will prove their penitence.

Rex Anglorum Henricus regis pater a discursu per patriam, ab incendio populari, pauperum a rapinis, ab injuriis viduarum, ab orphanorum pressuris, a vinculis captivorum, a virginum raptu, sed a sanguinis effusione

Measures of the king.

---

[1] *Robertus . . latrunculis*] om. D. | [2] *Franci . . . diluerit*] om. D.

A.D. 1174. Henry knew the motives of the peace-makers; quam maxime, revocare subjectos regia dignum majestate dijudicans, a tyrannide semper oculos deflexit et animum. Illam insuper, illam humiliationem insolitam Francorum atque Flandrensium, et propositum reformandæ pacis inter ipsum et filios, ex inpotentia resistendi procedere minime dubitavit. Francos igitur vel dona ferentes evitasse debuerat, et ad ulciscendas tam atroces injurias quas frequenter intulerant viribus totis insurgere, nisi quoniam in hostium hujuscemodi qualibet humiliatione et fœdere subornato, filios suos, quos plurimum aberrasse totus fere mundus agnoverat, ad frugem melioris vitæ posse revocari certa consideratione præviderit; filios sane quos affectu tanto dilexerat, quos tantarum effecerat dominos nationum, quos ad edomandas gentes et æquo moderamine gubernandas, quos ad tyrannorum terrorem et exterminationem hostium, usque ad summi honoris fastigium sine aliqua cessatione provehere satagebat. Hostibus itaque suis verba pacis habentibus, et ad suum venire colloquium desiderantibus, inter urbem Turonicam et Ambazium v° idus Octobris occurrit. Quid actum sit ibi docebunt sequentia;[1]

but accepted peace as the best for his sons.

Conference between Tours and Amboise, Oct. 11.

Treaty between the king and his sons.

"Rex Anglorum fidelibus suis salutem. Noverit dilectio "vestra quod pacem Dei gratia feci cum rege Francorum, et "filiis meis, et hominibus meis, ad honorem Dei et meum. "In pactione autem est quod primogenito filio meo dabo "singulis annis xv. milia librarum Andegavensium et duo "castella in Normannia ad voluntatem meam. Ricardo vero "medietatem reddituum Pictaviæ, et duo castella, unde mi"chi nocere non possit. Gaufrido, medietatem reddituum "Britanniæ excepta media. Homines autem mei omnes qui "me dereliquerunt reversi sunt, filiis meis præsentibus et "illis præcipientibus, in homagium et ligantiam meam, et "juraverunt michi fidelitatem contra omnes homines. Qui "et terras suas habebunt, quas habebant quando a me reces"serunt. Rex vero Scotiæ, et comes Legecestriæ, et comes "Cestriæ, et alii qui mecum conventionem fecerunt, vel "obsides dederunt ante diem pacis hujus, in voluntate mea "sunt et extra conventionem filiorum meorum. Illi autem

[1] *Rex . . . sequentia*] om. D.

"quos habeo qui nec obsides dederunt, nec aliquam fecerunt "conventionem, per bonam securitatem ad petitionem filii mei "liberabuntur. Omnia vero castella quæ habebam, vel homi- "nes mei, in omnibus terris meis, in initio guerræ, reddita "sunt michi. Et illa quæ infortiata fuerunt contra me, ad "illum redigentur statum in quo fuerunt quando guerra "incepit."[1]

A.D. 1174. October. Treaty of peace.

Hostibus itaque profligatis, cum milites nongentos LXIX. in manus regis patris Henrici secundi[2] Dominus tradidisset, exacta pecunia nullum ad redemptionem coegit; quinimmo datis obsidibus vel fidei sponsione devinctos laxavit a vinculis: paucis artiori detentis custodia, quorum facinus enorme, quorum perfidia detestabilis principem mansuetissimum provocasset ad iram et de supplicio cogitare compelleret.

The king abstains from exacting ransoms.

Rex filius e contrario jure belli captos a se vel a suis auxiliariis modis quibuslibet interceptos, numerantes pecuniam, relaxabat. Quorum omnium numerus centenarium excedebat in paucis.

The young king takes ransoms.

Wintoniensis, Helyensis, episcopi sicut sub uno principe contemporanei, sicut in palatio regis fuere primi, præcellentes, præcipui, sicut in ecclesia Levitici ordinis sorte pariter insigniti, sicut ad regimen ecclesiarum concorditer evocati, sicut una hora communiter consecrati, sic in uno eodemque die suis sollempniter sunt in sedibus constituti iii° idus Octobris.

The bishops of Winchester and Ely inthroned the same day, Oct. 13.

[3] Archiepiscopus ad ecclesiarum visitationem, ad exequendum injunctæ legationis officium, iter arripiens, ix° kalendas Novembris in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ sollempni processione primo receptus est. Visitans Waltamensem[4] ecclesiam Guidonem, ejusdem loci

The archbishop visits S. Paul's cathedral, October 24.

---

[1] This seems to be an abstract of the treaty given in full in Benedict, i. 77, and Hoveden, ii. 67–69.

[2] *secundi*] om. B. C.

[3] MS. A. has a marginal note in a fourteenth century hand; "Nota "quod visitatio facta fuit in ecclesia "Londoniensi ante tempora beati "Edmundi."

[4] *Waltamensem*] Here MS. B. has a marginal note in a thirteenth century hand; "Fuerunt enim ibi tunc "canonici, sed amoti sunt inferius "sub signo ∸," the reference being to p. 420, line 25, below.

A.D. 1174. He suspends the dean of Waltham. The clerks of S. Oswald, Gloucester, resist him, and the archbishop of York appeals to the pope.

decanum, licet absentem, licet indefensum, quia notoriis pluribus impetitum, ab officio decanatus et presbiteratus suspendit. Et cum sibi debitam patri reverentiam per suam provinciam passim impendissent, Sancti Oswaldi Gloecestrensis clericos, speciali rescripto summi pontificis a sua jurisdictione sicut asserebant exemptos, rebelles invenit. Quos dum animadversione gravi percelleret, Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, inde graviter offensus, ipsum per internuntios ad sedem apostolicam appellavit. Provinciæ finibus peragratis ex parte, Wintoniam veniens, in monasterio virginum Deo dicatarum abbatissam præfecit, de collegio Wiltoniensi assumptam, nomine Clariciam. Quod æquo animo sustinere non potuit universitas monialium, ægre ferentium sibi liberam electionem non indultam fuisse, et emendicatis aliunde suffragiis usum esse archiepiscopum ad injuriam domus suæ, cum in conventu suo pleræque personæ ad suscipiendum honorem hujusmodi, sicut affirmabant, constanter inveniri possent idoneæ.

He appoints an abbess at Winchester.

Aurora Borealis, Nov. 4.

Pridie nonas Novembris, circa mediam noctem, per unius horæ spatium et eo amplius, tota cœli facies ab aquilonari parte sanguineo visa est rubore suffundi.

The king of Scots makes peace at Valognes, Dec. 8.

Guillelmus rex Scottorum, in Normannia tentus in vinculis, apud Falcisiam aliquam consolationem accepit, in turba non modica visitatus a suis; episcoporum igitur et abbatum, comitum et baronum regni sui communiter utens consilio, in pago Constantiensi apud Valonias vi° idus Decembris cum rege Anglorum pacem fecit in hunc modum;[1]

Form of peace.

"Rex Scotiæ devenit homo ligius regis Anglorum de "Scotia et de omnibus terris suis, et fidelitatem ei fecit ut "ligio domino suo, sicut alii homines sui ipsi facere solent. "Similiter fecit homagium Henrico regi filio suo et fidelitatem, "salva fide regis patris sui. Omnes vero episcopi et abbates

---

[1] An abridgment of the treaty of Falaise, given in full in Benedict, i. 96, 97, and in Hoveden, ii. 80–82.

" et clerus terræ regis Scotiæ et successores sui facient regi " Angliæ sicut ligio domino fidelitatem de quibus habere " voluerit, sicut alii episcopi sui ipsi facere solent. Similiter " Henrico filio suo et hæredibus illorum. Concessit etiam " rex Scotiæ, et David frater ejus et barones et alii homines " sui regi, quod ecclesia Scottorum talem subjectionem amodo " faciet ecclesiæ Angliæ qualem solebat tempore regum " prædecessorum suorum. Comites etiam, barones et alii " homines de terra regis Scottorum de quibus habere voluerit " rex Angliæ, facient homagium ei contra omnem hominem " et fidelitatem ut ligio domino, sicut alii homines sui ipsi " facere solent, et Henrico regi filio suo et hæredibus illorum, " salva fide regis patris sui. Similiter hæredes regis Scotiæ " et baronum et hominum suorum homagium et ligantiam " facient hæredibus regis contra omnem hominem. Præterea " rex Scotiæ et homines sui nullum amodo fugitivum de " terra regis receptabunt in Scotia vel in alia terra sua, nisi " voluerit venire ad rectum in curia regis et stare judicio " curiæ; sed rex Scottiæ et homines sui eum capient, et quam- " citius poterunt reddent eum regi in Angliam vel justiciariis " suis. Præterea homines regis habebunt terras suas, quas " habere debent et habebant de regibus Scotiæ et de homini- " bus suis. Pro ista conventione et fine firmiter observando " regi et Henrico filio suo et hæredibus illorum, a rege Scotiæ " et hæredibus suis, liberavit rex Scotiæ regi castellum de " Rokesburch et castellum de Berewich.[1] Præterea episcopi, co- " mites et barones et omnes homines Scotiæ conventionaverunt " regi, quod si rex Scotiæ aliquo casu recederet a fidelitate " regis, quod ipsi cum rege tenebunt, sicut cum ligio domino, " contra regem Scotiæ; et episcopi sub interdicto ponent " terram regis Scotiæ donec ad fidelitatem regis redeat."

A.D. 1174. Treaty between Henry II. and the king of Scots.

Fredericus imperator Romanus, in manu forti pe-netraturus Italiam, valles Morianæ simulata pace per-transiit. Alpibus vero transcensis, Seusam succendit, circumjacentem provinciam devastavit, urbem Alexan-driam, ad injuriam sui nominis a Lombardis con-structam, kalendis Novembris obsidione vallavit.[2]

The emperor enters Italy through Maurienne, and besieges Alexandria, Nov. 1.

Gaufridus Plantegenest comes Andegavensium, cum quadam Cenomannici generis consuetudinem habens non usquequaque licitam, filiam genuit Emmam,[3] quam David Norwallensium princeps, regis Anglorum Henrici

Emma, sister of Henry II, marries David prince of North Wales.

---

[1] *Rokesburch . . . . . Berewich*] Rokesburg . . . Berewic, B.

[2] *obsidione vallavit*] obsedit, B.

[3] *Emmam*] om. B.

A.D. 1174. His object in the alliance. sororem intelligens, eam uxorem a fratre sibi dari summa precum instantia vix tandem obtinuit; volens suæ posteritati, si filios procreaverit, fastum quendam ex regali stirpe descendere, et terrorem incutere Walensibus aliis affinitatis novæ prætextu.[1]

The archbishop attends the inthronization of the bishop of Bath, Nov. 24. Intronizationem Batoniensis episcopi Dorobernensis archiepiscopus, dum officio fungeretur legationis, visitando provinciam, sua præsentia multo sollempniorem effecit, viii° kalendas Decembris, et futuris reddidit memorialem.[2]

A.D. 1175. The king of Scots is brought to England, Dec. 11 (1174). MCLXXV. Willelmus rex Scotiæ, datis obsidibus in Normannia, tertio idus Decembris in Angliam rediit, liberæ satis deputatus custodiæ, quousque castella de quibus convenerat, et sicut convenerat, regis Anglorum arbitrio fideli deputarentur custodiæ.

Demolition of castles in England and Normandy. Eversa sunt passim per Angliam, per Normanniam, castella quorumdam, quos tempore dissensionis inter patrem et filium diutius habitæ pauperum oppressores fuisse regi patri constabat, et cum acervo lapidum congestorum ad extruendas turres insolentiam congessisse, cumulasse jactantiam, arrogantiam evexisse, et sic ex ipsis lapidibus quasi quendam assumpsisse tumorem et spiritum elationis traxisse.

The king's sons do homage to him; Ut filii regis Anglorum, quos a sacris paternis consilia pravorum extraxerant, pristinam familiaritatem reciperent et redirent in gratiam, ad omnem sinistram suspicionem penitus amovendam, homagium atque ligantiam patri suo facere modis omnibus instituerunt. Quod factum est primitus Cenomannis a Ricardo et Gaufrido junioribus filiis: in Normannia postmodum, a rege filio kalendis Aprilis apud Bur. Henry at Bur, Apr. 1, 1175.

Peace with Flanders. Ad expiandas atroces injurias quas Anglis et Normannis sine causa Flandrenses frequenter intulerant, Philippi comitis urgente mandato, comes ipse, Petrus

---

[1] *Gaufridus . . . prætextu*] This passage is inserted in the tract "de "origine comitum Andegaven- "sium," Chroniques d'Anjou, i. p. 340; see above, p. 135, note.

[2] *et . . . memorialem*] om. D.

frater ejus et innumera multitudo cum eis, signo crucis humeros insignire salubri consilio statuerunt iii° idus Aprilis, loca Dominicæ passionis congruo tempore visitaturi; attendentes illam stragem Flandrensium, quam comes Leircestrensis jure belli captus apud Sanctum Eadmundum memorialem reliquit, in suum redundare discrimen, et animas interfectorum lamentis continuis ante tribunal superni Judicis injustitiam comitis protestari.

A.D. 1175. The count Flanders and his brother take the cross, Apr. 11.

Reges Angliæ, quos anno præterito capere latitudo regni non poterat, confœderatos adinvicem navis eadem transvexit in Angliam vii°[1] idus Maii. Horis ad prandendum statutis per dies singulos eadem mensa refecit; talamus idem quiescentium artubus ministravit fomenta. Ad visitationem votivam Cantuariæ faciendam, Thomas martyr egregius pariter invitavit utrumque v^to kalendas Junii. Pariter quidem invitavit, nisi quod rex pater in vigiliis, in afflictionibus, in oratione, pernoctans, jejunium usque in diem tertium continuasset.

The two kings cross over to England together, May 9;

and make the pilgrimage to Canterbury, May 28.

Habitum est concilium regionale Lundoniis apud Westmustier xv°. kalendas Julii, præsidente Ricardo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et apostolicæ sedis legato. Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus concilio non interfuit, nec qui ejus absentiam allegarent transmisit, cum juxta priscam consuetudinem ad vocationem Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, vel interesse debuerit, vel justam absentiæ causam per nuntios et per epistolam probabiliter allegare. Statuta concilii si bene revolveris perpauca reperies quæ tibi corpus canonum incorporare non possit.[3]

Solius papæ est concilium generale, Romanæ ecclesiæ et Constantinopolitanæ est concilium universale.[2]

Council at Westminster, May 18.

Contumacy of the archbishop of York.

Universis Angliæ fere majoribus apud Westmustier

---

[1] *vii°*] viii°, Twysden.

[2] *Solius . . . universale*] om. D.

[3] These canons are given in Benedict, i. 85, sq.; and Hoveden, ii. 73, sq. The date is to be corrected by the same authorities.

A.D. 1175. May 20. Letter read before the magnates at Westminster, announcing the submission of his son Henry.

convocatis, xiii° kalendas Junii, præsente rege filio, lectæ sunt litteræ continentes hæc verba;

" Henricus rex pater regis fidelibus suis salutem. Gratias " ago Deo omnipotenti, et omnibus sanctis, quorum gratia, " licet non de meis meritis, supra id quod credi posset me " visitavit et exhilaravit. Venit ad me filius meus rex " Henricus apud Burum, et die Martis proxima ante Ramos " Palmarum, cum archiepiscopo Rotomagensi, et Bajocensi et " Abricensi et Redonensi episcopis, et cum comitibus et baro- " nibus et fidelibus meis quamplurimis, cum multa lacrimarum " effusione et singultibus multis prostravit se ante pedes meos, " misericordiam postulans cum humilitate, et veniam de iis " quæ commiserat erga me ante guerram, et in guerra, et " post guerram, ut paterna pietate ei condonarem. Rogavit " etiam cum omni humilitate et quanta potuit devotione, " quatinus homagium ejus et ligantiam acciperem, sicut do- " minus et pater, asserens se nunquam crediturum indigna- " tionem meam sibi condonatam, nisi idem ei facerem quod " et fratribus suis feceram, ad eorum patientiæ[1] et humilitatis " instantiam. Ego autem, motus pietate et intelligens eum " ex corde loqui et tandem esse compunctum et erga me " humiliatum, iram ei remisi et indignationem meam, et " penitus eum in gratiam paternam admisi, suscepto ab eo " homagio et sacramento super sanctas reliquias appositas " quod fidem michi servabit contra omnes homines, et consilio " meo in omnibus agendis suis de cætero adquiescet, et quod " hominibus meis et suis qui michi servierunt in guerra ista " nec malum inde perquiret quamdiu vixerit, sed eos hono- " rabit et promovebit sicut fideles meos et suos, et quod de " consilio meo totam domum suam et totum statum suum " ordinabit, et de cætero in omnibus operabitur. De hoc " autem dedit michi plegios et fidejussores R. Rotomagensem " archiepiscopum, H. Bajocensem, R. Abricensem, S. Redo- " nensem episcopos, comitem Willelmum de Mandevilla et " barones meos quamplurimos, qui præsentes erant. Promisit " autem confidenter quod de eodem daturus est michi fide- " jussores dominum regem Francorum, comitem Flandrensem, " et Ricardum fratrem suum et Gaufridum, comitem Henri- " cum, comitem Theobaldum,[2] archiepiscopum Cantuariensem " et Eboracensem, episcopos, comites, et barones citra mare

He had been received into favour and given sureties for good behaviour.

[1] *patientiæ*] petitionis, B. A. has in the margin a drawing of two hands holding up a crown, and under it two Cs facing one another, ϾƆ, for *concordia*. So also C.

[2] *comitem . . . . . Theobaldum*] Henry count of Champagne and Theobald count of Blois.

"et ultra mare, hac conditione, quod si a prædicta conventione, quod absit, exierit, mecum contra eum stabunt unanimiter et nullum ei auxilium vel consilium, nisi ad me revertendi, præstabunt." A.D. 1175. May 20.

Igitur ipsa die præstita sunt sacramenta sicut supra scriptum est, dati sunt etiam fidejussores regi patri. The transaction completed.

Reginaldus[1] comes Cornubiæ, Henrici primi regis filius naturalis, diem clausit extremum apud Radingam kalendis Julii, ibique sepultus quiescit. Reginald of Cornwall dies, July 1.

Habita dispensatione a domino papa circa personam electi Lincolniensis tam ætatis quam nativitatis, electio confirmata est a Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, a Lundoniensi et Wigornensi episcopis, apud Wdestoc vii^{o} idus Julii. Electus autem reversus est in Angliam xv^{o} kalendas Augusti, et sollenni processione receptus est apud Lincolniam kalendis Augusti. Confirmation of the elect of Lincoln, July 9: he comes to Lincoln, Aug. 1.

Willelmus junior de Braiusa Walensium multitudinem, in castello de Bergeveni callide convocatam ad audienda regni statuta, ne quis scilicet viator cnipulum deferret vel arcum, sententia capitali dampnavit; sed ut hujusmodi proditionem honestatis velamine palliatam intelligas, hoc fecit in ultionem avunculi sui Henrici de Hereford, quem ipsi quondam in sabbato sancto Paschæ crudeliter interfecerant. William de Braiose avenges the fate of his uncle on the Welsh.

Vacantium abbatiarum priores cum magna parte conventuum sub edicto vocati sunt apud Wdestoc viii^{o} idus Julii. Rex igitur, habito tractatu cum archiepiscopo, cum episcopis, sic in abbatibus substituendis canonum observavit censuram, ut emendicatis aliunde suffragiis uteretur, arbitrans forsitan quod si de corpore proprio locis in singulis crearentur pastores, regiæ dignitatis auctoritas vacil- Meeting of the priors of vacant abbeys at Woodstock, July 8.

Abbatia Sancti Augustini.
Abbatia de Bello.
Abbatia Hidensis.
Abbatia Habendune.
Abbatia Westmonasteriensis.
Abbatia Hulmensis.
Abbatia Toreneiæ.
Abbatia Croilandæ.
Abbatia Salopesberi.
Abbatia Abbodesberi.
Abbatia Mucheleneia.

[1] *Reginaldus*] Raginaldus, D.

A.D. 1175. laret; motum in electionibus alienum sequens non proprium.[1]

Cruel revenge of the count of Flanders on his wife's lover, Aug. 12.

Philippus comes Flandrensis Walterum de Fontibus, cum Ysabela comitissa, sicut dicitur, in adulterio deprehensum, ictibus clavarum jussit interfici ii° idus Augusti, et ejus cadaver caput habens inversum in sella secessui deputata, pedibus religatis ad furcas propere præparatas, properavit suspendi; ut etiam nichil crudelitati deesset, et ut plene sæviret in mortuum, sic ignominiose suspensum fractis parietibus sub edicto datum est exponi publicis aspectibus concurrentium.

Severe inquiry into transgressions of the forest law by laymen and clerks.

Inquisitio generalis facta per Angliam pari discrimine comites, barones, milites, privatorum quoque multitudinem infinitam involvit. Omnes quidem hi jurisjurandi religione minus reverenter artati, modo regi, modo justiciariis publicarunt, quos, a tempore dissensionis inter regem patrem et filium habitæ, vitæ ferarum insidias tetendisse vel auditu solo perceperant. Hoc ergo prætextu multi clericorum, quos sola fama resperserat venatoriis occupationibus irretitos fuisse, jussu vicecomitum ad forum civile pertrahebantur, archiepiscopo vel episcopis non reclamantibus. Quorum quidam ut regiam indignationem evaderent offerentes pecuniam audiebantur.

Consecration of the bishop of S. Asaph, Oct. 13.

Adam canonicus Parisiensis, electus in episcopum Sancti Assavi, consecratus est a Ricardo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmonasterium iii° idus Octobris.

The abbot of Peterborough deposed, Oct. 30.

Willelmus abbas de Burgo, multis impetitus notoriis, et in præsentia Cantuariensis archiepiscopi testimonio multorum convictus, sententiam depositionis accepit iii° kalendas Novembris.

Hugo Petrileonis, Sancti Angeli diaconus cardinalis et apostolicæ sedis legatus, quia præstitit auctoritatem

---

[1] *pastores . . . . proprium*] contracta prius familiaritas vitiis repromitteret impunitatem, conversatio par indulgentiis crimina sublevaret, remissio nimia vagaretur in claustris, B.

trahendi clericos ante judicem sæcularem pro forisfacto forestæ, et pro laico feodo, ut infra,[1] infausta navigatione transvectus in Angliam vi° kalendas Novembris, regibus in equitatu magno celeriter occurrentibus, in vigilia Sanctorum Omnium sollenni processione receptus est Wintoniæ, a domino papa sibi plenitudine potestatis indulta, quam equus niveus, quam cætera repræsentant insignia specialiter soli Romano pontifici dedicata.

A.D. 1175. Cardinal Hugo Pierleoni arrives, Oct. 27, and visits the kings at Winchester Oct. 31.

Henricus Remensis archiepiscopus,[2] regis filius et regum frater, ii° idus Novembris diem clausit extremum.

The archbishop of Rheims dies, Nov. 12.

Quia diocesis Cantuariorum, coartata limitibus, unico fuerat ab antiquis temporibus archidiaconatu contenta, ut hujusmodi fortassis jacturam aliquo saltem remedio relevaret archiepiscopus, et liberalissimam liberalitatem suam prædicabilem modernis offerret, ultimis his diebus intra spatium trium mensium tres instituit archidiaconos, nullo trium per hunc decursum temporis concedente in fata.

Institution of three archdeacons at Canterbury.

SAVARICUM.
NICHOLAUM.
HERBERTUM.

Odo prior Cantuariensis, electus in abbatem Sancti Martini de Bello, bellum statim circa suæ promotionis initium indixit episcopo diocesiano. Nam a metropolitano benedictionem accepit. Quod sibi licere jure legationis asserens, archiepiscopus nil in præjudicium ecclesiæ Cicestrensis egisse dicebat.

Strife between the abbot of Battle and the bishop of Chichester.

Johannes decanus Saresberiensis, tandem concordi Norwicensium ore, regis assensu, archiepiscopi coniventia, cardinalis auctoritate, vocatus ad episcopatum apud Eignesham vi° kalendas Decembris, ecclesiam Orientalium Anglorum suscepit regendam, consecratus a Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Lamehedam xix° kalendas Januarii.

John dean of Salisbury consecrated bishop of Norwich, Dec. 14.

[1] *quia . . . infra*] Inserted in the margin of A. and B. See below, p. 410.

[2] Henry, son of Lewis VI., and brother of Lewis VII., and of Philip who was made king in 1129, but died before his father.

A.D. 1175. Demolition of castles in England.

Circa dies istos castellum de Huntinduna, de Waletuna, de Legercestria, et Grobi, de Stutesbers, de Dudeleia, de Tresc, et alia plura pariter corruerunt, in ultionem injuriarum quas * domini castellorum regi patri frequenter intulerant, ut quos par facinus inquinaverat, pœna similis cohererceret.

* REX SCOTIÆ.
HUGO BIGOD.
COMES LEGERCESTRIÆ.
COMES DE FERERES.
GERVASIUS PAGANELLUS.
ROGERUS DE MULBRAI.

The king pays his son's debts,

Rex, ad filiorum necessitates oculos paternos deflectens, regem filium a debitis quibus gravissime premebatur exhoneravit.

including the purveyances raised in Normandy and Anjou.

Quicquid ministri regis patris a præteritis tribus annis per Normanniam, per Cenomanniam, per Andegaviam in usus regios convertendum, esculenti vel poculenti causa receperant, venit in ratiocinium. Regis ergo thesauris ad solutionem plenius faciendam plenissime reseratis, creditores dimissi sunt.

A.D. 1176. The king appoints justices itinerant, Jan. 26.

MCLXXVI.[1] Rex, juxta consilium filii sui regis, coram episcopis, comitibus, baronibus, militibus, et aliis hominibus suis in hoc consentientibus, constituit justiciarios in sex partibus regni sui, in unaquaque tres, qui juraverunt quod suam cuique justitiam conservabunt. Hoc autem factum est apud Norhamtunam vii° kalendas Februarii.

The new abbot of Westminster privileged to wear a mitre.

Walterus prior Wintoniensis, electus in abbatem Westmonasterii, benedictionem accepit ab episcopo Lundoniensi, professionem fecit, mitram et cyrothecas, quas prædecessor suus Laurentius[2] emeruerat sed morte præventus nunquam receperat, de manu episcopi Lundoniensis suscepit, et post in conventibus[3] episcoporum mitratus incessit. Cæterum Hugo Petrileonis, Romanæ sedis legatus, apud Westmustier minus reverenter

---

[1] *MCLXXVI.*] Pons Lundoniæ inceptus fuit a quodam capellano Petro de Colcherche. A. in marg. in a contemporary hand.

[2] *Laurentius*] Written over an erasure in A.; non gratis, B.

[3] *conventibus*] conventu, Twysden.

receptus, ut ei visum est,[1] abbatem ab usu mitræ, priorem ab introitu chori suspendit vi° kalendas Martii. A.D. 1176. The cardinal forbids it, Feb. 24.

Mandato cardinalis, clero totius Angliæ generaliter Lundoniæ convocato die Dominica qua cantatur "Lætare "Jerusalem," cum de statuendis vel resecandis tractatus esset habendus communis, adversus Cantuariensem archiepiscopum insurrexit Eboracensis, dicens illa verba Gregorii sic scribentis: "Sit inter Lundoniæ et Ebora-"censis civitatis episcopos in posterum honoris ista "distinctio, ut ille prior habeatur qui prius fuerit "ordinatus," de Cantuariensi et Eboracensi intelligenda esse. Quare cœpit constanter asserere, quod ipse, quia prius fuerat ordinatus, sedem suam poneret in concilio cardinalis ad dextram. Cantuariensis e contra dicebat ecclesiam Cantuariensem illius dignitatis et majoritatis ab antiquis fuisse temporibus, ut secundum statuta patrum, juxta munimenta regum, secundum privilegia Romanorum pontificum sibi jure vendicet Angliæ totius primatum. Quotiens etiam in conventibus publicis sive regem, sive legatum Romanum, utroque metropolitano præsente, traditur aliquo tempore præfuisse, totiens traditur Cantuarienses archiepiscopos sedisse ad dextram. Duobus igitur archiepiscopis in hunc modum controversantibus, et suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ metropolitano viriliter assistentibus, accidit v^a^ feria cardinalem in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ de Westmustier cathedram collocare. Superveniens Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Helyensi pontifice procurante, vix aliquantulo tempore sedit ad dexteram, sed concurrente turba, sed ingravescente tumultu, sed convitiis hinc et hinc discurrentibus, sed invalescentibus minis, sed personis quorumdam inflictis verberibus, cum nimia festinatione cardinalis recessit. Eboracensis autem in corpore proprio male tractatus, ut dixit, atroces injurias, insultus acerrimos, percussuras enormes, ves-

Council at London, March 14.

The archbishop of York claims precedence over the archbishop of Canterbury.

See Beda, Hist. Eccl. lib. i. c. 29.

Resistance of the latter.

A riot ensues, and the legate leaves the assembly.

---

[1] *ut . . . est*] om. B.

A.D. 1176. Quarrel between the archbishop of York and the bishop of Ely.

tium patentes scissuras, sub præsentia regis et cardinalis in caput præsulis Elyensis refudit. Hac occasione mutuæ factæ sunt appellationes hinc inde. Concilium omissum est. Cardinalis in propatulo claustri de Westmostier sermonem habens ad clerum et populum, quia suis et nostris, ut dixit, peccatis exigentibus, quæ ad utilitatem, quæ ad libertatem, quæ ad pacem ecclesiæ fuerant statuenda non poterat ordinare, licentiam recedendi petiit: videntibus cunctis legationis insignia deposuit, sed postmodum, regis precibus emollitus, quæ deposuerat iracundiæ calore succensus, episcoporum consiliis acquiescens, ipsa die resumpsit.

The council broken up.

Letter of the pope on the precedency of York and Canterbury.

"Alexander papa.[1] Antiquam Eboracensis ecclesiæ dignitatem integram conservari, auctore Domino, cupientes, et "prædecessorum nostrorum felicis memoriæ Calixti, Honorii, "Innocentii et Eugenii Romanorum pontificum vestigiis in"hærentes, auctoritate apostolica prohibemus, ne aut Cantua"riensis archiepiscopus ab Eboracensi professionem quamlibet "exigat, aut Eboracensis Cantuariensi exhibeat, neque, quod "penitus a beato Gregorio prohibitum est, ullo modo Ebora"censis Cantuariensis ditioni subjaceat. Sed juxta ejusdem "patris constitutionem ista inter eos honoris distinctio con"servetur, ut prior habeatur qui prius fuerit ordinatus."[2]

Geoffrey provost of Beverley made chancellor to the younger king.

Gaufridus Beverlaci præpositus,[3] archidiaconus Eboracensis, appensis undecies centum marcis argenti, regis filii regis factus est cancellarius. Quod autem numeratæ pecuniæ summa conclusa est sub undenario, non est forsitan a misterio penitus alienum.

Famine in Anjou and Maine.

Andegaviæ, Cenomanniæ, finibus panis inedia laborantibus, rex pater regis a kalendis Aprilis usque ad novarum futuram frugum abundantiam, decem milibus hominum diebus singulis alimenta sufficienter invenit. Quicquid etiam vel in horreis, vel in cellis vinariis,

---

[1] *papa*] altered to *episcopus* in A.

[2] *Alexander . . . ordinatus*] Inserted in the margin in B.

[3] Geoffrey, the nephew of archbishop Roger of York, archdeacon of York and provost of Beverley, was chancellor to the younger Henry, and drowned at sea in 1177. He is carefully to be distinguished from Geoffrey, the treasurer of York and chancellor to the elder king, who was the king's illegitimate son and afterwards archbishop.

vel in promptuariis, regiis usibus insularii reservaverant, mandato regis totum piis collegiis et pauperibus erogatum est.[1] A.D. 1176. Munificence of the king.

Ricardus comes de Striguil, Dermucii quondam Dubliniensium regis gener, aditum Anglis fines Hiberniensium invadendi primus omnium patefecit, illatas socero suo frequentissimas et atroces ulciscens injurias; cui dum exequias celebrasset hujusmodi, dum magna jam ex parte subjugasset Hiberniam, inmatura morte præventus, diem clausit extremum nonis Aprilis, filium vix plene triennem ex filia memorati regis sullatum relinquens hæredem. Death of Richard earl of Pembroke, the invader of Ireland, Apr. 5. He leaves an infant son.

Bulgarinus[2] comes Engolismensis, stipatus cohorte nefaria Brebantinorum, in manu hostili Pictaviam visitare præsumpsit. Cæterum Johannes Pictavensis episcopus, auxiliariis undique convocatis, stipendiariorum numerositate collecta, juncto sibi Theobaldo Chabot qui princeps erat militiæ Ricardi ducis Aquitanorum, cum patre suo rege tunc temporis moram in Anglia facientis, plebem sibi commissam de manibus inimicorum decrevit eripere. Nefariis igitur illis eversoribus castellorum, agrorum depopulatoribus, incentoribus ecclesiarum, monialium oppressoribus, ordinatis quatuor aciebus prope Berbezeacum occurrerunt. In campestribus plures trucidarunt in ore gladii, partem non modicam cremaverunt in arcem conclusam. Sibi fuga reliqui consulentes, impedimenta reliquerunt in prædam. Pictavenses itaque, non tam gladio, non tam galea protecti, quam divino nutu, quatuor tantum de numero suorum percussis, hostium cuncos penetrarunt illæsi. Sicque salus in manu clericorum data satis evidenter ostendit plerisque non animos deesse sed arma. The count of Angoulême invades Poictou, and is defeated by the bishop of Poictiers and Theobald Chabot.

Ad summonitionem regis, rege filio moram in partibus

[1] *erogatum est*] Here MS. D. inserts the oath given above at p. 390. There is a blank of five lines in B.

[2] *Bulgarinus*] Wulgrin Taillefer, son of William Taillefer IV., count of Angoulême, succeeded his father in 1178, and died in 1181.

A.D. 1176. Council at London. The proposal of the king of Sicily for the hand of Johanna, accepted, May 20.

transmarinis agente, tam prælati ecclesiarum quam regni proceres generaliter convenerunt Lundoniæ. Nunciis itaque, quos rex Siciliæ Willelmus apparatu magno transmiserat, filiam regis Johannam sibi jungi lege maritali petens in conjugem, habito tractatu communi responsum est xiii° kalendas Junii. Mentio siquidem futurarum et repromissio nuptiarum, exactis hinc inde sacramentis in animam utriusque regis, in necessitatem conjugii futuri redacta est. Ad fœdus etiam et artius ineundum, et efficacius provehendum, et sollennius contrahendum cum rege Siculo, rex nuntios in Siciliam expeditos direxit; qui, postquam de donatione propter nuptias assignanda certiores extiterint, festinent ad reditum. Hæc acta sunt in præsentia cardinalis, archiepiscopis assidentibus et episcopis, cleri procerumque roborata consensu.

The emperor having heard that Milan had been re-fortified,

Fredericus imperator Romanus, ut nomen sibi faceret ultra nomen magnorum qui sunt in terris, intravit Ytaliam in manu forti. Mediolanensium itaque civitatem, fodrum antiquitus institutum paratam agnoscere sed recusantem aliud subire, minus patienter audivit. Quam, quia munerum extraordinariorum immunitate gaudebat, quia se pristinæ libertatis animabat in vocem, vallabat obsidione, maxima capitis diminutione dampnavit, et sullatis omnibus quæcumque pretiosa repererat, abiit qualemqualem victoriam non absque nota proditionis, ut aiunt, consecutus. Labentibus aliquot annis in angustia temporis civitas reædificata est, tutissimis munita præsidiis. Quod audiens imperator, Papiensibus secum assumptis et Hastensibus, adjacentes Mediolano depopulatus est agros, vastavit segetes, vineas exstirpavit. Cæterum Mediolanenses, Placentini, Brixienses, Veronenses, videntes mala quæ fiebant in terra, mori pro patria decreverunt, vel patriam in libertate tueri. Parati ergo ad pugnam, occurrerunt imperatori iiii° kalendas Junii prope Ticinum. Qui qualiter magnis excidit ausis docebunt sequentia.

with the help of the men of Pavia and Asti ravages the Milanese. He is defeated by the allied cities, May 29.

"Mediolanenses Bononiensibus victoriam, et de hostibus liberationem.

A.D. 1176. Letter of the men of Milan to the men of Bologna, reporting their victory over the emperor.

"Notum sit vobis nos ab hostibus nostris gloriosum reportasse triumphum. Interfectorum vero, submersorum, captivorum, non est numerus. Scutum imperatoris, vexillum, crucem et lanceam habemus. Aurum et argentum multum in clitellis ejus reperimus, et spolia hostium accepimus, quorum æstimationem non credimus a quoquam posse diffiniri. Quæ quidem nostra non reputamus, sed ea domini papæ et Ytalicorum communia esse desideramus. Captus est in prælio dux Bertoldus,[1] et nepos imperatricis, et frater Coloniensis archiepiscopi; aliorum autem infinitas captivorum numerum excludit, qui omnes Mediolani detinentur. Si liceat evagari vel semel, in urbis Romæ prima fundatione cujusmodi signum apparuerit, vide. Nonne vultur? Et ecce rapacitati semper studuere Romani. Dum prima jacerentur fundamenta Constantinopolis, quæ melioribus condita est auspiciis, quid apparuerit, iterum vide. Nonne phœnix? Et hæc quidem civitas in deliciis affluens, pollens in ædificiis, in sericis vernans, ab initio cultui mancipata divino, jugo nunquam fuit hostilitatis attrita. Dum primo Mediolani mœnia ponerentur quid apparuerit, rursus vide. Nonne sus laniger? unde dicitur Mediolanum, quasi ex media parte laneum. Igitur, si vicissitudinem rerum diligenter attenderis, si qualiter civitas hæc jaculis impetita, confixa sagittis, arietibus perforata, conquassata balistis, hostili tandem conflagrarit incendio, setarum asperitatem intelliges ejus excidium prætendisse. Rursus si fideliter animadverteris in ejusdem urbis reædificatione quod gaudium fuerit clericorum, quantus civium applausus, quanta matronarum lætitia, quantum in choreis tripudium, advertes proculdubio candorem lanæ, velleris suavitatem in sue lani-

Omen at the building of the walls of Milan.

Sidonius.[2]

Romuleos refugis Bizantinosque fragores,
Atque sagittifero mœnia fracta Tito.
Murus Alexandri te non capit[3] Antiochique,
Spernis Helyseæ Birsica tecta domus.
Rura paludicolæ temnis populosa Ravennæ
Et quæ lanigero de sue nomen habent.

---

[1] *Bertoldus*] Berhthold IV., duke of Zähringen.

[2] These verses are from Sidonius Apollinaris, Epistolæ, lib. vii. ep. 17, vv. 15–19. They are omitted in MS. D.

[3] *te non capit*] te non tenet, in the original poem; Twysden prints it "tenet caput."

A.D. 1176.

"gero post incommoda destructionis beneficium restitutionis "Mediolanen[s]ibus figurasse."

Departure of the cardinal, July 3.

Hugo Petrileonis suæ legationis in Angliam cancellato cursu v° nonas Julii transfretavit; quid ei debeat Anglorum ecclesia cupida libertatis, sequentis breviculæ reserat continentia:

Letter of Henry II. to the pope, declaring the concessions which he has made to the legate.

"Domino papæ rex Anglorum. Propter reverentiam sanctæ "Romanæ ecclesiæ, atque devotionem quam erga eam et "paternitatem ac dilectionem vestram et fratrum vestrorum "habemus et semper habuimus, licet plurimum resisterent "et reclamarent regni nostri majores et magis discreti, ad "instantiam viri discreti et sapientis Hugonis Petrileonis, "sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ cardinalis, apostolicæ sedis legati, "amici et cognati nostri, capitula quæ subscripta sunt in "regno nostro tenenda concessimus. Videlicet quod clericus "de cætero non trahatur ante judicem secularem in persona "sua de aliquo criminali, neque de aliquo forisfacto, excepto "forisfacto forestæ meæ, et excepto laico feodo unde michi "vel alii domino seculari laicum debetur servitium. Concedo "etiam quod archiepiscopatus, episcopatus, et abbatiæ non "teneantur in manu mea ultra annum, nisi urgente necessitate "et evidenti de causa quæ propter hoc non fuerit inventa ut "diutius teneantur. Concedo etiam quod interfectores cleri- "corum, qui eos scienter vel præmeditati interfecerint, con- "victi vel confessi coram justitiario meo, præsente episcopo "vel ejus officiali, præter consuetam laicorum vindictam, suam "et suorum de hæreditate quæ eos contingit perpetuam susti- "neant exhæredationem. Concedo etiam quod clerici non "cogantur facere duellum."

A deputation from Chartres, July 22, announces the election of John of Salisbury as bishop of Chartres.

Ecclesiæ Carnotensis personæ spectabiles Cantuariam in comitatu magno venerunt xi° kalendas Augusti. Votis igitur orationum feliciter adimpletis, ad honorem Dei, ad obsequium matris Domini, ad solamen exulum propter justitiam, acceptabiles hostias immolarunt. Johannem [1] namque a Saresberia gloriosi Thomæ martyris quondam allateralem, exilii socium, angustiarum participem, passionis testem certissimum, quem ecclesia Carnotensis elegerat unanimiter, requirebant attentius, capituli Carnotensis, regis Francorum, Senonensis ar-

[1] *Johannem*] John of Salisbury, bishop of Chartres, 1176–1180.

A.D. 1176.

chiepiscopi, litteris publice recitatis fidem et auctoritatem suæ postulationi præstantibus. Quibusdam itaque vices Cantuariensis archiepiscopi tunc absentis supplentibus, collegio monachorum Sanctæ Trinitatis in albis sedente, viris etiam pluribus discretis, honestis, et litteratis ibidem congregatis in Domino, suum electum ab Anglorum subjectione liberum et absolutum receperunt cum hymnis et canticis et lætitia magna; tam illinc quam hinc in articulo temporis cursu placido navigantes, tanquam ventis imperarent et mari. Consecratus autem est Senonis a Mauricio Parisiensi episcopo vi^{to} idus Augusti, Carnoti sollenniter intronizatus est in Assumptione Beatæ Virginis.

He is released from his subjection to the English, and allowed to go.

He is consecrated, Aug. 8, and inthroned Aug. 15.

Letter of the clergy of Chartres to the bishop elect.

"[1]Venerabili domino suo et patri, Johanni Dei gratia "Carnotensi electo, pastoralis curæ sollicitudinem gerere ad "salutem. 'Quod natum est ex carne, caro est; et quod "'natum est ex spiritu, spiritus est,' Hinc est quod magni- "ficat anima nostra Dominum, et in Deo spiritus noster "exultavit, quia vos nobis in pastorem electum non revelavit "caro et sanguis, sed Pater noster qui in cœlis est, visitans "nos Oriens ex alto. Sane tam dissona hominum vota, tot "varias mentium voluntates, adunare non potuit nisi Spiritus "unitatis, adeo ut indubitanter sit evidens eum quem Spiritus "revelavit cœlitus destinatum. Curiæ cœlesti gaudium intu- "lisse credimus, quod Beatæ Virginis ecclesia, per Spiritum "Sanctum concipiens, dilectum Deo et hominibus pastorem "germinavit. Acclamantibus itaque omnium votis desideratum "sibi postulat, et ad dilectum, et ad electum sibi incunctanter "aspirat Carnotensis ecclesia, sponsique desiderio jam lan- "guescens, 'Osculetur me,' inquit, 'osculo oris sui.' Urgeat "amor Christi eum qui regis filiæ desideratur amplexibus, et "stimulis salutaribus compungatur, qui ad Dei filios propa- "gandos Christi gener eligitur. Erubescat regnum cœlorum "solus ingredi cui divini germinis pompa gloriosa promittitur, "et qui coronam auream creditur meruisse, gloriosi labore "officii mereatur aureolam. Mittimus ergo ad vos ex capitulo "nostro personas spectabiles, decanum videlicet, cantorem et "cancellarium qui universitatis nostræ mentem vobis offerant,

S. John, iii. 6.
S. Luke, i. 46, 47.
S. Matt. xvi. 17.
S. Luke, i. 78.
Cant. i. 1.

[1] This letter is printed as No. cccxxiv., among the collected letters of John of Salisbury; ed. Migne, c. 375.

A.D. 1176. "et personam vestram postulantes vestri adventus desiderium "viva vobis voce denuntient."

Letter from Lewis VII. to John of Salisbury.

"[1] Ludovicus Dei gratia rex Francorum, amico suo karissimo "magistro Johanni de Saresberia, Carnotensi electo, salutem "cum sincera dilectione. Quod capitulum Carnotense, de con-"silio domini Senonensis archiepiscopi, apostolicæ sedis legati, "divino potius, ut credimus, instinctu vos in pastorem et "dominum pari voto et assensu sollenniter et canonice ele-"gerunt, gratum ducimus et acceptum: tum beati Thomæ "martyris consideratione, cujus familiaritatem meritis vestris "meruistis adipisci, tum morum et scientiæ vestræ contem-"platione. Eapropter discretionem vestram monemus et pre-"camur attentius, quatinus electioni de vobis factæ benignum "præbentes assensum, tam sollenni et tam laudabili tantæ "ecclesiæ vocationi præsentiæ vestræ exhibitione satisfacere "maturetis, ne nostrum et archiepiscopi Senonensis, qui ad "hoc fideliter et efficaciter consummandum laboravit, diutius "suspendatur desiderium, et spes ecclesiæ Carnotensis mora "prolixiori torqueatur. Valete."

He urges him to accept his election.

An account of William of Blois, bishop of Chartres, archbishop of Sens, and afterwards of Rheims.

Willelmus,[2] comitis Theobaldi filius, adhuc juvenis electus in episcopum Carnotensem, et, labentibus aliquot annorum curriculis, creatur Senonensis archiepiscopus, ecclesiam Carnotensium indulgentia domini papæ tempore longo commendatam obtinuit, auxit possessionibus. Qui postmodum sedis infulas dignioris, ditioris, nominatioris, ut dicunt, non ambiens, ad instantem Remensium postulationem de Celtica Gallia migravit in Belgicam. Apicibus siquidem apostolicis perurgentibus, in beati Remigii cathedra collocatus est, vi^{to} idus Augusti, usum pallii quod prius habuerat, licet locum mutaverit, non immutans; eo quidem habendus translatione facta prædicabilior quod ad industriam, magnanimitatem, modestiam tanti viri Romana respexit ecclesia, nec tam generositatem parentum, vel Ludovici regis affinitatem, seu reginæ Francorum, scilicet Alæ sororis ejus-

He is inthroned at Rheims, Aug. 8.

[1] This letter appears as No. cccxxiii. among the collected letters of John of Salisbury; ed. Migne, col. 374.

[2] William of Champagne, consecrated bishop of Chartres in 1165; became archbishop of Sens in 1168, but continued to hold Chartres until in 1176 he was translated to Rheims.

A.D. 1176. Examples of the translation of bishops.

dem Willelmi desiderium, quam in archiepiscopi moribus honestatem attendit. Sic Perigenes in Petris ordinatus episcopus translatus est in Chorinthum. Dosideum Seleutiæ episcopum Alexander Antiochenus episcopus in Tarsum Cilitiæ transmutavit. Reverentius[1] ab Archis Phenice in Tyrum transmutatus est. Johannes de Gordolima mutatus est in Proconixum. Palladius ex Helenopoli mutatus est in Asponam. Alexander ex alia Helenopoli in Andronopolim mutatus est. Gregorius Nazanzenus prius civitatis Cappadociæ fuit episcopus, deinde a beato Basilio in Anzianco constitutus est. Miletius prius Sebasticæ ecclesiæ præfuit, postea Antiochiæ præsul est constitutus. Theusebius ab Apania[2] Asiæ transfertur in Eudoxiopolim. Policarpus de urbe Antapristena Misiæ in Nicopolim Traciæ mutatus est. Jerophilus de Trapezoboli Frisiæ transmutatus est in Palatinopolim Traciæ. Optimus ab Argardimia Frigiæ in Antiochiam Pisidiæ transmutatus est.[3] Silvanus a Filiopoli Traciæ mutatus est in Troadam. Herveius Bengornensis episcopus translatus est in Helyensem episcopum. Gilebertus Herefordensis episcopus translatus est in Lundoniensem.

Ivo Carnotensis episcopus.

Letter of the king of Sicily to Henry II., explaining why he did not take a personal oath.

"Henrico Dei gratia nobilissimo regi Anglorum, speciali "amico suo, Willelmus eadem gratia rex Siciliæ, ducatus "Apuliæ, et principatus Capuæ, salutem. Honorabiles mag"nificentiæ vestræ nuntios recepimus honorifice, quorum in"sinuatione nobis innotuit, quod præsentibus et jubentibus "vobis tres nobiles et spectatæ fidei viri de regno vestro in "anima vestra consummationem matrimonii inter nos et filiam "vestram juraverint. Qui et postula"verunt instantius ut et idem manu "propria juraremus. Quod quia regno "nostro semper et nostris fuit proge"nitoribus insuetum, personaliter ju"rare non duximus expedire. Quare "prædicti nuncii vestri quæsierunt, ut "sicut ab honorabilibus personis fece"ratis illud in anima vestra jurari, "sic et nos similiter in anima nostra

Quod jurandum sit in animam et non in anima, perpenditur ex sequentibus. "Ne tra"dideris me in animas "tribulantium me." "Ne tradat eum in "animam inimicorum "ejus." "Captabunt "in animam justi."[4]

---

[1] *Reverentius*] Reverentinus, B.

[2] *Apania*] So A. and B. for Apamia.

[3] *Optimus . . . transmutatus est*] om. C. These examples are taken from the prologue to the Panormia (ed. 1647), pp. 4, 5.

[4] *justi*] Deum invoco testem in animam meam; add. B. MS. D. omits the whole marginal note.

A.D. 1176. He ratifies the promises of his envoys; and urges the completion of the alliance. Dated Aug. 23.

"fieri faceremus. Nos equidem, et quod a nostris nuntiis in "vestra præsentia constitutis super concessione matrimonii ex "parte nostra juratum est, ratihabitione firmamus, et quod "vobis præsentibus in anima vestra juratum est, grato assensu "recepimus, ac si manu propria jurassetis, cum unum et idem "putemus sacramentum, quod vel manu propria fit, vel in "anima jubentis et præsentis juratur. Post hæc nuntii vestri "juraverunt, quod postquam nuntii nostri cum galeis ad partes "Sancti Egidii pervenerint, quamprimum id vobis innotuerit, "nobilissima filia vestra eis bona fide quam citius poterit "assignabitur, nostro feliciter matrimonio copulanda. Vestra "itaque intererit et vobis cedet ad gloriam celeriter exequi "quæ initiati matrimonii perfectionem desiderant. Datum "Pannormi, xxiii° die Augusti."[1]

Johanna is sent to Sicily, Aug. 27, with an honourable escort.

Johanna, junior filia regis, Siculo regi nuptura, vi° kalendas Septembris, transfretavit; sumptus et impensas et itineri necessaria, copiam quoque ministrorum, providit[2] Wintoniensis episcopus. Regis ex decreto viri spectabiles assignati sunt viæ comites, quidam usque ad Sanctum Egidium, quidam montes Siculos et palatium ascensuri Pannormitanum, nec prius cogitaturi de reditu quam illam nuptialem pompam, et in consortium conjugalis thori regni diademate Siculum regem insignitum conspexerint.

Richard compels the count of Angoulême to submit.

Dux Aquitanorum Ricardus, captis jure belli pluribus adversariorum, castellis quoque duobus eversis, Engolismenses armis edomuit. Bulgarinum namque comitem et complices suos, ut regis Anglorum indignationem evaderent, in Angliam transfretare coegit. Ad pedes itaque provoluti regis patris, misericordiam consecuti sunt apud Wintoniam xi° kalendas Octobris.

The king occupies the castles of England.

Universa castella per Angliam et per marchiam totam ad imperium regis patris deputata sunt custodiæ.

The archbishop of Sens consecrated, Sept. 26.

Guido[3] præpositus Autisiodorensis, Senonensium electus antistes, consecratus est a Johanne Carnotensi episcopo vi° kalendas Octobris.

---

[1] This letter is printed in the Fœdera, i. p. 32.

[2] *providit*] Ricardus, interl. A.; ins. C.

[3] Guy de Noyers, archbishop of Sens, 1176–1193. This and the following paragraphs are in the margin of MS. B.

Willelmus comes Gloecestriæ, dum filium non haberet, ægre ferens hæreditatem inter filias dividendam, Johannem filium regis hæredem instituit apud Windlesores iiii° kalendas Octobris.[1] A.D. 1176. The earl of Gloucester makes John his heir, Sept. 28.

Ricardus Wintoniensis episcopus regis patris[2] tractaturus negotia transfretavit, in forensibus, et in his quæ ducis Normannorum pertinent ad dignitatem, cura sibi totius Normanniæ deputata. Qui cum in danda sit eleemosina studiosus, sic oculos ad hominum conditionem reflexit, ut misericors erga pauperes, et divitum facultates diligenter disquirens, diligentiam fiscalibus commodis impenderet exactissimam. The bishop of Winchester justiciar of Normandy.

Willelmus de Aubini comes de Arundel iiii^to idus Octobris obiit apud Waverleie. Sepultus autem est apud Wimundeham xiiii^to kalendas Novembris.[3] Death of the earl of Arundel.

Petrus prior de Weneloc,[4] Menevensis electus, facta prius professione tam Ricardo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo quam successoribus ejus canonice substituendis de canonica subjectione, Cantuariæ consecratus est a Gileberto Lundoniensi episcopo, astantibus sibi Waltero Rofensi, Rogero Wigornensi episcopis, vii° idus Novembris. Consecration of the bishop of S. David's, Nov. 7.

Filia regis Anglorum, nuntiis Siculi regis maris et fluctuum expertis sævitiam, in conspectu virorum illustrium assignata est apud Sanctum Egidium v^to idus Novembris per manum Johannis Norwicensis episcopi, sicut ipse Pannormi promiserat, x° kalendas Septembris. Marriage of Johanna at Palermo, Nov. 9.

Adelfonsus, gener regis,[5] rex Castellæ, Santius, avunculus Adelfonsi,[6] rex Navarorum, discordes adinvicem, tam hinc quam illinc post dampna frequenter illata, tandem in regem Angliæ compromiserunt, et directis in Angliam nuntiis se staturos regis patris arbitrio The kings of Navarre and Castille refer their quarrel to the king.

---

[1] *apud . . . Octobris*] om. B.

[2] *patris*] Interlined in A. B., and inserted in the text in C.

[3] This paragraph is inserted in the margin of B.

[4] *prior de Weneloc*] Interlined in A.; ins. C.; om. B.

[5] *gener regis*] Interlined in A.; ins. C.; om. B.

[6] *avunculus Adelfunsi*] Interlined in A.; ins. C.; om. B.

A.D. 1176.

Embassies from Constantinople, Germany, Rheims, Saxony, and Flanders, meet at Westminster, Nov. 12.

juraverunt. Sub iisdem diebus nuncium Manuelis Constantinopolitani, nuncium Frederici Romani imperatoris, nuncium Willelmi Remensis archiepiscopi, nuncium Henrici ducis Saxonici, nuncium Philippi Flandrensium comitis, quos varia trahebant negotia, tanquam ex condicto simul in curia regis Anglorum conspiceres ii^do^ idus Novembris apud Westmostier.

Uncomfortable journey of the bishop of Norwich to Sicily,

Johannes Norwicensis episcopus, mandato regis in Siciliam suspectissimo tempore proficiscens, sæpe variis est affectus incommodis. Nam dum Romam recto petere debuisset itinere, si non in scismate perstitissent Lumbardi, pars australis, qua transitus sibi relictus est in subsidium, panis plurimum laborabat inedia. Pabula jumentorum vix aliquo quæstu procurabantur. Iter habens per Arverniam, jacentium in plateis et fame tumentium angebatur clamoribus. Valentiam urbem ingressus adhuc in bona valitudine manens, in venalibus disquirendis fidem hospitum causabatur. Ad noctes pertrahendas insomnes lectisternia pulices vendicabant. Ebredunensium fines præteriens, Jani montis declinans confinia, limites attingens Ytalicos, dum equis Januæ relictis se mari commisisset Tirreno,[1] promuntoria Januensium, maritima Pysanorum, Veneris portum et Herculis, ostii Tyberini fluenta velis in altum expassis a sinistra relinquens, urbem applicuit Gagetanam.

through Auvergne, Valence, Embrun, Genoa, Gaeta.

His passage to Sicily.

Exin pro varietate locorum vario desudans navigio, modo sagittaria, modo lintre, nec tam utens velo quam remo, ducatum Appuliæ, Capuæ principatum, evexa Calabriæ, cum aliqua remoratione pertransiit, Regium et Messanam urbes Pharo conterminas hinc et illinc de vicino respiciens. Ut autem maris pericula post eversionem Ylii Trojanis quondam tendentibus in Ytaliam haud prorsus incognita non omittam, Palinuri discursus, Scyllæ scopulos, Carybdis voraginem, non intrepidus evitavit. Nec enim ad momentum suo ver-

---

[1] *Tirreno*] mediterraneo, B.

sabatur in animo quod mare multociens evertitur in momento. Proinde nusquam quies, nusquam securitas, fervor nimius navigationem dampnabat. Metuendus piratarum incursus constantissimo cuilibet incussisset timorem. Remigantium illæ notabiles immundiciæ provocabant ad nauseam. Intima præcordiorum pestilens inficiebat aer. Quid enim inter tot discrimina gentem regionis externæ dixeris incurrisse periculi, dum apud Siculos, idibus Augusti tunc temporis effluentibus, folium in arboribus, in vite pampinus, arundines in palustribus prorsus exaruerint? Dum divertebatur ad litus, lintres vix viii. tantum capaces animarum, advesperascente die, fluctibus extrahebantur. De reficiendis ergo corporibus cura propensior sub divo discumbere multis ebdomadibus satis ægre sustinuit. Ad quiescendum vero de noctibus nunc lapis durior stramentorum repensabat mollitiem, nunc indulgentior tractus maris offerebat harenam, et sternere lectum in sabulo magistra necessitas edocebat.

A.D. 1176. The miseries of his voyage.

Drought in Sicily.

Wretched accommodation on landing.

Diebus plurimis in tali voluptate decursis, dum Pannormum intrasset episcopus, tribus sibi junctis ejusdem consortibus legationis, intra paucos dies a Siculo rege congruum excepit responsum. Utrum autem Sycilia, vel a tribus montibus, vel juxta situm regionis a forma triangula, Trinacria nuncupata sit, dum ex otio quærere debuisset, inæqualem persensit autumpnum. Duo quidem e sociis quos memoravimus sorte communi sunt subtracti de medio.* Tertius febre † gravi correptus lectum incidit ægritudinis. Episcopus itaque solus, legatione feliciter adimpleta, dum regis filiam Siculis assignasset apud Sanctum Egidium, in Angliam rediens venit ad regem in vigilia Natalis apud Notingeham.

Arrival at Palermo.

Peloro.[1]
Lilibeo.
Ethna.

Death of two of his companions, and illness of the third.

*Ricardus de Chamvile.
Baldewinus Bulot.
† Paris archidiaconus.

He arrives at home on Christmas Eve.

[1] The marginal names are omitted in D.

A.D. 1177. The marriage was solemnized at Palermo, Feb. 13

MCLXXVII. Illa nuptialis pompa Siculi regis et filiæ regis Anglorum urbem multipliciter illustravit Pannormitanam. Ad desponsationem namque simul et coronationem reginæ sollennius consummandam, concurrentibus tam archiepiscopis quam episcopis, tam comitibus quam baronibus, tam clero quam populo, Walterus ejusdem sedis archiepiscopus celebravit divina idus Februarii.

Letter of Manuel Comnenus to the king, giving an account of his campaign in Asia Minor.

"[1] ✠ Manuel in Christo Deo fidelis imperator, porphirogenitus, divinitus coronatus, sullimis, potens, excelsus, semper Augustus et moderator Romanorum, Comnianus, nobilissimo regi Anglorum dilecto amico suo salutem et omne bonum. Imperio meo belli gravamen sustentante, postremæ cohortes universæ Græcorum, et Latinorum, et reliquarum omnium gentium conglobatæ, quæ jaciebantur ab inimicis tela non sustinentes, inpactione utuntur, et ita violenter ferebantur, dum in adjacentem illic collem quasi ad propugnaculum festinarent, se præcedentes impellunt nolentes. Multo autem elevato pulvere ac perturbante oculos, et neminem permittente videre quæ circa pedes erant, in præcipitium quod aderat profundissimæ vallis, alius super alium, homines et equi sic incontinenter portati corruunt, et alii alios conculcantes adinvicem interimuntur, non ex gregariis tantum quidam sed ex clarissimis, et ex ipsis intimis meis consanguineis. Sultanus videns quod, post tanta quæ acciderant exercitibus nostris, imperium meum, sicut oportunum erat, rem dispensavit ut rursus ipsum invaderet, mittens supplicat imperio meo, et deprecatoriis usus est sermonibus, et requirit pacem ipsius, promittens omnem adimplere imperii mei voluntatem, et servitium suum contra omnem hominem dare, et omnes qui in regione sua tenentur captivos absolvere, et esse ex toto voluntatis nostræ. Ibidem ergo per duos dies integros in omni potestate morati sumus."

Letter of Henry to the Spanish kings.

"[2] Henricus Dei gratia rex Anglorum, et dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, karissimis amicis suis regibus Castellæ et Navarræ salutem. Sicut ex litterarum

---

[1] This is part of the letter given in full by Hoveden, ii. pp. 102–104.

[2] The decision of Henry on the Spanish arbitration is given in the Chronicle of Benedict, i. 151, sq.; and in that of Hoveden, ii. 129–131. Our author has abridged it chiefly by omitting the names of the negotiators and the witnesses.

A.D. 1177.

Award of Henry II. on the questions submitted to him by the kings of Castille and Navarre.

"vestrarum tenore et nunciorum vestrorum relatione cognovimus, placuit utrique vestrum querimonias inter vos habitas super quibusdam castellis et terris cum earum terminis et pertinentiis judicio nostro terminari. Nos vero, nunciis vestris ea qua decuit veneratione susceptis, pacem inter vos honori Dei et toti Christianitati plurimum profuturam attendentes, divinæ pietatis et communis utilitatis intuitu negotium hoc in nos suscepimus. Fidelibus itaque a vobis communiter electis, et procuratoribus et advocatis causarum vestrarum in præsentia nostra et episcoporum et comitum et baronum nostrorum constitutis, petitiones et allegationes utriusque partis diligenter audivimus et intelleximus. Proponebant siquidem hi quibus causa Adelfonsi regis Castellæ commissa fuerat, Sancium regem Navarræ memorato regi Castellæ, dum adhuc pupillus esset et orphanus, castella et terras, scilicet Logronium, Navarret, Anthlena, Aptol, Agoseio, cum omnibus terminis et pertinentiis suis quæ pater suus die qua decessit, et ipse post aliquot annis quiete possederat, injuste et violenter abstulisse, unde et eorum sibi fieri restitutionem postulabant. Illi vero quibus causa Sancii regis Navarræ commissa fuerat, nichil eorum quæ ab aliis proposita fuerant contradicentes, asserebant A. præfatum regem Castellæ, S. prænominato regi Navarræ, castella, scilicet Legin, Portel, et castellum quod tenet Godin, per werram et injuste abstulisse, parte altera in nullo sibi contradicente, eorum sibi fieri restitutionem pari petebant instantia. Præterea in scripto vestro continebatur communi, vos trewias inter vos usque in septennium fide interposita firmasse, et hoc ipsum nuncii vestri in jure palam sunt protestati.

"Habito igitur cum episcopis, comitibus et baronibus nostris, cum deliberatione consilio, pacem inter vos ad fidem Christianorum propagandam, et ad inimicorum Christi confusionem, necessariam fore considerantes, plenam etiam tam ex scriptis vestris quam nuntiorum assertionibus fiduciam[1] concipientes, quod in pace firmanda et conservanda consilio nostro et præcepto parebitis, ante judicii pronunciationem super prædictis querelis et trewis mandavimus vobis per nuncios nostros, et consuluimus, et præcepimus, et adhuc etiam præsenti scripto mandamus atque præcipimus, ut pacem inter vos firmetis fideliter et in perpetuum observetis. Super querelis vero prætaxatis, de castellis et terris, cum omnibus terminis suis et pertinentiis hinc inde violenter et injuste ablatis, cum nichil contra violentiam utrimque ob-

[1] *fiduciam*] formam, B.

A.D. 1177. Sentence of Henry II. on the Spanish arbitration.

"jectam a parte alterutra responderetur alteri, nec quicquam "quominus restitutiones quas petebant faciendæ essent allegaretur, plenariam utrique parti supradictorum quæ in jure "petita erant fieri restitutionem adjudicavimus. Adjunximus "etiam ex judicio trewias præfatas inter vos, ut prædictum "est, fide firmatas, sicut ex scripto vestro et nuntiorum vestrorum publica confessione in jure facta nobis constitit, "usque ad constitutum inter vos terminum inviolabiliter observandas. Volumus itaque et præcipimus pro bono pacis, "ut rex A. filius noster donet S. regi Navarræ avunculo suo, "singulis annis usque ad decennium tria milia Marabotinorum "ad tres terminos in anno Burgis recipienda, scilicet ad finem "quatuor primorum mensium post prædictam restitutionem "utrimque factam M. Marabotinos; et ad finem quatuor "mensium proximo sequentium M. Marabotinos; et ad finem "quatuor mensium tertio sequentium M. Marabotinos; ita ut "singulis annis sequentibus de x.[1] post prædictam restitutionem solvantur tria milia Marabotinorum ad eosdem terminos, "et in loco prænominato. Præterea nuncii utriusque vestrum "juraverunt ante sententiæ pronuntiationem vos prædictum "judicium nostrum tam in restitutionibus quam trewiis firmiter observaturos; et, nisi feceritis, quod corpora sua reddent "in manum et potestatem nostram."

Consecration of the bishop of Bangor, May 15.

Guido, Bengornensium electus antistes, consecratus est a Ricardo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Ambresbiri idus Maii.

Removal of the secular canons from Waltham, and substitution of regulars, June 11.

Amotis ab ecclesia Waltamensi canonicis quos seculares vocant, quia licentiam nimis vagam in seculo quidam ipsorum habuerant, sicut Guido decanus ejusdem ecclesiæ regi frequenter suggesserat, subinducti sunt regulares auctoritate summi pontificis, sub præsentia regis patris, in vigilia Pentecostes. "Ea quidem est vis malis "moribus, ut innocentiam multitudinis devenustent scelera paucorum, cum e contrario bonorum raritas flagitia multorum "nequeat excusare."[2] Radulfus Cirecestrensis[3] canonicus ipsa die de manu Lundoniensis episcopi curam ecclesiæ

SYDONIUS.

[1] *sequentibus de x.*] de decem annis sequentibus, Bened. i. 153.

[2] *Ea . . . . excusare*] Sidonius Apollinaris, Epistt. lib. ix. ep. vii. (ed. Savaron, p. 443).

[3] Ralph, canon regular of Cirencester, was made prior of Waltham on the new foundation in 1177. The house was placed under an abbot in 1184.

supradictæ recipiens, ipsi tanquam diocesiano de canonica subjectione servanda se verbis obligavit expressim, et fratribus congregatis assignatus prior, ab eodem episcopo sollenniter est collocatus in sede. A.D. 1177. Ralph made prior.

Philippus comes Flandrensium, et comes Willelmus de Magnavilla profecti sunt Jerosolimam. Departure of crusaders.

"Alexander papa[1] episcopis Angliæ. The pope's account of his meeting with the emperor at Venice.

"Nono kalendas Augusti Fredericus imperator venit ad "ecclesiam beati Nicholai, quæ per unum miliare a Veneciis "distat, et ibi tam ipse quam archiepiscopi, episcopi, et alii "principes Teutonici regni abrenuntiantes scismati, per fratres "nostros episcopos et cardinales de mandato nostro absolutio-"nis beneficium meruerunt, et deinde venerunt Venecias, et "ibi ante ecclesiam beati Marci prædictus imperator nobis "sicut summo pontifici obedientiam et reverentiam humiliter "et reverenter exhibuit, et, recepto a nobis pacis osculo, nos "devote dextravit, et cum reverentia qua decuit et devotione "usque ad altare in ecclesiam introduxit. Sequenti vero die "in festo beati Jacobi, ab eodem imperatore rogati, ad præ-"dictam ecclesiam Sancti Marci sollennia celebraturi Missa-"rum accessimus, et nobis illuc venientibus præfatus imperator "extra ecclesiam obviam venit, et dextro latere nostro devote "suscepto nos in ecclesiam introduxit, et peractis Missarum "solenniis nos usque ad ipsius ecclesiæ portam dextravit, et "cum ascenderemus palefridum nostrum ibi paratum staffam "tenuit, et omnem honorem et reverentiam nobis exhibuit, "quam prædecessores ejus nostris consueverint antecessoribus "exhibere."[2]

Legatos regis Anglorum, a Sicilia redeuntes, dux Burgundiæ spoliavit, illud illud parum attendens The duke of Burgundy plunders the ambassadors.

Statius, Theb. ii., 486 "Sanctum populis per secula nomen
"Legatum." STATIUS.

Rex pater, regno juxta voluntatem suam disposito, transfretavit xv^{to} kalendas Septembris. The king goes to France, Aug. 18.

"Ego Ludovicus rex Francorum, et ego Henricus rex Anglo-"rum volumus ad omnium notitiam pervenire, nos Deo inspi-"rante promisisse et jurasse, quod simul ibimus in servitium "Christianitatis et crucem suscipiemus ituri Jerusalem. Vo- Treaty of peace.

---

[1] *papa*] erased and episcopus substituted in MS. A.

[2] This letter as here given is a mere abstract of the letter written by the pope to archbishop Roger of York, dated July 26, 1177, and given in Benedict, i. 188; Hoveden, ii. 141.

A.D. 1177.

Treaty between Lewis VII. and Henry II.,

" lumus etiam quod omnes sciant, quod sic sumus et amodo " volumus esse amici, quod uterque nostrum alterutri nostrum " conservabit vitam et membra et terrenum honorem contra " omnes homines pro posse suo. Et si quæcunque persona " alterutri nostrum malum facere præsumpserit, ego H. juvabo " L. regem Francorum dominum meum contra omnes homines " pro posse meo, et ego L. juvabo H. regem Anglorum contra " omnes homines pro posse meo, sicut hominem et fidelem " meum, salva fide quam debemus hominibus nostris quamdiu " ipsi nobis fidem servabunt. Hæc acta sunt apud Nonancurt " vii° kalendas Octobris."[1]

dated Sept. 25.

The chancellor Geoffrey lost at sea, Sept. 28.

Gaufridus regis filii regis cancellarius,[2] dum ab Anglia tenderet in Normanniam, passus naufragium submersus est, et plusquam ccc^{ti} cum eo, iii^{tio} kalendas Octobris.

Stormy winter.

Hyems secuta est tempestuosissima, submersæ sunt naves multorum, milia hominum infinita perierunt in fluctibus.[3]

Saladin oppresses the Christians in Palestine.

Salahadinus[4] Egyptum et Syriam sua redigens sub potestate, Babyloniam et Damascum per violentiam occupavit, Christiani nominis gravissimus persecutor. Cum autem comes Flandrensium et comes Willelmus de Magnivilla militum non minimam[5] multitudinem a Jerosolimis evocassent, ut Agarenos Antiochiæ vicinan-

---

[1] *Ego . . . Octobris*] This is an extract from the treaty of Yvry, given in full in the Chronicle of Benedict, i. 191; and in that of Hoveden, ii. 144. But the date is not in those Chronicles inserted in the charter.

[2] See above, p. 406. This is the last fact mentioned in the oldest MS. of the Gesta Henrici, the so-called Chronicle of Benedict, and it there occurs in nearly the same words as the text, with the date " v^{to} kalendas " instead of iii^{tio}.

[3] *fluctibus*] Here in Twysden's edition the order of the narrative is changed. The account of Saladin which immediately follows in MSS. A. B. and C. is there placed after the account of the coronation of the emperor at Arles, p. 426 below. The events, however, recorded belong to the year 1177, to which these MSS. assign them, and not to 1178, as they appear in Twysden.

[4] *Salahadinus*] This passage is introduced in Twysden's text, with the following words, which occur in MS. B. after the word Arelate, p. 426, l. 32:

" Christiani prope Jerosolimam " cum Agarenis congressum ha- " bentes victoriam reportarunt, sicut " nuntius Jerosolimitani regis ob " id ipsum fideliter referendum di- " rectus Anglorum regi patri sig- " nanter ostendit, quæ viderat et " audiera tasseverans constanter."

[5] *minimam*] modicam, B.

tes contererent, pridie nonas Novembris vi[ta] feria castellum Hareng obsidione vallarunt. Salahadinus vero non elatus generositate sed armis, civitatem sanctam Jerusalem hominibus aptis ad bellum vacuatam existimans, infinitum congregavit exercitum, et in multitudine gravi fines Aschalonitarum irrumpens fixit tentoria loco qui vocatur Rama. Rex, patriarcha, paucitas illa militum qui cum eis, qui vel in Templo, qui vel in Hospitali remanserant, cum aliquantula multitudine pugnatorum in angustia temporis ad bellum se præparant. Qui non in hasta vel gladio, non in arcu confidentes vel pharetra, sed ad solum divinæ pietatis recurrentes auxilium, Dominicæ crucis animati simul et armati vexillo, de nocte properanter Agarenis occurrunt; illud attendentes, quod est facile concludi multos in manus paucorum, et quod non est in conspectu Dei differentia vincere, vel in multis, vel in paucis. Facto mane, cum sol in clipeos aureos refulsisset, et monticuli cujusdam ascensus Christianos eminentiores efferret, Agarenis in planitie per turmas suas distinctis et ordinatis ad pugnam, numerus infidelium fideliter intuentibus videbatur excedere fere fideles in centuplum. Edocti sunt itaque Christiani magistra necessitate novum adinvenire remedium. Illos etenim iiii[or] ordines quos prius ad dimicandum paraverant, unum redegerunt in cuneum: sicque gentibus eos undique circumvallantibus assultus acerrimos exceperunt constanter. Dum hæc sub tanto discrimine gererentur, et Christianis pro vita res esset, Odo magister militiæ Templi, Judas alter Machabæus, viginti quater et iiii[or] ordinis sui milites secum habens in comitatu, se recepit in partem cum suis crucis signaculo communitis. Qui simul omnes quasi vir unus, calcaribus indulgentes, invasione facta, non ad sinistram declinantes vel dexteram, aciem illam in qua Salahadinum militibus multis præesse cognoverant, viriliter aggrediuntur, penetrant incunctanter, incessanter affligunt, dissipant, collidunt et conterunt. Salahadinus

A.D. 1177.
The count of Flanders and William of Mandeville besiege Hareng, Nov. 4.
Saladin threatens Jerusalem, and advances to Ramlah.
The king marches against him by night.
Valiant onset by the Templars under their master Odo.

A.D. 1177. Flight of Saladin. admiratione facti perculsus est. Vidensque suos undique dispersos, undique conversos in fugam, undique datos in ore gladii, fuga sibi consulere procuravit, et loricam cum acceleratione deiciens, camelum ascendit cursorium, vix cum paucis evadens, posteris suis illud illud memoriale relinquendum non dubitans, "Unus "mille persequebatur, et duo fugarunt decem milia." Deut. xxxii., 30. The battle was fought Nov. 25. Sic potiti sunt victoria Christiani, nutu divino fortitudine gentium dissipata, vii^o kalendas Decembris vi^ta feria.

Illuxerunt choruscationes toti regno Anglorum iii^tio [1] kalendas Decembris.

High wind, Dec. 1. Ventus vehemens eruens silvas, ædificia subruens, venit ab austro kalendis Decembris.

A.D. 1178. Snow. MCLXXVIII. Nix maxima.[2]

Floods, Jan. 8. In maritimis valla maxima de cespitibus constructa maris ab inundatione dirupta sunt, maxime versus Aquilonem. Incolæ,[3] pecudes et armenta pluribus in locis fluctibus involuta sunt aquilone flante, sexto idus Januarii.

The abbot of Ramsey transferred to Cluny. Willelmus abbas Ramesiensis,[4] Cluniacensium curam suscipere detrectans multis diebus, ad ultimum adquievit, ditiorem non ambiens abbatiam, nisi quod hæc cujus erat collocandus in sede, dum abbatias plures suæ subici noverit dispositioni, quandam ex hoc sibi vendicet prærogativam, ut prælatus Cluniacensis non abbas solummodo nominandus sit, sed archiabbas.

The bishop of Winchester returns home, Mar. 21. Ricardus Wintoniensis episcopus, dum per annum et dimidium fiscalia diligenter recensens Normanniæ præfuisset, duodecimo kalendas Aprilis in Angliam rediit.

Alexander III. received at Rome, Mar. 19. Alexander papa,[5] scismaticis ad unitatem ecclesiæ redeuntibus, sollempni processione receptus est Romæ die Dominica qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem."

---

[1] *iii^tio*.] iiii^to., B.

[2] "Supra anno MCLXXVII.," B. Under this date in the margin of MS. A. in a contemporary hand is the note "Hoc anno venit Wil-"lelmus de Sancta Maria Ecclesia "ad curiam regis Henrici." William of S. Mere l'Eglise became bishop of London in 1199.

[3] *Incolæ*] In colle, C.

[4] William, abbot of Ramsey, 1161–1178.

[5] *papa*] erased, and episcopus inserted in A.

Castellum Radulfi, quod a doloribus nominis appellationem sortitur, fundatum est in pago Biturico, ducis Aquitanorum de prisca consuetudine mandatis obtemperans. Hujus itaque castelli dominus dum ageret in extremis filiam parvulam reliquit hæredem, quam rex pater Anglorum, cum castellis, et villis, et omnibus ad eam spectantibus, fideli custodiæ commendatam tempore congruo nuptui congruo collocabit.[1]

A.D. 1178. The lord of Château-roux leaves an infant heiress whose guardian is Henry II.

Comes de Marchia[2] sub ditione ducis Aquitanici constitutus, cum liberos non haberet, cognatis ordine successorio suam aspirantibus ad hæreditatem, duriorem opposuit adversarium. Nam cum haberet in voto visitare loca Dominicæ passionis, et ultimos dies suos ibidem explere, patrimonium suum multis et firmissimis munitionibus insignitum Anglorum regi distraxit, appensis in pretium sex milibus marcis argenti, quadraginta vecturis itineri tanto necessariis ad pretii quantitatem adactis.

ALDEBERTUS.

The count of La Marche sells his county to Henry II., to raise money for a pilgrimage.

Longa disceptatio, quam archiepiscopus Cantuariensis in præsentia domini papæ per nuntios suos contra electum Sancti Augustini super controversia benedictionis habuit, de communi consilio fratrum per diffinitivam sententiam ita decisa est, quod Cantuariensis archiepiscopus ipsum et successores suos in monasterio Sancti Augustini absque exactione obedientiæ, contradictione postposita, benedicat. Datum Laterani, xv^to^ kalendas Maii.[3]

The strife between the archbishop and the elect S. Augustine's settled, April 17.

Ricardus de Luci, justiciarius regis in Anglia, fundamenta jecit iii^tio^ idus Junii ad construendam ecclesiam,

Richard de Lucy founds Lesnes

---

[1] *collocabit*] The marriage of the heiress of Deols with Baldwin of Redvers is mentioned in Benedict, ii. 76, in recording her second marriage in 1189 with Andrew of Chavigny. The note in the text must have been drawn up before the first marriage, which, as Baldwin died in 1184, must have taken place before that year.

[2] Audebert, count of la Marche, whose deed of sale of his county is given in the Gesta Henrici, i. 197.

[3] *Maii*] See the act in full, Bened., i. 208.

A.D. 1178. in honour of S. Thomas, June 11. et conventui regularium consecrandam in honore Thomæ martyris gloriosi, loco qui vocatur Westwde in Rofensi territorio.

The king returns, July 15, and visits Canterbury. Rex Anglorum pater,[1] cum per provincias omnes suæ subditas jurisdictioni, quæ vel Francorum limitibus, vel montibus Pireneis, vel Britannico vicinantur oceano, munitiones obtinuisset, et omnia disposuisset pro velle, rediit in Angliam idus Julii, sub ipso reditu visitans Thomæ martyris gloriosi sepulchrum.

The archbishop of Rheims visits Canterbury, July 27, and London. Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus, ut orationum vota Thomæ martyri glorioso persolveret, in comitatu magno venit Cantuariam vito kalendas Augusti. Rex Anglorum, episcopi plures, multi proceres occurrerunt, et sic maximo cum honore susceptus in palatio regis Lundoniæ sumptibus regiis triduum celebravit. Cum autem ei rex exeniorum nomine vasa plurima concupiscibilia transmisisset, præter Francorum consuetudinem ab omnibus manum cohibuit, quædam tamen, quæ non usque ad muneris consequentiam extenderentur, in signum dilectionis a rege recipiens.

The king knights his son Geoffrey, Aug. 6. Rex Angliæ pater[1] Gaufridum filium suum ducem Britanum[2] cingulo militari donavit apud Wdestoche viiivo idus Augusti.

The emperor returns from Italy to Germany, and is crowned at Arles, Aug. 15. Fredericus imperator Romanus Italiam sibi rebellem intelligens, et cum Lumbardis iterum in campo confligere, nisi prius resumptis viribus, non esse tutum considerans, transcensis Alpibus regnum repetit Teutonicum; sed ut sinistros eventus aliquo saltem elatæ mentis titulo coloraret, et posteris suis memoriale relinqueret, quousque sui fines imperii dilatarentur ad plagam meridianam, in Assumptione beatæ Virginis coronatus est Arelate.[3]

The antipope resigns Aug. 29. Johannes Strumensis, in scismate vocatus papa Calyxtus, papalia deposuit ornamenta iiiito kalendas Septembris, Alexandri papæ provolutus ad pedes.

---

[1] *pater*] interlined in A. B. C.
[2] *Britanum*] Britonum, B. C.
[3] See above, p. 422, note 4.

Fredericus imperator Romanus varias regnorum imperio subditorum metas pro varietate linguarum distinguens, Longobardos, Baioarios, Austrasios, Burgundiones, diligenter recensuit, et juxta numerum quatuor populorum edoctus est plenius quatuor sibi competere[1] diademata. Quæ simul imperio consolidata Romano, Fredericum in conspectu regum magnificant. Cui Burgundiæ regnum a multis retro temporibus usque nunc, suppresso regis nomine, per comites administratum, nomine dotis non est dubium accrevisse, suis hæredibus hæreditario jure legitime devolvendum, non per electionem sicut imperiale culmen plerumque transfertur, in quempiam conferendum. Et licet Fredericus in adversis hucusque semper extiterit constantissimus, vir tamen uxorius reputatur a multis, quærens in omnibus quomodo placeat uxori. Rediens siquidem ab Italia, ne quid imperatrici deesset ad gloriam, in terra nativitatis suæ capiti suo fecit imponi diadema Burgundiæ, die nativitatis beatæ Virginis, in urbe Vienna; Burgundiæ quidem, quam Italiæ vicinantem intelligas ad arcendos hostes ab ea parte cacumina montium, præcipitia vallium in modum exceptionis opponere;—Burgundiæ quidem, quam in planitie multa per intervalla spectabilem Araris atque Rodani fluenta lætificant;—Burgundiæ quidem, quam aqua salubrior plerisque locis alto lacu conclusa, post capturam piscium copiosam reficiendis corporibus indulgere frequenter invitat;—Burgundiæ quidem, quam Agaunensis fundator monasterii Sigismundus et rex et martyr, multis rexit feliciter annis.

A.D. 1178. Frederick I. claimed four crowns.

The crown of Burgundy was hereditary.

To please his wife, he had her crowned queen of Burgun at Vienne, Sept. 8.

Praises of Burgundy.

Sol passus est eclipsim idus Septembris.

Eclipse of the sun, Sept. 13.

"Alexander papa[2] Lundoniensi et Wintoniensi episcopis.

"Nos attendentes quod ad regem pertineat, non ad ecclesiam, "de possessionibus judicare, ne videamur juri et dignitati "karissimi in Christo filii nostri H. illustris Anglorum regis

Letter of Alexander III.

---

[1] *competere*] cumpetere, A. B. | [2] Altered to *episcopus* in A.

A.D. 1178. Oct. 1. The pope orders the bishops not to attempt to judge causes of property. William de Mandeville returns home, Oct. 8.

"detrahere, qui sicut accepimus commotus est et turbatur, "quod de possessionibus scripsimus, cum earum judicium ad "se asserat pertinere, volumus et fraternitati vestræ manda- "mus, ut regi possessionum judicium relinquatis. Data Tus- "culani kalendis Octobris."[1]

Comes Willelmus de Magnivilla Jerosolimis rediit viii° idus Octobris. Qui peregre profectus, sicut altaria multarum per Angliam ecclesiarum habuerat in memoria, sic et rediens habuit in veneratione, pannos, quos civitas Constantinopolis vocat imperiales, passim locis distribuens religiosis.

A.D. 1179. Exploits of the young king Henry in France.

MCLXXIX. Henricus rex filius regis Angliæ regnum egrediens, in conflictibus Gallicis, in expensis profusioribus transegit triennium. Qui dum per id temporis circumquaque Francorum limites properus peragrasset regia majestate seposita, totus est de rege translatus in militem, et flexis in girum frænis, in congressibus variis reportavit triumphum: sui nominis celebritatem favor popularis evexit, suorum in computatione gestorum hylarior fama senem censuit admirando victorias, quem lapsum in negotio beneficium adhuc minoris ætatis in integrum restitueret. Sic igitur in negotiis militaribus occupato, dum nil ei deesset ad gloriam, navem ascendens apud Witsand, in Angliam rediit iiii° kalendas Martii, cum honore debito receptus a rege patre.[2]

He returns to England, Feb. 26.

The abbey of S. Augustine was subject to the archbishops for five hundred years.

Augustinus Anglorum apostolus, archiepiscopus Dorobernensis, prope Cantuariam sepulturæ sibi locum elegit abbatiam inibi provida successorum dispositione fundatam, et abbatem impositum debitam archiepiscopis Cantuariensibus obedientiam per annos quingentos legimus exsolvisse. Diebus his ultimis Rogerus a collegio Sanctæ Trinitatis ad supradicti loci curam in abbatem assumptus, ab Alexandro papa, v^to kalendas Februarii,

Roger the new abbot, Jan. 28,

[1] *Alexander . . . Octobris*] This is an original document, not otherwise known.

[2] *patre*] interlined in A. B.; om. D.

Tusculani benedictionem, et in signum emancipationis indultæ mitram, anulum, cirothecas suscepit.[1] A.D. 1179. blessed by the pope.

"Alexander pontifex magnæ et almæ Romæ, glorioso Valentiæ "regi Lupo.[2] Letter of the pope to the king of Valentia.

"Cum superna et incomprehensibilis providentia Majestatis "super gentes innumeras tibi commiserit dominatum, licet "sacramenta fidei Christianæ minime tua celsitudo susceperit, "tamen sicut ad nos usque fama pervenit, cultores et fideles "Christi quadam speciali prærogativa diligis et honoras, et "eis familiaritatis gratiam nosceris non modicam exhibere. "Tuam igitur excellentiam rogamus et exhortamur instantius, "ut Christianos qui nunc apud te captivi tenentur ad nos "per gratiam tuam liberos absolutosque remittas, ut Omni-"potens Pater, Creator omnium, temporale tibi regnum am-"plificet et conservet in terris, et illud quod erit sine fine "mansurum, per sacramenta fidei Christianæ, post exitum "hujus vitæ largiatur in cœlis Redemptor omnium, Cujus "nomen est benedictum in secula."

Albertus ecclesiæ Romanæ subdiaconus et Alexandri papæ nuncius venit in Angliam. Qui, præstita fidelitate de regia dignitate servanda, cum licentia regis visitans majores ecclesias, archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, de convocandis ad concilium generale submonitorias patentes ostendit. Alios ætas maturior, alios imbecillitas Albert the sub-deacon summons the English prelates to a council at Rome.

---

[1] *Augustinus . . . suscepit*] MS. B. reads as follows:
"Augustinus Anglorum apostolus archiepiscopus Dorobernensis prope "muros Cantuariæ sibi sepulturæ locum elegit. Abatiam inibi provida "successorum dispositione fundatam, et abbates impositos ordine succes-"sorio debitam archiepiscopis Cantuariensibus obedientiam per annos "quingentos legimus exsolvisse. Diebus his ultimis Rogerus a collegio "majoris ecclesiæ scilicet a collegio Sanctæ Trinitatis ad supradicti loci "curam in abbatem assumptus, ab Alexandro papa v^to kalendas Februarii "Tusculani benedictionem et in signum emancipationis indultæ mitram "et cirothecas suscepit; et quoniam ex eventibus hujusmodi sæpe nascitur "inter homines occasio litigandi, si plebs suburbana Cantuariorum jac-"tando repetierit, abbas noster inter episcopos pontificalibus ornamentis "insignitus incedit, et civitas tota Dorobernensium cum indignatione re-"spondeat, 'et angelus Sathanæ sæpe se transformat in angelum lucis.'" The following letter is omitted in B.

[2] *Lupo*] Twysden's text proceeds "Cœlestis Creatoris notitiam ac "beneplacitum ei servitium exhi-"bere." See above, p. 390.

A.D. 1179.

Excuses of the prelates.

corporis, alios clandestinis pactionibus involuta numeratio, nec dicam pecuniæ, reddidit excusatos. Solus Wintoniensis episcopus ad instantiam regis Francorum honoratæ quieti donatus est. Albertus igitur, Latialiter incedens per Angliam, aliquibus in evectione vel mora locis in pluribus triduana visus est honerosus. A quodam etiam auctoritatis non contempnendæ viro minus reverenter receptus quam vellet, ei pro qualitate delicti pœnam, ut ait, competentem inflixit, hiis verbis; "Ut "digne pro meritis remuneretur, ipsum apostolica qua "fungimur auctoritate suspendimus. Dignum namque "et rationi consentaneum est, ut pœna docente addis-"cat omnimodam reverentiam et obedientiam exhibere "prælatis." Albertus postmodum ad preces inclinatus quorundam, novum genus pœnæ novus examinator culparum indixit his verbis. "Juratoria prius cautione "recepta quod nostro pareret mandato, jejunium trium "quadragesimarum injunximus ei pro culpa."

Behaviour of Albert on his mission.

Lateran council, March 19.

Synodus ccc^{orum} x^{cem} episcoporum est habita Romæ xiiii^{to} kalendas Aprilis in patriarchio Lateranensi; plurima memoriæ plurimum commendanda statuta sunt ibi, de quibus saltem inseramus paucissima. CŌ

Canon against plurality.

[1] "Multarum possessoribus ecclesiarum quos ambitio "cæca perurit severius occurrendum est. Nam cum "inde dissolutionis materiam et vagationis incurrant, unius "tantum ecclesiæ curam suscipere debitam, uni provi-"sionem impendere canonica compellantur censura.

Licence of the military orders.

[2] "Ecclesias interdicto subpositas in anno semel aperiant "Templares vel Hospitalarii, sed non ibi corpora sepelire "præsumant."

Filiam Ludovici regis Francorum Agnetem,[3] Alexio

---

[1] *Multarum . . . . censura*] An abstract of the fourteenth canon of the Lateran council, partly in the words of the canon. See Bened. i. 231; Hoveden, ii. 182.

[2] *Ecclesias . . . . . præsumant*] From the ninth canon. See Bened. i. 237; Hoveden, ii. 189.

[3] *Filiam . . Agnetem*] Agnetem filiam Ludovici regis Francorum, B.

filio Manuelis imperatoris Constantinopolitani fœdere nuptiali jungendam, in comitatu magno circa Pascha transmissam audivimus. Velit Dominus Deus ut auspicio meliori quam filia Karoli magni Constantino* nupserit imperatori, sine liberis decedens in matrimonio.[2]

A.D. 1179. Marriage of Alexius Comnenus with Agnes, daughter of Lewis VII.

* Qui matrem suam Hyrenen expulit ab imperio, et quem postmodum Hyrene resumptis viribus excœcavit.[1]

Dux Aquitanorum Ricardus, multis sæpe lacessitus injuriis, tandem ad superbiam Gaufridi de Rancuna penitus edomandam, auxiliariis undequaque collectis, kalendis Maii castellum de Taileborch obsidione vallavit; opus desperatissimum, et quod suorum nullus antecessorum attemptare præsumpsit. Castrum igitur supradictum, ante dies istos hostium cuneis prorsus incognitum, triplici vestitum fossato, muri triplicis incentivo rebellioni dicatum, armis, seris, repagulis, instructum sufficienter, turribus per intervalla seriatim dispositis insignitum, comportato lapide manuali munitum in propugnaculis, habundans in victualibus, refertum milibus hominum ad pugnam idoneis, minime ducis Aquitanorum expavit adventum. Sed postquam ipse dux regionem hostiliter introivit, dotes prædiorum abduxit, succidit vites, succendit villas, reliqua demoliendo vastavit, in castelli confinio fixit tentoria machinas prope murum erexit, opidanos nichil tale præmeditatos vehementer exterruit. Quibus quia res ignominiæ plena videbatur, tot elatæ mentis, tot virtutis probatæ milites intra muros sine maxima reclamatione concludi, de communi consilio placuit ut foras erumperent, exercitum ducis impeterent ex inproviso. Quod cum ad ducis notitiam devenisset, in arma ruere suos edocuit, retrorsum cedere compulit opidanos. Illis in ingressu portarum[3] hinc et hinc

Richard provoked by Geoffrey of Rancon, besieges Taillebourg, May 1.

Description of the place.

Sally of the defenders.

[1] *Qui . . . excœcavit*] Inserted in the margin of A., B. and C. See above, pp. 129, 361.

[2] *matrimonio*] MS. D. omits all that follows down to patre, p. 432, below.

[3] *portarum*] portarii, B.; altered in A.

A.D. 1179.

Richard enters the town in pursuit, May 8.

acriter confligentibus, quid equus, quid lancea, quid ensis, quid galea, quid arcus, quid balista, quid umbo, quid lorica, quid sudes, quid clava certantibus conferant, experimento cedebat. Opidanis itaque principalis cohortis in qua dux præerat assultus acerrimos sustinere non ultra valentibus, sed intra muros certatim sese recipientibus, dux impiger invasione facta se pariter intra villam inmiscet cum hostibus, Rogationum feria tercia. Nusquam locus diffugii, per plateas hinc inde discurritur, rapinis insistitur et incendiis; ab his quos fortuna benignior internitioni subtraxerat, ad principale

The castle is surrendered May 10.

præsidium tanquam ad asilum confugitur. Castelli dominus Ascensionis Dominicæ die sollempni compellitur ad deditionem: facies universa murorum intra dies paucissimos complanatur. Alia passim castella per patriam conscia rebellionis, incentiva superbiæ, prædonibus receptacula par infra mensem unum subiere

Richard goes to England.

discrimen. Omnibus igitur ad votum completis dux Aquitanorum transfretavit in Angliam, cum honore maximo receptus a patre.

Marriage of one of the heiresses of Boulogne.

Junior filia Mathæi Boloniensium comitis nupsit filio ducis Lovaniæ.

Roger, bishop of Worcester, dies.

Rogerus Wigornensis episcopus v^to idus Augusti rebus humanis exemptus est.

Lewis VII. showed great devotion to S. Thomas.

Ludovicus rex Francorum, magnificentiam prædecessorum animi liberalitate transcendens, sanctæ recordationis Thomæ quondam archiepiscopi Cantuariensis exilium pluribus annis intra Galliam Celticam cum æquanimitate decursum facultatibus suis habundantius relevavit, Christo sedulum exhibere sperans obsequium dum oculos pietatis attollens respiceret archiepiscopum.

He now contemplated a pilgrimage to Canterbury.

Exulem itaque brachiis intimæ caritatis amplexus dum viveret, jam martyrio coronatum, jam triumphantem in cœlis, jam in terris patrocinantem hominibus, sicut crebra miraculorum indicia longe lateque diffusa passim attestantur per orbem, sua corporali præsentia cum omni devotione summopere venerari decrevit, ut ejus

meritis et intercessionibus a regno mutabili transire mereatur ad regnum sine fine mansurum. Angliam igitur quam nec ipse, nec suorum aliquis antecessorum aliquo tempore, vel hostili manu, vel ingressu pacifico visitaverat, nomen peregrinantis assumens et habitum, turba nobilium comitante permodica, devotissime visitavit. Rex Anglorum pater[1] Henricus, subitum ejus subito prænoscens adventum, obviam progressurus cum incessisset duplomate, regi Francorum navem apud Doveram egredienti festinanter occurrit xi° kalendas Septembris iiii[a] feria. Quicquid honoris ab aliquo potuit vel excogitari, potuit vel impendi, totum Francis exhibitum est. Concurrentibus undique tam archiepiscopo quam episcopis, tam comitibus quam baronibus, tam clero quam populo, solempnis processio majorem ecclesiam illustravit attentius in hymnis et canticis et lætitia summa, tanti principis applaudens adventui v[ta] feria. Quantum auri vel argenti Gallicanæ munificentiæ titulos in oblationibus factis evexerit, ne sit qui non credat, desit qui scribat. Centum autem vini modios a rege vel hæredibus suis annuatim solvendos Parisius imperpetuum ob martyris reverentiam, et in usus Cantuariensis collegii convertendos, memoriæ commendemus. Cum fama semper in deteriora proclivior Romanos nota cupiditatis asperserit, ad aviditatem ipsorum explendam, si præsentes fuissent, regis Anglorum gazæ multiplices et thesaurus ab antiquo congestus in exeniis Cantuariæ faciendis expassus, et expositus in commune, plene sufficerent, si traxissent eos non orationum vota sed lucra. Sed ne Franci viderentur aliquibus aliud quæsisse quam martyrem, manum cohibentes a munere martyrium aliquod forsan pertulerunt in mente. Sic rex in jejuniis, in orationibus, in vigiliis, cum penes Cantuarios triduum consummasset, et exeniola quædam in signum dilectionis accepisset a rege,

A.D. 1179. He is honourably received by king Henry at Dover, Aug. 22.

Processions and services, Aug. 23.

His benefaction of wine to the convent of Canterbury.

Self-denial of the French.

[1] *pater*] interlined in A. and B.

A.D. 1179. The king of France leaves, Aug. 26.

vii° kalendas Septembris rursus navem ascendit apud Doveram die Dominica.[1]

Measures taken by Henry to regulate the proceedings of the sheriffs and to carry out a system of provincial judicature.

Rex pater[2] Anglorum hiis plurimum quærens prodesse qui minimum possunt, vicecomites publicis functionibus et ratiociniis involutos commodis propriis invigilantes invenit. Quare de communi salute magis et magis sollicitus, certis in locis jurisdictiones aliis fidelibus suis in regno commisit, ut cognitus per provincias publicæ potestatis adventus terrorem incuteret delinquentibus, fiscalia supprimentes, et quæ principis læderent majestatem, regiam incurrerent indignationem; ferarum cubilia temerariis ausibus incursantes, vel mulcta reprimeret, vel carceralis custodia maceraret diutius; metus pœnæ profugos absterreret, animadversio gravis percelleret interceptos, homicidæ suspendio punirentur, proditores dampnarentur exilio ; levioribus in flagitiis deprehensi truncatione membrorum notabiles redderentur ;[3] invasores locorum vigor compesceret judiciarius, enormitatem dampni satisfactio maturata sarciret.

He tried many different classes of men, to see where he could find honest and efficient judges.

Rursus aliquot temporum labente curriculo, rex intentissimus ad justiciam singulis exhibendam, ut artius subditis provideret, fidem voluit experiri multorum. In variis namque professionibus amatores justiciæ sollicitius investigans, quem munera non corrumperent inter hominum milia requirebat; et sic animum a proposito non immutans, circa personas mutabiles immutabilem semper sæpe mutavit sententiam. Quantum itaque claustralis professio querelas pauperum relevaverit, quantum cinguli militaris auctoritas restiterit potentioribus, et vivere jure communi coegerit, novit calamitas oppressorum. Nam abbates modo, comites modo, capitaneos modo, domesticos modo, familiarissimos modo, causis audiendis et examinandis præposuit. Rex denique cum tot fideles suos conditionibus tam diversis

---

[1] *die Dominica*] MS. D. omits all that follows down to "Ludovico regi "Francorum," p. 438, line 1.

[2] *pater*] interlined in A., B.

[3] *proditores-redderentur*] om. B.

obnoxios publicis utilitatibus præfecisset, nec alicujus publicæ retractasset sententiam, suffragium aliud commodis privatorum utilius non inveniens, oculos erexit ad cœlum, et de terrestribus cogitans, et aliquid mutuans a cœlestibus, sic hominibus providere curavit, ut homines ab hominum generalitate secerneret, qui licet viverent inter homines superintendentes hominibus, aliquid haberent, aliquid sentirent, aliquid auderent plus homine. Transcensis igitur omnibus quæ mutabilitati poterant subjacere de facili, rex, ad sanctuarium Dei recurrens, Wintoniensem, Helyensem, Norwicensem episcopos archijusticiarios regni, sed certis in locis ea forsan consideratione constituit, ut si cæteri quos longe prius præmiserat ipsum regnantem in terra minus reveriti fuerint, isti saltem Deum regem regum, hominum creatorem, judicem conscientiarum, operum retributorem, revererentur attentius et ardentius, ut, nec ad sinistram declinantes vel ad[1] dexteram, nec opprimerent in judicio pauperem, nec causam divitis ob acceptionem muneris colorare præsumerent. Itaque si se negotiis sæcularibus contra canonum instituta præsules inmiscuerint et ob hoc trahantur in causam, regis instantiam, regis intentionem piam, suam actionem Deo placendam,[2] ab hominibus collaudandam, rigori canonum instanter opponant: sic reatum culpæ fraternæ caritatis intuitus poterit mitigare. Consilium tamen est, ut ad Rogeri bonæ memoriæ quondam episcopi Saresberiensis opus laudabile frequenter recurrant, qui simili devotione constrictus non se prius professus est regni justiciarium, quam ab ecclesia Romana, quam ab Anselmo, Radulfo, Willelmo Cantuariensibus archiepiscopis, juxta temporum successionem cum obedientiæ virtute sibi fuerit hoc onus impositum. Ab episcopis igitur supradictis, et a conjudicibus eorundem, querelis justicia mediante decisis, reservatis quibusdam ad prin-

A.D. 1179. His employment of clergymen for these offices.

He appoints three bishops chief justices.

Excuses for them.

Example of bishop Roger of Salisbury.

Cases reserved to be heard by the king, Aug. 27.

[1] *ad*] om. B.
[2] *placendam*] plurimis profuturam, ins. Twysden.

A.D. 1179. cipis audientiam, regi ratio redditur administrationis vi[to] kalendas Septembris apud Westmuster.

This year a dry winter and spring were followed by seasonable showers in June,

Ut annum præsentem annum benignitatis intelligas, post hyemis nimiam siccitatem, post asperos pruinarum incursus, post flatus aquilonares toto tempore verno continuos, post fulgura discurrentia[1] circa medium regionis a partibus occidentis in orientem, repente placidus imber ydibus Junii faciem irrigavit agrorum, animos colonorum in sationalibus nullam spem reponentium consternatos felici commutatione resuscitans; fructibus arborum, fœtibus animalium qui nondum prorsus deperierant, grata sumministrans fomenta. Temperies itaque desuper illapsa benignius sementivam, radiciunculis vix aliquantulum innitentem, roris et pluviæ succedaneis irrigationibus fecunditati restituit. Solaris quoque radii fomes intensior, et proventibus fructuariis permultum accommodus, jugera prius arentia tantam ad ubertatem ex insperato reduxit, ut locis in pluribus septem spicas in uno culmo conspiceres. Eventu tali satis debes esse commonitus aliquid aliud subitum, insperatum, insolitum tuis forsan imminere diebus. Rursus, gratia cœlestis hoc anno terrenas potestates in eam erga subditos affectionem induxit, ut singulis querelas habentibus tam in foro civili quam ecclesiastico sancta consideratione prospectum esse non dubites. Eo namque decursum est, ut in comitiis, sicut supra diximus, rege procurante præsideant præsules, et disceptationibus quæstionum forensium, quæ sanguinis pœnam non irrogant, audientiam suam accommodent. Rursus, ad consistorium archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, si veritas tibi comes fuerit, cum animi tranquillitate potes securus accedere pro merito causæ calculum reportaturus. Ne sui siquidem assessores, quos in dandis consiliis et litibus dirimendis habet assiduos, a via veritatis exorbitent, et in pecuniæ corruptelam partium studia litigantium universi negotii spem universam reponant, cur et

and an unexampled harvest.

This was an omen of good.

Session of the bishops in the county courts.

Reform in the ecclesiastical courts.

[1] *discurrentia*] choruscantia, B.

quando terribiles in medium proponi scripturas civiliter introductum sit memoriter tenuerunt. Nam omnes, communi sponsione devincti, tactis sacrosanctis evangeliis publice juraverunt, nemine deferente, se conservaturos inposterum modis omnibus suas manus immunes a munere. Promisit illud idem archiepiscopus in verbo veritatis apud Pageham.[1] A.D. 1179. The archbishop's promise.

Caduallanus,[2] in Sudgalia principatum aliquem habens, fines inter Anglos et Britones limitatos antiquitus sæpe transgressus est, et, marchiam violenter incursans et cædibus hominum inhianter anhelans, totius vitæ cursum studuit in rapinis et in irruptionibus crebris transigere. Qui tandem tractus ante regem et multorum clamoribus impetitus, ibidem, dum a rege sub ipsius regis ducatu securus, sed pro scelerum immanitate semper deterritus, remeasset, obiter hostium interceptus insidiis interfectus est decimo kalendas Octobris. Quod quia plurimum in regiæ majestatis redundavit injuriam, qui prius juxta jus publicum jure debuerat pro meritis tociens excepisse suspendium, pro reverentia regis cujus redibat a curia Caduallanus, ne jus publicum læderetur, a jure publico tutum debuit habuisse præsidium, quousque se reciperet intra terminum a principis indulgentia securitati plenæ præfixum. Si quis autem hujus insoliti casus terreatur exemplo, dum nil simile diebus nostris acciderit, dum hoc rex non reliquerit impunitum, dum in ulciscendo pœna modum excesserit, ad curiam regis vocatus si fuerit accedat intrepidus. Sibi namque Galenses solatiari possunt adinvicem, quod mors unius ex suis multorum in mortibus marchionum Anglis lugubres et Normannis exosas excepit exequias. Cædis itaque conscios et quos fama consentiens suspectos reddidit et publicum examen probavit obnoxios, animadversio gravis involvit,[3] quibusdam in patibulo cruciatis bonorum proscrip-

Cadwallon killed in spite of the king's safe-conduct, Sept. 22.

The offence was unprecedented, and was severely punished.

Severity of the king against the perpetrators.

---

[1] *Pageham*] Pagaham, B.

[2] *Caduallanus*] Cadwallon ap Madoc, of Melenith; see Brut y Tywysogion, pp. 226, 230.

[3] *animadversio-involvit*] om. B.

A.D. 1179. tione dampnatis, quibusdam in abditis nemorum miseram ducere vitam coactis.

Three marriages of Lewis VII.

[1] Ludovico regi Francorum circa fœdera nuptiarum ultimis in diebus sors arrisit benignior: trigamiam inter contractus legitimos et pro tempore felicissimos computandam Francorum annalibus inserendum esse recensens, dum ad suscipiendam in trigamia sobolem masculinam, regum in solio collocandam aspiraverit affectio conjugalis. Rex igitur ex matrimonio tam primo quam secundo susceptis quatuor filiabus solummodo, tandem ex tertio, quod cum Adela magni Theobaldi comitis Blesensis filia contraxit, multo felicius feliciter filium procreavit, desideratum a populis, a clero devotius et propensius expetitum. Qui quartumdecimum agens annum, undique concurrentibus et occurrentibus tam archiepiscopis, tam episcopis, quam regni principibus quorum desiderandus erat assensus, more regio Remis recipitur pridie kalendas Novembris et ad omnium hominum hæreditario jure suo regimini subdendorum solamen, patrocinium ac moderamen, omnium in sollempnitate Sanctorum, ut ab omnibus adversis ipsorum omnium mereatur protectione defendi, consecratus est in regem per manum Guillelmi Remensis archiepiscopi, regis etiam ejusdem avunculi.

After having four daughters by his first two wives, he has a son by the third.

The son Philip II. crowned at Rheims, Nov. 1.

Philip of Flanders officiates in the right of himself and his wife.

Philippus itaque rex Francorum in coronatione sua, tam in gladio præferendo quam in regiis dapibus apponendis Philippum Flandriæ comitem privilegiatum habuit ministerialem, utentem duplici jure, paterno videlicet et uxorio.

Henry, son of Henry II., was present, but not as if the king of England was a vassal of France.

Henricus rex, Henrici regis Angliæ filius et Philippi regis Francorum sororius, regiæ consecrationi Remis interfuit, solius affinitatis incitatus et invitatus intuitu. Dum enim Britannia pæne nomen orbis alterius mereatur, dum divisos orbe Britannos frequenter audieris, restat ut et id audias, quod nullus Britanniæ vel Angliæ rex quempiam regem Francorum aliqua specie subjectionis, aliquo tempore, superiorem agnoverit; sed is

[1] *Ludovico*] Here MS. D. resumes.

potius habitus sit inter eos amicitiarum nexus, ut in epistolis intercurrentibus se fratres appellare decreverint, quod etiam Karolus magnus postquam ei laudes imperatorias acclamarunt Romani legitur observasse. Prædictis ergo sollempniis rex Henricus interesse decernens, illam nobilium adunationem singulari suæ præsentiæ prærogativa plurimum illustravit, et in ore populorum per Gallias futuris temporibus reddidit prædicabilem. In qua nimirum illud inventum est memoriæ commendabilius, quod diadema capiti novi regis impositum, ne rex infra minorem adhuc constitutus ætatem gravaretur sub onere, manibus propriis sustentaverit rex Anglorum, rejecta clamide paratior ad obsequium; illud innuens, quod si tempore procedente Francis necessitas incubuerit, securi debeant ejus implorare subsidium, a quo tale receperint sub ipsa sui regis consecratione suffragium.

A.D. 1179.

Equality of the kings of England and France.

"Karolus gratia Dei rex Francorum et Longobardorum et patricius Romanorum viro venerando et fratri karissimo Offæ regi Merciorum salutem. Primo gratias agimus Omnipotenti Deo de catholicæ fidei sinceritate, quam in vestris laudabiliter paginis reperimus exaratam. Cognoscat dilectio vestra quod aliquam dignitatem, cum dalmaticis nostris vel palliis ad singulas sedes episcopales regni vestri direximus. Vestræ quoque dilectioni misimus unum gladium Huniscum, et unum baltheum et duo pallia serica."[1]

Henry holds the crown on the head of Philip.

Anastasius imperator Constantinopolitanus Clodoveo regi Francorum, regiæ dignitatis insignia, coronam scilicet auream et tunicam bracteam transmisit, eidem concessa per litteras potestate regnandi.[2] Sic Clodoveus angelo crisma ministrante de cœlo per beatum Remigium Remis regalem recepit sollempniter unctionem, cujus successores in regno Francorum non juxta lineam consanguinitatis ordine successorio successerunt assidue,

Succession of the kings of France.

Clovis anointed by S. Remigius.

[1] *Karolus . . . serica*] This is part of the letter of Charles to Offa given by William of Malmesbury in the Gesta Regum, lib. i. § 93. See also Jaffé, Monumenta Carolina, p. 357. It is omitted in MS. D. and inserted in the text of B.

[2] *Anastasius . . . regnandi*] See above, p. 90.

A.D. 1179. sed pro nationum varietate primitus Merovingi,* postmodum Præfectorii,† demum agnominati sunt Cappaticii,‡ qui, postquam majores domus in Francia principari cessarunt, persistentes in Christi fide fideles fidem fidelissimam subditorum experti sunt, in tantum ut in regio diademate Galliarum favore debito sullimati præsentis vitæ cursum non gladio, non veneno, sed sorte communi pacifice consummaverint.

Successive dynasties in France.

Good fortune of the kings of the third race.

* A tempore Merovei regis.

† A tempore Pipini, qui ex præfecto palacii factus est rex.

‡ A tempore Hugonis Cappet regis.[1]

Letter of Alexander III. to Prester John.

" Alexander[2] papa karissimo in Christo filio presbitero Jo-
" hanni illustri et magnifico Indorum regi salutem, et aposto-
" licam benedictionem. Audiveramus jampridem, referentibus
" multis et etiam fama communi, quomodo cum sis Chris-
" tianam professionem professus piis velis operibus indesinen-
" ter intendere. Sed dilectus filius noster Philippus medicus,
" qui de intentione propria et proposito tuo, cum magnis et
" honorabilibus viris tui regni se in partibus illis verbum
" habuisse proponit, sicut vir providus constanter nobis retu-
" lit, se manifestius ab hiis audivisse, quod tuæ voluntatis sit
" et propositi erudiri catholica et apostolica disciplina, et ad
" hoc ferventer intendas, ut tu et cuncta plebs tuæ sullimitati
" commissa nichil unquam videamini in fide vestra tenere quod
" a doctrina sedis apostolicæ dissentiat. Illud etiam ad com-
" mendationem tuæ virtutis accedit, quod, sicut prædictus
" Philippus se a tuis asserit audivisse, ferventi desiderio cupe-
" res in urbe habere ecclesiam et Jerusalem altare aliquod,
" ubi viri prudentes de regno tuo manere possent, et aposto-
" lica plenius instrui disciplina, per quos tu et homines regni
" tui doctrinam ipsam facilius reciperent et tenerent. Nos
" autem vos ab hiis articulis in quibus erratis a Christiana et
" catholica fide revocare volentes, præfatum Philippum ad
" tuam magnitudinem mittimus, per quem de articulis Chris-
" tianæ fidei, in quibus tu et tui a nobis discordare videmini,
" in proximo per Dei gratiam eruditus, nichil prorsus timere
" poteris quod de errore tuam vel tuorum salutem præpediat,
" vel in vobis nomen Christianitatis obfuscet."

[1] These marginal insertions are omitted in MS. D.

[2] *Alexander*] A portion of the letter of Alexander III. to Prester John, given in full in Benedict, i. 210; Hoveden, ii. 168.

LONDON:
Printed by George E. Eyre and William Spottiswoode,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—9/76.]